Frances E. Williams, 2.

THE LIFE AND WORKS OF SCHILLER

By Prof. Calvin Thomas. 481 pp. 12mo. $1.50 *net.*

"An eminently sympathetic study, which will commend itself to the general reader for its avoidance of the minor pedantries into which writers on German subjects—not excluding Carlyle—are prone to fall. Particularly interesting is Professor Thomas's discussion of the philosophy of Schiller."
—*N. Y. Evening Post.*

GERMAN READER AND THEME BOOK

By Calvin Thomas and W. A. Hervey. 438 pp. 12mo. $1.00 *net.*

A short and very easy reader, with composition exercises based on the text.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES

To accompany Thomas's Practical German Grammar. (Based in Part on the Reading Lessons and Colloquies.) By W. A. Hervey, *Instructor in Columbia University.* With vocabulary. 124 + 54 pp. 12mo. 25c. *net.*

HENRY HOLT & CO., Publishers

NEW YORK CHICAGO

A

PRACTICAL

GERMAN GRAMMAR

BY

CALVIN THOMAS

PROFESSOR OF GERMANIC LANGUAGES AND LITERATURES IN
COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY

FOURTH EDITION, CAREFULLY REVISED AND PRINTED FROM NEW PLATES

NEW YORK
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

Copyright, 1895, 1898, 1901
BY
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

Copyright, 1905
BY
HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY

PREFACE

In preparing this new edition of my German Grammar I have taken advantage of the resetting of the type to subject the work to a careful revision from beginning to end. My aim has been to bring the book up to date and improve it in matters of detail without in any way changing its essential character. Aside from the correcting of some trifling errors which either had escaped my notice hitherto or were of such a character that they could not be corrected in the stereotype plates, I have tried to improve the form of presentation, simplifying or amplifying according as the one process or the other seemed to be required. I have sought to profit by the very numerous suggestions that have come to me during the past ten years from teachers in all parts of the country. To all these helpful critics, who have taken an interest in improving the book, I wish to return my thanks. I have, of course, introduced the official German spelling, according to the convention of 1901, and I have also adopted the few simplified English spellings recommended by the National Educational Association in 1898. If it was my duty, as the author of a German grammar, to take cognizance and help spread the knowledge of what the Germans are doing for the improvement of *their* spelling, it seemed to me that it was no less my duty, as an American teacher, to support such well-directed and authoritative efforts as are being made in our country for the improvement of English spelling, where the need of improvement is so much more pressing.

As is intimated above, I have not tried to make a new book of a different sort, but to revise the old one in matters of detail. The general plan and arrangement of the grammar, even the paragraph numbers, to which teachers have become accustomed, and which are referred to in other extant publications, remain unchanged. The exercises and vocabularies of Part I have been left substantially as they were, because they were prepared originally with very great care, and I saw no reason to believe that I could improve upon them. On the other hand, the exercises at the end of Part II have been much more radically dealt with, for there I found that I had made a mistake. In selecting sentences from the classics for their illustrative value I had been guided too much by literary, and not enough by practical considerations. The consequence was that many of the sentences, while admirably illustrative of syntax, were not well adapted for translation into German by students unacquainted with the classics. In revising I have endeavored to get rid of such sentences and to replace them with others better suited to the needs of the learner.

The principles upon which the book was originally built were set forth in the preface to the first edition (1895), as follows:

"This book is divided, on purely pedagogical grounds, into two parts. Part I is designed as a beginner's manual, and embodies those ideas of method which commend themselves to the author after some fifteen years of constant attention to the subject. I am of the opinion that learners who have passed the age of childhood should have grammar-lessons from the first, or at least after a sufficient preliminary drill upon pronunciation. At the same time it has to be remembered that the object of study is the language, not the grammar. The latter is only the means to an end. The learner should accordingly begin at once to read, hear and use the language, letting the grammatical textbook save his time by systematizing his knowledge and showing him what to look for. This means that the beginner's grammar-les-

sons should deal only with matters of fundamental importance and should avoid all confusing details. And the knowledge gained should be applied at once in the reading, memorizing and repetition of appropriate exercises upon the language.

"Part I of this work, therefore, aims to present the fundamental facts of the grammar without omitting anything necessary, or including anything unnecessary, to a bird's-eye view of the subject such as will fit the learner to begin reading easy prose. All minutiæ of grammatical scholarship, word-lists that do not need to be learned, and syntactical principles that can best be studied in connection with the reading of literature, are postponed to Part II. The order of presentation is that usually followed in scientific grammars, it being my conviction that for students who have reached the high-school age, a systematic treatise has decided advantages over a lesson-book in which the matter is presented in arbitrary installments.

"Great care has been bestowed upon the exercises, since it is here, as it seems to me, that the existing grammars fail to meet the present demand. What the learner of a living language most needs to develop is a sensitive and trustworthy *feeling* for the language. This is of more importance than anything else, whatever the object in view may be, whether speaking, writing, reading or scholarship. From this it follows that he should occupy his mind and store his memory with nothing but natural forms of expression as they occur in use. Anything else is not German. He should be taught that the sentence, not the word, is the real unit of language, and that he must learn German by learning sentences such as Germans use. He should not waste his time upon mechanical Ollendorffian preparations, such as are never heard or seen outside the schoolroom, nor should he get the idea that he can make German of his own by piecing together words with the help of his grammar and dictionary. His task and his ideal of progress should be simply to reproduce, orally and in writing, what he hears and reads; first to reproduce

it intelligently with the aid of his grammar, and then to reproduce it frequently, until it becomes second nature. This means that for a long time his efforts at translating from English into German should be confined to easy variations upon a German original. I am fully persuaded that the disconnected, vacuous, often puerile sentences with which the most of the school grammars require the beginner to concern himself do more harm than good. They blight the sense for idiom, lead to mechanical habits of translating, which are difficult to break up, and furnish nothing valuable for the memory to appropriate."

After the lapse of ten years, during which textbooks have multiplied and the literature of method has greatly increased, I find in this earlier confession of faith nothing that I wish to recant or to modify. There is no doubt room for different kinds of books, varying with the age and ability of the pupil and with the idiosyncrasy of the teacher. Such a thing as *the* best method does not exist, and it is unwise to pin one's faith too strenuously to any routine or set of dogmas. The capable teacher will always wish to prove all things and hold fast to that which he personally finds to be good. I am convinced, however, that for learners who take up the serious study of German under the conditions ordinarily presented by our American high schools and colleges — where the problem is the best use of a limited time — a book planned on the general lines above described will prove most serviceable.

As for the grammatical statements in Part I, there is nothing that I have so much aimed at as simplicity and clearness. I do not think it possible to present the essentials of German grammar in simpler language — there is of course room for some difference of opinion as to what the essentials are — except by dividing the subject up into smaller bits, more or less arbitrarily arranged, as is done in the lesson-books. But what is by that means gained in simplicity as the student advances from day to day is lost later when he looks back and tries to get a general view. He then finds that frag-

ments of subjects that belong together have been treated fragmentarily here and there. He does not know what he has learned nor where to find things. His knowledge is not clear and well ordered. It lacks *Übersichtlichkeit.*

With respect to the exercises in Part I, finally, I wish to say that I should not myself think of using all of them with any one class. They have been made numerous and diversified in character in order to meet different requirements. I have wished to give the teacher an opportunity to test the value of different kinds of drill, all of which have their advantages and their advocates, to determine for himself what is best for his pupils, to vary the lessons from year to year or with different classes, and to progress more or less rapidly according to the amount of time that is to be devoted to a first survey of German grammar.

CALVIN THOMAS.

New York, May, 1905.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PART FIRST

PAGE

INTRODUCTORY 1
PRONUNCIATION 6
Vowels 8
Diphthongs 14
Consonants 15
Accentuation 22

THE PARTS OF SPEECH AND THEIR VARIATIONS . . 28
THE ARTICLE 29
THE NOUN 32
Strong Declension 34
Weak Declension 51
Mixed Declension 56
Declension of Proper Names 61
THE ADJECTIVE: INFLECTION 64
Comparison 78
The Numerals 84
THE PRONOUN 89
Personal, Reflexive, and Intensive Pronouns 90
Possessive Pronouns 94
Demonstrative and Determinative Pronouns 101
Relative Pronouns 106
Interrogative Pronouns 111
Indefinite Pronouns and Pronominal Adjectives . . . 114
THE VERB: CONJUGATION 120
Weak Conjugation 132
Strong Conjugation 139
Modal Auxiliaries and wiſſen 153
Passive Voice 168
Reflexive Verbs 174
Impersonal Verbs 176
Compound Verbs 180
THE PARTICLES 189
RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES OF WORD-ORDER 193

PART SECOND

PAGE

INTRODUCTORY 197

THE ARTICLES: USE 199

THE NOUN 207

Gender 207

Number 212

Syntax of the Cases: The Nominative 215

The Genitive 216

The Dative 227

The Accusative 233

Apposition 238

Declension: Supplementary Details 240

The Strong Declension 240

The Weak Declension 244

The Mixed Declension 246

Foreign and Anomalous Declensions 248

Inflection of Proper Names 249

THE ADJECTIVE: SYNTAX 251

Use of the Numerals 260

THE PRONOUN: SYNTAX 262

Personal Pronouns 262

Possessive Pronouns 267

Demonstrative Pronouns 269

Interrogative Pronouns 271

Relative Pronouns 272

Indefinite Pronouns 274

THE VERB 278

Supplementary Details on Conjugation 278

List of Strong Verbs 284

Use of the Modal Auxiliaries 293

Impersonal Verbs 298

Compound Verbs 299

Use of the Passive Voice 302

Syntax of Number and Person 304

Use of the Tenses 305

Use of the Modes 308

The Subjunctive 308

The Conditional and Imperative 316

Use of the Infinitive 318

Use of the Participle 323

PAGE

The Adverb: Syntax 326
The Preposition: Syntax 329
The Conjunction: Syntax 342
The Interjection 349
Word-Formation 350
Derivation of Nouns 351
Derivation of Adjectives 356
Derivation of Verbs 360
Derivation of Pronouns and Particles 365
Word-Combination: 366
Compound Nouns 366
Compound Adjectives 369
Compound Verbs, Pronouns, and Particles 370
The Sentence 371
Dependent Clauses 373
Word-Order 375
Position of Adjuncts 383
Exercises in Syntax 387
Appendix I: Orthography 402
Appendix II: English-German Cognates 405
Appendix III: The German Script 413
Vocabularies 419
Index 477

GERMAN GRAMMAR

PART FIRST

INTRODUCTORY

1. German and English. German and English are sister languages. Both descend from a language spoken by an Aryan people who, long before the beginning of the Christian era, had settled in north-central Europe, where its various tribes became known to the Romans under the collective name of *Germani*. In the fifth century A.D. *Germani* from the northwestern lowlands occupied Britain and introduced there their own language, which came to be known as 'English.' Those descendants of the continental *Germani* that have remained in the old home now speak various languages, of which the most important is the one called 'German' by us, but *Deutsch* by those who use it. It is the language of the entire German Empire, of a large part of Austria and Switzerland, and of numerous colonies.

1. *Deutsch* is historically the same word as our 'Dutch,' but the latter term has come to be applied exclusively to the language of Holland. Dutch is not German, nor a dialect of German, but a distinct language.

2. Owing to their common origin German and English have in common a great many words that belonged to the language from which both descend. Such words are called

'cognates.' Cognates may resemble each other closely in form and meaning, or they may not. Thus the German word *Bruder* is cognate with *brother* and means *brother*, while *Baum* is cognate with *beam*, but means *tree*.

3. On the other hand, in spite of this common origin, German grammar seems at first to have little resemblance to English grammar. This is because English has lost nearly all those grammatical distinctions which were once common to both languages, whereas German has preserved them more fully.

2. The German Alphabet. The Germans often print their language in Roman letters like those employed for English; more commonly, however, they use the so-called 'German' characters, which developed out of the Roman previous to the invention of printing. The letters and their German names, by which it is advisable that they be always called, are as follows:

German form	Roman form	German name	German form	Roman form	German name
𝔄 𝔞	A a	ah	𝔑 𝔫	N n	en
𝔅 𝔟	B b	bay	𝔒 𝔬	O o	oh
ℭ 𝔠	C c	tsay	𝔓 𝔭	P p	pay
𝔇 𝔡	D d	day	𝔔 𝔮	Q q	koo
𝔈 𝔢	E e	ay	ℜ 𝔯	R r	er (*very*)
𝔉 𝔣	F f	eff	𝔖 𝔰 𝔰	S s	ess
𝔊 𝔤	G g	gay	𝔗 𝔱	T t	tay
ℌ 𝔥	H h	hah	𝔘 𝔲	U u	oo
ℑ 𝔦	I i	ee	𝔙 𝔳	V v	fow (*fowl*)
𝔍 𝔧	J j	yot	𝔚 𝔴	W w	vay
𝔎 𝔨	K k	kah	𝔛 𝔵	X x	ix
ℒ 𝔩	L l	el	𝔜 𝔶	Y y	ipsilon
𝔐 𝔪	M m	em	ℨ 𝔷	Z z	tset

1. Of the two forms ſ and s, the latter, called 'final *s*,' is used at the end of a word, or of a stem-syllable; elsewhere the 'long *s*' is used. Thus: das, *the*, and dasſelbe, *the same;* weiſe, *wise*, but Weisheit, *wisdom*.

a. In foreign words and proper names the form s is preferred at the end of a syllable before other consonants than p, t or ſ; thus Presbyter, Diskurs, Bismarck, Island, but Reſpekt, Myſtik, Boſton, Eſſenz. (But see Appendix I.)

2. To the above list of alphabetic characters should be added: (1) the digraphs ch = ch, ck = ck, ng = ng, pf = pf, ph = ph, ß = ss, th = th, and tz = tz; (2) the trigraph ſch = sch; (3) the diphthongs ai = ai, au = au, ei = ei, eu = eu; and (4) the vowels with umlaut, ä = ä or æ, ö = ö or œ, ü = ü or ue, and äu = äu or æu.

a. The digraphs, trigraph and diphthongs are named by combining the names of their component parts (thus ch is called *tsay-hah*); the vowels with umlaut by pronouncing the sounds they denote, or by saying 'a-umlaut,' 'o-umlaut,' etc. They are also called 'modified a,' 'modified o,' etc.

3. The character ß, called *ess-tset*, takes the place of ſs at the end of a word and of ſſ before t or after a long vowel or a diphthong; thus, wiſſen, *to know*, but wußte, *knew*, and ich weiß, *I know;* Schuß, *shot* (with short u), plural Schüſſe, but Fuß, *foot* (with long u), plural Füße. In Roman letters ß appears variously as ss, sz, fz, or ß. The official rules (see below) recommend ß, but the learner is advised to use ss both for ſſ and for ß.

3. Orthography. There has long been in German, as in English, more or less difference of usage in the spelling of certain words and classes of words. In recent years several of the German governments have adopted official rules regulating doubtful points. At an important conference held in 1901 a general agreement was reached, so that we now have a uniform official spelling

accepted in all Germany and also in Austria and Switzerland. This grammar follows the new official spelling. For an account of it, in its relation to older or divergent spellings, which will often be met with in print, see Appendix I.

4. Initial Capitals. German, like English, uses a capital letter at the beginning of sentences, lines of poetry, direct quotations, proper nouns and most adjectives derived from them, and adjectives of title. The important principles peculiar to German are as follows:

1. Every noun and word used as a noun begins with a capital; as das Haus, *the house;* das Schöne, *the beautiful;* das Geben, *giving;* etwas Gutes, *something good.*

a. But a noun-form not used substantively takes a small initial; as Abend, *evening,* but abends, *in the evening;* Paar, *pair,* but ein paar Minuten, *a few minutes.* The same is true of nouns forming a part of certain phrases; as Teil, *part,* but teilnehmen, *participate;* Statt, *place,* but ſtattfinden, *take place.*

2. The pronoun Sie, meaning *you,* and its possessive Ihr, meaning *your,* are written with a capital to distinguish them from ſie, *they* or *she,* and ihr, *their* or *her.* The rule applies to all the case-forms of Sie and Ihr, but not to the reflexive ſich. With regard to du, *thou,* dein, *thy,* and their case-forms, usage varies; but it is customary to write them with a capital in letters, where the words are to fall under the eye of the person addressed.

3. Adjectives denoting nationality have a small initial; as die deutſche Sprache, *the German language;* das amerikaniſche Volk, *the American people.*

5. Syllabication. Words are divided at the end of a line in accordance with the following principles:

1. Between two vowels any simple consonantal sign, or any combination (except ng) denoting a simple consonantal

sound, goes with the following vowel. Examples: ge=ben, ſe=hen, la=chen, grü=ßen, ha=ſchen, rei=zen, He=xe, Städ=te; but ſin=gen, Hun=ger.

2. Of two or more consonants occurring between two vowels only the last goes with the following vowel. Examples: Al=ter, Ap=fel, frat=zen, Knoſ=pe or Knoš=pe, Stük=ke (for Stüc=ke, ck being always resolved into k=k).

3. Excepted from these rules are (1) compounds, which should keep their parts intact, and (2) cases in which a strict application of the rules would result in breaking up a natural sound-group; thus dar=in, not da=rin, *therein;* Baum=aſt, not Bau=maſt, *branch of a tree;* ge=pflegt, not gepf=legt, from pflegen. So also one writes A=pri=koſe, A=ſtro=nom, Mi=kro=ſkop, Di=ſtink=tion.

6. Punctuation. The ordinary marks of punctuation are the same in German as in English, but the comma is used more freely to set off subordinate clauses of all kinds. The hyphen is a double stroke (=) and is employed, in addition to the uses familiar in English, to take the place of a suppressed member of a compound; thus Land= und Waſſertiere, *land-animals and water-animals.* In ordinary compounds the hyphen is not used; e.g. Fenſterſcheibe, *window-pane.* Quotation-marks ordinarily appear thus: „Ende gut, alles gut," *all's well that ends well.* Emphasis is indicated by spaced type; e.g. bedenke erſt das W i e, dann das W a r u m, *think first of the* HOW, *then of the* WHY.

7. The German Script. There is a peculiar script, or written alphabet, which is employed by most Germans in their ordinary writing, tho they also read and write the Roman script. The letters are as follows: *

* It is not important that a beginner learn the German script at once, tho he should certainly learn it sooner or later. Script texts for practice in reading will be found in Appendix III.

Capitals	Small	Roman	Capitals	Small	Roman	Capitals	Small	Roman
A	a	a	J	j	j	P	p	p
B	b	b	K	k	k	Q	q	q
C	c	c	L	l	l	R	r	r
D	d	d	M	m	m	S	s	s
E	e	e	N	n	n	T	t	t
F	f	f	O	o	o	U	u	u
G	g	g	P	p	p	V	v	v
H	h	h	Q	q	q	W	w	w
I	i	i	R	r	r	X	x	x
						Y	y	y
						Z	z	z
							ß	sz

PRONUNCIATION

8. The Standard. Since German has a long history and is spoken over a large area, the pronunciation of the language naturally varies considerably in different localities. This is especially true of the less educated, whose local dialects differ greatly from one another and from the speech of the more refined. The best standard is not the dialect of any one locality, but rather the average pronunciation of educated and careful speakers in all parts of Germany. In general such speakers try to avoid all distinctively provincial or dialectic peculiarities.

1. 'The standard' is thus only a name for what is supposed to be the prevailing practice. Where good usage varies there is no court of appeal whose authority is generally recognized. The student must be prepared for considerable differences of opinion as to what 'the best German' is. Some recommend the pronunciation heard on the stage in the serious drama as the best model for imitation; the ground being that actors give careful attention to their utterance and, playing in all parts of Germany, tend to rid their pronunciation of all peculiarities that might give offence anywhere.

9. Learning to Pronounce. The beginner is sure to pronounce at first with a marked English 'accent,' which it should be his aim to get rid of. This he may hope to do only by long practice in the imitation of good models. Even then, unless the practice begins in infancy, one's foreign 'accent' seldom disappears entirely, tho it is possible for any careful student to acquire a pronunciation so good that it will not offend even a fastidious German ear. What is called 'accent,' or 'brogue,' is mainly due to slight errors in adjusting the organs of speech to the foreign sounds. Hence it is a great help in learning to pronounce to know just how the foreign sounds are produced and how they differ from the English sounds with which they are most likely to be confounded.

1. We therefore proceed to describe the German sounds in detail; but since several of them are not heard in English, we can not describe them adequately by means of English key-words. Moreover, the pronunciation of English itself differs greatly in different parts of the English-speaking world. These facts necessitate the use of a few technical terms which the student should master if he is not already familiar with them. First, however, attention may be called to

10. A General Rule. Excepting ȟ, medial or final, and e in the digraph ie = long i, there are no silent letters in genuine German words. Every letter is to be pronounced; e. g. the K in Knabe, the G in Gnade, and the final e in both.

THE VOWELS

11. Rounded Vowels. Let the learner pronounce *ah*, and then, while uttering a continuous vowel-sound, gradually round the lips to the position required for the *oo* of *pool*. He will thus produce a series of vowel-sounds as follows: (1) *a* in *ah;* (2) *aw* in *awe;* (3) *o* in *poetic;* (4) *o* in *note;* (5) *u* in *full;* (6) *oo* in *pool*. This process is called 'rounding'; and since rounding brings the lips closer together, a vowel which is more 'rounded' is also said to be 'closer' or 'less open.'

12. Fronted and Raised Vowels. Returning to the *ah* position, pronounce a continuous vowel-sound while gradually raising the front part of the tongue to the position required for the *ee* in *eel*. A series of vowel-sounds will be produced as follows: (1) *a* in *ah;* (2) *a* in *hat;* (3) *e* in *met;* (4) *ay* in *day;* (5) *i* in *it;* (6) *ee* in *eel*. This process is called 'fronting,' and involves also an act of 'raising.' The *e* in *met* is said to be 'higher' than the *a* in *hat*, and 'lower' than the *i* in *it*. And since raising the tongue closes the air-passage above it, a vowel that is 'higher' is also said to be 'more close,' and one that is 'lower' is also called 'more open.'

13. Slurred Vowels. In English we tend to pass very lightly over any vowel in the syllable next after a strongly accented syllable. By this process, which is called 'slurring,' we deprive the vowel of its distinctive

character, and convert it into an 'obscure' sound resembling that of *u* in *but*. Note the identical sound of the unaccented *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u* in the penult of *separate*, *celery*, *visible*, *ebony*, *awfully*.

1. In German no vowel except unaccented e should ever be obscured.

14. Quantity of Vowels. The quantity of a sound, properly speaking, is simply the relative length of time taken in uttering it; in common usage, however, the words 'long' and 'short' imply quality as well as quantity, a short vowel being usually more open than the corresponding long. In German, as in English, vowel-quantity is often indicated by the spelling of the word. The important rules are these:

1. A vowel doubled or followed by h is thereby shown to be long. Examples: Aal, Ahle, Beet, geht, ihn, Boot, Stuhl, kühn.

a. The only vowels ever doubled are a, e and o, and even with these the inserted h is the more usual device for indicating length. Long i appears as ih only in some pronouns and proper names; elsewhere usually as ie.

b. Vowels brought together by composition are not to be regarded as doubled vowels, but are pronounced separately; e. g. beehren, *to honor*, as if written be-ehren.

2. An accented vowel that ends a syllable, or is followed by a single consonant, is generally long; if followed by two consonants, it is short; thus the vowel is long in du, Plan, rot, but short in dumm, Band, Rost; it is long in the accented syllable of We'sen, ho'len, Gebe't, Verbo't, but short in that of we'ssen, so'llen, gebe'ttet, versto'rben. But a long stem-vowel remains long in derived forms; thus the first vowel being long in le'gen, *lay*, and e'del, *noble*, it is also long in legte, *laid*, and edler, *nobler*.

a. A syllable ending in a vowel is said to be 'open'; one ending in a consonant, 'closed.' It is an important rule that the vowel of an accented open syllable is long.

b. Observe, however, that ch, ng and ſch, tho each denotes a simple consonantal sound, can not be doubled. Before ch the vowel may be short, as in brechen, or long, as in brachen. Before ſch it is short, as in miſchen (unless it be a diphthong, as in rauſchen). Before ng it is always short. x = ks, z = zz, and ck = kk, count as two consonants. Before ß the vowel may be short, as in Kuß, küßte, or long, as in Gruß, grüßte.

c. Other exceptions to the rule in § 14, 2, are not uncommon, especially among monosyllables; thus the vowel is short in an, mit, ob; long in Bart, Magd, ſtets; long in düſter, Wüſte; short in Gramma'tik, Kapi'tel.

15. A. A has but one sound, which, however, may be long or short. Long a is like *a* in *ah;* short a is the same sound uttered more quickly.*

1. A should never be raised, rounded or slurred. Thus pronounce the a of man, als, langſam, each time as a quick *a* in *ah*, not like the sounds heard in *man, alter, handsome.*

2. Do not prolong short a: distinguish clearly between kann, *can*, and Kahn, *boat.*

16. E. E has three sounds: (1) an open short sound like that of *e* in *met;* (2) a close long sound like that of *ay* in *day;* (3) an 'obscure' sound more or less like that of *a* in *mature.* The first two are heard in accented, the third in unaccented, syllables.

1. Do not change the quality of open short e before r: pronounce der, Herr, Herz with the vowel as in *herring*, not as in *her.*

2. Do not make a diphthong of close e by raising it during the act of utterance, thus giving it a vanishing

* For examples to practice on see Exercise 1 below.

i-sound. (Many speakers of English habitually make a diphthong of the so-called 'long *a*' in *day*, *fate*).

3. Do not fail to slur unaccented e: make De'cke rime with *Mecca*, not with *flecky*; Zo'fe with *sofa*; e'del with *ladle*; gu'tem with *shoot 'em*; lei'ten with *frighten*; Zi'mmer with *glimmer*. Give the same sound also in ha'ndeln, ha'n=delte, wa'ndern, wa'nderte. The obscure sound is heard especially when final, or before l, m, n, r, and in final es (neues riming with *joyous*). In other positions unaccented e sometimes approaches a sound between e and i; thus make beteſt rime with *latest*, redet with *made it*. So also be in beei'len.

4. Final e is never silent except in some borrowed words, as Revue (= Revü).

17. I. I has two sounds: (1) an open short, like that of *i* in *bit*; (2) a close long, like that of *i* in *police*.

1. Do not slur unaccented i, nor change its character before r: distinguish between Hirtin, *shepherdess*, and Hirten, *shepherds*, and make neither of them rime with *certain*.

2. Long i usually appears as ie; e. g. in tief, nieder, riming with *chief*, *feeder*. At the end of borrowed words this ie is generally accented, and has then its regular sound; e. g. Chemie', Harmonie', Philoſophie'. But some words throw the accent back, and the ie is then pronounced in two syllables as i=e (e obscure); thus Fami'lie (Fa=mi'=li=e), Li'lie (Li'=li=e), Stu'die (Stu'=di=e).

a. A similar difference appears in borrowed words in ier. In most of them this syllable rimes with *cheer*, as Offi=zie'r, Barbie'r; but others drop the r and separate ie into i=e', as Banquier (Ban=ki=e'), Portier (Por=ti=e').

18. O. O has two sounds: (1) an open short, not heard in standard English in accented syllables, and intermediate in roundness between the *aw* of *awe* and the *o* of *note*; (2) a close long, like the *o* of *note*.

1. Do not fail to round short ɒ and do not round it too much: tɒll must not rime with *doll*, nor with *toll*, but lie between the two.

2. Do not make a diphthong of long ɒ by rounding it during the act of utterance, thus giving it a vanishing *u*-sound. (Many speakers of English habitually make a diphthong of the 'long *o*' in *note*, *know*).

3. Do not slur unaccented ɒ: pronounce Dɒ'ktɒr with two short ɒ's, not with the sounds heard in *doctor*.

19. U. U has two sounds: (1) an open short, like that of *u* in *full*; (2) a close long, like that of *oo* in *pool*.

1. Never give to u the sound of English *u* in *union*, *cube*.

2. Do not slur unaccented u: pronounce Fɒ'kus, Glɒ'bus with a duly rounded short u.

20. Y. Y occurs only in proper names and borrowed words, and has the sound of ü (§ 24).

1. But it is also proper to give to y the sound of i, especially in common words and where it is not accented; e. g. Cyli'ndɐr, *tall hat*.

21. The Vowels with Umlaut, or Modified Vowels. The term umlaut (some prefer the name 'mutation') is applied to a peculiar modification of the vowels a, ɒ, u and the diphthong au, due originally to the influence of an i or j in the next syllable. The effect of this i or j was to make the preceding vowel more like itself, i. e. to raise and front it.

1. The sign of umlaut was at first an e written above the vowel affected, but in time this e became reduced to two dots; thus: ä, ö, ü, äu. In the old spelling Ä, Ö, Ü, and Äu were often written Ae, Oe, Ue, Aeu. In Roman letters one often sees æ, œ, ue and æu.

2. Umlaut was once a living principle in English. We owe to it such variations as *man — men*, *mouse — mice*, *full — fill*, *cool — chilly*.

22. Ä. Ä has two sounds: (1) an open short, identical with open short e, as in Hände, which rimes exactly with Ende; (2) an open long, like that of *ei* in *their*, as in Väter. The latter is more open than close e, but not quite so open as short e.

1. Distinguish between Ehre, *honor*, and Ähre, *ear of corn*; between mehren, *increase*, and Mähren, *mares*.

23. Ö. Ö has two sounds, neither of which is heard in English: (1) an open short, (2) a close long. To get the long sound, as in Höhle, pronounce the *a* of *day* with the lips in position for the *o* of *pole*. The sound is a rounded long e, or a fronted long o. The open short sound is the same, only a little less rounded.

1. Do not fail to round ö properly: distinguish between kennen, *know*, and können, *be able*; between Höhlen, *caves*, and hehlen, *hide*.

2. Do not fail to front ö properly: distinguish between konnte, *was able*, and könnte, *might be able*; between hohlen, a case-form of hohl, *hollow*, and Höhlen, *caves*.

24. Ü. Ü has two sounds, neither of them heard in English: (1) an open short, (2) a close long. To get the latter, as in über, pronounce the *ee* of *eel* with the lips in position for the *oo* of *pool*. The sound is a rounded long i or a fronted long u. The short sound is similar, but a little opener.

1. Do not fail to round ü properly: distinguish between liegen, *lie* (*recline*), and lügen, *lie* (*speak falsely*); between Kissen, *cushion*, and küssen, *kiss*.

2. Do not fail to front ü properly: distinguish between mußte, *had to*, and müßte, *would have to;* between Fluſſe and Flüſſe, both case-forms of Fluß, *river*.

25. Nasal Vowels. These occur only in words borrowed from the French; but since the words containing them are both numerous and common, the sounds require explanation. A vowel is made nasal by lowering the veil of the palate during the act of utterance, thus allowing the vocal current to vibrate in the nasal passage. There are four such vowels having respectively the tongue-position of (1) *a* in *man*, as in Baſſi'n; (2) *a* in *ah*, as in Comme'nt; (3) *aw* in *awe*, as in Ballo'n; (4) *u* in *but*, as in Parfu'm.

1. In German, as in English, speakers unacquainted with French often pronounce the nasal vowels as ordinary oral vowels followed by *ng;* calling Baſſin, *bassa'ng*, Saiſon, *say-zo'ng*, etc. But this is hardly to be approved.

THE DIPHTHONGS

26. Nature of the Diphthongs. The diphthongs are combinations of certain vowels with a short i or u, the two elements being uttered as one syllable. The first element is always phonetically an *a*-sound or an *o*-sound, ei being pronounced as ai, and eu as oi. Thus the five signs ai, au, ei, eu and äu really represent but three different diphthongs, äu being the same as eu.

27. Ai. Ai consists of short a plus short i. Its sound is like that of *i* in *pine*.

1. In French words ai has the sound of ä, as in Affai're, Saiſon.

28. Au. Au consists of short a plus short u. Its sound is that of *o* in *now*, as pronounced with a quick *a*, as in *ah*, for its first element.

1. Do not raise the first element of au to a sound like that of *a* in *man*. (This is a common pronunciation of the *ow* in *now*.)

2. In French words au and eau have the sound of o, as in Chauffee', Plateau'.

29. Ei. Ei is pronounced like ai.

1. Ey and ay were once common for ei and ai, but are now used only in proper names.

30. Eu. Eu consists phonetically of short o plus short i. Its sound is like that of *oi* in *oil*, save that the first element is a little more rounded.

1. Pronounce eu with a pure short o as its first element, not exactly as in English *oil*, which is usually made to sound like *aw-il*.

31. Äu. Äu is the umlaut of au and has the sound of eu.

32. Non-diphthongal Combinations. Those just described are all the true diphthongs that occur in German, but there are certain other vowel-combinations that require notice. Except in the interjections hui and pfui, pronounced *hwee*, *pfwee* (but see § 49), ua, ue, ui and uo occur in native German words only after q; for their sound see under q (§ 50). In French words the u of these combinations is usually silent, as in Guita'rre, Bouque't. Oi and ou occur mostly in French words, oi sounding like *wah*, as in Toile'tte, and ou like long u, as in Tour, Bouque't.

THE CONSONANTS

33. Definitions. A 'stop' is a consonantal sound produced by a complete closure of the oral passage at some point, as *k*, *d*, *p*; it consists always of a slight explosion

and can not be prolonged. A 'fricative' or 'spirant' is produced by a *nearly* complete closure, as *s*, *v*, *th*; it is made by the rubbing of the breath against the walls of a narrow gateway and can always be prolonged. *L* and *r* are sometimes called 'liquids,' *m*, *n* and *ng* 'nasals.'

1. A consonantal sound produced with the vocal chords vibrating, as *g*, *d*, *z*, *v*, is said to be 'voiced'; if produced with the chords quiescent, as *k*, *t*, *s*, *f*, it is 'voiceless.'

2. A consonant produced between the back part of the tongue and the opposite portion of the soft palate, as *g* in *go*, *ck* in *duck*, is called a 'guttural'; produced in a similar way, but farther forward, it is a 'palatal'; produced between the fore part of the tongue and the upper teeth or gums, as *d*, *th*, *s*, it is a 'dental'; produced between the lips, as *p*, *b*, it is a 'labial' or 'bilabial,' and produced between the lips and teeth, as *f*, *v*, a 'labio-dental.'

34. General Rules. Of the two following rules, the first is applicable to English as well as German, the second to German only:

1. Doubled consonants are to be pronounced like the corresponding single consonants; e. g. the tt in bitter just like the t in mit.

a. The doubling of a consonant is simply a device (as in English) to indicate that the preceding vowel is short. The only consonants never doubled are ch, j, sch, v and w.

b. The rule does not apply to two consonants brought together by composition; pronounce the tt in mitteilen as in *cat-tail*, not as in *bitter*.

2. A voiced consonant when final becomes voiceless; thus ab, as if written ap; Tod, as if Tot.

a. In applying this rule a consonant is to be understood as 'final' not only when it ends a word, but when it ends a stem-syllable that is followed by a suffix beginning with a consonant; e. g. lieblich, Mädchen (pronounce lieb-lich, Mät-chen).

35. B. B has two sounds: (1) when initial or medial, that of *b* in *by*, as in beben, albern; (2) when final, that of *p* in *pen*, as in ab, lieblich.

36. C. C occurs only in borrowed words and has three sounds: (1) before low vowels (a, o, u, au) and before consonants, that of *k*, as in Café, Clique; (2) before high vowels (e, i, y, ä, ö), that of z = *ts*, as in Ceder, Cyli'nder; (3) before e in a few French words, that of voiceless *s*, as in Chance.

1. A foreign *c* which is to sound like k is often written k, and one which is to sound like z is written z. In some cases, however, usage is unsettled and the official rules are not consistent. Thus we have Circus or Zirkus, Comité or Komitee; Kommo'de, but Coupé.

2. The combination ck always sounds like k.

37. Ch. Ch has in native German words two sounds, neither of them heard in English: (1) after a low vowel (a, o, u, au), that of a guttural fricative, as in Dach, auch; (2) after a high vowel (e, i, ä, ö, ü, eu, äu) or a consonant, that of a palatal fricative, as in ich, durch. To pronounce Dach utter English *dock*, but without the complete closure necessary for the final click. Instead of the click let the breath make an audible sound of rubbing or rasping. To pronounce ich press the tip of the tongue firmly against the lower teeth and try to say *ish*.

1. Avoid making guttural ch either a k or a silent h: distinguish the final sounds of roch, roh, Rock.

2. Avoid making palatal ch either a k or an sch: distinguish the final sounds of dich, dick and Tisch.

3. In words from the Greek ch before a, o, l or r is usually pronounced like k, as in Chara'kter, Chor, Chro'nik; before e or i, like ch in ich, as in Chemie', Chiru'rg.

4. In words from the French ch sounds like ſch, as in Cha'mois, Chauſſee'.

5. Chs belonging to one and the same stem sounds like x, as in Fuchs, Ochſe; but when the ſ belongs to a suffix ch has its separate fricative sound, as in wachſam.

38. D. D has two sounds: (1) when initial or medial, that of *d* in *do*, as in du, Widder; (2) when final that of *t* in *to*, as in Tod, ländlich, Wildnis.

1. Dt sounds like *t*, as in Stadt.

39. F. F is always like English *f* in *for*; e. g. falſch, offen, tief.

40. G. G has in native German words five sounds: (1) when initial, or before a consonant, or doubled, that of a guttural stop like English *g* in *go*, as in gehen, Glück, Dogge; (2) when final after a low vowel (a, o, u), that of a voiceless guttural fricative = guttural ch, as in Tag, flog, ſchlug; (3) when final after a high vowel (e, i, ei) or a consonant, that of a voiceless palatal fricative = palatal ch, as in König, Teig, Berg; (4) when medial after a low vowel, that of a voiced guttural fricative, as in Tage, Lauge; (5) when medial after a high vowel or a consonant, that of a voiced palatal fricative, as in Könige, Beſchäftigung, Berge.

1. There is good usage in favor of pronouncing g always as a stop, and giving it the sound of *k* (instead of ch) when final or before a voiceless consonant; thus Tag, Zug, Berg, ſagte, as Tak, Zuk, Berk, ſakte, and not as Tach, Zuch, Berch, ſachte. This pronunciation is common in South Germany and is favored by the stage; but the use of the fricative g, as described above, is far more common, especially in the northern and midland provinces.

2. The voiced spirants are somewhat difficult. To get the g in lagen first pronounce lachen; then learn to voice

the sound by keeping up the glottal buzz of the a. By placing the finger against the glottis (just above the 'Adam's apple') the buzz will be distinctly felt if the consonant is properly voiced.

3. In words from the French g before e has usually the sound of *z* in *azure*, as in Genie', Paſſa'ge, Ora'nge; and g with following n that of *ni* in *union*, as in Champa'gner.

41. H. H at the beginning of a word or a suffix sounds like *h* in *his*, as in Herr, Freiheit; after a vowel it is silent and serves to indicate that the vowel is long, as in Ahle, ſehr. Between vowels h has the effect of a dieresis; thus ruhig = ru'ig.

42. J. J has the sound of *y* in *yes*, as in je, Jahr.

1. In a few French words j sounds like *z* in *azure;* e. g. Journa'l.

43. K. K has the sound of *k* in *kiss*, as in kahl, Glück (ck being written for double k).

44. L. L is nearly like the English *l* in *let*, but should be very clearly articulated, with the front part of the tongue lifted high and the lips opened; e. g. Leben, Ball.

1. Do not drop l in any position; e. g. not in halb, Qualm, Palme.

2. In words from the French ll sounds like *lli* in *William*, as in Bille't, Bouillo'n.

45. M. M is like English *m* in *met*, as in mehr, Lehm.

46. N. N is regularly like English *n* in *no*, as in nie, an.

1. N before k sounds, as in English, like ng; thus ſinken = ſingken, just as in English *think* = *thingk*.

2. In words from the French, n after a vowel (except between vowels) is not pronounced as a consonant, but serves to indicate nasality in the vowel (§ 25); e.g. Saiſo'n.

47. Ng. Ng is not a compound of n and g, but a simple sound. It is always like *ng* in *singer*, never like *ng* in *linger*. Examples: ſang, ſänger. Pronounce separately in compounds, as u'n-gern, a'n-geht.

48. P. P is always like *p* in *pen*, as in Pech, Mappe.

1. Ph occurs only in borrowed words and sounds like f, as in Sylph, Philoſophie'.

49. Pf. Pf is like English *pf* in *cupful*. Initially the combination does not occur in English, but is common in German. Examples: Pflanze, Pfeil, Pfropf.

50. Qu. Qu occurs, as in English, only before u, the combination qu being pronounced like kw, the w being sometimes bilabial and sometimes labio-dental (§ 58). Examples: Quelle, erqui'cken.

1. German qu is not exactly like *qu* in *quit*, nor like *kv* in *black vest*. It differs from the former in that the lips are less rounded, and from the latter in that the labial element is weaker, that is, produced with less friction. Pronounce Quell at first as *kvell* rather than like *quell* (see § 58).

51. R. There are several ways of pronouncing r: (1) The 'trilled' r, made in the front part of the mouth by the vibration of the tip of the tongue; (2) the 'uvular' or 'velar' r, made in the back part of the mouth by the vibration or flapping of the uvula between the tongue and the soft palate; (3) the 'glottal' r, made in the throat by a very slow vibration of the vocal chords.

1. The trilled r is the approved stage pronunciation and is often heard off the stage, but the velar r is now far more

common; is, in fact, the usual r. The learner may safely ignore the glottal r, but should try to learn both the others. The front r differs from the ordinary English *r* in *red*, *true*, only in that the vibratory trill should be distinctly heard. The velar r is known in England as the 'Northumbrian burr.' It is hard to acquire after childhood and must be learned by imitation.

2. In parts of Germany, notably in Berlin, it is very common to drop final r, or convert it into obscure e, as many speakers do with final *r* in English. In this pronunciation, which seems to be growing in favor, there is no difference between dar and da, Meſſer and Meſſe; nur becomes nue, Bier rimes with ſiehe, vor with *boa*, etc.

52. ſ. ſ has three sounds: (1) when final, or medial with a consonant following, that of *s* in *sit*, as in das, iſt; (2) when initial before a vowel, or between two vowels, that of *z* in *zeal* (only a little less forcibly voiced), as in Seele, Roſe, langſam; (3) before p or t at the beginning of a word, that of a quickly uttered ſch = *sh*, as in Stand, Sprache.

1. The voiced ſ is never doubled, whence ſſ and ß are always voiceless.

2. A voiced ſ occurring between vowels, as in Roſe, Naſe, Weiſe, becomes almost voiceless in derivatives such as Röslein, Näschen, Weisheit; that is, it is there 'final' (§ 34, 2, *a*), and hence written s.

53. Sch. Sch sounds like *sh* in *ship*, as in ſchnell, Rauſch.

1. But where ch begins a suffix, as in Näschen, from Naſe, ch has its separate palatal sound.

54. T. T in native German words has always the sound of *t* in *tin*, as in mit, treten.

1. In words from the Latin t before unaccented i sounds like *ts*; e. g. Natio'n, partia'l; but not when following ſ, as in beſtia'liſch.

55. Th. Th has always the sound of t, never that of English *th* in *this* or in *thin*; e. g. Thea'ter, Theologie'.

1. Th appears in some foreign words like Than, *thane*, including Greek words, in which it represents *θ*, but in genuine German words it is now everywhere replaced by t; hence tun, not thun, Tor not Thor, and Tee rather than Thee.

56. Tz. Tz is simply double z and has the same sound, namely, that of *ts*; e. g. Schatz, ſitzen.

57. V. V has in native German words the sound of f, as in Vater, vor.

1. But in words from the French or Latin, except when final, v sounds like *v* in *vat*, as in Vaſe, Pulver (but like f in brav, Kredit'iv).

58. W. W has two sounds: (1) when initial, or after a vowel, that of a labio-dental fricative like *v* in *vat*, as in Welle, Löwe; (2) after a consonant, that of a bilabial fricative, as in zwei, Schwelle.

1. The bilabial w sounds at first much like English *w* in *win*, but differs from it in that the lips are less rounded. The student will do best to pronounce zwei, Schwelle, as also Quelle, at first with a *v*-sound rather than a *w*-sound, the latter being the harder to correct. In large parts of Middle and South Germany the bilabial w is the only one used.

59. X. X is like English *x* in *fox*; e. g. in Axt, Xenien.

60. Z. Z has always the sound of *ts* in *fits*, as in zu, Herz, ſitzen (tz being the written form of zz).

ACCENTUATION

61. Kinds of Accent. Accent is special stress in pronunciation. Word-accent is special stress upon one or more syllables of a word; sentence-accent (often called

'rhetorical accent,' or simply 'emphasis') is special stress upon one or more words of the sentence.

1. Word-accent is either strong or weak, and there are different degrees of weakness; thus in *constitutionality* the strong stress is upon *al*, and there is a weak stress upon *tu*, and a still weaker one upon *con*. Such shades and more are heard also in German, but the beginner may safely ignore all but two and think of every syllable as having either chief stress (´), weak stress (ˋ), or no stress at all; e. g. Freu'de, *joy;* freu'dlo`s, *joyless;* Freu'dlo`ſigkei`t, *joylessness.*

62. Simple Words. An uncompounded word, if of native German stock, has the chief stress on the root-syllable, and not on any suffix; e. g. ha'ndeln, *act;* ha'ndelte, *acted;* Kö'niginnen, *queens;* A'ltertümer, *antiquities.*

1. This statement does not apply to words that are wholly or partly of foreign origin. These are apt to accent the last syllable, or the penult of a dissyllabic ending: thus ſtudie'ren, Photogra'ph, Balla'de. See § 64.

2. Even in native words there are a few anomalous exceptions to the general rule: as lebe'ndig, from Le'ben; wahrha'ftig, from wa'hrhaft.

63. Compounds. German forms compounds very freely and in great variety, and their accent can not be brought under any simple rules. The beginner will do best to be guided at first by English analogy, which will cover multitudes of cases; e. g. Fra'chtzu`g, *fre'ight-trai`n;* Blu'menga`rten, *flo'wer-ga`rden;* Fe'ſtla`nd, *mai'n-la`nd;* ro'tfa`rbig, *re'd-co`lored;* Vergi'ßmeinni`cht, *forge't-me-no`t.* Then let the following points be noted:

1. Compound particles generally accent the second member; as herau'f, *(here)up;* daru'nter, *thereunder;* ſtroma'b, *downstream.*

2. The six prefixes be, ent (emp), er, ge, ver and zer are *never* accented.

3. The prefix un, *un*, is very often, but not always, accented; e. g. u'ntreu, *untru'e;* u'ngern, *unwil'lingly;* but une'ndlich, *une'nding.*

64. Borrowed Words. In the very numerous words derived from other languages, especially from the Latin, Greek and French, the tendency is to accent the ultima, or the penult of a dissyllabic suffix. The following examples are typical: Stude'nt, *student;* Aſtrono'm, *astronomer;* Genera'l, *general;* Meta'll, *metal;* Pala'ſt, *palace;* Progra'mm, *program;* Medizi'n, *medicine;* Juri'ſt, *jurist;* Muſi'k, *music;* Natio'n, *nation;* Partie', *party;* Litanei', *litany;* Baga'ge, *baggage;* Limona'de, *lemonade;* Prinze'ſſe, *princess;* Nove'lle, *novelette;* Epiſo'de, *episode;* huma'n, *humane;* elega'nt, *elegant;* famo'ſ, *famous;* abſolu't, *absolute;* plauſi'bel, *plausible;* familiä'r, *familiar.*

1. But not a few borrowed words, especially those in or, el, er, and some of those in if and ie, are exceptions; as Do'ktor, *doctor;* Be'ſtie, *beast;* Fami'lie, *family;* Kö'rper, *body;* Ti'tel, *title;* Gramma'tik, *grammar;* Rheto'rik, *rhetoric.*

EXERCISE 1

Pronunciation of Vowels

Note. — Accent the first syllable unless the accent is marked. Words connected by an English hyphen are to be carefully distinguished in pronunciation.

Long a. — Aal, Hahn, Draht, lahm, Fraß, Bart, Papſt.

Short a. — Als, bald, Band, Gaſt, Ball, hart, Lamm, kann – Kahn, Mannen – mahnen.

Long e. — Beere, fehlen, Ehre, beben, Gebe't.

Short e *and* ä. — Es, Ende, Hände, gefä'llt, Äpfel, Blätter, Ärger, E'rbhe'rr, A'bende'ſſen, Be'ttde'cke.

Obscure e. — Habe, Gatte, Gema'hl, Geſa'ng, Kaba'le, Mantel, altem, Garten, Vater, handeln, handelte.

Long **ä.**— Väter, Täler, gähren; Ähre – Ehre, Mähren – mehren, Säle – Seele, währen – wehren.

Long **i** *and* **ie.**— Mir, Igel, ihnen, hier, viel, gedie'nt.

Short **i.**— Ist, mit, irren, Gebi'ß, Inse'kt, gebi'ssen.

Long **o.**— Boot, Ohr, ohne, Moos, rot, gelo'bt, Natio'n.

Short **o.**— Toll, Bock, fort, Dogge, Gosse, Folge, Morgen, verdo'rben, geko'nnt, Offizie'r, sollen – Sohlen, Rotten – roten.

Long **u.**— Du, tun, Huhn, Ruhe, Bude, Gruß, gebu'hlt.

Short **u.**— Kuß, Brust, dunkel, Dutzend, gemu'rrt.

Long **ö.**— Öl, böse, hören, gekrö'nt, größer; Söhnen – sehnen, lesen – lösen, böte – Bote – Beete – bäte, Mohren – Mähren – mehren – Möhren.

Short **ö.**— Böcke, Körner, Töpfer, Förster, Gewö'lke; können – kennen, Hölle – Helle, könnte – konnte – kennte.

Long **ü.** — über, müde, grün, Gefühl; spulen – spielen – spülen.

Short **ü.** — Bücken, müssen, mürbe, Hülle, bürgen; Lüste – Liste, müßten – mußten – mißten, Kusse – küssen – Kissen.

Ai *and* **ei.** — Bai, Hain, Beil, keimen, Ei'telkei't; sei – sie, lieblich – leiblich, reiten – rieten.

Au.— Baum, aus, Maul, sausen, au'fgebau't.

Eu *and* **äu.**— Freude, Bäume, Beute, Mäuse, Eule; baute – Beute, heute – haute.

Nasal vowels.— Comme'nt, Pensio'n (on not nasal), Ora'nge, Bankie'r (r silent), Bassi'n, Gami'n, Ballo'n, Garço'n, Parfu'm.

EXERCISE 2

Pronunciation of Consonants

B, *voiced.* — Bibel, beben, Ebbe, Gebo't, Verba'nd.

B, *voiceless.*— Ab, ob, liebt, lieblich, lie'brei'ch, Lo'bre'de.

C = k. — Casus, Codex, Cousi'ne, Carrie're, Coupé.

C = z. — Cirkus, Cessio'n, Cicero, Ciga'rre, Cyli'nder, centra'l.

Ch *as voiceless guttural fricative.* — Ach, auch, Buch, doch, lachen, machen, suchen, beda'cht, Rau'chlo'ch; wachen – waschen, roch – roh – Rock, rauhen – rauchen – rauschen.

Ch *as voiceless palatal fricative.* — Echt, ich, Bäche, Bücher, euch, reich, leuchtet, däuchtet, durch, Kelch, mancher, Mädchen, griechiſch; dich – dick, Löcher – lecker, Kirche – Kirſche, frech – friſch, rächen – Recken.

Ch = k. — Chaos, Chara'kter, Chor, Cholera, chroma'tiſch, Chronologie'.

Ch = ſch. — Chamois, Champa'gner, Chauſſee', charma'nt, Chica'ne, chokie'ren.

Chs = x. — Achſe, Dachs, Ochſe; wachſen – waſchen – wachen.

D, *voiced.* — Du, denn, edel, oder, Widder, gere'det.

D, *voiceless.* — Eid, Tod, und, Abend, redlich, Mädchen, bere'dſam, Todfeind.

G *as voiced guttural stop.* — Ganz, Gruß, Flagge, glühen.

G *as voiceless guttural fricative.* — Tag, Bug, flog, Flug, Magd, ragt, wagt, getau'gt, genu'g, Befu'gnis.

G *as voiceless palatal fricative.* — König, einig, ruhig, Teig, fliegt, beugt, ſägt, lügt, Balg, Berg, genü'gt.

G *as voiced guttural fricative.* — Tage, Bogen, Augen, flogen, trugen, lagen, Tugend, Jugend, Lauge, Tau'geni'chts.

G *as voiced palatal fricative.* — Könige, einige, ruhige, fliegen, beugen, ſägen, lügen, Bälge, Berge, Morgen, Beſchä'ftigung.

G *as voiced* **ſch.** — Baga'ge, Eta'ge, Paſſa'ge, Genie', Gelee', Genda'rm, Ora'nge.

Ng. — Eng, bang, lang, ſingen, Finger, Sänger.

Pf. — Pfahl, Pflanze, Apfel, hüpfen, Pfro'pfenzie'her.

Qu. — Quark, Quelle, quer, erqui'cken.

R. — Er, der, her, rot, rügen, Brot, größer, hart, Herz, Dirne, Fürſten, härter, veri'rren.

S, ſ, *voiced.* — Saal, Seele, Sohn, Beſen, Buſen, grauſam, Roſe, Naſe, Trübſal, Hö'rſaa'l.

S, ſſ, ß, *voiceless.* — Iſt, Aſt, Reſt, liſpeln, als, das, Haß, beſſer, größer, Röslein, Näschen; reiſen – reißen, weiſen – weißen.

Sp, ſt, *initial.* — Stark, Stände, Sprache, ſpülen, Bau'ſtei'n, Sta'hlſti'ch, Spru'chſpre'cher, Gei'ſterſpu'k.

Sch. — Schelle, Schimpf, Marſch, löſchen, rauſchen.

T, Th. — Tau, Tod, treu, Rat, Theorie', Theologie'.

T = z. — Natio'n, Portio'n, partia'l, Patie'nt, Curtius.

V = f. — Vater, viel, vor, Vogel, brav, relati'v.

V = w. — Vaſe, Verb, viole'tt, Pulver, revidie'ren.

W *as labio-dental voiced fricative.* — Wachs, Wage, Wehen, weiſe, Wurſt, Löwe, verwi'rkt, gewa'ndt.

W *as bilabial voiceless fricative.* — Dwall, zwei, Zwerg, Zwirn, Schwulſt, ſchwarz, geſchwo'llen, verſchwi'nden.

Z, ʒ. — Zu, Zucker, Schmerz, erzä'hlen, ſitzen, ſchwatzen; Spaß ~ Spatz; reizen – reiſen – reißen.

EXERCISE 3

Pronunciation of Connected Discourse

Note. — This exercise is intended to cultivate fluency in reading. Practice upon it until it can be read without hesitation. To assist the beginner the emphatic words (those that bear the sentence-accent) are here printed in spaced type, tho that would not ordinarily be done.

Guten M o r g e n ! *Good morning!*

Wie b e f i n d e n Sie ſich? *How do you do?*

Danke, recht g u t. *Very well, thank you.*

Und wie geht es I h n e n heute? *And how are* YOU *to-day?*

So ziemlich; nur habe ich ein wenig K o' p f w e' h. *Pretty well; only I have a little headache.*

Das tut mir l e i d; es iſt doch nicht ſ c h l i m m? *I am sorry for that; it isn't bad, I hope?*

O nein; es wird auch ſchon b e ſ ſ e r. *Oh no; it is getting better, too, already.*

Aber wo gehen Sie jetzt h i n? *But where are you going now?*

Ich gehe nur ſ p a z i e' r e n; kommen Sie m i t. *I am only taking a walk; come along.*

Sehr g e r n; aber ſ a g e n Sie mir erſt, wie viel U h r es iſt. *With pleasure; but tell me first what time it is.*

Oh, Sie haben noch Z e i t genug; es iſt erſt halb n e u n. *Oh, you have still time enough; it is only half-past eight*

Schönes Wetter heute, nicht wahr? *Fine weather today, isn't it?*

Prächtig; wir haben nur selten solche He'rbstta'ge. *Splendid; we but rarely have such autumn days.*

Sehen Sie nur dort hi'n; ist das nicht eine herrliche Aussicht? *Just look yonder; isn't that a glorious view?*

Wu'nderschö'n! ich glaube, ich könnte sie stu'ndenla'ng betra'chten. *Wonderfully fine; I believe I could look at it for hours.*

Was treiben Sie denn eigentlich in der letzten Zeit? *What are you doing, pray, these days?*

Ich lerne jetzt Englisch. Das ist meine Hau'ptbeschä'ftigung. *I am learning English now. That is my principal occupation.*

Da haben Sie gewi'ß genu'g zu tun. Englisch lesen ist zwar leicht, aber die Au'ssprache ist fü'rchterlich. *Then you certainly have enough to do. To be sure it is easy to read English, but the pronunciation is fearful.*

THE PARTS OF SPEECH AND THEIR VARIATIONS

65. Inflection. Of the nine parts of speech — they are the same in German as in English — the article, noun, adjective, pronoun and verb are subject to inflection; that is, variation of form to denote different grammatical relations. The uninflected parts of speech, or 'particles,' are the adverb, preposition, conjunction and interjection.

66. Declension. The inflection of the article, noun, adjective and pronoun is called 'declension.' Declension shows how a word varies for gender, number and case.

67. Conjugation. The inflection of the verb is called 'conjugation'; it shows how a verb varies for voice, mode, tense, person and number.

68. Gender. There are three genders, the masculine, feminine and neuter, which may or may not correspond to the sex of the object designated.

1. For example, Weib, *woman*, is neuter, Stein, *stone*, is masculine, and Roſe, *rose*, is feminine. This gender which is out of relation to sex is sometimes called 'grammatical,' in distinction from 'natural,' gender.

69. Number. There are two numbers, the singular and the plural.

70. Case. There are four cases: the nominative, which is the case of the subject; the genitive, corresponding to the English possessive, or objective with *of*; the dative, corresponding to the English objective with *to* or *for*, and the accusative, which is the case of the direct object.

1. This is only a rough general statement. Each of the cases has its peculiar uses, which are expressed in English in various ways.

71. Variations of the Verb. The verb has an active and a passive voice, and each voice has four modes: the indicative, the subjunctive, the conditional and the imperative. There are two infinitives and two participles, a present and a perfect. The indicative and subjunctive mode have each six tenses: the present, the preterit, the perfect, the pluperfect, the future and the future perfect. Each tense has two numbers, a singular and a plural, and each number has a first, second and third person.

THE ARTICLE

72. The Definite Article. The definite article der is declined fully in the singular to agree with the case and gender of its noun · in the plural it varies for case only, not for gender. The declension is as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*
	Mas.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
Nom. *the*	der	die	das	die
Gen. *of the*	des	der	des	der
Dat. *to the*	dem	der	dem	den
Acc. *the*	den	die	das	die

1. Certain case-forms of der often combine with certain prepositions into one word. Thus we have am for an dem, im for in dem, zur for zu der, aufs for auf das, etc.

2. The use of der corresponds in general to that of *the*, but with many exceptions. Sometimes it is used where English does not use *the*, and again it is omitted where *the* is required. Often it takes the place of an English possessive. (For details, when they are needed, see Part II.)

73. The Indefinite Article. The indefinite article ein, *a*, *an*, is used in the singular only, the declension being as follows:

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. *a*	ein	eine	ein
Gen. *of a*	eines	einer	eines
Dat. *to a*	einem	einer	einem
Acc. *a*	einen	eine	ein

1. In the phrases ein paar, *a few*, and ein wenig, *a little*, ein is uninflected; e. g. in ein paar Minuten, *in a few minutes*.

2. The use of ein corresponds in the main to that of *a*, but it is sometimes omitted where *a* is required in English.

EXERCISE 4

Sentences Showing the Use of the Article

Learn the present tense of haben, *to have*, and ſein, *to be*, as follows:

ich habe, *I have*	ich bin, *I am*
du haſt, *thou hast*	du biſt, *thou art*
er hat, *he has*	er iſt, *he is*
wir haben, *we have*	wir ſind, *we are*
ihr habt, *ye have*	ihr ſeid, *ye are*
ſie haben, *they have*	ſie ſind, *they are*
Sie haben, *you have*	Sie ſind, *you are*

Der Mann iſt ein Engländer. — Das Buch iſt intereſſant. — Die Feder gehört[1] dem Lehrer. — Haben Sie einen[2] Bleiſtift oder eine[2] Feder in[3] der Taſche[4]? — Sehen[5] Sie den Mann da im Garten? — Der Mann iſt wohl Lehrer[6]; er hat immer[7] ein Buch in der Hand. — Die Zeit[8] iſt lang, aber das Leben[8] iſt kurz.

Vocabulary

Note. — English cognates are printed in **black letter**, and put in [ ] when they are not in common use or do not properly translate the German cognate. Italics mean that the word so printed is borrowed from the same source as the German equivalent.

aber, *conj.* but, however.
der Blei'ſti'ft, lead-pencil.
das Buch, **book.**
da, *adv.* there.
der E'nglä'nder, Englishman.
die Feder, pen, **feather.**
der Garten, **garden** [**yard**].
gehören, *v.* (*dat.*) belong to.
die Hand, **hand.**
immer, *adv.* always.
in, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) in, into.
intereſſa'nt, *adj.* interesting.
kurz, *adj.* short [*curt*].
lang, *adj.* **long.**
das Leben, life [**live**].
der Lehrer, teacher.
der Mann, **man.**
oder, *conj.* or.
ſehen, *v.* **see.**
die Taſche, pocket.
und, *conj.* **and.**
wohl, *adv.* probably, I presume, **well.**
die Zeit, time [**tide**].

Notes. — [1] **gehört,** *belongs to;* the verb is 3. pers. sing. and takes the dat. — [2] **einen, eine;** the article has to be repeated because the nouns are of different gender. — [3] **in;** in takes the dat. when it means *in*, the acc. when it means *into.* — [4] **in der Taſche,** *in* YOUR *pocket;* der takes the place of an Eng. possessive, there being no doubt as to whose pocket is meant. So one says: ich habe es in der Taſche, *I have it in* MY *pocket.* — [5] **Sehen Sie,** *do you see;* German gets along without an auxiliary corresponding to our *do.* — [6] **Lehrer,**

A *teacher;* a noun denoting vocation and standing alone in the predicate is generally used without ein. — [7] **hat immer**; note that the German says *has always* instead of *always has.* — [8] **die Zeit, das Leben,** not THE *time,* THE *life,* but simply *time, life.* This is the so-called 'generic article.'

THE NOUN

74. Variations of the Noun. The declension of a noun shows how it varies its form for case and number. The endings of declension are applied to the 'stem,' which for practical purposes may be regarded as identical with the nominative. The nominative never has a case-ending.

1. The plural of some nouns is further characterized by umlaut of the root-vowel, as in Baum, *tree,* but Bäume, *trees.* A few such plurals with umlaut exist in modern English, as *foot – feet, mouse – mice, goose – geese.* In German they are far more numerous.

2. Nouns are divided into declensions with reference to their form and gender. It is of importance to remember the gender of every noun learned.

75. The Determination of Gender. The gender of a noun depends, first, upon its *meaning.* Names of males, of the seasons, months and days of the week are in general masculine. Names of females, flowers, trees and German rivers are mostly feminine, and names of metals and countries are mainly neuter. But these rules are not without exceptions.

1. If a noun has more than one syllable its gender can often be told with certainty from its *ending.* The most helpful rules of this kind will be given as they are needed.

2. In very many cases, however, particularly of monosyllables, the gender of a noun can not be told either from its meaning or from its form, but must be learned from the dictionary.

3. Compound nouns have the gender of their final element; e. g. der Fruchtgarten, *the fruit-garden*; die Gartenfrucht, *the garden-fruit*. But there are a few exceptions to this rule.

4. Some words have two genders, sometimes with difference of meaning; e. g. das or der Pult, *the desk;* der Tor, *the fool;* das Tor, *the gate.*

DECLENSION

76. Systems of Declension. There are three declensions, the Strong, the Weak and the Mixed, the classification being as follows:

1. A noun is of the Strong Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)s, or no ending at all if the word be feminine, and its nominative plural is *not* formed by means of the ending (e)n.

2. A noun is of the Weak Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)n, or no ending at all if the word be feminine, and its nominative plural the ending (e)n.

3. A noun is of the Mixed Declension if its genitive singular has the ending (e)s and its nominative plural the ending (e)n.

a. A borrowed word that has become fully naturalized is brought under the one or the other of the three declensions, but so long as it is felt to be foreign it is apt to retain its foreign inflection; thus Park, *park*, from French *parc*, has the German plural, die Parke, but more usually the French plural, die Parks.

77. General Rules. The following general rules, applicable to all declensions alike, will be helpful.

1. Feminine nouns never vary in the singular.

2. The dative plural always ends in n.

3. The nominative and accusative singular of a strong noun are always alike.

4. The nominative, genitive and accusative plural of any noun are always alike.

78. Classes of Strong Nouns. Nouns of the strong declension are subdivided, with reference to the formation of the nominative plural, into three classes, the First Class having no ending in the nominative plural, the Second Class the ending e, and the Third Class the ending er.

First Class, Strong Declension

79. Membership. The first class embraces: (1) all masculine and neuter nouns ending in el, en, er, together with the two feminines Mutter and Tochter; (2) diminutives in chen and lein, which are always neuter; (3) neuter nouns having the prefix Ge and the suffix e.

1. Some additional members of the first class, of less importance to remember, are mentioned in Part II, § 274.* Note that the class contains, in general, no monosyllables, no words accented on the last syllable, and only two feminines.

80. The Singular Cases. The genitive singular adds s (never es) to the nominative; the other cases have no distinctive ending, but are like the nominative.

81. The Plural Cases. Most nouns of the first class have the nominative plural like the nominative singular, as das Fenster, *the window;* die Fenster, *the windows;* der Bürger, *the citizen*, die Bürger, *the citizens.* A certain

* The plan of this grammar is to include in Part I everything that the beginner needs to learn and remember. The occasional references to Part II may be ignored for the present; they are inserted merely to apprise the learner where fuller information is to be found when he shall need it in his reading.

few, however, modify the root-vowel, as der Vater, *the father*, die Väter, *the fathers;* der Vogel, *the bird*, die Vögel, *the birds.*

1. The nouns that have or may have umlaut as a plural-sign number nearly thirty. The list (it will be found in § 274) embraces the most of the masculines with a, o or u for a stem-vowel, the two feminines Mutter and Tochter, and one neuter, namely Kloſter, *convent.*

2. The dative plural adds n unless the stem already ends in n; thus from Vogel the dative plural is Vögeln, but from Mädchen, Mädchen.

82. Examples.

1. Without plural-sign: Kaſten, *box;* Gebäude, *building;* Fräulein, *young lady, Miss.*

Singular

Nom.	der Kaſten	das Gebäude	das Fräulein
Gen.	des Kaſtens	des Gebäudes	des Fräuleins
Dat.	dem Kaſten	dem Gebäude	dem Fräulein
Acc.	den Kaſten	das Gebäude	das Fräulein

Plural

Nom.	die Kaſten	die Gebäude	die Fräulein
Gen.	der Kaſten	der Gebäude	der Fräulein
Dat.	den Kaſten	den Gebäuden	den Fräulein
Acc.	die Kaſten	die Gebäude	die Fräulein

2. With umlaut as plural-sign: Vater, *father;* Mutter, *mother;* Kloſter, *convent.*

Singular

Nom.	der Vater	die Mutter	das Kloſter
Gen.	des Vaters	der Mutter	des Kloſters
Dat.	dem Vater	der Mutter	dem Kloſter
Acc.	den Vater	die Mutter	das Kloſter

Plural

Nom.	die Väter	die Mütter	die Klöſter
Gen.	der Väter	der Mütter	der Klöſter
Dat.	den Vätern	den Müttern	den Klöſtern
Acc.	die Väter	die Mütter	die Klöſter

EXERCISE 5

Learn the inflection of wohnen in the present tense. It will serve as a model for most verbs, tho not for all.

ich wohne, *I live*	wir wohnen, *we live*
du wohnſt, *thou livest*	ihr wohnt, *you live*
er wohnt, *he lives*	ſie (Sie) wohnen, *they* (*you*) *live*

Reading Lesson*: Strong Nouns, First Class

Ich ſchreibe diesmal aus einem Dörfchen[1] im Harzgebirge.[2] Ich beſuche[3] hier einen Onkel, einen Bruder[4] des Vaters.[5] Die Bewohner des Dörfchens ſind meiſtens Arbeiter. Der Onkel iſt Schriftſteller[6] und wohnt nur im Sommer hier. Das Leben der Dorfbewohner iſt nicht ſehr intereſſant. Ich gehe morgen nach[7] dem Süden.[8]

EXERCISE 5 a

1. Ich bin Arbeiter. 2. Er iſt Schriftſteller. 3. Er wohnt in einem Dörfchen. 4. Der Sommer im Gebirge iſt ſehr intereſſant. 5. Das Leben in einem Kloſter iſt nicht ſehr intereſſant. 6. Wir ſind Brüder. 7. Der Kaſten gehört einem Arbeiter. 8. Die Kaſten gehören den Arbeitern. 9. Gehen Sie morgen nicht ins Gebirge? 10. Hat das Fräulein eine Mutter? 11. Haben Sie einen Bruder? 12. Ich habe einen Bruder, aber er wohnt nicht hier.

EXERCISE 5 b

1. He is a workingman. 2. He is a brother of the author. 3. The building there is a convent. 4. The buildings there

* The reading lessons may be thought of as extracts from letters written by an American boy who goes to Germany for study and travel.

are convents. 5. The young ladies live in a convent. 6. The young lady is going into a convent.[9] 7. The father of the young lady is an author. 8. I am visiting a brother of my mother. 9. I am going into the mountains to-morrow.[10] 10. The little villages here in the mountains are very interesting.

Vocabulary

Note. — The abbreviation *s.* after a noun means 'strong'; *w.* 'weak'; *mx.* 'mixed.' The figure gives the class. If a noun has umlaut as plural-sign the fact will always be indicated.

der Ar'beiter, *s.*[1] workingman.
aus, *prep.* (*dat.*) from, **out** of.
beſu'chen, *v.* visit [**-seek**].
der Bewo'hner, *s.*[1] inhabitant.
der Bruder, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ü), **brother.**
dieſmal, *adv.* **this** time [**-mole**].
der Do'rfbewo'hner, *s.*[1] villager.
das Dörfchen, *s.*[1] little village [**thorp**].
das Gebi'rge, *s.*[1] mountains; Ha'rzgebi'rge, Harz Mountains.
gehen, *v.* **go.**
hier, *adv.* **here.**
das Leben, *s.*[1] life [**live**].
meiſtens, *adv.* **most-ly.**[11]
der Morgen, *s.*[1] morning; *as adv.* morgen, to-**morrow.**
nach, *prep.* (*dat.*) after, to [**nigh**].
nicht, *adv.* not [**naught**].
nur, *adv.* only, just.
der Onkel, *s.*[1] *uncle.*
ſchreiben, *v.* write [*shrive, scribe*].
der Schri'ftſte'ller, *s.*[1] writer, author.
ſehr, *adv.* very [**sore**].
der Sommer, *s.*[1] **summer.**
der Süden, *s.*[1] **south.**
wohnen, *v.* dwell, live.

Notes.—[1] **Dörfchen,** diminutive of Dorf, *village*, which is cognate with *thorp*, now preserved in proper names only. Observe that the suffixes chen and lein when appended to a noun cause umlaut of the root-vowel. The suffix chen is cognate with *kin* in *lambkin*. — [2] **Gebirge,** from Berg, *mountain*. The prefix Ge here denotes a number or mass taken together; hence 'collection of mountains,' 'mountain-range.' — [3] **Ich beſuche,** *I am visiting;* German has not the 'progressive' tense-forms of English, so that, e. g., ich gehe must be translated by *I go*, or by *I am going*, according to the connection. — [4] **Bruder,** in apposition with Onkel, with which it must agree in case. — [5] **des Vaters,** MY *father* (Ex. 4, n. 4). — [6] **Schriftſteller,** A *writer* (Ex. 4, n. 6). — [7] **nach** translates Eng. *to* before names of places and points of the compass. — [8] **dem Süden,** with nach, *to the south, southward.* One might also say nach Süden, the def. art. being usually omitted in this phrase. So also nach (dem) Oſten, *to the east*, nach (dem) Weſten, *to the west*, etc. — [9] **into a convent**; idiom requires ins, instead of in ein. — [10] **to-morrow**;

the adv. morgen comes directly after the verb. — [11] **most**-ly ; this mode of printing means that the root meiſt is cognate with *most*, while the ending ens is not cognate with the ending *ly*.

EXERCISE 6

Colloquy: Strong Nouns, First Class

1

Wer iſt das Fräulein im Garten dort?
Das iſt Fräulein Berta, die Tochter des Gärtners.
Und das Mädchen da am Fenſter des Häuschens — wer iſt ſie?
Sie iſt auch eine Tochter des Gärtners; er hat zwei Töchter.
Kennen Sie[1] die Mutter der Mädchen?
Nur ein wenig; aber ich kenne den Vater ſehr gut.

2

Who lives in the cottage yonder?
That is the gardener's cottage.
And who are the young ladies at the window?
They are[2] the gardener's daughters.[3]
Do you know the girls?
Only a little; but I know the father and mother[4] very well.[5]

EXERCISE 6a

1. Wer wohnt in dem Häuschen? 2. Wer ſind Sie? 3. Wer ſind ſie? 4. Wer iſt ſie? 5. Der Garten gehört dem Kloſter. 6. Die Gärten gehören den Bewohnern des Dörfchens. 7. Kennen Sie das Mädchen? 8. Hat der Gärtner eine Tochter? 9. Die zwei Mädchen ſind Töchter des Gärtners. 10. Wer geht[6] da im Garten? 11. Sie geht in den Garten. 12. Das Mädchen hat zwei Brüder. 13. Wir haben ein Sommerhäuschen im Garten. 14. Der Gärtner iſt nicht nur Gärtner; er iſt auch ein wenig[7] Schriftſteller.

EXERCISE 6b

1. The girls are daughters of a workingman. 2. The girl is in the garden. 3. The little house has only two

windows. 4. The life of a gardener is very interesting. 5. Do you know the girl's brother? 6. We have a cottage in the mountains. 7. The young ladies are daughters of a gardener. 8. The girl's father is an Englishman. 9. The father and mother of the girl are yonder in the garden. 10. I know the mother but not the father.

Vocabulary

an, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*),[8] **on, by, at.**
auch, *adv.* also, too [**eke**].
das, *pron.* (*dem.*) **that.**
dort, *adv.* yonder, there.
das Fenſter, *s.*[1] window.
der Garten, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä), **garden.**
der Gärtner, *s.*[1] **gardener.**
gut, *adj.* **good**; *as adv.* well.
das Häuschen, *s.*[1] little **house, cottage.**
kennen, *v.* know [**ken**].
das Mädchen, *s.*[1] girl, **maid**-en.
Sie, *pron.* you; ſie, **she,** they.
die Tochter, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö), **daughter.**
wenig, *adj.* little; ein wenig, **a little.**
wer, *pron.* (*inter.*) **who.**
zwei, *num.* **two.**

Notes. — [1] **Kennen Sie,** *do you know.* Sie is used for *you* in speaking to any one who is not a relative nor a very intimate friend. It takes its verb in the 3. pers. pl. Notice, therefore: Sie kennen, *you know;* ſie kennen, *they know;* ſie kennt, *she knows.* — [2] **They are,** ſie ſind, or, better, das ſind, *those are.* Das, tho neut. sing., can be used without reference to the gender or number of the predicate noun. — [3] **the gardener's daughters**; either des Gärtners Töchter, or die Töchter des Gärtners, or, making a compound, die Gärtnerstöchter, but not die Gärtners Töchter. So above, *the gardener's cottage* = des Gärtners Häuschen, or das Häuschen des Gärtners, but never das Gärtners Häuschen. — [4] **the father and mother**; the article must be repeated (see Ex. 4, n. 2). — [5] **very well,** ſehr gut, rather than ſehr wohl. — [6] **geht**; here = *is walking.* — [7] **ein wenig,** *something of, on a small scale.* — [8] **an**; when a prep. takes both dat. and acc., the dat. is used in answer to the question 'where?' and the acc. in answer to the question 'whither?'

Second Class, Strong Declension

83. Membership. The second class embraces: (1) a very large number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly masculine, but with a few feminines and some neuters;

(2) nouns ending in ig, ing, ling, nis, fal, and some other not very common suffixes.

1. The phrase 'monosyllabic nouns' must be understood to include compounds in which the final element would belong to this class if uncompounded; e. g. Zu'fall, *accident*, and Vor'ſtadt, *suburb*, as well as Fall, *case*, and Stadt, *city*.

2. Nouns in ig and ling are masculine; those in nis and ſal are mainly neuter, but a few are feminine.

3. This class is, then, pre-eminently the class of monosyllabic masculines.

84. The Genitive and Dative Singular. The genitive has the ending es or s; the dative the ending e or no ending at all.

1. The ending es is used regularly with monosyllables, but *may* always be reduced to simple s unless the stem ends in an *s*-sound (s, ß, z, tz, ſch); thus Baum, *tree*, has usually Baumes, but very often Baums, while Fluß, *river*, always has Fluſſes. The ending s belongs regularly to words of more than one syllable that do not end in an *s*-sound; thus König, *king*, Jüngling, *youth*, have Königs, Jünglings.

2. The use of e in the dative is largely optional, being dependent on habit or the sense of euphony. In general, monosyllabic words are apt to have it, other words to be without it; hence, normally, dem Tage, dem Baume, but dem König, dem Monat.

85. Formation of the Plural. The nominative plural always has the ending e, with umlaut of the root-vowel in some words, without it in others. The dative plural adds n to the nominative plural.

1. Of the monosyllabic nouns all the feminines and the most of the masculines have umlaut in the plural if the vowel admits it. Of the neuters only three or four have umlaut. For lists see § 275.

a. Nouns having aa or oo in the stem drop one vowel when they undergo umlaut, as Saal, *hall*, pl. Säle; Boot, *boat*, pl. Boote or Böte.

2. Nouns in nis double the s in inflection; e. g. Bündnis, *covenant*, gen. Bündniſſes, pl. Bündniſſe.

86. Examples.

1. Without umlaut in the plural: Tag, *day;* Mo'nat, *month;* Jahr, *year.*

Singular

Nom.	der Tag	der Monat	das Jahr
Gen.	des Tages	des Monats	des Jahres
Dat.	dem Tage	dem Monat	dem Jahre
Acc.	den Tag	den Monat	das Jahr

Plural

Nom.	die Tage	die Monate	die Jahre
Gen.	der Tage	der Monate	der Jahre
Dat.	den Tagen	den Monaten	den Jahren
Acc.	die Tage	die Monate	die Jahre

a. So also das Bündnis, *covenant*, des Bündniſſes, die Bündniſſe; die Wildnis, *wilderness*, der Wildnis (§ 77, 1), die Wildniſſe; das or die Trübſal, *affliction*, des Trübſals, or der Trübſal, die Trübſale.

2. With umlaut in the plural: Baum, *tree;* Nacht, *night;* Chor, *choir.*

Singular

Nom.	der Baum	die Nacht	das Chor
Gen.	des Baumes	der Nacht	des Chores
Dat.	dem Baume	der Nacht	dem Chore
Acc.	den Baum	die Nacht	das Chor

Plural

Nom.	die Bäume	die Nächte	die Chöre
Gen.	der Bäume	der Nächte	der Chöre
Dat.	den Bäumen	den Nächten	den Chören
Acc.	die Bäume	die Nächte	die Chöre

87. Rule of Order I: The Inverted Order.* If a sentence begins with any other element than the subject, the subject must follow the verb; e. g. da iſt er, *there he is;* das verſtehe ich nicht, *that I do not understand;* ſchön iſt ſie nicht, *beautiful she is not.*

1. This order, verb before subject, is called 'inverted,' the 'normal' order being subject before verb, as in er iſt da; ich verſtehe das nicht.

2. Inversion occurs in English, e. g. in *said I, great is Mammon;* but while it is somewhat rare in English, it is exceedingly common in German. German tends to begin the sentence with that element which is most prominent in the speaker's thought; and when this is done and the word so put first does not happen to be the subject, inversion must follow. In translating do not imitate the German inverted order at the expense of English idiom.

3. The general connectives und, aber and denn constitute an important exception to the above rule. They do not cause inversion.

EXERCISE 7

Reading Lesson: Strong Nouns, Second Class

Ich bin[1] nun zwei Tage[2] in einer Stadt. Ich habe ein Zimmer mit einem Ofen, einem Tiſche und ein paar[3] Stühlen. Durchs Fenſter ſieht[4] man einen Park mit allerlei Bäumen. Die Stadt liegt an[5] einem Fluſſe. Auf[5] dem Fluſſe ſieht man heute ein paar Kähne. Wir ſind am Anfang des Herbſtes, aber die Luft iſt noch immer[6] warm.

EXERCISE 7a

1. Haben Sie einen Kahn? 2. Ich habe zwei Kähne auf dem Fluſſe. 3. Wer iſt das in dem Kahne dort? 4. Der Stadtpark liegt am Fluſſe. 5. Wir haben einen Tiſch und ein paar Stühle

* The important rules of word-order will be inserted as they are needed for the Exercises. They will be found together at the end of Part I.

im Garten. 6. Der Kaſten liegt auf dem Tiſche. 7. Im Herbſte gehen wir nach der Stadt. 8. Am Anfang des Sommers gehen wir ins Gebirge. 9. Ich bin nun zwei Jahre und einen Monat in der Stadt. 10. Im Park ſieht man allerlei Bäume. 11. Wir haben nur noch ein paar Tage des Herbſtes. 12. Die Arbeiter wohnen meiſtens in den Städten.

EXERCISE 7 b

1. The days are long in the summer. 2. In the summer the nights are short. 3. I write this time from the city. 4. I am living in a little house by the river. 5. In the garden are tables and chairs. 6. I am writing at a table in the garden. 7. Yonder one sees the river and all sorts of boats. 8. One sees also the beginning of the park. 9. Father has a boat on the river. 10. In a few days I am going into the mountains.

VOCABULARY

a'llerlei', *adj.* **all** sorts of.
der A'nfa'ng, *s.*[2] (pl. ä), beginning.
auf, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) on, **up**-on.
durch, *prep.* (*acc.*) **thru.**
der Fluß, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe), river.
der Herbſt, *s.*[2] autumn [**harvest**].
heute, *adv.* to-day.
der Kahn, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), boat, row-boat.
liegen, *v.* **lie,** be situated.
die Luft, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), air.
man, *pron.* (*indef.*) one [**man**].
mit, *prep.* (*dat.*) with.
noch, *adv.* yet, still (of time).
nun, *adv.* now, well.
der Ofen, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö), stove [**oven**].
das Paar, *s.*[2] *pair;* ein paar, a few.
der Park, *s.*[2] (§ 76, 3, *a*), *park.*
die Stadt, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), city.
der Stuhl, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), chair [**stool**].
der Tiſch, *s.*[2] table [**dish**].
warm, *adj.* **warm.**
das Zimmer, *s.*[1] room [**timber**].

NOTES. — [1] **Ich bin,** *I have been.* German uses the present tense, generally with an adverb referring to present time, to denote that which has been and still is. In such a case English uses the perfect. — [2] **Tage,** acc. of measure; duration of time is expressed by the acc. — [3] **ein paar**; §§ 4, 1, *a* and 73, 1. — [4] **ſieht,** *sees;* from ſehen, which changes its root-vowel in the 2. and 3. pers. sing., the inflection being as follows: ich ſehe, du ſiehſt, er ſieht, wir ſehen, ihr ſeht, ſie ſehen. See

§ 184. —[5] **an, auf**; both these words mean *on*, auf in the sense of *over and upon*, and an in that of *close to*. Thus a boat is auf dem Fluſſe, a city an dem Fluſſe. On the spelling Fluß — Fluſſe, as compared with Fuß — Fuße, see § 2, 3. —[6] **noch immer**; the two words together mean *still, even now;* said of that which has been and still is.

EXERCISE 8

Colloquy: Strong Nouns, Second Class

1

Der Park iſt ſchön am Abend,[1] nicht wahr?[2]

Ja wohl[3]; ſetzen wir uns[4] einen Augenblick. Da iſt eine Bank unter dem Baume dort.

Sehr gern[5]; aber gehen Sie noch heute abend[6] nicht ins Konzert?

Wohl nicht; die Plätze ſind zu teuer. Am Schluſſe des Monats bin ich immer arm.

Das iſt alſo[7] das Hindernis! Nun, zum Glück[8] habe ich zwei Billette.[9] Kommen Sie nur mit.[10]

2

It is lovely in the park to-night, isn't it?[2]

Yes indeed; let[4] us sit down a moment. There are chairs yonder.

Very well[11]; but only a moment. I am going to the concert yet this evening.[12]

Have you a seat already?[13]

Yes, I have two tickets. Pray come along.

EXERCISE 8 a

1. Die Abendkonzerte im Park ſind ſehr gut. 2. Ich komme in einem Augenblick. 3. Haben Sie ein Billet zum Konzert? 4. Der Arbeiter hat allerlei Hinderniſſe im Leben. 5. Der Kaſten liegt unter dem Tiſche. 6. Die Plätze ſind ſehr teuer, nicht wahr? 7. Am Schluſſe des Tages ſieht man allerlei Arbeiter auf den Bänken im Park. 8. Kommen Sie mit uns in den Park; es iſt ſehr ſchön unter den Bäumen. 9. Ich bin nur am Tage im Zimmer, nicht in der Nacht.

EXERCISE 8 b

1. In the daytime the air is very warm. 2. He lives two months of the year in a little house on the river. 3. I see Fräulein Berta yonder under the trees. 4. We are already at the beginning of the end. 5. Come[10] along to the concert; luckily I have two seats. 6. Are the tickets very expensive? 7. There is[14] still a place at the table. 8. Here you have a chair and yonder are two seats on the bench. 9. I see difficulties right at the[15] beginning.

Vocabulary

der Abend, *s.*[2] **even-**ing.
alſo, *adv.* so, then [**also**].
arm, *adj.* poor.
der Au'genbli'd, *s.*[2] **moment.**
die Bank, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), **bench.**
das Bille't, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Billette, *also* Billets), ticket.
es, *pron.* it, there.
gern, *adv.* willingly, gladly.
das Glück, *s.*[2] (*no plural*), **luck,** fortune.
das Hi'ndernis, *s.*[2] **hindr-**ance, difficulty.
ja, *adv.* yes.
kommen, *v.* **come.**
das Konze'rt, *s.*[2] *concert.*
der Platz, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), *place*, seat.
der Schluß, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Schlüſſe), end, close.
ſchon, *adv.* already, quite.
ſchön, *adj.* beautiful, lovely [**sheen**].
ſetzen, *v.* **set, seat.**
teuer, *adj.* **dear,** expensive.
uns, *pron.* (*dat. and acc.*) **us.**
unter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **under,** among.
wahr, *adj.* true.
zu, *prep.* (*dat.*) **to,** at, for; *as adv.* **too.**

Notes. — [1] **am Abend,** *in the evening;* so, also, am Tage, *in the daytime.* — [2] **nicht wahr,** *isn't it?* for iſt es nicht wahr, *is it not true?* a very common phrase, implying that an affirmative answer is expected. — [3] **Ja wohl,** *yes indeed;* wohl is often added to break the abruptness of a simple ja. — [4] **ſetzen wir uns,** *let us sit down;* literally, *seat we us.* The verb is subjunctive, 1. pers. pl., best translated by *let.* — [5] **Sehr gern,** *all right, very well.* — [6] **heute abend,** *this evening* (§ 4, 1, *a*). — [7] **Das iſt alſo,** *so that is;* remember that alſo *never* means *also.* — [8] **zum Glück,** *luckily;* literally, *for luck.* Glück is for Ge-lück; it is only -lück that is cognate with *luck.* — [9] **Billette;** t doubled to mark the preceding vowel as short (§ 14, 2, and 34, 1, *a*). Pronounce *Bil-yét-e.* — [10] **Kommen Sie nur mit,** *pray come along.* The verb is imperative, 2. pers. pl With this form of address Sie can not be

omitted as *you* is in English. Nur with an imperative means *just* or *pray*. — [11] **Very well,** not ſehr wohl, nor ſehr gut (see note 5 above). — [12] **I am going,** etc. The order is: *I go yet this evening to*, etc. — [13] **already**; the order: *Have you already*, etc. — [14] **There is**; da iſt, if 'there' means 'in that place,' otherwise es iſt. — [15] **right at the,** ſchon am.

Third Class, Strong Declension

88. Membership. The third class embraces: (1) a large number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly neuter, but with a few masculines; (2) all nouns in tum; (3) a few neuters of foreign origin with accent on the ultima; e. g. Spita'l, *hospital*, pl. Spitä'ler.

1. Note that this class contains no feminines. It is pre-eminently the class of monosyllabic neuters. See § 276, 1.

2. Nouns in tum (cognate with *dom* in *kingdom*) are neuter; but note the exceptions, der Reichtum, *riches*, and der Irrtum, *error*.

89. The Genitive and Dative Singular. The genitive has the ending es or s, the dative the ending e or no ending at all, precisely as in the second class.

90. Formation of the Plural. The nominative plural always has the ending er, to which the dative adds n. The vowel preceding er always has umlaut, if capable of it, nouns in tum making the plural in tümer.

1. A number of nouns belong both to the third and to the second class, having two plurals, one in er, the other in e, usually with difference of meaning; thus das Band means either *bond* or *ribbon*, but in the plural Bande means *bonds*, while Bänder means *ribbons*. See § 276.

91. Examples. Mann, *man*; Haus, *house*; Altertum, *antiquity*.

Singular

Nom.	der Mann	das Haus	das Altertum
Gen.	des Mannes	des Hauſes	des Altertums
Dat.	dem Manne	dem Hauſe	dem Altertum
Acc.	den Mann	das Haus	das Altertum

Plural

Nom.	die Männer	die Häuſer	die Altertümer
Gen.	der Männer	der Häuſer	der Altertümer
Dat.	den Männern	den Häuſern	den Altertümern
Acc.	die Männer	die Häuſer	die Altertümer

EXERCISE 9

Learn the inflection of ſein and wohnen in the preterit tense. The latter will serve as a model for the very large class of verbs called 'weak.'

ich war, *I was*	ich wohnte, *I lived*
du warſt, *thou wast*	du wohnteſt, *thou livedst*
er war, *he was*	er wohnte, *he lived*
wir waren, *we were*	wir wohnten, *we lived*
ihr wart, *you were*	ihr wohntet, *you lived*
ſie waren, *they were*	ſie wohnten, *they lived*

Reading Lesson: Strong Nouns, Third Class

Die Leute hier im Hauſe[1] ſind ſehr freundlich. Der Wirt iſt Kaufmann[2] und ein Mann von Geiſt und Gemüt. Alſo iſt er natürlich ein Freund von Büchern[3] und Bildern. Er hat zwei Kinder, einen Sohn und eine Tochter. Ich war geſtern mit den Kindern auf dem Lande[4] und beſuchte das Schloß eines Edelmanns. Vom Turme des Schloſſes ſieht man über Täler und Wälder bis ans Gebirge.

EXERCISE 9 a

1. Die Bücher auf dem Tiſche gehören einem Freunde des Hauſes. 2. Da kommen zwei Männer durch den Wald. 3. Sie

iſt die Mutter von zwei Kindern. 4. Das Haus eines Edelmannes iſt ein Schloß. 5. Edelleute ſind nicht immer Kinder des Glückes und wohnen nicht immer in Schlöſſern. 6. Wer wohnt in den Häuſern am Fluſſe? 7. Die Bewohner der Häuſer ſind meiſtens Arbeiter. 8. Der Anfang des Buches iſt ſehr intereſſant; den Schluß kenne ich noch nicht. 9. Das Bilderbuch gehört den Kindern. 10. Die Täler und Wälder des Gebirglandes ſind ſehr ſchön im Herbſte.

EXERCISE 9 b

1. That is the picture of a friend. 2. Those are pictures of[5] friends. 3. She has two sons and two daughters. 4. People of[5] intelligence are always friends of the country. 5. I see a few houses in the valley. 6. He has the intelligence of a man, the feeling of a child. 7. He has two castles in the country. 8. Do you see the castle yonder with the two towers? 9. The books and pictures belong to the man-of-the-house.[6] 10. Are you a friend of[5] children? 11. I know the men; they are friends of my father.

Vocabulary

Note. — Since *all* nouns of the third class have umlaut in the plural, if possible, the modification of the vowel does not need to be specially indicated for words of that class.

das Bild, *s.*[3] picture.
bis, *prep.* (*acc.*) up to, until; bis an, clear to, as far as.
das Buch, *s.*[3] **book.**
der Edelmann, *s.*[3] noble-**man.**
der Freund, *s.*[2] **friend.**
freundlich, *adj.* **friendly,** kind.
der Geiſt, *s.*[3] intelligence, spirit, **ghost.**
das Gemüt, *s.*[3] feeling, soul.
geſtern, *adv.* **yester**-day.
der Kaufmann, *s.*[3] merchant [**chapman**].
das Kind, *s.*[3] child.
das Land,[7] *s.*[2-3] **land,** country.
Leute, *pl. only,* people.
natürlich, *adv.* of course, *naturally.*
das Schloß, *s.*[3] (*pl.* =öſſ=), castle.
der Sohn, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö), **son.**
das Tal, *s.*[3] valley, **dale.**
der Turm, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), tower.
über, *prep.* (*acc. and dat.*) **over,** about.
von, *prep.* (*dat.*) from, of.
der Wald, *s.*[3] forest [**wold**].
der Wirt, *s.*[2] landlord, man-of-the-house.

NOTES. — [1] **Im Hauſe**, *in the house; at home* = zu Hauſe. — [2] **Kaufmann**; this and some other compounds of Mann have two plurals, one in -männer, the other in -leute, the latter being without reference to sex; thus Kaufmänner, *merchants, tradesmen;* Kaufleute, *tradespeople.* — [3] **von Büchern**, *of books;* von with a dat. may take the place of a gen., ein Freund von Büchern, being = ein Freund der Bücher. One could not say ein Freund Bücher. — [4] **auf dem Lande**, *in the country*, as opposed to *in the city*. Im Lande means *in the country* taken as a whole, including the cities. — [5] **of**, von. — [6] **man-of-the-house**; words thus joined by hyphens are to be translated in German as one word. — [7] **Land**; the usual plural of Land is Länder; Lande is poetic, or used in compounds, as die Niederlande, *the Netherlands.*

EXERCISE 10

COLLOQUY: STRONG NOUNS, THIRD CLASS

1

Wie ſpät iſt es wohl?[1] Gehen wir nicht bald nach Hauſe?[2]

Es iſt wohl[3] ziemlich ſpät; ich ſehe ſchon Lichter in der Stadt dort.

Ja, es wird[4] ſchon dunkel, und der Weg durch den Wald iſt ziemlich lang.

Alſo gehen wir quer durch die Felder.

Sehr gern; aber was iſt das Ding dort am Rande des Holzes?[5]

Ich weiß nicht; ein Geſpenſt vielleicht.

Da biſt du wohl im Irrtum; für die Geiſter iſt es noch zu früh am Abend.

2

Let us go[6] home; it is getting late.

Yes, there is a light in the little house yonder already.[7]

It is pretty dark in the woods; do you know[8] the way?

Not very well[9]; let us go across thru the field.

Very well; but what is that thing yonder among[10] the leaves?

I do not know; perhaps it is a spook.

It is pretty early in the evening for spooks, isn't it?

EXERCISE 10 a

1. Ich ſehe ein Licht durch die Blätter der Bäume. 2. Die Dinge auf dem Tiſche gehören den Kindern. 3. Gehen wir durchs

Feld oder durch den Wald? 4. Ich sehe Lichter in den Fenstern des Schlosses. 5. Ich kenne zwei Wege von hier nach der Stadt. 6. Das Buch hat allerlei Bilder am Rande der Blätter. 7. Es sind allerlei Irrtümer in dem Buche. 8. Der Weg durchs Tal ist sehr gut bis an den Rand des Waldes. 9. Ich habe das Buch und die Bilder von einem Freunde. 10. Die Geister des Gebirges sind freundlich.

EXERCISE 10 b

1. I am going home. 2. Father is not at home. 3. Mother is in the house. 4. I see you know [11] very little of [12] books and pictures. 5. For the mother the children are the light of the house. 6. Do you know [8] the way thru the fields? 7. The thing is among the books on the table. 8. What do you know [11] of [12] ghosts and spooks? 9. The spirit of the book is good, but it has a few errors. 10. How long is the way from here to [13] the edge of the woods?

Vocabulary

bald, *adv.* soon [**bold**].
das Blatt, *s.*[3] leaf [**blade**].
das Ding, *s.*[2] **thing.**
dunkel, *adj.* **dark.**
das Feld, *s.*[3] **field.**
früh, *adv. adj.* **early.**
für, *prep.* (*acc.*) **for.**
das Gespe'nst, *s.*[3] ghost, spook.
das Holz, *s.*[3] wood, forest.
der Irrtum, *s.*[3] error.
das Licht, *s.*[3] **light.**
quer, *adv.* across.
der Rand, *s.*[3] edge, border.
spät, *adv. adj.* late.
vielleicht, *adv.* perhaps.
was, *pron.* (*inter.*) **what.**
der Weg, *s.*[2] **way.**
werden, *v.* become; es wird, **it** is becoming.
wie, *adv.* how, as [**why**].
wissen, *v.* know; ich weiß, I know [**to wit**].
ziemlich, *adv.* pretty, tolerably.

Notes. — [1] **wohl,** *I wonder.* — [2] **nach Hause,** *home.* — [3] **wohl,** *probably, no doubt, I presume, I reckon, I guess.* — [4] **es wird,** *it is getting;* 3. pers. sing. pres. of werden, which inflects thus: ich werde, du wirst, er wird, wir werden, ihr werdet, sie werden. — [5] **Holzes;** here = Wald, *woods.* The more common sense is *wood,* as a material. — [6] **Let us go,** gehen wir (see Ex. 8, n. 4). — [7] **already,** schon; directly after ist. — [8] **do you know,** kennst du; the use of du in this exercise, instead of

Sie, presupposes that the speakers are very intimate friends. — [9] **Not very well,** nicht ſehr gut; but in the next sentence *very well* = ſehr gern. — [10] **among,** unter, with dat. — [11] **you know,** du weißt; **do you know,** weißt du. The pres. of wiſſen inflects irregularly as follows: ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß, wir wiſſen, ihr wißt, ſie wiſſen. — [12] **of,** von; note that *of* with a verb, as in *know of*, *speak of*, etc., cannot be translated by the genitive. — [13] **to,** bis an, with acc.

The Weak Declension

92. Membership. The weak declension embraces: (1) a considerable number of monosyllabic nouns, mainly feminine, but with a few masculines; (2) nearly all the feminines of more than one syllable; (3) masculines that end in e; (4) many foreign masculines that have the accent on the ultima.

1. There are no neuter nouns of the weak declension. While it contains numerous masculines, it is chiefly made up of feminines of more than one syllable, the only nouns of the latter class that do not belong to it being Mutter, Tochter, and a few in nis, ſal and kunſt.

93. A Rule of Gender. The suffixes ei, heit, keit, in, ſchaft and ung invariably form feminine nouns of the weak declension.

1. This rule covers a very large number of words. The ending heit, cognate with *hood* in *manhood*, forms a multitude of abstracts from adjectives, as Freiheit, *freedom*, from frei, *free;* keit has a similar function (§ 387, 7); in forms feminines that correspond to masculines, as König, *king*, Königin, *queen;* ſchaft is cognate with *ship* in *friendship* = Freundſchaft, and ung with *ing* in *warning* = Warnung.

2. The foreign suffixes ie, if and ion also form feminine nouns.

94. Formation of the Cases. Masculines add (e)n to the nominative singular to form all the other cases, singular and plural. Feminines add (e)n thruout the plural.

1. The case-ending is n if the noun ends in e, el, er or ar, otherwise it is en. But Herr, *gentleman, sir, Mr.*, generally has in the singular Herrn, in the plural Herren.

2. Feminines in in have the plural in innen.

3. No weak noun has umlaut as a plural-sign.

95. Examples. Menſch, *man, mankind;* Knabe, *boy;* Frau, *wife, Mrs.;* Blume, *flower.*

Singular

N.	der Menſch	der Knabe	die Frau	die Blume
G.	des Menſchen	des Knaben	der Frau	der Blume
D.	dem Menſchen	dem Knaben	der Frau	der Blume
A.	den Menſchen	den Knaben	die Frau	die Blume

Plural

N.	die Menſchen	die Knaben	die Frauen	die Blumen
G.	der Menſchen	der Knaben	der Frauen	der Blumen
D.	den Menſchen	den Knaben	den Frauen	den Blumen
A.	die Menſchen	die Knaben	die Frauen	die Blumen

1. So also der Stude'nt, *the student:* des Studenten, dem Studenten, den Studenten, pl. in all cases, Studenten.

96. Rule of Order II: Position of Adverbs. In the normal order an adverb must not come between the subject and the verb; thus *I hardly know*, ich weiß kaum; *he never goes to church*, er geht nie in die Kirche.

1. An adverb of time usually takes precedence of other adverbs; thus *I knew him very well at that time*, ich kannte ihn damals ſehr gut; *he is usually at home evenings*, er iſt abends gewöhnlich zu Hauſe.

EXERCISE 11

Reading Lesson: Weak Nouns

Ich bin ſchon zehn Wochen in der Fremde,[1] und die Zeit vergeht mir ſehr ſchnell über der Arbeit. Ich habe täglich eine

Sprachſtunde[2] und zwei Stunden wöchentlich in der Muſik. Für die Sprache habe ich einen Lehrer, für die Muſik eine Lehrerin.[3] Über[4] die Familie, beſonders über den Hausherrn[5] und die Kinder, ſchrieb[6] ich neulich ein paar Zeilen. Die Frau Wirtin[7] iſt eine Weltdame[8] und geht viel in Geſellſchaft.

EXERCISE 11 a

1. Ich habe Arbeit auf[9] zwei Wochen. 2. Das Leben des[10] Menſchen iſt kurz. 3. Der[10] Menſch iſt immer das Kind der Zeit. 4. Die[10] Menſchen ſind Kinder der Zeiten. 5. Wer iſt der Vater des Knaben? 6. Iſt die Dame eine Frau oder ein Fräulein? 7. Kennen Sie die Mutter der Knaben? 8. Es iſt die Zeit der[12] Blumen. 9. Die Dame iſt eine Freundin der Familie. 10. Die Mädchen ſind Freundinnen der Muſik. 11. Die Familie geht nach zwei Wochen in die Fremde. 12. Das iſt Arbeit für eine Dame, nicht für einen Herrn. 13. Ich ſchreibe diesmal nur ein paar Zeilen; ich habe wenig Zeit.

EXERCISE 11 b

1. Work[11] is good for man.[11] 2. The lady is the mother of[12] ten children. 3. Two of[12] the ten children are boys. 4. The man-of-the-house is a friend of society.[11] 5. What do you know[13] of[12] the language of flowers?[11] 6. The time is too short for a music-lesson. 7. Well, how goes it with the language-lessons? 8. The boy's mother is a teacher. 9. He is a student and knows[14] all sorts of languages. 10. The weeks pass very quickly; it is already the beginning of the autumn-time.

Vocabulary

die Arbeit, *w.* work.
beſonders, *adv.* especially.
die Dame, *w.* lady, *dame.*
die Fami'lie, *w. family.*
die Fremde, *w.* foreign land.
die Geſellſchaft, *w.* society.
der Lehrer, *s.*[1] teacher.
mir, *pron.* (*dat.*) to me, for me.
die Muſi'k, *w. music.*
neulich, *adv.* lately [**newly**].
o, *interj.* O, oh.
ſchnell, *adj.* swift; as *adv.* swiftly.

die Sprache, *w.* language.
die Stunde, *w.* hour, lesson.
täglich, *adj. adv.* **daily.**
verge'hen, *v.* pass [**forego**].
viel, *pron. adj. adv.* much.
die Welt, *w.* **world.**
die Woche, *w.* **week.**
wöchentlich, *adv.* **weekly.**
zehn, *num.* **ten.**
die Zeile, *w.* line.
die Zeit, *w.* time [**tide**].

NOTES. — [1] **in der Fremde,** *abroad.* — [2] **Sprachſtunde,** *language-lesson;* a compound of Sprache (with e dropped) and Stunde. — [3] **Le'hreri'n,** *woman teacher,* Lehrer being always a *man teacher.* — [4] **über,** in the sense of *concerning, about,* takes the acc. — [5] **Hausherrn,** *man-of-the-house.* — [6] **ſchrieb ich,** *I wrote;* inverted because an adverbial phrase precedes. This verb belongs to the class called 'strong,' which form their preterit by means of internal vowel-change. The inflection runs: ich ſchrieb, du ſchriebſt, er ſchrieb, wir ſchrieben, ihr ſchriebt, ſie ſchrieben. — [7] **die Frau Wirtin,** *my landlady;* Herr and Frau often precede titles for courtesy's sake. When thus used they should not be translated. — [8] **Weltdame,** *woman of the world,* i. e. *of fashion.* — [9] **auf;** here = for. — [10] **des, der;** see Ex. 4, n. 8. Menſch = 'man' in distinction from animals; Mann = 'man' in distinction from woman. — [11] Use the generic article. — [12] **of,** von. — [13] **do you know,** wiſſen Sie, or weißt du. — [14] **knows,** kennt.

EXERCISE 12

Colloquy: Weak Nouns

1

Nun, was gibt es in der Zeitung?
Nicht viel; nur eine Menge [1] Kleinigkeiten.
Es iſt [2] doch wohl etwas darin über [3] Politik, über die Wahlen?
Sehr wenig; aber die Nachrichten deuten auf einen Sieg für die Demokraten.
Meinen Sie in der Nation überhaupt, oder nur in der Stadt?
Ich meine in der Nation; aber die Sache iſt noch nicht gewiß.
Wie groß iſt die Mehrheit der Demokraten hier in der Stadt?
Sie haben eine Mehrheit von etwa zweihundert Stimmen.

2

I see you have a paper. How is [4] the election going?
The evening papers [5] have not much about politics.

But they surely have [6] reports from the city, have they not?

Oh, yes; luck [7] is on the side [8] of the democrats.

How large is the majority?

According to [9] the papers they have a majority of about two hundred votes.

EXERCISE 12 a

1. Die Mehrheit der Arbeiter ſind Demokraten. 2. Die Stadt hat etwa zehn Zeitungen: ein Abendblatt [10] und eine Menge Morgenblätter. 3. Es iſt die Zeit der Stadtwahlen, aber ich weiß ſehr wenig von der Politik. 4. Die Wege der Politik ſind meiſtens ſehr dunkel. 5. Hier ſind Blumen in Menge [11] und für eine Kleinigkeit zu haben.[12] 6. Der Friede iſt nicht immer ein Glück [13] im Leben der Nationen. 7. Es gibt eine Menge Geſellſchaften unter den Studenten. 8. Wie ſchnell vergehen die Tage und Wochen! 9. Die Nachricht von einem Siege der Arbeiter iſt gewiß nicht wahr. 10. Ich ſchreibe ein Buch über die Sprache der Kinder.

EXERCISE 12 b

1. There comes the boy with the evening paper. 2. Here are only a few lines about politics. 3. The inhabitants of the city are mostly democrats. 4. I am a democrat and the son of a democrat. 5. Politics is not the affair of a boy. 6. That points to a victory for the workingmen, does it not? 7. He wrote a mass of books about all sorts of things. 8. Are you on the side of the majority in the matter of the city-park? 9. There are [14] all sorts of people in the world. 10. Is there [15] a language of flowers? [16]

Vocabulary

darí'n, *adv.* **therein,** in it.
der Demokra't, *w. democrat.*
deuten, *v.* (auf, *acc.*) point (to).
doch, *adv.* yet, still, **tho.**
etwa, *adv.* about, approximately.
etwas, *pron.* (*indef.*) something.
geben, *v.* **give**; es gibt (*with acc.*) there is, there are.
gewi'ß, *adj.* certain; as *adv.* certainly, to be sure.
groß, *adj.* **great.**
hundert, *num.* **hundred.**

die Kleinigkeit, *w.* trifle, small matter, triviality.
die Mehrheit, *w.* majority [**more-hood, more**-ness].
meinen, *v.* **mean.**
die Menge, *w.* mass, multitude.
die Nachricht, *w.* report, news, tidings.
die Natio'n, *w.* *nation.*
die Politi'k, *w.* *politics.*
die Sache, *w.* affair, thing [**sake**].
die Seite, *w.* **side.**
der Sieg, *s.*[2] victory.
die Stimme, *w.* voice, vote.
überhau'pt, *adv.* in general, at large [**over-head**].
die Wahl, *w.* choice, election.
die Zeitung, *w.* newspaper [**tiding**].

Notes. — [1] **Menge Kleinigkeiten,** *mass of trifles;* notice the absence of a prep. Kleinigkeiten is in apposition with Menge. — [2] **Es ist doch wohl etwas,** *there is surely something;* doch wohl, *surely*, doch emphasizing the probability implied by wohl. — [3] **über Politik,** *on (about) politics.* Observe that the English plurals in *-ics*, e. g. *politics, physics, mathematics*, are not plural in German. — [4] **is . . . going,** geht (see Ex. 5, n. 3). — [5] **evening paper,** Abendzeitung. — [6] **They surely have . . . have they not,** man hat doch wohl . . . nicht wahr? — [7] **luck,** das Glück. — [8] **on the side,** auf der Seite. — [9] **According to,** nach, with dat. — [10] **Abendblatt;** Blatt is a common word for *journal, gazette.* — [11] **in Menge,** *in abundance, in quantity.* — [12] **zu haben,** *to be had.* — [13] **Glück,** *piece of good fortune, blessing.* — [14] **There are,** es gibt. The present of geben inflects thus: ich gebe, du gibst, er gibt, wir geben, ihr gebt, sie geben. On the spelling gibt, instead of giebt, see Appendix I. — [15] **Is there,** gibt es. — [16] **language of flowers,** Sprache der Blumen, or Blumensprache.

The Mixed Declension

97. Membership. The mixed declension comprises a number of masculine and neuter nouns (no feminines) that inflect the singular after the manner of the strong declension, but the plural after the manner of the weak. To it belong:

1. A small group of words having no common characteristic of form and represented below by der Staat and das Auge.

2. Nine or ten masculines in e which add ns for the genitive singular and n for all other cases.

a. The ending ens appears also in the genitive of das Herz, *heart*, the real stem being Herzen; the inflection runs: nom. and acc. Herz, gen. Herzens, dat. Herzen, pl. Herzen.

3. Latin nouns in unaccented or, with plural in o'ren.

4. A number of Latin and Greek neuters which make the plural in en, or ien if the Latin plural ended in *ia*.

98. Examples. Staat, *state;* Name, *name;* Doktor, *doctor;* Auge, *eye;* Drama, *drama;* Studium, *study.*

Singular

Nom.	der Staat	der Name	der Doktor
Gen.	des Staates	des Namens	des Doktors
Dat.	dem Staate	dem Namen	dem Doktor
Acc.	den Staat	den Namen	den Doktor

Plural

Nom.	die Staaten	die Namen	die Doktoren
Gen.	der Staaten	der Namen	der Doktoren
Dat.	den Staaten	den Namen	den Doktoren
Acc.	die Staaten	die Namen	die Doktoren

Singular

Nom.	das Auge	das Drama	das Studium
Gen.	des Auges	des Dramas	des Studiums
Dat.	dem Auge	dem Drama	dem Studium
Acc.	das Auge	das Drama	das Studium

Plural

Nom.	die Augen	die Dramen	die Studien
Gen.	der Augen	der Dramen	der Studien
Dat.	den Augen	den Dramen	den Studien
Acc.	die Augen	die Dramen	die Studien

EXERCISE 13

READING LESSON: NOUNS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION

Von Tag zu Tag[1] mache ich allerlei Bekanntschaften unter den Nachbarn. Gestern abend war ich zu Tische[2] bei einem Herrn Namens Schmidt, einem Vetter meiner[3] Wirtin. Herr Schmidt

ist Doktor[4] der Philosophie und Professor an[5] der Universität. Die Gesellschaft bestand aus lauter Doktoren, Professoren und Studenten. Man redete[6] viel von Büchern und Studien, aber auch von Angelegenheiten des Staates. Das Interesse für Politik[7] ist jetzt sehr lebhaft. Wir leben noch im Frieden, aber vielleicht ist die Zeit des Friedens beinahe zu Ende.

EXERCISE 13a

1. Das Gebäude gehört dem Staate, nicht der Stadt. 2. Eine Nation besteht aus einem Staate, oder aus einer Menge Staaten. 3. Kennen Sie die Namen der Leute am Tische dort? 4. Ich schreibe ein paar Zeilen im Namen des Doktors. 5. Sie hat die Augen und die Stimme der Mutter. 6. Das Interesse für das Drama und für das Studium des Dramas ist jetzt sehr lebhaft. 7. Der Herr Doktor hat eine Menge Vettern Namens Schmidt. 8. Das ist die Arbeit eines Vetters[8] von dem Professor. 9. Das ist gewiß der Anfang des Endes. 10. An den Enden des Zimmers sieht man Bilder aus[9] dem Familienleben.

EXERCISE 13b

1. What is the gentleman's name? 2. That is the son of a neighbor. 3. The neighbors are very friendly. 4. The professor is writing a book on[10] the study of the drama. 5. Music[11] is the language of the heart. 6. That is in the interest of the city, not of the state. 7. The interests of the majority are always on the side of peace.[11] 8. The universities are here an affair of the states. 9. The eyes are the windows of the heart. 10. I am making a number of acquaintances among the students of the university.

Vocabulary

die A'ngele'genhe'it, *w.* affair.
bei, *prep.* (*dat.*) **by,** at, at the house of.
beina'he, *adv.* almost [**by-nigh**].
die Beka'nntschaft, *w.* acquaintance.
beste'hen (aus), *v.* consist (of); *pret.* bestand.
Ende *mx.* (*gen.* –s), **end.**
der Friede, *mx.* (*gen.* –ns), peace.
das Intere'sse, *mx.* (*gen.* –s), *interest.*

jetzt, *adv.* now.
lauter, *adv.* exclusively.
leben, *v.* **live.**
lebhaft, *adv.* **live**-ly.
machen, *v.* **make.**
mein, *pron.* (*poss.*) **my.**
der Nachbar, *mx.* **neighbor.**
die Philoſophie', *w. philosophy.*
der Profeſſor, *mx. professor.*
reden, *v.* talk ; *pret.* redete.
die Univerſität', *w. university.*
der Vetter, *mx.* cousin.

NOTES. — [1] **von Tag zu Tag** ; in this phrase the e of the dat. is generally omitted. — [2] **zu Tiſche,** *at table ;* i. e. in this case, *at supper.* — [3] **meiner Wirtin,** *of my landlady ;* mein is declined in the singular like ein. — [4] **Doktor** ; see Ex. 4, n. 6. — [5] **an** ; observe the preposition ; one is a professor a n einer Univerſität, but a student a u f einer Univerſität. — [6] **man redete viel,** *they talked much.* Reden inflects like wohnen in the preterit, except that it has a connecting-vowel e. — [7] **für Politik,** IN *politics.* — [8] **Vetters** ; or one might say : Von einem Vetter des Profeſſors. It is better to avoid two genitives (eines Vetters des Profeſſors). See § 247, 3. — [9] **aus,** *from,* i. e. *pertaining to.* — [10] **on,** über, with acc. — [11] Use the generic article.

EXERCISE 14

COLLOQUY : NOUNS OF THE MIXED DECLENSION

1

Iſt Herr Doktor Schmidt zu Hauſe ?

Ja wohl ; aber er liegt noch im Bette. Was wünſchen Sie ?

Ich komme wegen eines Augenleidens.[1]

Aber mein Vater iſt kein Arzt ; er hat nichts mit Augenkrankheiten zu tun.[2]

Wirklich ? Er hat doch den Titel Doktor.

Richtig, aber er iſt Doktor der Philoſophie.

Hat er vielleicht einen Bruder oder einen Namensvetter[3] in der Stadt ?

Ja, freilich ; ich kenne einen Arzt Namens Schmidt. Er iſt ein Vetter des Vaters.

2

Is this the residence of Professor[4] Schmidt ?

Yes, but he is not at home ; he is away on business[5] of state.

You are perhaps the professor's son ?

Yes; do you wish something from father?[6] You are a student, I presume.[7]

No, I come from the museum; I am the son of the director.

Perhaps then you have something for father.

Correct; the box here contains a quantity[8] of minerals and fossils.

EXERCISE 14a

1. Das war gewiß die Stimme des Herzens. 2. Er iſt wie[9] ein Kind und kennt die Herzen der Kinder. 3. Kennen Sie den Herrn Direktor des Muſeums? 4. Meinen Sie das Stadtmuſeum? Es gibt zwei Muſeen und zwei Direktoren. 5. Das ſind Studenten der Univerſität. 6. Wünſchen Sie ein Zimmer mit einem[10] Bette oder mit zwei Betten? 7. Hier lebt der Student nicht unter den Augen des Profeſſors. 8. Der Friede iſt immer ein Glück für die Nationen der Welt. 9. Zwei Zimmer des Muſeums enthalten Mineralien und Foſſilien. 10. Der Kaſten gehört in[11] die Wohnung des Direktors.

EXERCISE 14b

1. I wish a room with two windows and two beds. 2. We have two castles and two museums in the city. 3. Physicians are always doctors, but doctors are not always physicians. 4. The windows are too large, the beds too short. 5. That is the affair of a workingman, not of a student. 6. Yonder is the residence of the director. 7. I am going home on account of the illness of my mother. 8. What have I to do with minerals and fossils? 9. It is a time of suffering among the workingmen. 10. The children are cousins.

Vocabulary

der Arzt, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), physician.
das Bett, *mx.* **bed.**
dies, *pron.* (*dem.*) **this.**
der Direktor, *mx. director.*
enthalten, *v.* contain; enthält, contains [-**hold**].
fort, *adv.* away.
das Foſſil', *mx.* (*pl.* -ien), *fossil.*
freilich, *adv.* to be sure.
das Geſchäft, *s.*[2] business.
kein, *pron. adj.* no, not a, none.
die Krankheit, *w.* sickness, disease.

das Leiden, *s.*[1] suffering, trouble [**loathe**].
das Mineral', *mx.* (*pl.* =ien), *mineral.*
das Muſe'um, *mx.* (*pl.* =en), *museum.*
nein, *adv.* no [**none**].
nichts, *pron.* nothing.
richtig, *adj.* **right,** correct.
tun, *v.* **do.**
der Titel, *s.*[1] *title.*
wegen, *prep.* (*gen.*) on account of.
wirklich, *adv.* really.
die Wohnung, *w.* dwelling, residence.
wünſchen, *v.* **wish.**

NOTES. — [1] **Augenleidens,** *eye-trouble, trouble with (my) eyes.* — [2] **zu tun,** *to do.* A dependent infinitive usually comes at the end of the sentence; see § 187. — [3] **Namensvetter,** *namesake,* in the sense of 'one having the same name.' — [4] **of Professor,** des Herrn Profeſſor. — [5] **on business of state,** in Geſchäften des Staates, or in Staatsgeſchäften. — [6] **from father,** vom Vater (Ex. 4, n. 5). — [7] **are a student, I presume,** ſind wohl Student. — [8] **a quantity of,** eine Menge (without prep.). — [9] **wie,** *like.* — [10] **einem;** here = *one*; see § 116, 3. — [11] **gehört in,** *belongs in.* The box is not in place; so the acc. tells *whither* it must be taken to be where it 'belongs.'

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES

99. Names of Persons. Names of persons have, in general, no inflection except in the genitive singular; in all other cases the form remains the same, the article being used, if necessary, for the sake of clearness; e. g. ich leſe (den) Schiller, *I am reading Schiller;* im Lande der Mozart und der Wagner, *in the land of the Mozarts and the Wagners.*

1. The genitive singular has the ending s — the rule applies to feminine as well as to masculine names — unless the name ends in an *s*-sound, when an apostrophe is commonly used; e. g. Schillers Werke, or die Werke Schillers, *Schiller's works, the works of Schiller;* Maries Eltern, *Marie's parents;* Opitz' Gedichte, *Opitz's poems.* The ending ens, as in Mariens Eltern, Opitzens Gedichte, is going out of fashion, tho still often used.

a. But the ending s is omitted if the name is preceded by an article or pronoun in the genitive (an intervening ad-

jective or noun makes no difference) and is not followed by the noun on which the genitive depends; e. g. die Werke eines Schiller, des Dichters Schiller, des jungen Schiller, meines geliebten Schiller, *the works of a Schiller, of the poet Schiller, of the youthful Schiller, of my beloved Schiller;* but des jungen Schillers Werke, *the young Schiller's works.*

100. Names of Places. Names of towns and countries are mostly neuter nouns, used without the article unless an adjective precedes. They have no inflection except an s in the genitive singular, and the use of this follows the rule given above for names of persons; e. g. die Mauern Roms, *the walls of Rome;* but die Mauern des alten Rom, der Stadt Rom, *the walls of ancient Rome, of the city of Rome.*

1. If the name ends in an *s*-sound the genitive is best replaced by von with the dative, unless one prefers an adjective construction; e. g. die Straßen von Paris, or die Pariser Straßen, *the streets of Paris.*

2. But some names of countries, provinces, mountain districts, etc., and all names of rivers, are regularly used with the article. Such names, if masculine or neuter, often retain the s of the genitive even after the article; e. g. der Gipfel des Brockens, *the summit of the Brocken;* die Ufer des Rheins, *the banks of the Rhine.* Feminine names of countries are, of course, without inflection; e. g. die Berge der Schweiz, *the mountains of Switzerland.*

EXERCISE 15

Reading Lesson: Proper Nouns

Ich war neulich im Theater bei einer Vorstellung von Schillers „Wilhelm Tell." Ein Schauspieler Namens Müller spielte die Rolle des Tell, ein Fräulein Braun die Rolle der Berta. Die Vorstellung war sehr gut, besonders der Apfelschuß Tells und der Tod Geßlers. Nur war die Liebesscene[1] zwischen Berta und

Rubenz etwas kalt, denn[2] Bertas Stimme war unangenehm. In Deutschland, dem Lande der Wagner und der Beethoven, war die Musik natürlich auch gut. Ich lese jetzt Schillers Werke; er ist groß, aber er hat nicht die Kraft eines Shakespeare.[3] In ein paar Tagen mache[4] ich eine Reise über[5] Weimar nach Leipzig[6] und Dresden. Weimar war vor hundert Jahren[7] der Wohnort der Dichter Goethe und Schiller. Es liegt an der Ilm, einem Nebenflusse der Saale.

EXERCISE 15a

1. I am reading Schiller's dramas. 2. I have also the works of Goethe. 3. Germany is a land of music. 4. The journey from Göttingen to[8] Weimar is not very interesting. 5. This evening there is[9] a performance of Shakespeare's *Hamlet*. 6. An actress from Dresden plays the part of Ophelia.[10] 7. Weimar is interesting on acount of the poets Goethe and Schiller. 8. The park of Weimar belongs among[11] the works of Goethe. 9. There is[9] a *Life of Schiller* by[12] Thomas Carlyle. 10. *Werther's Sufferings* is the title of a book by[12] Goethe.

Vocabulary

der Apfel, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä), **apple.**
denn, *conj. adv.* for, **then.**
Deutschland, Germany.
der Dichter, *s.*[1] poet.
kalt, *adj.* **cold.**
die Kraft, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), strength, force [**craft**].
lesen, *v.* read.
die Liebe, *w.* **love.**
der Nebenfluß, *s.*[2] (*pl.* =flüsse), tributary.
die Reise, *w.* journey [**rise**].
die Rolle, *w. rôle*, part.
die Scene, *w. scene*.
der Schauspieler, *s.*[1] actor.
der Schuß, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Schüsse), **shot.**
spielen, *v.* play; *pret.* spielte.
das Thea'ter, *s.*[1] *theater.*
der Tod, *s.*[2] (*no pl.*), **death.**
u'na'ngenehm, *adj.* unpleasant.
vor, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) before [**fore**].
die Vo'rstellung, *w.* performance.
das Werk, *s.*[2] **work.**
der Wohnort, *s.*[2] abode, dwelling-place.
zwischen, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **between.**

Notes. — [1] **Liebesscene**; pronounce =ze'ne. A feminine noun in composition sometimes takes the ending s, thus constituting an excep-

tion to § 77, 1. — [2] **denn** at the beginning of a sentence means *for*, elsewhere *then*. On the order see § 87, 3. — [3] **Shakespeare**; pronounce as in English. — [4] **mache ich**, *I shall make, I am going to make;* the pres. tense denoting here a present purpose. — [5] **über**, *by way of.* — [6] **Leipzig**, *Leipsic.* But some prefer to use in English the German form *Leipzig.* Other names of cities which have an English name differing from the German are Wien, *Vienna;* München, *Munich;* Köln, *Cologne;* Genf, *Geneva.* In most cases the form of the name is the same in both languages. — [7] **vor hundert Jahren**, *a hundred years ago;* lit. *before a hundred years.* — [8] **to**, nach; see Ex. 5, n. 7. — [9] **there is**, es gibt (or gibt es, § 87). — [10] **of Ophelia**, der Ophelia. — [11] **among**, unter with acc. — [12] **by**, von.

THE ADJECTIVE

INFLECTION

101. Inflected and Uninflected Adjectives. The adjective is inflected only when it qualifies a following noun, expressed or understood, or is itself used substantively; if used alone in the predicate, or after its noun, or adverbially, it is uninflected. Thus: ein hübſches Mädchen, *a pretty girl;* but das Mädchen iſt hübſch, *the girl is pretty;* nennt ſich hübſch, *calls herself pretty;* trägt ſich hübſch, *carries herself prettily.* So also, poetically, as in English, ein Mädchen hübſch und jung, *a maiden fair and young.*

1. When inflected, the adjective agrees with its noun, unless it is itself used as a noun, in gender, number and case.

2. Almost any adjective can be used in its uninflected form as an adverb.

3. Participles when used as adjectives have the inflection of adjectives.

102. Strong and Weak Inflection. Adjectives are inflected in two different ways, according as they are or are not preceded by an article or pronoun having a distinctive ending. The inflection used when such a word

precedes is called 'weak'; the inflection used when no such word precedes is called 'strong.'

1. The terms 'strong' and 'weak' do not mean, as in the case of nouns, that some adjectives are declined in one way, and others in another, but that any adjective, in any particular case, takes the one or the other of two endings, according to what goes before. The use of the weak inflection is to avoid the unnecessary repetition of grammatical distinctions. Thus in das neue Haus, *the new house*, das shows the gender; hence the adjective does not need to show it and becomes weak. But in ein neues Haus, *a new house*, ein is not a distinctive form, since of itself it is either masculine or neuter; hence the adjective is given the strong, or distinctive ending.

103. The Endings. The endings are as follows:

	STRONG				WEAK			
	Sing.			*Plur.*	*Sing.*			*Plur.*
	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	M. F. N.	Mas.	Fem.	Neu.	M. F. N.
N.	er	e	es	e	e	e	e	en
G.	es	er	es	er	en	en	en	en
D.	em	er	em	en	en	en	en	en
A.	en	e	es	e	en	e	e	en

1. Observe that in four cases, namely, the nominative and accusative singular feminine, the accusative singular masculine and the dative plural, there is no difference between the strong and the weak inflection.

2. Before the e of the endings a final e of the stem is dropped; as in ein weiser Mann, from weise, *wise*. Words in unaccented el, en, er, generally drop the e of the stem; e. g. ein edles Herz, from edel, *noble;* ein offnes Fenster, from offen, *open;* ein heit(e)rer Tag, from heiter, *bright.*

104. Use of the Strong Endings. An adjective has strong inflection if no distinctive form of an article or pronominal modifier precedes; e. g. guter Wein ist teuer,

good wine is dear; mit frohem Herzen, *with happy heart;* zwei frohe Herzen, *two happy hearts;* ein frohes Herz, *a happy heart;* etwas Gutes, *something good.*

a. But in the genitive singular, masculine and neuter, it is now customary to use weak inflection, even tho no article or pronominal modifier precedes, in order to avoid a repetition of the ending es; e. g. ſei frohen Mutes, *be of good cheer.* Observe, however, that strong inflection also occurs in this case.

1. A 'distinctive form' is one that sufficiently shows gender, number or case. The forms of der are *all* distinctive and hence *always* followed by weak inflection. The forms of ein and its negative kein are all distinctive except three, namely, the nominative singular masculine and the nominative and accusative singular neuter. In *these three cases*, then, ein and kein are followed by strong inflection.

a. What is true of ein and kein is also true of the six possessives mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, ihr (and Ihr), all of which are inflected like ein in the singular; hence mein lieber (never meiner liebe) Freund, *my dear friend;* Ihr neues (never Ihres neue) Haus, *your new house.*

2. The other 'pronominal modifiers' which affect the inflection of a following adjective are the so-called indefinite pronominals (§ 146 ff.), such as all, *all;* manch, *many;* ſolch, *such;* viel, *much;* wenig, *little.* These words are generally inflected like any adjective, but have the peculiarity that they *may* drop the inflectional ending. When this happens the following adjective is strong, otherwise it is weak; e. g. mancher gute (or manch guter) Mann, *many a good man.*

a. After a neuter pronominal an adjective not followed by a noun is itself treated as a substantive and written with a capital; e. g. etwas Gutes, *something good;* nichts Neues, *nothing new.*

b. After the nominative and accusative plural of several pronominals usage varies, the preference being on the whole

for strong inflection; e. g. viele gute (or guten) Männer, *many good men* (see § 288, 3 *a*).

3. The personal pronouns are followed by strong inflection in the nominative and accusative singular; e. g. du glücklicher Mann, *you happy man;* dich armes Kind, *thee poor child.*

105. Examples.

1. The adjective not preceded by an article or pronoun: Guter Kopf, *good head;* gute Seele, *good soul;* gutes Herz, *good heart.*

Singular

Nom.	guter Kopf	gute Seele	gutes Herz
Gen.	guten Kopfes gutes Kopfes	guter Seele	guten Herzens gutes Herzens
Dat.	gutem Kopfe	guter Seele	gutem Herzen
Acc.	guten Kopf	gute Seele	gutes Herz

Plural

Nom.	gute Köpfe	gute Seelen	gute Herzen
Gen.	guter Köpfe	guter Seelen	guter Herzen
Dat.	guten Köpfen	guten Seelen	guten Herzen
Acc.	gute Köpfe	gute Seelen	gute Herzen

2. The adjective preceded by an uninflected form of ein, kein, mein, dein, sein, unser, euer, ihr.

Singular

	Mas.	Neut.
Nom.	ein guter Kopf	ein gutes Herz
Acc.		ein gutes Herz

All the other forms are weak. For a complete paradigm of an adjective after one of these eight words see § 107, 2.

EXERCISE 16

Reading Lesson: Strong Adjectives

Mein lieber Freund![1] Ich bin jetzt auf kurze Zeit[2] in Leipzig. Ich habe ein kleines freundliches[3] Zimmer mit guter Bedienung

zu billigem Preise. Der Hauswirt ist ein interessanter alter Herr mit weißem Bart und weißen[4] Haaren. Vor Jahren[5] war er reich, aber jetzt hat er nur ein kleines Vermögen. Seine Frau ist tot, und die Stütze seines Alters ist seine Tochter, ein liebenswürdiges Mädchen von seltner Schönheit. Vater und Tochter nehmen ein freundliches Interesse an meinen Studien; sie verbessern mein schlechtes Deutsch und erzählen mir allerlei Interessantes[6] von der Stadt.

EXERCISE 16a

1. Er ist ein sehr reicher Mann. 2. Ist das aber[7] ein schönes Mädchen! 3. Ich habe ein neues Haus. 4. Ich gehe in kurzer Zeit nach Hause. 5. Wir sind alte Freunde. 6. Sind Sie ein Freund von seltnen Büchern? 7. Kennen Sie einen guten Arzt in der Stadt? 8. Die Sache hat eine gute und eine schlechte Seite. 9. Zwei lange Jahre wohne ich nun in Deutschland. 10. Armes Kind! du hast also keine Mutter? 11. Gute Äpfel sind jetzt sehr teuer. 12. Für einen jungen Knaben schreiben Sie sehr interessante Briefe.

EXERCISE 16b

1. Poor man! that comes of[8] bad company. 2. Dear old city! Mother of great men and fair[9] women! 3. It is a very good book. 4. He is a good man, but no great poet. 5. The house is small, but it has two good large rooms. 6. Bad newspapers are nothing rare. 7. He writes with great power. 8. He is an old friend of the family. 9. We are good friends. 10. This is Herr Müller, my old teacher. 11. The book contains much (that is) good, but also all sorts of bad (things). 12. Great heart! Beautiful victory over[10] long suffering!

Vocabulary

alt, *adj*. **old.**
das Alter, *s.*[1] (*no pl.*) old age.
der Bart, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), **beard.**
die Bedienung, *w.* service.
billig, *adj*. cheap, moderate.
Deutsch,[11] (*indecl.*) German.
erzählen, *v.* relate, tell (**-tell**).
das Haar, *s.*[2] **hair.**
klein, *adj*. small.
lieb, *adj*. dear [**lief**].

liebenswürdig, *adj.* lovely [**love-worthy**].
nehmen, *v.* take.
der Preis, *s.*[2] *price*.
reich, *adj.* **rich.**
schlecht, *adj.* bad.
die Schönheit, *w.* beauty.
sein, *poss.* his.
selten, *adj.* rare [**seldom**].
die Stütze, *w.* prop, support.
tot, *adj.* **dead.**
verbessern, *v.* correct [**-better**].
das Vermögen, *s.*[1] property.
weiß, *adj.* **white.**

NOTES. — [1] It is customary to use an exclamation-point after the formal address in a letter. — [2] **auf kurze Zeit**, *for a short time* — looking ahead. — [3] **freundliches**, *pleasant, cozy*, as applied to a room. Observe that two adjectives occurring together have the same inflection; i. e. the first does not weaken the second. — [4] **weißen Haaren**; 'the hair' of the head is either das Haar or die Haare. It is here used as a plural, whence the repetition of weiß. But one might also write mit weißem Bart und Haar(e). — [5] **Vor Jahren**, *years ago*. — [6] **allerlei Interessantes**, *all sorts of interesting (things)*. — [7] **Ist das aber**, *but isn't that*. — [8] **of**, von. — [9] **fair**, schön. — [10] **over**, über with acc. — [11] The *noun* Deutsch, meaning the German language, is indeclinable, but the *adjective* deutsch is declined like any other adjective.

EXERCISE 17

COLLOQUY: STRONG ADJECTIVES

1

Guten[1] Morgen. Schönes Wetter heute, nicht wahr?

Es ist ein prächtiger Tag. Was sagen Sie zu einem Spaziergang?

Ein guter Gedanke; ich habe sonst nichts Wichtiges zu tun.

Nun, was gibt's[2] Neues? Sie sind offenbar in froher Stimmung.

Ja, das bin ich, und ich habe guten Grund; mein alter Freund Max kommt heute nach der Stadt.

Das ist freilich eine große Freude für Sie.

Nicht wahr? Er ist ein prächtiger Kerl.

2

Where are you living[3] now? Have you a good room?

Not a[4] very good one. I am living[5] at No. 2 Königstrasse.[6]

I think I know[7] the house; it is an old, low building, isn't it?

Well,[8] it is not a[9] royal palace, to be sure, but the rooms are cheap.

Do you have good fare? That is an important point.

No, the fare is bad too; good coffee is not to be had.[10]

Poor fellow! That is a miserable life.

EXERCISE 17a

1. Ein gutes Buch iſt immer eine wahre Freude. 2. Dort kommen Fritz und ſein kleiner Vetter, — ein hübſches Paar, nicht wahr? 3. Wir haben ſchon zwei Tage ſchlechtes Wetter. 4. Von meinem Fenſter ſieht man ein altes Schloß mit prächtigen Türmen. 5. Er war gewiß groß als Menſch, aber kein großer Schriftſteller. 6. Da wohnt ein gewiſſer Herr Müller, ein reicher Kaufmann. 7. Zwiſchen der Stadt und dem Gebirge liegen ſchöne Täler und große dunkle Wälder. 8. Noch immer reden Sie von deutſcher Politik! Kommen wir nun zu etwas Neuem! 9. Sehr gern, mein guter Freund, aber wiſſen Sie denn etwas Neues? 10. Das iſt zu teuer; ſo etwas[11] iſt nicht für arme Leute.

EXERCISE 17b

1. It is a beautiful evening. 2. Here is a new book; it contains all sorts of good ideas. 3. Wretched fellow! He is always in the society of low people. 4. What you say gives me[12] great pleasure. 5. That was a long walk for such a[13] little child. 6. That is no great piece-of-luck[14] for us. 7. I go in (a)[15] short time, perhaps to-morrow. 8. We are having very cold weather. 9. They have two lovely daughters. 10. You write very good German. 11. I go with happy heart. 12. At Frau Müller's[16] one has good society, but bad coffee.

Vocabulary

denken, *v.* **think.**
elend, *adj.* wretched.
die Freude, *w.* joy, pleasure.
froh, *adj.* happy.
der Gedanke, *mx.* (*gen.* =ns), thought, idea.

der Grund, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), **ground.**
der Kaffee, *s.* (*no pl.*), *coffee.*
der Kerl, *s.*[2] fellow [**churl**].
königlich, *adj.* royal, **kingly.**
die Koſt, *w.* fare, board.
neu, *adj.* **new.**
niedrig, *adj.* low.
Numero (*indecl.*), at No.
offenbar, *adj.* evident [**open-**].
der Palaſt, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), *palace.*
prächtig, *adj.* splendid.
der Punkt, *s.*[2] *point.*
ſagen, *v.* **say.**
ſo, *adv.* **so.**
ſonſt, *adv.* else, otherwise.
der Spazie'rgang, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), walk.
die Stimmung, *w.* mood.
die Straße, *w.* street.
das Wetter, *s.*[1] **weather.**
wichtig, *adj.* important, **weighty.**
wo, *adv.* where.

NOTES. — [1] **guten Morgen**; the acc. is used in greetings such as guten Morgen, guten Abend, guten Tag, gute Nacht, there being a verb of 'wishing' or 'bidding' understood. — [2] **was gibt's Neues?** *What's the news?* gibt's = gibt es. — [3] **Where are you living?** Wo wohnen Sie? — [4] **Not a,** kein. — [5] **I am living at No. 2 Königstrasse,** ich wohne Königſtraße (or in der Königſtraße) Numero 2. — [6] **Königstrasse,** lit. *King Street;* but names of streets are best transferred, not translated. — [7] **I think I know,** ich denke, ich kenne. — [8] **Well,** nun, not wohl. — [9] **it is not a . . . to be sure,** es iſt freilich kein. — [10] **not to be had,** nicht zu haben; lit. *not to have, not for having.* — [11] **ſo etwas,** *such a thing.* — [12] **me**; i. e. *to me,* mir. — [13] **such a,** ſo ein. — [14] **piece-of-luck,** Glück. — [15] (**a**); the indef. art. is not needed in German. — [16] **at Frau Müller's,** bei Frau Müller.

106. Use of the Weak Endings. An adjective has weak inflection when it is preceded by a distinctive form of an article or pronoun; e. g. der alte Mann, *the old man;* jenes neue Haus, *that new house;* an jedem ſchönen Tage, *on every fine day;* meine lieben Freunde, *my dear friends.*

1. The words der, dies, jen–,* jed– and jeglich– are always followed by weak inflection.

2. The words ein, kein, mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, ihr (and Ihr) are followed by weak inflection except in the nominative singular masculine and the nominative and accusative singular neuter.

* The hyphen means that these words do not occur in the stem-form, but always have an inflectional ending.

3. The indefinite pronominals all, manch, ſolch, etc. are followed by weak inflection if they have a distinctive ending. But see § 104, 2, *b*.

4. The personal pronouns are followed by weak inflection except in the nominative and accusative singular; e. g. wir armen Leute, *we poor people*.

107. Examples of Weak Inflection.

1. After der, dies, jen–, jed–, or jeglich– :

Singular

N.	der gute Kopf	die gute Seele	das gute Herz
G.	des guten Kopfes	der guten Seele	des guten Herzens
D.	dem guten Kopfe	der guten Seele	dem guten Herzen
A.	den guten Kopf	die gute Seele	das gute Herz

Plural

N.	die guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
G.	der guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
D.	den guten Köpfen,	Seelen,	Herzen
A.	die guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen

2. After ein, kein, or a possessive:

Singular

N.	[kein guter Kopf]	keine gute Seele	[kein gutes Herz]
G.	keines guten Kopfes	keiner guten Seele	keines guten Herzens
D.	keinem guten Kopfe	keiner guten Seele	keinem guten Herzen
A.	keinen guten Kopf	keine gute Seele	[kein gutes Herz]

Plural

N.	keine guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
G.	keiner guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen
D.	keinen guten Köpfen,	Seelen,	Herzen
A.	keine guten Köpfe,	Seelen,	Herzen

108. The Adjective used Substantively. Adjectives are often used substantively, and when so used they

have the capital initial of a noun, but the inflection of an adjective; as der Alte, *the old man;* die Alte, *the old woman;* die Alten, *the old people;* das Alte, *the old, that which is old.*

1. As the examples indicate, the masculine and feminine singular and the plural of a substantive adjective designate persons. The neuter singular generally denotes the quality abstractly, and has to be translated in different ways; e. g. er liebt das Schöne, *he loves the beautiful* (die Schöne would mean *the beautiful woman,* die Schönen, *the fair sex*); das Buch enthält Altes und Neues, *the book contains old* (*matter*) *and new;* er hat Großes getan, *he has done great* (*things*); er hat mir ein Leids getan, *he has done me a grievous* (*turn*).

109. Irregular and Defective Inflection. The most important cases are as follows:

1. The stem of the adjective hoch, *high,* changes to hoh in all inflected forms; e. g. ein hoher Baum, *a high tree.*

2. Adjectives in er from names of towns are indeclinable; e. g. der Kölner Dom, *the Cologne cathedral.*

3. Ganz, *all,* and halb, *half,* when not preceded by the article are uninflected before neuter names of places; e. g. ganz England freute sich, *all England rejoiced;* durch halb Berlin, *thru half of Berlin.*

4. Some adjectives are used only in the predicate, and hence are never declined; as bereit, *ready;* feind, *hostile.*

5. The first of two adjectives forming a compound adjective is uninflected; e. g. der deutsch-französische Krieg, *the Franco-German war;* dunkelbraunes Haar, *dark-brown hair.*

110. The Predicate Adjective. A predicate adjective if it stands alone is uninflected; e. g. mein Schicksal ist schwer, *my fate is hard;* die Antwort ist richtig, *the answer is right.* But if an article precedes, the predicate adjective then becomes an attributive adjective, with noun

understood, and is inflected; e. g. mein Schickſal iſt ein ſchweres, *my fate is a hard one;* die Antwort iſt die richtige, *the answer is the right one.*

1. Further varieties of predicate adjective are:

a. The appositional predicate, in apposition with either subject or object; e. g. troſtlos irrt er umher, *he wanders about inconsoluble;* ich fand ihn krank im Bette, *I found him sick in bed.*

b. The factitive predicate, denoting the state to which an object is brought by the action of the verb; e. g. ich könnte mich tot lachen, *I could laugh myself dead;* er malt das Bild ſchwarz, *he paints the picture black.*

EXERCISE 18

Reading Lesson: Weak Adjectives

Leipzig, den 1.[1] Januar.

Meine lieben Eltern! Heute iſt der Anfang des neuen Jahres, und ich bin immer noch[2] in dieſer[3] intereſſanten alten Stadt. Leipzig liegt in einer weiten Ebene; in der ganzen Umgebung ſieht man keine Berge, keine hohen Hügel. Die Stadt iſt berühmt wegen ihrer[4] großen Univerſität und ihres reichen Handels; ſie iſt der eigentliche Mittelpunkt des Buchhandels für ganz Deutſchland. Die Leipziger Theater ſind beſonders gut; beinahe jeden[5] Abend beſuche ich das alte oder das neue Theater und gewinne ſo täglich an[6] Kenntnis der deutſchen Sprache und an Einſicht in das deutſche Leben. Ich wünſche Euch[7] Glück[8] zum neuen Jahre; möge[9] es Euch in ſeinem ganzen Verlaufe nur Gutes bringen.[10]

EXERCISE 18a

1. Der alte Herr iſt ſehr freundlich. 2. Die ganze Familie iſt jetzt von Hauſe[11] auf einer langen Reiſe. 3. Sehen Sie das neue Haus mit den großen Fenſtern? 4. Dieſes ſchlechte Wetter iſt ſehr unangenehm. 5. Sehen Sie nur jene prächtigen alten Bäume! 6. Was denken Sie von dem neuen Lehrer? 7. Wer wohnt in jenem weißen Hauſe am Ende der Hohen Straße[12]?

8. An jedem ſchönen Abend gibt es ein gutes Konzert im Parke. 9. Die reichen Leute der Stadt kommen nur ſelten unter die armen. 10. Der Reiche hat meiſtens wenig Gefühl für die Freuden und Leiden des Armen. 11. Jenes hohe Gebäude iſt das neue Muſeum. 12. Es gibt ein Buch mit dem Titel: Über das Wahre, das Schöne und das Gute. 13. Zwiſchen uns liegen jetzt mancher hohe Berg und manches weite Tal.

EXERCISE 18 b

1. That is the new teacher. 2. The little city is very lively. 3. The cold weather of the first two days was very unpleasant. 4. Where are the parents of the little fellow? 5. There is[13] a great difference between the good[14] and the bad.[14] 6. On account of the bad weather there is[15] no performance. 7. He is coming to-morrow with the whole family. 8. This is a picture of my little daughter. 9. The new drama is certainly the work of a great poet. 10. He has not a real friend in the whole wide world. 11. He is a famous teacher of the ancient[16] languages. 12. The spirit of the ancients lives still in the works of their great poets. 13. The high tower belongs to the royal palace. 14. Many a bad poet is famous in his own little world.

Vocabulary

der Berg, *s.*[2] mountain.
berühmt, *adj.* famous.
bringen, *v.* **bring.**
die Ebene, *w.* plain [**even**].
eigen, *adj.* **own.**
ei'gentlich, *adj.* real, actual.
die Einſicht, *w.* **insight.**
Eltern, *pl. only*, parents [**elders**].
erſt, *adj.* first [**erst**].
euch, *pron.* (*dat. acc.*) you.
gewinnen, *v.* gain, **-win.**
der Handel, *s.* (*no pl.*), trade, commerce [**handle**].
der Hügel, *s.*[1] hill.
ihr, *poss.* her, their.
der Januar, *s.*[2] *January.*
jed–, *pron.* every, each.
jen–, *pron.* that [**yon**].
die Kenntnis, *s.*[2] knowledge.
manch, *pron. adj.* **many** (a).
mittel, *adj.* **middle.**
mögen, *v.* **may.**
die Umge'bung, *w.* environs.
der Unterſchied, *s.*[2] difference.
der Verlau'f, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ¨u), course [**-leap**].
weit, *adj.* **wide,** broad, far.

NOTES. — [1] **den 1.**, i. e. den erſten Tag; in dating a letter the acc. is used, the name of the month following without a prep. — [2] **immer noch**, *still* (see Ex. 7, n. 6). — [3] **dieſer**; dies, jed- and jen- are declined like an adjective; see § 129. — [4] **ihrer**, *its*, lit. *her*, the noun Stadt, to which it refers, being fem. — [5] **jeden Abend**, acc. of time. — [6] **an Kenntnis**, IN *knowledge;* note the prep. — [7] **Euch** is the dat. pl. of du, the pronoun of familiar address; written with a capital because it occurs in a letter (§ 4, 2). — [8] **Glück zum neuen Jahre**, *happiness for the new year = a happy new year.* — [9] **möge es**, *may it;* the verb is a subjunctive expressing a wish. — [10] **bringen**; on its position see Ex. 14, n. 2. — [11] **von Hauſe**, *away from home.* — [12] **die Hohe Straße** = *High Street.* — [13] **there is**, es iſt. — [14] **good, bad**; dat. sing. neu. if it means *goodness and badness;* dat. plu. if it means *good and bad people.* — [15] **there is**, gibt es. — [16] **ancient**, alt.

EXERCISE 19

COLLOQUY: WEAK ADJECTIVES

1

Wie lange waren Sie in der Alten Welt?

Beinahe ein Jahr; es war eine prächtige Reiſe, beſonders die letzten Monate.

Bitte,[1] erzählen Sie mir davon; im künftigen Sommer gehe ich vielleicht ſelbſt nach Europa.

Aber das iſt eine lange Geſchichte. Was wünſchen Sie eigentlich[2] zu wiſſen?

Nun denn, wann verließen Sie die Vereinigten Staaten?

Am 1. Juli des vorigen Jahres.

Der Juli iſt eine gute Jahreszeit für die lange Seereiſe, nicht wahr?

Ja, aber heutzutage[3] macht die Jahreszeit keinen großen Unterſchied.

2

So[4] you are back again[5] in the New World?

Yes, I am now a good American once more.[6]

How do you find[7] yourself after[8] your long journey?

Very well, upon the whole[9]: but I find the old quiet life somewhat dull.

That is nothing strange. — Did you have[10] good weather on[11] the voyage?

Very good except on[12] the last two days.

EXERCISE 19 a

1. Ich kenne die ganze Geſchichte. 2. Die deutſchen Univerſitäten ſind berühmt in ganz Europa, ja in der ganzen Welt. 3. Unter den deutſchen Studenten ſieht man auch manche jungen Amerikaner. 4. Bitte, ſchreiben Sie mir von Ihrem neuen Freunde. Wer iſt denn dieſer neue Freund? 5. Ich kenne jeden Menſchen im Zimmer außer jenem jungen Manne am Fenſter. 6. Was denken Sie von den deutſchen Zeitungen? Ich finde ſie meiſtens langweilig. 7. Die Menſchen reden immer von der guten alten Zeit, aber heute iſt eigentlich immer die gute Zeit. 8. Ich wünſche ein gutes Werk über die Muſik der Alten. 9. Außer dem alten Theater gibt es in der Stadt auch ein neues. 10. Der Friede iſt immer im wahren Intereſſe der Vereinigten Staaten. 11. Es iſt doch ſonderbar; jedes kleine Kind auf der Straße redet hier ein gutes Deutſch. 12. Der Gedanke an[18] ein künftiges Leben iſt etwas ganz Natürliches.

EXERCISE 19 b

1. I find nothing true in the whole story. 2. A year is a long time. 3. There is a great difference between the Old World and the New. 4. I wish a good history of the United States. 5. The old fellow has very strange ideas. 6. The last two days of the long journey were somewhat tedious. 7. Let us take[14] a short walk. 8. Here you see the good side of German life.[15] 9. His last book has to do with German philosophy.[15] 10. He is a poet of[16] great power and great knowledge of life.[15] 11. The city lies in a broad valley between high mountains. 12. You find us in (a) happy mood on account of good news from[16] mother.[15]

Vocabulary

der Ame'rika'ner, *s.*[1] *American.*
außer, *prep.* (*dat.*) except, **outside of.**
befinden (ſich), *v.* **find** (one's self), [‘ do.’
bitten, *v.* ask; (ich) bitte, please [**bid**].
davo'n, *adv.* of it, about it.
Euro'pa, *Europe.*
finden, *v.* **find.**
die Geſchichte, *w.* story, history.
Ihr, *poss.* your.
der Juli (*no pl.*) *July.*
künftig, *adj.* coming, next.
lang(e), *adv.* (§ 373, 3) **long.**

la'ngwei'lig, *adj.* dull, tedious, [**long-while-y**].
letzt, *adj.* **last.**
ruhig, *adj.* quiet.
die See, *w.* (*pl.* Seen or Seeen), **sea,** ocean.
ſelbſt, *pron.* **self,** myself, etc.
ſonderbar, *adj.* strange.
vere'nigt, *pple.* **united** [**-one**].
verlaſſen, *v.* leave [**-let**]; *pret.* verließ.
vorig, *adj.* last, former.
wann, *adv.* (*inter.*) **when.**
wieder, *adv.* again [**with**].
zurü'ck, *adv.* back [**-ridge**].

NOTES. — [1] **Bitte**; note that bitte, *please*, is a 1. pers. sing. with ich understood, meaning literally *I pray*. — [2] **eigentlich,** *properly, exactly*; was wünſchen Sie eigentlich, *just what do you wish*. — [3] **heutzutage,** *nowadays*. — [4] **So,** alſo. — [5] **back again,** wieder zurück. — [6] **once more,** wieder, right after jetzt. — [7] **How do you find yourself,** wie befinden Sie ſich (§ 4, 2); the usual phrase for *how do you do?* — [8] **after your,** nach Ihrer. — [9] **upon the whole,** Im ganzen, preceding ſehr wohl. — [10] **Did you have,** hatten Sie. — [11] **on,** auf, with dat. — [12] **except on,** außer an, with dat. — [13] **der Gedanke an,** *the thought of*. — [14] **let us take,** machen wir. — [15] Use the definite article. — [16] **of, from,** von.

COMPARISON

111. Comparison by means of er and (e)ſt. Adjectives are compared ordinarily by means of the endings er and (e)ſt, which in a limited number of words (see § 293) have caused umlaut of a preceding a, o or u. The comparative and superlative are inflected like the positive.

1. Before the er of the comparative a final e of the stem is dropped; as weiſe, *wise;* weiſer, *wiser.*

2. The superlative regularly ends in ſt, but in eſt if the stem ends in an *s*-sound or in d or t; but participial stems in end take the ending ſt.

3. The e of the unaccented endings el, en, er is usually dropped in the comparative, but retained in the superlative.

4. The following examples will illustrate the above rules:

lang, *long*	länger	(längſt) der längſte
reich, *rich*	reicher	(reichſt) der reichſte
kurz, *short*	kürzer	(kürzeſt) der kürzeſte

mild, *mild*	milder	(mildeſt) der mildeſte
reizend, *charming*	reizender	(reizendſt) der reizendſte
dunkel, *dark*	dunkler	(dunkelſt) der dunkelſte

a. The uninflected superlative ſchönſt, längſt etc. can only be used adverbially. Used adjectively the superlative is regularly preceded by der, and hence of the weak declension.

112. The Superlative with am. For the English predicate superlative without an article German employs a phrase consisting of am followed by the inflected superlative in the dative singular neuter; e. g. das wäre am beſten (never das wäre beſt), *that would be best;* die Gegend iſt am ſchönſten im Juni, *the region is loveliest in June.*

1. The phrase with am sometimes takes the place of a predicate nominative with der; e. g. unter den drei Knaben iſt Karl am älteſten (instead of the more correct der älteſte), *of the three boys Karl is the oldest.*

2. The superlative of an adverb is regularly formed by means of the phrase with am, or else a phrase with aufs; e. g. ſie ſingt am beſten, *she sings best;* ſie ſang aufs beſte, *she sang her best.* (See § 294, 5, and § 375, 2).

113. Comparison by Means of Adverbs. Adjectives are sometimes compared by means of the adverbs mehr, *more*, and am meiſten, *most.*

1. An absolute superlative, i. e. one which does not imply comparison with other objects, is formed by means of the adverbs höchſt, *most highly*, or äußerſt, *exceedingly*; e. g. das iſt ein höchſt intereſſantes Buch, *that is a most interesting* book.

2. Degrees below the positive are denoted by the adverbs weniger or minder, *less*, and am wenigſten, am mindeſten, *least.*

114. Irregular and Defective Comparison. A few adjectives are compared irregularly and certain others lack one or more degrees. Thus:

1. Gut, *good*, and viel, *much*, have change of stem: gut, beſſer, beſt; viel, mehr, meiſt.

2. Hoch, *high*, and nah, *near*, are compared: hoch, höher, höchſt; nah, näher, nächſt.

3. Groß, *great*, has größt, rarely größeſt, in the superlative.

4. Some adjectives, mostly from adverbs and prepositions, lack the positive; e. g. hinter, *hinder*, from the preposition hinter, *behind;* ober, *upper*, from the adverb oben, *above.*

5. Erſt, *first*, and letzt, *last*, are isolated superlatives. They are, however, sometimes compared with er as if they were positives, der erſtere and der letztere being quite common in the sense of *the former* and *the latter.*

6. As in English, some adjectives are, from their meaning, incapable of comparison; e. g. ganz, *all;* täglich, *daily.*

EXERCISE 20

Reading Lesson: Comparison of Adjectives

Liebſter Freund! Die Ferien ſind zu Ende, und ich bin ſchon längere[1] Zeit wieder zu Hauſe. Die kleine Reiſe war mir im höchſten Grade zuträglich. Ich bin viel ſtärker und heiterer als vor einem Monat; auch habe ich jetzt einen beſſeren Begriff vom mittleren[2] Deutſchland. Von Leipzig ging[3] ich zunächſt nach Dresden und blieb dort mehrere Tage. Dresden iſt nicht viel größer als Leipzig, aber es hat eine ſchönere Lage. Es liegt nämlich in einem prächtigen Tale zu beiden Seiten der Elbe, der ältere und größere Teil auf dem linken Ufer. Unter den Sehenswürdigkeiten der Stadt iſt die große Bildergallerie am berühmteſten. Dieſe[4] war für mich, wie für die meiſten Fremden, der

interessanteste Punkt in Dresden. Weiteres[5] über meine Wanderungen schreibe ich vielleicht in meinem nächsten Briefe.

EXERCISE 20 a

1. Es ist kalt heute, viel kälter als gestern. 2. Wir haben jetzt gewiß das kälteste Wetter des Jahres. 3. Herr Wirt, ich wünsche ein größeres Zimmer, mit höheren Fenstern und besserem Lichte. 4. Wir haben keine größeren Zimmer; dies ist das größte im Hause. 5. Wohnen Sie in dem älteren oder in dem neueren Teile der Stadt? 6. Es gibt kürzere Wege von hier nach Hause, aber dies[6] ist der beste. 7. Zu dieser Jahreszeit sind die Tage am längsten und am schönsten. 8. Er ist ein besserer Arzt, aber weniger berühmt als sein jüngerer Bruder. 9. Als ältester Sohn der Familie hat er ein größeres Vermögen als seine jüngeren Brüder. 10. Das Leben in Deutschland ist jetzt teurer[7] als in früheren Zeiten. 11. Goethe war ein größerer Dichter als Schiller, aber kein besserer Mensch. 12. Ich kenne seine späteren Werke am besten.

EXERCISE 20 b

1. He is two years older than I. 2. She is my dearest friend. 3. The days are becoming shorter. 4. I know[8] a shorter way. 5. You are evidently in a more cheerful mood. 6. Where do you find stronger men or more beautiful women? 7. This is the beginning of better days. 8. Among Schiller's later plays[9] *Wilhelm Tell* is the best. 9. As poet Schiller is strongest in the drama. 10. That is the highest tower in the world. 11. Fräulein Berta is more pretty[10] than beautiful. 12. This is surely the coldest day of the year. 13. Death[11] is the beginning of a better life.

Vocabulary

als, *conj.* than, when, **as.**
der Begriff, *s.*[2] idea, conception.
beide, *pron. adj.* **both,** two.
bleiben, *v.* remain; *pret.* blieb, [-**leave**].
der Brief, *s.*[2] letter.
die Ferien (*pl. only*), vacation.
fremd, *adj.* strange, foreign.
die Galerie', *w. gallery.*
der Grad, *s.*[2] degree, *grade.*

heiter, *adj.* cheerful.
die Lage, *w.* situation [**lay**].
link, *adj.* left.
mehrere, *adj.* several.
mich, *pron.* (*acc.*) **me.** [say.
nämlich, *adv.* **namely,** that is to
die Se'henswü'rdigkei't, *w.* sight.
ſtark, *adj.* strong [**stark**].
der Teil, *s.*[2] part, [**deal**].
das Ufer, *s.*[1] bank, shore.
die Wanderung, *w.* **wandering,** travel.
zunä'chſt, *adv.* first.
zu'trä'glich, *adj.* beneficial.

NOTES. — [1] **längere Zeit,** *some time, a considerable length of time.* The comparative sometimes denotes simply a moderate degree, and can not then be translated literally; e. g. eine ältere Dame, *an elderly lady.* — [2] **mittleren,** *central.* — [3] **ging,** *went;* pret. 1. and 3. sing. of gehen. — [4] **Dieſe,** *this;* fem. of dies referring to Bildergallerie. — [5] **Weiteres,** *further (details).* — [6] **dies,** instead of dieſer (agreeing in gender with Weg), which would also be correct. — [7] **teurer** instead of teuerer; see § 111, 3. — [8] **know,** kennen. — [9] **plays,** Dramen. — [10] **more pretty,** mehr hübſch, rather than hübſcher. — [11] **death**; use the def. article.

EXERCISE 21

COLLOQUY: WEAK ADJECTIVES

1

Sie waren wohl den größten Teil des Sommers in England?

Ja, aber nur in den kleineren Städten; erſt im Herbſte ging ich nach London.

Waren Sie längere Zeit in London, oder nur ein paar Tage?

Im ganzen etwa drei Wochen; ich blieb etwas länger in Paris, am längſten aber in Berlin.

Was denken Sie denn jetzt von den drei größten Städten Europas?

Für mich war Paris am intereſſanteſten.

Das iſt höchſt ſonderbar; die meiſten Amerikaner haben[1] doch London am liebſten.

Das iſt möglich, aber meine Sympathien ſind mehr franzöſiſch als engliſch.

2

Why did you not go[2] to London at once? That is the most interesting place in England, is it not?

Yes, to be sure, but not the pleasantest in the hot season.

For my part [8] I always like the large cities best.

That is not my taste. People [4] live too fast in the large cities. I love a more quiet life.

No doubt one needs [5] a pretty long time [6] for [7] the sights of London.

Yes, indeed; it is a most interesting [8] city.

What do you think of the London weather? [9] It is the worst [10] in the world, is it not?

Oh no; the weather is no [11] worse in London than here at home.

EXERCISE 21a

1. Sie ſchreibt höchſt intereſſante Briefe. 2. Unter den neueren Dichtern leſe [12] ich Schiller am liebſten. 3. Die Geſellſchaft war langweilig im höchſten Grade; es waren nur ältere Leute da. 4. Ich weiß nichts Beſſeres zu tun. 5. Die Dresdener Bildergallerie iſt die berühmteſte in ganz Deutſchland. 6. In der letzten Zeit [13] hatten [14] wir äußerſt unangenehmes Wetter. 7. Dieſes Buch iſt zu groß; ich wünſche ein kleineres. 8. Der erſte Teil des Werkes iſt von größtem Intereſſe. 9. Die beſten Theater finden ſich [15] meiſtens nur in den größeren Städten. 10. Ich finde das Gebirge am ſchönſten im Herbſte. 11. Die berühmteſten Schriftſteller ſind nicht immer die größten. 12. Der Herr Profeſſor redete aufs freundlichſte über ſein neueſtes Werk.

EXERCISE 21b

1. He is a teacher of the modern [16] languages. 2. That is the most interesting part of the whole story. 3. The father is an elderly [17] gentleman with a white beard. 4. I am reading a most interesting story. 5. The hills and valleys are at their loveliest [18] in the autumn. 6. That is an exceedingly rare book. 7. No better man lives. 8. (The) *Faust* is Goethe's greatest work. 9. A poet has to do with the higher interests of life. 10. One finds the best thoughts in her last work. 11. I have nothing better. 12. His great advantage is his rare knowledge of modern [16] philosophy. 13. The last part of the work is the least [19] interesting.

VOCABULARY

a'ngenehm, *adj.* pleasant.
brauchen, *v.* need [**brook**].
drei, *num.* **three.**
engliſch, *adj.* **English.**
franzö'ſiſch, *adj.* French.
der Geſchmack, *s.*[2] taste [**-smack**].
heiß, *adj.* **hot.**
lieben, *v.* **love.**
lieb haben, *v.* like [**have lief**].
möglich, *adj.* possible.
der Ort, *s.*[2–3] place.
raſch, *adj.* fast [**rash**].
ſofo'rt, *adv.* at once.
die Sympathie', *w.* *sympathy.*
der Vorzug, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), advantage.
waru'm, *adv.* (*inter.*) why.

NOTES. — [1] **haben . . . am liebſten,** *like . . . best;* lit. *have*, i. e. *hold dearest.* — [2] **Why did you not go to L. at once?** Warum gingen Sie nicht ſofort nach L.? — [3] **For my part,** für mein (not meinen) Teil; Teil in this phrase being neuter. — [4] **People,** die Leute. — [5] **no doubt one needs,** man braucht wohl. — [6] **a pretty long time,** längere Zeit or eine ziemlich lange Zeit. — [7] **for,** für. — [8] **a most interesting,** eine höchſt intereſſante; one could not say eine intereſſanteſte. — [9] **of the London weather,** von dem Londoner Wetter. — [10] **the worst,** das ſchlechteſte. — [11] **no,** nicht. — [12] **leſe . . . am liebſten,** *like best to read.* As adv. am liebſten is the superlative of gern. — [13] **in . . . Zeit,** *of late.* — [14] **hatten wir;** translate here *we have had.* — [15] **finden ſich,** *are found,* lit. *find themselves.* — [16] **modern;** = newer. — [17] **elderly;** = older. — [18] **at their loveliest,** am ſchönſten. — [19] **the least,** am wenigſten, or am mindeſten.

THE NUMERALS

115. The Cardinals. The fundamental numbers and the mode of forming the others appear from the following table:

1	ein(s)	13	dreizehn	50	fünfzig
2	zwei	14	vierzehn	60	ſechzig
3	drei	15	fünfzehn	70	ſieb(en)zig
4	vier	16	ſechzehn	80	achtzig
5	fünf	17	ſieb(en)zehn	90	neunzig
6	ſechs	18	achtzehn	100	hundert
7	ſieben	19	neunzehn	120	hundert und zwanzig
8	acht	20	zwanzig	121	hundert einundzwanzig
9	neun	21	einundzwanzig	150	hundert und fünfzig
10	zehn	22	zweiundzwanzig	200	zweihundert
11	elf	30	dreißig	1,000	tauſend
12	zwölf	40	vierzig		

1. The number 1,121, for example, is read tauſend einhundert einundzwanzig; 1,000,000 is eine Million; 1,000,000,000 eine Milliarde; 1,000,000,000,000 eine Billion.

2. For A *hundred*, A *thousand*, German has simply hundert, tauſend, ein being used only where English would have ONE *hundred*, ONE *thousand*.

116. Inflection and Use of ein. When it agrees with a noun expressed, and is not preceded by der, the numeral ein is inflected like the article ein; e. g. wir ſind ein Volk, *we are one people;* wir ſind eines Bluts, *we are of one blood.*

1. But if it is used without a noun it takes the ending er in the nominative singular masculine, and es in the nominative and accusative singular neuter; e. g. einer von uns hat unrecht, *one of us is wrong;* einer der Knaben, *one of the boys;* eines der Mädchen, *one of the girls.*

2. Preceded by der (dies or jen-), ein has the inflection of a weak adjective and forms a plural, die einen, with the sense of *some;* e. g. der eine oder der andere hat unrecht, *the one or the other is wrong.*

3. Ein, *one*, is distinguished from ein, *a*, when necessary, by spaced type, or by a capital initial; less often by an accent. See examples in § 116.

117. The Numbers above ein. The numbers above ein are usually uninflected.

1. But zwei and drei sometimes form a nominative and accusative in e, a genitive in er and a dative in en. Some of the numbers above drei may also take the ending e, especially when no noun follows.

118. The Ordinals. From one to twenty the ordinal stems are formed by suffixing t to the cardinal; e. g. viert, *fourth;* dreizehnt, *thirteenth.* From twenty on

they are formed by suffixing ſt to the tens; e. g. zwanzigſt, *twentieth;* fünfunddreißigſt, *thirty-fifth.*

1. But *first* is erſt, *third* is dritt (not dreit), and *eighth* is acht (not achtt).

2. Such forms as zweit, zwanzigſt, have only a theoretical existence. Like the superlatives ſchönſt, beſt, etc. the ordinals are only used after der or a pronominal modifier, and have then the inflection of an adjective; e. g. ſein dritter Sohn, *his third son;* am 21ſten (= einundzwanzigſten) April, *on the 21st of April.*

3. The partitive ordinals are formed by suffixing tel, an abbreviation of Teil, *part*, to the ordinal stem, the preceding t being dropped; e. g. ein Drittel, *a third;* ein Sechſtel, *a sixth.* The words are neuter substantives.

a. Half is halb, as adjective, or die Hälfte, as noun; e. g. der halbe Weg, *half the way;* ein halbes Dutzend, *half a dozen;* die Hälfte des Apfels, *half of the apple.* Halb is also used substantively, without inflection, in fractional numbers; e. g. drei und einhalb Jahre, *three and a half years.*

b. A peculiar formation is the so-called dimidiative, made by suffixing halb to the ordinal stem with connecting vowel e, the number thus denoted being less by one-half than the ordinal; e. g. drittehalb, *two and a half*, i. e. (*two complete and the*) *third* (*only*) *half.* Instead of zweitehalb, anderthalb is used for *one and a half.* The dimidiatives are not inflected.

EXERCISE 22

Reading Lesson: Numerals

Ein deutſches Gymnaſium[1] hat einen Kurſus von neun Jahren. In der unterſten Klaſſe, der ſogenannten Sexta,[2] ſind die Schüler im Durchſchnitt neun bis zehn Jahre alt. Der Schüler vollendet den Kurſus alſo im neunzehnten oder zwanzigſten Jahre ſeines Lebens. Ein Schüler im achten oder neunten Jahre des Kurſus heißt ein Primaner,[3] im ſechſten und ſiebenten Jahre, ein Sekundaner, u. ſ. w.[4] In den höheren Klaſſen hat der Schüler mei-

ſtens dreißig Stunden die Woche, alſo im Durchſchnitt fünf Stunden täglich. Die Schule beginnt um 7 Uhr vormittags im Sommer, um 8 Uhr im Winter. Das Schuljahr beginnt im Frühling acht Tage nach Oſtern und zerfällt in vier Termine. Das erſte Vierteljahr dauert bis zum 24. Juni, das zweite bis Ende September, das dritte bis Weihnachten. Die Ferien betragen im ganzen zehn bis zwölf Wochen, alſo etwa 21 Prozent[5] des Jahres. Außerdem gibt es mehrere beſondere[6] Feiertage, jetzt unter anderen den 2. September, den Jahrestag[7] der großen Schlacht bei Sedan am 2. Sept. 1870.

EXERCISE 22 a

1. A week consists of seven days. 2. The year has twelve months, the month thirty days and the day twenty-four hours. 3. With us[8] the most important holidays are Christmas, New Year's,[9] the 22d of February[10] and the 4th of July. 4. Schiller's *Wallenstein* is divided into three parts. 5. The first part contains eleven scenes and one thousand one hundred and five lines. 6. The second part contains two thousand six hundred and fifty-one lines. 7. The entire work contains seven thousand six hundred and twenty-two lines. 8. The 23d of April,[11] 1897, was the two hundred and eighty-first anniversary of the death of Shakespeare. 9. Eight and seven is fifteen. 10. Three times[12] nine is twenty-seven. 11. Five-sixths of thirty is twenty-five.

Vocabulary

ander, *pron. adj.* **other.**
außerdem, *adv.* besides.
beginnen, *v.* **begin.**
betragen, *v.* amount to.
dauern, *v.* last, continue.
der Durchſchnitt, *s.*[2] average.
der Feiertag, *s.*[2] holiday.
der Frühling, *s.*[2] spring.
das Gymnaſium, *mx. gymnasium.*
heißen, *v.* be called [**hight**].
die Klaſſe, *w. class.*
der Kurſus (*pl.* Kurſus *or* Kurſe), *course.*
Oſtern, *pl.* **Easter.**
die Schlacht, *w.* battle.
die Schule, *w. school.*
der Schüler, *s.*[1] *scholar*, pupil.
ſo'gena'nnt, *adj.* so-called.
der Termi'n, *s.*[2] *term.*
die Uhr, *w.* clock [**hour**].

um, *prep.* (*acc.*) at, about.
unter, *adj.* lower [**under**].
vollen'den, *v.* complete, finish.
vor'mittags, *adv.* forenoons.
Weih'nachten, *pl.* Christmas.
der Winter, s.[1] **winter.**
zerfal'len (in, *acc.*), *v.* be divided (into); *3. sing.* zerfällt.

NOTES. — [1] **Gymnaſium**; the name given in Germany to a particular kind of preparatory school. — [2] **Sexta,** *sexta;* i. e. 'sixth class' or 'form,' from Latin *sexta classis.* After Sexta come Quinta and Quarta, each one year; then Tertia, Sekunda and Prima, each two years. — [3] **Prima'ner,** i. e. a *prima*-boy. There is no corresponding English word. — [4] **u. ſ. w.** = und ſo weiter, *and so forth.* — [5] **Prozent**; the German says *pro cent.* instead of *per cent.* — [6] **beſondere,** *special.* — [7] **Jahrestag,** *year-day,* i. e. *anniversary.* — [8] **With us,** bei uns. — [9] **New Year's,** Neujahr. — [10] **February,** Fe'bruar. — [11] **April,** Apri'l. — [12] **Three times,** dreimal; so einmal, *once,* zweimal, *twice,* etc.

EXERCISE 23

COLLOQUY: NUMERALS

1

Wie viel Uhr[1] iſt es? Ungefähr halb 9?[2]

Nein, es iſt erſt 20 Minuten nach 8. Aber weshalb fragen Sie?

Um drei Viertel[3] 10 gehe ich nach dem Bahnhofe.

Erwarten Sie denn jemand?

Ja, ich erwarte meine beiden Schweſtern mit[4] dem nächſten Zuge.

Sie haben alſo zwei Schweſtern? Ich wußte nur von der einen, der kleinen Berta.

Ja, ich habe noch eine.[5] Sie heißt Marie, und iſt etwa anderthalb Jahre jünger als ich.

Und wie alt ſind Sie denn?

Ich bin beinahe zwanzig. Mein Geburtstag iſt heute über acht[6] Tage, am 29. Februar.

Sie haben alſo nur alle vier Jahre[7] Geburtstag. Das iſt doch ſonderbar.

2

How late is it, I wonder? About a quarter to 10?

No, it is only half past 9. But why do you ask?

At[8] 10 I am going to the station. My sister Marie is coming home to-day.

Is it possible? Why, to-day is only the 20th.[9] There are four[10] days yet before Christmas.

Yes, but my birthday is on[11] the 22d.

Oh that's it[12] — a family festival.[13] How old are you, pray?

I am in my[14] twenty-first year.

Is your sister older or younger than you?

Marie is about two years and a half[15] younger than I.

VOCABULARY

ach, *interj.* oh, ah.
all, *pron. adj.* **all,** every.
der Bahnhof, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö), station, depot.
erwarten, *v.* expect.
das Feſt, *s.*[2] festival, *feast.*
fragen, *v.* ask.
die Geburt, *w.* **birth.**
jemand, *pron.* some one.
jung, *adj.* (*comp.* ü), **young.**
die Minu'te, *w. minute.*
die Schweſter, *w.* **sister.**
u'ngefä'hr, *adv.* about.
weshalb, *pron.* why.
wußte, *v.* knew; *pret. of* wiſſen.
der Zug, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), train [**tug**].

NOTES. — [1] **Wie viel Uhr,** *what o'clock.* — [2] **halb 9,** *half past 8;* so also halb eins, *half past twelve,* etc. — [3] **Um drei Viertel 10,** *at a quarter to 10.* The preposition auf = *to* (i. e. *on the way toward,* beginning at 9) is understood before 10. Ein Viertel (auf) 10 = *a quarter past 9.* — [4] **mit,** *by.* In German one is said to travel mit der Eiſenbahn, BY *rail.* — [5] **noch eine,** *another; another* in the sense of *an additional one* is always noch ein. — [6] **heute über acht Tage,** *a week from to-day.* — [7] **alle vier Jahre,** *every four years.* — [8] **At,** um. — [9] **Why, to-day is only,** heute iſt doch erſt; doch = *why.* — [10] **There are . . . before,** es ſind noch . . . bis. — [11] **on,** an. — [12] **Oh that's it,** ach ſo! — [13] **family festival,** Fami'lienfeſt. — [14] **in my,** im. — [15] **two years and a half;** either zwei und einhalb Jahre, or drittehalb Jahre.

THE PRONOUN

119. Classification of Pronouns. The pronouns are of six kinds: personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative and indefinite.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

120. The Forms. The personal pronouns are ich, *I*, of the first person; du, *thou*, of the second, and er, ſie, es, *he*, *she*, *it*, of the third. With these are classed the reflexive ſich, and the intensive ſelbſt, which are indeclinable. The others are inflected as follows:

Singular

	Common Gender		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	ich	du	er	ſie	es
G.	meiner	deiner	ſeiner	ihrer	ſeiner
	(mein)	(dein)	(ſein)		(ſein) (es)
D.	mir	dir	ihm	ihr	ihm
A.	mich	dich	ihn	ſie	es

Plural

	Common Gender		Common Gender
N.	wir	ihr	ſie
G.	unſer	euer	ihrer
D.	uns	euch	ihnen
A.	uns	euch	ſie

1. The forms in parenthesis are rare or poetical.

121. The Pronouns of Address. The pronouns of address now employed in the language of every-day life are du and Sie, both of them ordinarily to be translated by *you*. Du is used in speaking to a member of one's own family, to an intimate friend, a young child, one of the lower animals, or any inanimate object. It is also used in addressing God. Sie is used in addressing strangers, acquaintances and less intimate friends.

1. The form Sie is simply the pronoun ſie = *they*, used in polite address, and distinguished, in that use, by a capital; for which reason it takes its verb in the third person plural.

2. The foregoing statements do not describe the usage of the past, nor of poetry (see § 301).

122. Non-personal Uses in the Third Person. Although called 'personal' pronouns, er and ſie do not always refer, and es seldom refers, to a person.

1. Any masculine noun is regularly referred to by er, a feminine by ſie and a neuter by es; e. g. der Rock paßt nicht, er iſt zu eng, *the coat does not fit, it is too tight;* ich kenne die Stelle, ſie findet ſich bei Schiller, *I know the passage, it is found in Schiller.*

a. But such neuter nouns as Weib, *woman*, Fräulein, *young lady*, Mädchen, *girl*, are usually referred to, in accordance with the natural gender, by ſie instead of es.

2. The pronouns er, ſie, es are not used in the genitive, or after a preposition, in referring to an inanimate object, a demonstrative or a compound of da (before vowels dar) being substituted; e. g. das iſt meine Sache, und Sie haben nichts damit (not mit ihr) zu tun, *that is my affair and you have nothing to do with it;* das Buch iſt lehrreich, aber der Stil desſelben (not der Stil von ihm, nor der Stil ſeiner) iſt ſchlecht, *the book is instructive, but the style of it is bad.* In the last example it would also be correct to say ſein Stil, or deſſen Stil, *its style.*

a. The substitution of a demonstrative for a personal pronoun is quite common, even when the pronoun refers to persons or is not governed by a preposition.

3. The neuter es is often used (somewhat like English *there*, but more freely) to anticipate a logical subject which for any reason it is desired to have come after the verb; e. g. es ſind ihrer drei, *there are three of them;* es irrt der Menſch, *man errs.*

a. For other special uses of es see § 303.

123. The Reflexive. A reflexive pronoun denotes the subject in an objective relation.

1. In the third person dative and accusative of all genders and both numbers, the reflexive is ſich. It is to be

translated by *himself, herself, itself, themselves;* as reflexive of Sie (see § 4, 2) by *yourself;* e. g. er haßt ſich (acc.), *he hates himself;* er ſchmeichelt ſich (dat.), *he flatters himself;* ſie machen ſich (Sie machen ſich) große Mühe, *they give themselves* (*you give yourself*) *great pains.*

2. In the first and second persons, and in the genitive of the third, there is no separate reflexive, the proper form of the personal pronoun being used instead; as ich haſſe mich, *I hate myself;* ihr ſchmeichelt euch, *you flatter yourselves.*

3. In the plural ſich is sometimes used with reciprocal force, and is then equivalent to *each other, one another;* e. g. ſie waren ehemals Freunde, aber jetzt haſſen ſie ſich, *they were once friends, but now they hate each other* (or *one another*). Uns and euch may be used in the same way.

124. The Intensive. The pronoun ſelbſt or ſelber, both forms indeclinable, may be used after any form of a personal pronoun, or after ſich, for the sake of emphasis; e. g. er iſt ſelbſt Dichter, *he is a poet himself;* er betrügt ſich ſelbſt, *he deceives* HIMSELF.

EXERCISE 24

Reading Lesson: Personal Pronouns

Teure Mutter! Dein[1] lieber Brief vom 23. letzten[2] Monats kam mir[3] erſt geſtern[4] zu Händen. Du biſt in Unruhe wegen meiner Geſundheit, aber Du[5] brauchſt Dich[5] nicht darüber zu ängſtigen. Mir geht es gut, aber wie es ſcheint, iſt das nicht der Fall bei Euch[6] zu Hauſe. Der kleine Unfall der Schweſter macht mir immer noch bange. War er denn wirklich ſo unbedeutend? Wie befindet ſie ſich jetzt? Bitte, ſchreibe[7] mir Weiteres darüber.

Ich hatte ſelbſt vor ein paar Tagen ein kleines Abenteuer. Am letzten Sonnabend nämlich ſaß[8] ich ruhig in meinem Zimmer und las[9] in einer Zeitung; es war um halb 10 vormittags. Auf einmal[10] klopfte[11] es an die Türe; ich öffnete, und da ſtan-

den zwei Polizisten vor mir. „Mein Herr," sagte[12] der eine derselben,[13] „haben Sie Ihren Geldbeutel bei sich?" „Gewiß," antwortete ich erstaunt und steckte die Hand in die Tasche. Aber der Beutel war nicht da.

EXERCISE 24 a

1. I find myself again at home. 2. The book belongs to me. 3. We are Americans. 4. She means us. 5. He has nothing to do with us. 6. She thinks only of[14] herself. 7. She is only[15] playing with him. 8. She finds herself among friends. 9. I expect her by[16] the next train. 10. They are coming with her. 11. She is going with them. 12. Here is the letter; I had it in my pocket. 13. There is the evening paper, but there is[17] nothing in it. 14. The book is tedious, especially the last part of it. 15. We know each other already. 16. They do not know each other.

Vocabulary

das A'benteu'er, *s.*[1] *adventure.*
ängstigen (sich), *v.* torment one's self, be anxious.
a'ntwo'rten, *v.* **answer**; *pret.* antwortete.
bang(e), *adv.* anxiously; bange machen, *with dat.* to trouble.
der Beutel, *s.*[1] purse.
ei'nmal, *adv.* once; einma'l, just, pray.
erstau'nt, *pple.* astonished.
der Fall, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), case [**fall**].
das Geld, *s.*[3] money [**yield**].
die Gesundheit, *w.* health [**-sound-**].
die Hand, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), **hand.**
klopfen, *v.* knock; *pret.* klopfte.
öffnen, *v.* **open**; *pret.* öffnete.
der Polizi'st, *w. policeman.*
scheinen, *v.* seem, **shine.**
sitzen, *v.* **sit**; *pret.* saß.
der Sonnabend, *s.*[2] Saturday [**eve** of **Sun**-day].
stecken, *v.* put, **stick**; *pret.* steckte.
stehen, *v.* stand; *pret.* stand.
die Tasche, *w.* pocket.
die Tür(e), *w.* **door.**
u'nbedeu'tend, *adj.* insignificant.
der U'nfall, *s.*[2] (*pl.*) ä, accident.
die U'nruhe, *w.* unrest, concern.

Notes. — [1] **Dein,** *your*, the possessive corresponding to Du, which the writer uses in addressing his mother. — [2] **letzten Monats,** *of last month.* Notice the weak adjective, § 104, *a*; but one might also say des letzten Monats. — [3] **kam mir . . . zu Händen,** *came into my hands, came to hand*; mir takes the place of a possessive agreeing with Händen. Kam is pret. of kommen. — [4] **erst gestern,** *only yesterday.* — [5] **Du,**

Dich; all pronouns of address are written with a capital in letters (see § 4, 2). Dich is object of ängſtigen; Du brauchſt Dich nicht zu ängſtigen = *you do not need to trouble yourself.* — [6] **bei Euch**, *with you*, i. e. the family. — [7] **ſchreibe**, *write*; imperative, 2. pers. sing. — [8] **ſaß ich**, *I was sitting* (see Ex. V, n. 3). — [9] **las**, *was reading*; pret. of leſen. — [10] **auf ei'nmal**, *all at once.* — [11] **klopfte es**, *there was a knock.* — [12] **ſagte**, *said*; pret. of ſagen. — [13] **derſelben**, *of them* (§ 134, 1). — [14] **of**, an, with acc. — [15] **only**; see § 96. — [16] **by**, mit. — [17] **there is**, es iſt.

THE POSSESSIVES

125. Strong Forms. The possessives which correspond to the various personal pronouns are as follows:

ich	: mein, *my*	es	: ſein, *its*
du	: dein, *thy*	wir	: unſer, *our*
er	: ſein, *his*	ihr	: euer, *your*
ſie	: ihr, *her*	ſie	: ihr, *their*
		Sie	: Ihr, *your*

Sein also stands for the indefinite possessive *one's*.

1. The possessives, when they agree with a noun, are declined in the singular like the article ein, in the plural like any strong adjective; thus:

	Singular			*Plural*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	mein	meine	mein	meine
G.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
D.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
A.	meinen	meine	mein	meine
N.	euer	eure	euer	eure
G.	eures	eurer	eures	eurer
D.	eurem	eurer	eurem	euren
A.	euren	eure	euer	eure

2. But when no noun follows (except sometimes in the predicate), the possessives, like ſein and the numeral ein, take the ending er in the nominative singular masculine, and the ending es in the nominative and accusative singular

neuter; e. g. ſein Vater iſt Kaufmann, meiner iſt Arzt, *his father is a merchant, mine is a physician.*

126. Weak Forms. Any of the above mentioned possessives may be preceded by der, and take, then, the regular inflection of a weak adjective; e. g. ſeine Eltern ſind reich, die meinen ſind arm, *his parents are rich, mine are* poor.

1. Each of the possessives forms, further, a derivative stem in ig (unſer and euer losing their e before the suffix), which is used only after der and has also the inflection of a weak adjective; thus instead of meiner and die meinen, in the last two examples, one might say der meinige and die meinigen. Neither of the weak forms of the possessive can be used with accompanying noun.

a. Observe that the forms described in the last three paragraphs correspond to the English *mine, thine, hers*, etc., which take the place of a noun limited by a possessive adjective. But *mine, thine*, etc. may be represented in the predicate by the uninflected mein, dein, etc.

2. Das Meine, das Meinige, etc. (as substantives) refer to property; die Meinen, die Meinigen, etc. to friends, relatives, partisans, or the like; e. g. er hat das Seine (das Seinige) verſchwendet, *he has squandered his property;* ich grüße dich und die Deinigen, *I greet you and yours.*

127. Possessive Compounds. Each of the possessive stems, amplified by the syllable et, enters into composition with the three prepositions halb (halber, halben), *on behalf of*, wegen, *on account of*, and um . . . willen, *for the sake of*, giving the forms meinetwegen, *on my account, for aught I care*, meinethalb, *on my account*, um meinetwillen, *for my sake*, etc.

1. Meinetwegen, *on my account*, deinethalben, *on your behalf*, etc. take the place of wegen meiner, *on account of me,*

deiner halben, *on behalf of you*, etc. On the origin of these forms see § 306.

2. Each of the possessives, in the genitive singular masculine, strong form (meines, ihres, etc.), enters into composition with gleichen, from the adjective gleich, *like*, giving the forms meinesgleichen, *the like of me*, Ihresgleichen, *the like of you*, etc. These forms are invariable.

128. Congruence of the Possessive. The possessive sein corresponds, in the singular number, to masculine and neuter nouns, ihr to feminines; e. g. der Baum hat seine Blätter verloren, *the tree has lost its leaves;* selbst die Freiheit hat ihre Gefahren, *even freedom has its dangers.*

1. But with neuter nouns whose natural gender is feminine the possessive is apt to be ihr; e. g. das Mädchen hat ihre Mutter verloren, *the girl has lost her mother.*

2. With a neuter collective noun the possessive is regularly sein, tho English may require *their;* e. g. das Volk bestand auf seine Rechte, *the people insisted upon their rights.*

EXERCISE 25

Reading Lesson: Personal and Possessive Pronouns

„Ist dies Ihr Eigentum?" fragte er nun, und damit legte er einen Beutel vor mir[1] auf den Tisch. „Der Beutel ist allerdings mein," antwortete ich, „aber wie in aller Welt kommt er in Ihre Hände?" „Das ist unsre Sache," antwortete er. „Aber ist es[2] denn wirklich der Ihrige? Besehen Sie ihn genau." Darauf nahm ich den Beutel in die Hand; es war doch[3] nicht meiner, nur dem meinigen sehr ähnlich. Jetzt erklärte ich ihnen meinen Irrtum. Sie sahen[4] sich verschmitzt in die Augen und redeten leise ein paar Worte mit einander. Darauf sagte der ältere der beiden Männer zu mir: „Wo waren Sie denn gestern abend, und wie viel Geld hatten Sie bei sich?" Ich nannte ihm den Ort, einen gewissen Konzertgarten, und die Summe von 75 Mark.[5] „Das stimmt genau," sagte jetzt der jüngere zu seinem

Kameraden. „Nun," ſagte der andere zu mir: „Iſt dies vielleicht der Ihrige?" Damit zog er einen anderen Beutel aus der Taſche. Diesmal war es wirklich der meinige; auch ſtimmte der Inhalt. Die Geſchichte[6] mit dem falſchen Beutel war nur eine Prüfung meiner Redlichkeit.

EXERCISE 25 a

REMARK. — Translate 'you' by du, Sie or ihr, as you please, but take care that pronoun and possessive be congruous; that is, do not, in the same sentence, associate dein with Sie, Ihr with du, or the like.

1. I do it for your sake. 2. How goes it with you and yours? 3. Your German is much better than mine. 4. Our prices are much lower than his. 5. My house is not far from hers. 6. That is my affair, not yours. 7. His last work is the best. 8. Your new friend is an old acquaintance of mine. 9. We find our highest happiness in quiet daily work. 10. The girl is the picture of her mother. 11. My little garden is now my greatest delight. 12. I think your old room was better than your new (one). 13. They were friends their whole life long. 14. Here are tickets for you and your family.

VOCABULARY

ähnlich, *adj.* (*dat.*) similar.
a'llerdi'ngs, *adv.* to be sure.
beſehen, *v.* look at [**be-see**].
dami't, *adv.* therewith.
darau'f, *adv.* **there-upon.**
das Ei'gentum, *s.*[3] property [**own-dom**].
eina'nder, *pron.* (*indecl.*) each other, **one another.**
erklären, *v.* explain; *pret.* erklärte.
falſch, *adj. false*, wrong.
genau', *adj.* exact, careful.
der Inhalt, *s.*[2] contents [**in-hold**].
der Kamera'd, *w. comrade.*
legen, *v.* **lay**; *pret.* legte.
leiſe, *adv.* softly, in low tone.
die Mark, *w. mark.*
nennen, *v.* **name**; *pret.* nannte.
die Prüfung, *w.* trial, *proving.*
die Redlichkeit, *w.* honesty.
ſtimmen, *v.* tally, coincide.
die Summe, *w. sum.*
verſchmitzt, *adv.* shrewdly.
das Wort, *n. s.*[2-3] **word.**[7]
ziehen, *v.* draw; *pret.* zog [**tow**].

NOTES. — [1] **vor mir auf den Tiſch**; after legen, ſetzen and other verbs of placing, auf takes the acc. on account of the motion implied. Vor

mir, dat. as answering the question *whereabouts* upon the table. — [2] **es**; notice the gender; Beutel is masc., but es is used without regard to the gender of the predicate der Ihrige, to denote identity. — [3] **es war doch nicht meiner,** *it was not mine after all.* The predicate possessive is apt to be declined when the noun to which it refers is not expressed in the same sentence. — [4] **sahen sich . . . in die Augen,** *looked in each other's eyes;* sahen, pret. of sehen; sich, dat. in reciprocal sense, § 123, 3. — [5] **Mark,** *marks;* the singular form is always used after a numeral. The mark is the German unit of currency = $0.25. — [6] **Geschichte mit,** *affair of.* — [7] **Worte** means *words* in connected discourse; Wörter, *words* without connection.

EXERCISE 26

Reading Lesson: Congruence of Personal, Possessive and Reflexive Pronouns

Note. — The same matter is given below in three different forms: (*a*) as it would appear if written, say, by a teacher to *one or more* pupils who had just left school; (*b*) as it would be written by a father to his son; (*c*) as it would be written by a father to his two sons.

(a)

Ich sage Ihnen aufrichtig, Sie haben eine Zeit schwerer Prüfung vor sich; darum hüten Sie sich vor[1] falschen Schritten. Ihre Eltern, Ihre Lehrer, erwarten viel von Ihnen; auf Ihnen und auf Ihrem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Sie kennen Ihre Pflicht; ich brauche sie Ihnen nicht zu erklären. Vergeuden Sie nicht Ihre Zeit; verlassen Sie sich so viel als möglich[2] auf Ihre eigne Kraft, auf Ihren eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen seien Sie[3] sich selber treu.

(b)

Ich sage Dir aufrichtig, Du hast eine Zeit schwerer Prüfung vor Dir; darum hüte[4] Dich vor falschen Schritten. Deine Eltern, Deine Lehrer, erwarten viel von Dir; auf Dir und auf Deinem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Du kennst Deine Pflicht; ich brauche sie Dir nicht zu erklären. Vergeude[4] nicht Deine Zeit; verlasse[4] Dich so viel als möglich auf Deine eigne Kraft, auf Deinen eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen sei[4] Dir selber treu.

(c)

Ich ſage Euch aufrichtig, Ihr habt eine Zeit ſchwerer Prüfung vor Euch; darum hütet[5] Euch vor falſchen Schritten. Eure Eltern, Eure Lehrer, erwarten viel von Euch; auf Euch und auf Eurem Glücke ruhen ihre Hoffnungen. Aber Ihr kennt Eure Pflicht; ich brauche ſie Euch nicht zu erklären. Vergeudet[5] nicht Eure Zeit; verlaßt[5] Euch ſo viel als möglich auf Eure eigne Kraft, auf Euren eignen Fleiß. Vor allen Dingen ſeid[5] Euch ſelber treu.

EXERCISE 26 a

REMARK. — Write this exercise three times for the three cases that 'you' means (*a*) a near relative or an intimate friend; (*b*) two intimate friends, and (*c*) one or more acquaintances.

1. Where are you? 2. How do you do?[6] 3. What have you in your hand? 4. How goes it with you? 5. I bring you[7] good news. 6. I know you and I rely upon you. 7. I need you and you need me. 8. Have you any[8] money by you? 9. Luckily for you he does not see you. 10. You are still young; you have yet the best part of life before you.

VOCABULARY

au'frichtig, *adj.* sincere, frank [**up-right**].
darau'm, *adv.* therefore.
der Fleiß, *s.* (*no pl.*) industry.
die Hoffnung, *w.* **hope.**
hüten (ſich), *v.* be on one's guard [**heed**].
die Pflicht, *w.* duty [**plight**].
ruhen, *v.* rest.
der Schritt, *s.*[2] step.
ſchwer, *adj.* heavy, hard.
treu, *adj.* **true,** faithful.
vergeuden, *v.* waste.
verlaſſen (ſich), *v.* rely (upon = auf, *with acc.*).

NOTES. — [1] **hüten Sie ſich vor,** *be on your guard against* (see Ex. 8, n. 10). — [2] **ſo viel als möglich** = möglichſt viel, *as much as possible.* — [3] **ſeien Sie,** *be;* imv. 3. (= 2.) pl. of ſein. — [4] **hüte, vergeude, verlaſſe, ſei;** all imv. 2. pers. sing. — [5] **hütet, vergeudet, verlaßt, ſeid;** all imv. 2. pers. pl. — [6] **do;** the requisite forms of ſich befinden are: du befindeſt dich, ihr befindet euch, Sie befinden ſich. — [7] **you,** i. e. to you, dat. — [8] **any, etwas.**

EXERCISE 27

Colloquy: Personal Pronouns

1

Guten Abend, Herr Müller. Wie befinden Sie sich heute abend?

Ich selbst bin gesund, aber es geht nicht gut bei mir zu Hause.

Das tut mir leid. Es ist doch keines der Kinder wieder krank?

Ja, leider[1]; die Kleine hat wieder Kopfweh — dazu ein wenig Fieber.

Das ist sonderbar. Geben Sie ihr regelmäßig die Arznei?

Gewiß, aber es hilft nichts mehr. Ich bitte Sie, sofort zu uns zu kommen.

Gleich diesen Augenblick meinetwegen. Bitte, setzen Sie sich. In zwei Minuten bin ich bereit.

Ich danke Ihnen sehr. Sie machen sich viel Mühe um unsertwillen.

Bitte, sprechen Sie nicht davon. Ich tue nur meine Pflicht. Wozu bin ich denn Arzt?

2

Good evening, doctor. How do you do this evening?

Very well, thank you. How goes it at your house?

Unfortunately the little girl is sick again.[2]

Is it possible? What is the matter with her this time?

Oh, she has the old headache again,[2] and withal a little fever.

I must see[3] her again. Wait a moment. I shall be[4] ready directly.

I thank you very much, but you do not need[5] to hurry on my account.

Vocabulary

die Arznei', *w.* medicine.
beeilen (sich), *v.* hurry.
bereit, *adj.* ready [**-ready**].
danken, *v.* (*dat.*) **thank.**
dazu', *adv.* besides, withal.
fehlen, *v.* **fail**; was fehlt, *with dat.*, what is the matter?
das Fieber, *s.*[1] **fever.**

genug, *adj.* **enough.**
geſund, *adj.* well, healthy [**-sound**].
gleich, *adv.* directly; *as adj.* like [**-like**].
helfen, *v.* **help**; hilft, **helps.**
das Kopfweh (*no pl.*) headache [**-woe**].
krank, *adj.* sick, ill.
leid, *adj.* disagreeable; es tut mir leid, I am sorry [**loath**].
die Mühe, *w.* pains, trouble.
müſſen, *v.* **must**; ich muß, **I must.**
re'gelmä'ßig, *adj.* regular.
ſprechen, *v.* speak.
warten, *v.* wait.
wozu', *adv.* to what end, what for.

NOTES. — [1] **leider,** *unfortunately, alas;* shortened from was noch leider iſt, *what is still more disagreeable.* — [2] **again,** wieder, preceding krank. — [3] **see her again,** ſie wieder ſehen. — [4] **I shall be . . . directly,** ich bin gleich . . . — [5] **you do not need to hurry,** Sie brauchen ſich nicht . . . zu beeilen.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES

129. The Forms. The common demonstrative pronouns are dies, *this*, jen–, *that*, and der, *that*. To these are to be added the so-called determinatives, derjenige, *that*, derſelbe, *the same*, and ſolch, *such*. The first three are declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	dieſer	dieſe	dieſes, dies	dieſe
G.	dieſes	dieſer	dieſes	dieſer
D.	dieſem	dieſer	dieſem	dieſen
A.	dieſen	dieſe	dieſes, dies	dieſe
N.	jener	jene	jenes	jene
G.	jenes	jener	jenes	jener
D.	jenem	jener	jenem	jenen
A.	jenen	jene	jenes	jene
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	deſſen (des)	deren (der)	deſſen (des)	deren, derer (der)
D.	dem	der	dem	denen (den)
A.	den	die	das	die

1. All the demonstratives can be used either substantively or adjectively. When der is used adjectively it is inflected precisely like the article der, which is nothing but a demonstrative pronoun weakened in force by loss of its accent. Hence the short forms in parenthesis.

130. Use of dies and jen-. Dies, cognate with *this*, denotes proximity, while jen-, cognate with *yon*, denotes remoteness; e. g. jener Berg (dort) iſt viel höher als dieſer (hier), *that mountain (yonder) is much higher than this one (here)*; in dieſem Leben, *in this life* (i. e. the life that now is); in jener Welt, *in that world* (i. e. the world to come).

1. Referring to two objects lately mentioned, dies means *the latter* and jen- *the former*.

2. The short form dies is especially common as absolute subject, being used without reference to the gender or number of a predicate noun; e. g. dies iſt meine Schweſter, *this is my sister;* dies ſind Freunde von mir, *these are friends of mine.*

131. Use of der. Der denotes neither proximity nor remoteness, but simple emphasis. It is distinguished in speech by its accent, and in print, if necessary, by spaced type; e. g. der Menſch iſt ſterblich; in der Hinſicht gleicht er dem Tiere, *man is mortal; in* THAT *respect he is like the brute.*

1. The form das, like dies, is often used without reference to the gender or number of a predicate noun; e g. das iſt meine Schweſter, *that is my sister;* das ſind Freunde von mir, *those are friends of mine.* Note that the verb agrees in number with the predicate noun.

2. Der often takes the place of an emphatic personal pronoun; e. g. der iſt kein Dichter, HE *is no poet.*

132. Demonstrative Compounds. For a case-form of der, used alone in the dative or accusative after a preposition, and not referring to a living object, it is usual to substitute a compound of da; e. g. davon weiß ich nichts, *of that I know nothing.*

a. In like manner a compound of hier may be substituted for a case-form of dies under similar circumstances; e. g. hierin liegt der Unterschied, *in this lies the difference.*

1. The three prepositions wegen, halb and um . . . willen enter into composition with des, not with da, giving the forms deshalb, deswegen, rarely deswillen, all meaning *on that account.*

2. Desgleichen and dergleichen are indeclinable pronominal adjectives meaning *such like, the like of that.*

133. De'rje'nige. The determinative pronoun derjenige inflects both parts thruout, the der being declined like the article der, the stem jenig like a weak adjective; thus:

	Singular			*Plural*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	derjenige	diejenige	dasjenige	diejenigen
G.	desjenigen	derjenigen, etc.		derjenigen, etc.

1. Derjenige is generally followed by a relative pronoun in connection with which it means *he (who), the one (who), that (which).*

134. Derse'lbe. The inflection of derselbe is similar to that of derjenige; thus:

	Singular			*Plural*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	derselbe	dieselbe	dasselbe	dieselben
G.	desselben	derselben, etc.		derselben, etc.

1. Derſelbe means *the same*, but it is very often used where English employs a personal pronoun (cf. § 122, 2).

135. Solch. Solch, *such*, has regular adjective inflection, but may also stand uninflected, especially before an adjective; e. g. ſolch ſchönes Wetter, or ſolches ſchöne Wetter, *such fine weather*.

1. Solch may precede or follow ein; if it precedes, it is uninflected; if it follows, inflected; thus, *such a man* is either ſolch ein Mann or ein ſolcher Mann.

a. Instead of ſolch ein, ſo ein is common.

EXERCISE 28

Colloquy: Demonstrative Pronouns

1

Bitte, ſetzen Sie ſich. Nehmen Sie dieſen Stuhl am Ofen.

Behalten Sie den für ſich. Ich hole[1] mir jenen am Fenſter.

Nun, wie geht's Ihnen ſeit jenem Abend im Theater?

Im ganzen recht gut; aber dieſes ewige Studieren[2] macht mir bisweilen Kopfweh.

Das iſt ſchade; aber Sie lernen dabei[3] doch dies und das?

O, natürlich. Nur iſt es immer dieſelbe Geſchichte. Ich denke oft an jene Zeit vor drei Monaten.

Ja, das waren ſchöne Tage. — Was hören Sie denn von jenem alten Herrn, dem[4] mit der hübſchen Tochter?

Der wohnt nicht mehr in jener Gegend; ſein Sohn und deſſen[5] Frau machten ihm das Leben zu ſauer.

Ja, die[6] waren mir auch unerträglich. Mit ſolchen Leuten iſt ein freundliches Verhältnis unmöglich.

2

Please take a seat.[7] That[8] chair is not comfortable — take this one.

That one[9] by the window is better still.[10] I will get that.[11]

Well, how do you find yourself since that week in the country?[12]

Oh, don't speak of that. The contrast between that time and this gives me the headache.

Poor fellow! For my part[13] I find this life here very pleasant.

Of course,[14] — these tedious books. They are your best friends.

To be sure; a good book is always the same, not this[15] to-day and that to-morrow, like human beings.[16]

Very fine; where did you get[17] *that* saying?

EXERCISE 28a

1. This is the shortest way. 2. Do you see that high tower? 3. Death[18] is the end of this life; in that life there is no[19] death. 4. These hot summer-days are very unpleasant. 5. Homer and Vergil, those great poets of antiquity,[18] are still the delight of mankind.[18] 6. Perhaps he is a friend of yours; in that case I have nothing to say. 7. Those are the towers of the royal castle. 8. The girl is her mother's child; she has the same head, the same eyes, the same voice. 9. This building is the museum; that one yonder the new theater. 10. Such autumn days as these are extremely rare in this part of the world. 11. From 10 to 11 a. m.[20] I have a language-lesson; after that I take a walk. 12. He is a good man, but not on that account a great poet.

Vocabulary

behalten, *v.* keep [**behold**].
bequem, *adj.* comfortable.
bisweilen, *adv.* at times.
ewig, *adv.* everlasting [**aye-**].
die Gegend, *w.* region.
der Gegenſatz, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), contrast.
holen, *v.* fetch; *pret.* holte.
hören, *v.* **hear.**
lernen, *v.* **learn.**
oft, *adv.* often, oft.
recht, *adv.* **right,** very.
ſauer, *adj.* bitter, **sour.**
der Schade, *mx.* (*pl.* Schäden), injury, loss; das iſt ſchade, *that is a pity* [**scathe**].
ſeit, *prep.* (*dat.*) since.

der Spruch, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) saying.
ſtudie'ren, *v. study.*
u'nerträglich, *adj.* intolerable.
unmö'glich, *adj.* impossible.
das Verhältnis, *s.*[2] relation.
woher', *adv.* whence.

NOTES.—[1] **ich hole,** *I will get;* the present tense denoting a present purpose.—[2] **Studieren,** a verbal noun, or infinitive used as a noun; all such are neuter.—[3] **dabei,** *incidentally, in connection with that.* Never translate dabei by *thereby,* which is dadurch.—[4] **dem,** *the one.*—[5] **deſſen Frau,** *the latter's wife, the son's wife;* ſeine Frau, would mean *his own wife.*—[6] **die,** *they, those people.*—[7] **take a seat,** nehmen Sie Platz.—[8] **that,** der.—[9] **that one,** jener.—[10] **better still,** noch beſſer.—[11] **that,** den.—[12] **in the country;** see Ex. 9, n. 4.—[13] **for my part,** see Ex. 21, n. 3.—[14] **of course,** natürlich.—[15] **this to-day,** heute dies.—[16] **like human beings,** wie die Menſchen.—[17] **where did you get,** woher haben Sie.—[18] Use the def. art.—[19] **there is no,** gibt es keinen.—[20] **a. m.,** vormittags.

THE RELATIVES

136. The Forms. The ordinary relative pronouns are **der** and **welch,** both meaning *who, which, that.* They are declined as follows:

	Singular			*Plural*
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	M. F. N.
N.	der	die	das	die
G.	deſſen	deren	deſſen	deren
D.	dem	der	dem	denen
A.	den	die	das	die
N.	welcher	welche	welches	welche
G.	welches	welcher	welches	welcher
D.	welchem	welcher	welchem	welchen
A.	welchen	welche	welches	welche

1. The interrogative pronouns **wer,** *who,* and **was,** *what* (for their inflection see § 143), are also used as relatives, = *he who, whoever, that which, whatever.*

137. The Relative Clause. In a relative clause the inflected verb comes last. The relative pronoun itself comes first (except when it is governed by a preposi-

tion) and agrees with its antecedent in gender and number; e. g. wehe der Mutter, deren Kind undankbar iſt, *alas for the mother whose child is ungrateful;* er iſt ein Knabe, von dem ich nur Gutes gehört habe, *he is a boy of whom I have heard only good reports.*

1. The relative cannot be omitted, as it so often is in English; e. g. *the man I mean* is der Mann, den ich meine; *the house I live in*, das Haus, in welchem (or worin) ich wohne.

2. If the antecedent of a relative is a personal pronoun of the first or second person, such pronoun is usually repeated after the relative, in which case the verb takes the person of the antecedent; e. g. ich, der ich dein Freund bin, *I who am your friend;* du, der du mich kennſt, *you who know me.* But if the personal pronoun is not repeated the verb stands in the third person; e. g. du, der mich kennt, *you who know me.*

138. Use of der and welch. Either relative may refer to a person or to a thing. Welch, but not der, may be used as an adjective in agreement with a noun; e. g. er iſt ein Mann, der (or welcher) ſtets die Wahrheit ſpricht, welcher (never der) Eigenſchaft er ſein Glück verdankt, *he is a man who always speaks the truth, to which trait he owes his success.*

1. In the genitive the forms of der are required, except in the adjectival use of welch just explained; elsewhere there is a free choice between der and welch, subject only to considerations of style and euphony.

139. Substitutes for the Relative. For the dative or accusative of der or welch, depending upon a preposition and not referring to a living object, it is usual to substitute a compound of the preposition with the adverb wo, *where* (before vowels wor), e. g. das iſt der Punkt,

worauf ich beſtehe, *that is the point I insist upon* (*the point whereupon I insist*).

1. For the genitive of a relative depending on one of the prepositions halb or wegen, and not referring to persons, is substituted one of the compounds weshalb, or weswegen; e. g. ich war krank, weshalb ich zu Hauſe bleiben mußte, *I was sick, for which reason I had to remain at home.*

2. A simple adverb may take the place of a relative; e. g. der Ort, wo ich wohne, *the place where* (= *in which*) *I live;* die Art, wie er lebt, *the way* (*in which*) *he lives.*

140. Use of wer as Relative. Wer as relative can have no antecedent, being itself both antecedent and relative; e. g. wer geſund iſt (never der, wer geſund iſt), braucht keinen Arzt, *he who is well does not need a physician.*

1. But when wer has gone before, its implied antecedent may be expressed, in the form of a demonstrative, for emphasis; e. g. wer geſund iſt, der braucht keinen Arzt.

2. Followed by auch, nur or immer (other words may or may not intervene), wer acquires the force of an indefinite relative = *whoever;* e. g. ſie iſt jedenfalls hübſch, wer ſie auch ſein mag, *she is pretty at any rate, whoever she may be.*

141. Use of was as Relative. The use of the neuter was as indefinite relative = *what, whatever, that which, the thing which*, etc. runs nearly parallel to that of the masculine-feminine wer; e. g. was ich ſehe, (das) weiß ich, *what I see,* (*that*) *I know;* es iſt falſch, was man auch ſagen mag, *it is false, whatever they may say.*

a. So also when the antecedent is a sentence; e. g. es gelang mir nicht, was mich ſehr ärgerte, *I did not succeed, which vexed me greatly.*

1. This was is often best translated by *so far as;* e. g. was mich betrifft, *so far as concerns me.*

2. Was is very often used as relative after a neuter pronoun or substantive adjective, and when so used it implies that the antecedent is taken in a general or indefinite sense. After a substantive adjective in the superlative degree was is the regular relative; e. g. nicht alles, was glänzt, ist Gold, *not all that glitters is gold;* das ist es, was mich ärgert, *that is what vexes me;* es ist das beste, was ich tun kann, *it is the best I can do;* das Große, was (better das) ich an ihm bewundere, *the great qualities that I admire in him;* was ist das, das (not was) Sie in der Hand haben? *what is that that you have in your hand?*

142. Rule of Order III: The Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence the verb comes at the end; e. g. wissen Sie, ob der Herr Doktor zu Hause ist? *do you know whether the doctor is at home?* erinnern Sie sich, wo Sie gestern zu dieser Zeit waren? *do you remember where you were yesterday at this time?*

a. The case in which 'the verb' is in a compound tense, and so consists of more than one word, will be provided for further on.

1. This rule covers all sentences introduced by a subordinating conjunction, a relative pronoun or particle, or an indirect interrogative.

a. Some of the most common subordinating conjunctions are als, *as, when;* da, *as, since;* damit, *so that;* daß, *that;* indem, *while;* ob, *whether;* weil, *because;* wenn, *if;* wie, *how, as;* wo, *where.* For a fuller list see § 381.

2. Subordinate sentences of every kind are usually set off by a comma.

EXERCISE 29

Reading Lesson: Relative Pronouns

Lieber Herr Müller! Ihr freundlicher Brief, in dem Sie mir so viel Interessantes über die Schule erzählen, und der nun

leider schon zwei Wochen unbeantwortet liegt,[1] war mir höchst willkommen. Es freut mich sehr, daß die guten Freunde, mit denen ich lange Zeit so glücklich lebte, noch immer an mich denken. Es gibt ein Sprichwort, welches lautet: „Aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn"; aber, was mich betrifft, so[2] finde ich hier unter lauter Fremden, daß ich jetzt erst[3] meine alten Freunde richtig schätze.

Was Sie von dem jungen Fritz Moser schreiben, dessen Streiche Ihnen so viel Mühe machen, ist mir ganz begreiflich. Der Junge war von Kind auf[4] ein Taugenichts, der nur an dumme Streiche[5] dachte.[6] Ich weiß, daß er nicht redlich ist, und wer keinen Charakter hat, dem[7] ist nun nicht zu helfen. Alles, was der Lehrer für einen solchen Schüler tut, ist verlorene Mühe. Für den Rat, den Sie mir in Bezug auf meine Studien geben, danke ich Ihnen sehr. Da Sie mich so lange kennen, wissen Sie am besten, wozu[8] ich fähig bin, und welche[8] Fehler ich zu vermeiden habe.

EXERCISE 29 a

1. He is a man who knows[9] everything. 2. The building that you see is a museum. 3. That is the lady who has the pretty daughters. 4. I do not know[10] the book of which you speak. 5. There are[11] authors who write too much and think too little. 6. That part of Dresden which lies on the left bank of the river is called the Old-Town. 7. That is not the man I mean. 8. Here one finds all that makes life interesting. 9. That is all I know[9] of the affair. 10. There is[11] no poet whose life is more interesting. 11. Whoever has money has friends. 12. I give you the best I have. 13. The work of which you speak is very expensive. 14. Do you know[10] the book in which the saying is found?[12]

Vocabulary

begreiflich, *adj.* comprehensible.

betreffen, *v.* concern; betrifft, concerns.

der Bezug, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), reference, regard.

der Charak'ter (*pl.* -te're), *character.*

da, *sub. conj.* as, since.
daß, *sub. conj.* **that.**
dumm, *adj.* stupid [**dumb**].
fähig, *adj.* capable, fit, suited.
der Fehler, *s.*[1] mistake.
freuen, *v.* rejoice; es freut mich, I am glad.
glücklich, *adj.* happy.
lauten, *v.* purport, run.
die Mühe, *w.* trouble, pains.
der Rat, *s.* (*no pl.*) advice.
redlich, *adj.* honest, candid.
ſchätzen, *v.* value, esteem.
der Sinn, *s.*[2] sense, mind.
das Sprichwort, *s.*[3] proverb.
der Streich, *s.*[2] prank, trick, **stroke.**
der Tau'genichts, *s.*[2] (*indecl.*) good-for-nothing.
u'nbeantwortet, *pple.* unanswered.
verloren, *pple.* lost [**forlorn**].
vermeiden, *v.* avoid.
willko mmen, *adj.* **welcome.**

NOTES.—[1] **Liegt,** *has lain, has been lying* (Ex. 7, n. 1).—[2] **ſo finde ich,** *I find.* When a subordinate sentence has gone before, the principal sentence must stand in the inverted order, and ſo is often put before the principal verb to make the inversion easier. Such a ſo should not be translated.—[3] **jetzt erſt,** lit. *now first;* but *I value now first = I just begin to value.*—[4] **von Kind auf,** *from a child up;* i. e. *from childhood.*—[5] **dumme Streiche,** *mischief.*—[6] **dachte,** *thought, was thinking;* pret. of denken.—[7] **dem iſt nicht zu helfen,** HE (i. e. *such a person*) *is not to be helped.* It is necessary to use dem here because helfen governs the dat. One could not say wer nicht redlich iſt, iſt nicht zu helfen.—[8] **wozu, welche ;** these are indirect interrogatives, and as such require the dependent order. The direct form would be: Wozu bin ich fähig? Welche Fehler habe ich zu vermeiden.—[9] **knows, know, wiſſen.**—[10] **know,** kennen.—[11] **there are, there is,** es gibt.—[12] **is found,** ſich findet.

THE INTERROGATIVES

143. The Forms. The interrogative pronouns are wer, *who*, was, *what*, welch, *which*, *what*, and was für (ein), *what sort of* (*a*), *what.*

1. The inflection of wer and was, which do not vary for number, is as follows:

N.	wer	was
G.	weſſen, wes	weſſen, wes
D.	wem	——
A.	wen	was

a. The short form weſ is little used except in the compounds weshalb and weswegen, *why*. The missing dative of was is supplied by the compounds of wo (§ 144, 1).

2. Welch is inflected like the relative welch, but is often uninflected before ein or an adjective, especially in exclamatory phrases; e. g. welch (ein) ſchönes Bild! *what a pretty picture!*

3. In was für ein the was does not vary, but ein is inflected (in the singular) like the article ein.

144. Use of wer and welch. Wer is used of persons only, was of things only, and welch of either persons or things. Wer and was are used without a noun, welch either with or without; e. g. wer iſt jener Mann? *who is that man?* welches Buch meinen Sie? *what (which) book do you mean?*

1. For the dative and accusative of was, dependent on a preposition, it is usual to substitute a compound of wo; e. g. wozu der Lärm? *why the fuss?* woran arbeiten Sie? *what are you working at?*

145. Use of was für (ein). In this pronoun the für is without prepositional force, and ein takes the case required by the syntax of the sentence. Was may be separated by one or more words from für ein; e. g. was für ein Baum iſt das, or was iſt das für ein Baum? *what kind of a tree is that?* was für einen Lehrer haben Sie? *what kind of a teacher have you?*

1. In exclamatory phrases was für (ein) is often best translated by *what;* e. g. was für Unſinn! *what nonsense!*

EXERCISE 30

COLLOQUY: INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS

1

Wer iſt das auf dem Bilde an der Wand?
Das iſt Bismarck. Wozu haben Sie denn Ihre Augen?

Ja, die große Photographie; wer wüßte[1] das nicht! Ich meine nicht die.

Nun, welches Bild meinen Sie denn?

Ich meine das kleine Ding, welches unter der Photographie hängt.

Ach so! Nun, wofür halten Sie das? Besehen Sie es genau.

Ich sehe, es ist eine Federzeichnung. Von wem haben Sie sie?

Von meinem Freunde Ludwig. Raten Sie nun einmal, wer die beiden Personen darauf sind.

Dies ist offenbar Ludwig; aber ich weiß nicht, wer der andere ist.

Was Sie doch sagen![2] Nun, der andere bin[3] ich selbst.

Sie? Wer das glauben könnte![4] Woher haben Sie denn den sonderbaren Ausdruck? Und was für einen Hut tragen Sie?

Das ist nur ein Spaß Ludwigs; wer ihn kennt, versteht das ohne Weiteres.

2

What sort of a picture is that?

What picture are you talking about?[5] The large photograph?[6]

Who would not know[7] a photograph of Bismarck? I mean the little picture below.[8]

Oh, that's it. That is a pen-drawing. Guess from whom I have it.

I do not know — perhaps from your friend Ludwig.

Right; now guess whom the drawing represents.

This here is certainly Ludwig himself, but who in all the world[9] is the other?

So[10] you do not know[11] him. Well, the other is I myself.

But what an expression! And what sort of a thing is that you have on your head?

EXERCISE 30a

1. Who goes there? 2. Who is she? 3. Who are they? 4. What have you in your hand? 5. Of whom are

you speaking? 6. Of what are you speaking? 7. Whom do you mean? 8. What new building is that that I see yonder? 9. Do you know [12] at what time [13] the performance begins? 10. In what does the difference consist? 11. I do not know [12] in what the difference consists. 12. What sort of a teacher have you? 13. Every one knows [12] what sort of a man he is. 14. Which drama of Schiller do you like best?

VOCABULARY

ander, *adj.* **other.**
der Ausdruck, *s.*² (*pl.* ü), expression.
darſtellen, *v.* represent.
die Feder, *w.* pen, **feather.**
glauben, *v.* be-**lieve.**
halten, *v.* **hold,** consider.
hangen, *v.* **hang;** hängt, hangs.
der Hut, *s.*² (*pl.* ü), **hat.**
können, *v.* **can.**
der Kopf, *s.*² (*pl.* ö), head.
ohne, *prep.* (*acc.*) without.
die Perſo'n, *w.* *person.*
die Photographie', *w.* *photograph.*
raten, *v.* guess.
der Spaß, *s.*² (*pl.* ä), jest.
tragen, *v.* wear [**drag, draw**].
verſtehen, *v.* understand.
die Wand, *s.*² (*pl.* ä), wall.
die Zeichnung, *w.* drawing.

NOTES. —[1] **wer wüßte,** *who would know?* pret. subj. of wiſſen. —[2] **was Sie doch ſagen!** *you don't say so!* quite different from was ſagen Sie? *what do you say?* —[3] **der andere bin ich ſelbſt,** *the other is I myself;* for *it is I* Ger. says ich bin es, etc. —[4] **wer das glauben könnte!** *as if any one could believe that!* different from wer könnte das glauben? *who could believe that?* The former wer is really an indirect interrogative, with something like *I'd like to know* understood. —[5] **about,** von, at the beginning of the sentence. —[6] **the large photograph;** repeat the von. —[7] **Who would not know,** wer kennte nicht. Kennte is pret. subj. of kennen, as könnte is of können. —[8] **below,** darunter. —[9] **who in all the world,** wer in aller Welt. —[10] **so,** alſo. —[11] **know,** kennen. —[12] **know, knows,** wiſſen. —[13] **at what time,** um welche Zeit.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS AND PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES

146. All. All, *all*, has regular adjective inflection, but is sometimes left uninflected, especially before der or a possessive; e. g. alle guten Dinge, *all good things;* alles

friſche Waſſer, *all fresh water*; all mein Glück, *all my happiness*.

1. The form alle occurs after certain prepositions; e. g. trotz alledem, *in spite of all that*.

2. The neuter alles, used alone, means *everything*.

147. Ander. Ander, *other*, has regular adjective inflection.

1. The English *another*, = *one more*, is expressed not by ander, but by noch ein; e. g. ich wünſche noch ein Billet, *I want another ticket* (ein anderes would mean *a different one*).

148. Beide. Beide, *both*, has regular adjective inflection, and is apt to take the place of zwei after a declined word; e. g. die beiden Parteien, *the two parties;* meine beiden Schweſtern, *my two sisters*.

1. In general beide is used only in the plural, but the neuter singular beides occurs. *Both . . . and* is usually expressed by ſowohl . . . als; e. g. *both the king and the people*, ſowohl der König als das Volk.

149 Ein-. The use of ein, *one*, as pronoun has already been referred to (§ 116, 1).

1. In the oblique cases ein takes the place of man, which is indeclinable; e. g. es gefällt einem nicht, *it does not please one*.

150. Einig-, etlich-. These words both mean *some* and have regular adjective inflection. The singular is little used, being replaced by etwas. Of the two words einig- is the one more commonly used.

151. Etwas. Etwas, *something, somewhat, some*, is indeclinable and is used either with or without a noun. It is the ordinary equivalent of English *some, any*, before a singular noun of any gender and in any case; e. g.

nehmen Sie etwas Brod, *take some bread;* mit etwas Furcht = mit einiger Furcht, *with some fear.*

1. ſo etwas is equivalent to *some* (*any*) *such thing.*

152. Irgend. This is an indeclinable word which is rarely used alone, but is placed before numerous words to give the sense of English *some, any;* e. g. irgend einer or irgend jemand, *some one, any one;* irgend etwas, *anything, something;* irgendwo, *anywhere,* etc.

153. Jed-, jeglich-, jedermann. Jed- and jeglich- mean *each, every,* and have full adjective inflection. Either may be preceded by ein. Jedermann, *every one,* can not be used with a noun and has no inflection except a genitive in s; e. g. jeder (ein jeder, jeder Menſch, jedermann) hat ſeine guten Eigenſchaften, *every one has his good qualities.*

154. Jemand. Jemand, *some one,* is never used with a noun and has no inflection except a genitive in s, rarely a dative in em or an accusative in en.

155. Kein. Kein is the negative of ein and is inflected in the same way, except that it has a plural. It takes the place of English *no, none, not a, not any;* e. g. du bitteſt um Geld, aber ich habe keines, *you ask for money, but I haven't any;* das iſt kein Apfelbaum, *that is not an apple-tree.*

156. Man. Man is a wholly indefinite and indeclinable pronoun meaning *one, they, people.* Often it is best rendered by the passive voice or by a phrase with *there;* e. g. man ſagt, *it is said;* man klopft, *there is a knock.*

1. The oblique cases of man are replaced by ein-.

157. Manch. Manch, *many, some,* in the singular *many a,* may be inflected regularly (which is the rule if

no adjective follows), or it may be uninflected; e. g. mancher Mann, *many a man;* manch guter Mann or mancher gute Mann, *many a good man.*

158. Mehr, mehrer-. Mehr, *more*, is indeclinable; thus mehr Licht, *more light;* nichts mehr davon, *no more of that.* The comparative mehrer- is used with full inflection in the sense of *several;* e. g. mit mehreren Freunden, *with several friends.*

159. Nichts. Nichts, *nothing*, is the negative to etwas and is indeclinable.

160. Niemand. Niemand, *no one*, is the negative to jemand and has the same inflection. It can not be used with a noun.

161. Viel. Viel, *much*, in the plural *many*, is capable of full inflection, but is often left uninflected, especially in the singular when not preceded by der or a possessive; e. g. er hat viel Verstand, *he has much sense;* das ist zu viel, *that is too much;* das Glück vieler Menschen, *the happiness of many men;* er hat vieles erlebt, *he has experienced much.*

162. Was, welch, wer. All of the interrogatives may be used as indefinites, having the meaning of *some, something, some one, anything, any one*, etc. In this sense they are apt to be accompanied by irgend; e. g. ich weiß was Neues, *I know something new;* nehmen Sie noch etwas Brod (einige Kirschen), *take some more bread (some cherries)*; ich danke, ich habe noch welches (welche), *thank you, I have some still.*

163. Wenig. Wenig, *little*, in the plural *few*, is capable of full inflection, but is often uninflected, especially in the singular; e. g. ich habe wenig Hoffnung, *I have little hope;* mit wenig Verstand, *with little sense;* er leistet mit wenigem viel, *he does much with little.*

EXERCISE 31

Colloquy: Indefinite Pronouns

1

Wünschen Sie etwas, mein Herr?

Ja, ich wünsche ein gutes Buch als Weihnachtsgeschenk für eine junge Freundin. Haben Sie so etwas?

Gewiß; da sind, zum Beispiel, einige neue [1] Romane. Jedes Mädchen liest gern einen guten Roman.

Hier ist nun jedenfalls [2] was Hübsches; aber es ist wohl ein wenig teuer, nicht wahr?

Nicht so sehr; es kostet acht Mark. Das Buch ist gerade jetzt in der Mode; jedermann liest es und lobt es.

Ja, aber mancher schlechte Roman findet heutzutage Leser, die ihn loben. Wer ist denn der Verfasser?

Das weiß man nicht. Es ist das Werk irgend eines jungen Schriftstellers, welcher unter falschem Namen schreibt.

Was sagt man von der sittlichen Tendenz des Buches?

Nach allem, was ich höre, ist es gesund in jeder Hinsicht. Niemand sagt etwas dagegen.

Ich habe noch eine Frage. Ist es bei alledem [3] auch interessant? Viele gesunden Bücher sind langweilig.

Nun, dieser ist jedenfalls nichts weniger als [4] langweilig. Sie finden nichts Interessanteres in unsrem Laden.

2

Good morning, sir. Do you wish something in the way of [5] books?

Yes, if [6] you have something right good.[7] What is there that is new?

Do you wish something light — some [8] novel, for example?

Perhaps, only it must be [9] interesting. Please show me some new novels.

There you have several right before you.[10] And there are more over yonder.

Here now is something nice, but I presume it costs too much.

That book is a little dear, to be sure, — on account of the many pictures in it. It costs ten marks.

The price *is*[11] pretty high, isn't it? Is it known who the author is?

No, but he writes well,[12] whoever he may be.[13] Every one praises the book.

Well, in view of all that[14] you say, perhaps the price is[15] not too high, after all.[16]

Certainly not; just ask[17] any one who understands such things.

EXERCISE 31 a

1. All my money is lost. 2. All good friends are welcome. 3. One of the two brothers is a physician; the other is an author. 4. Some parts of the book are very interesting, others are intolerable. 5. I need some money; I have none by me. 6. In a few days I am going to Leipzig. 7. Every one has his own taste in these matters. 8. No one is a better friend of the poor. 9. Does any one know how much the thing costs? 10. I need some old newspapers; have you any? 11. It costs little money, but much trouble. 12. Many a poor man is happier than his rich neighbor. 13. One finds in the book little (that is) new, yet much (that is) interesting. 14. Every day[18] I visit some[19] museum or picture-gallery.

Vocabulary

das Beiſpiel, *s.*[2] example.
drüben, *adv.* over yonder.
die Frage, *w.* question.
gegen, *prep.* (*acc.*) against.
gerade, *adv.* exactly, just.
das Geſchenk, *s.*[2] present.
die Hinſicht, *w.* respect.
koſten, *v.* *cost.*
der Laden, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä), store.
leicht, *adj.* **light,** easy.
der Leſer, *s.*[1] reader.
loben, *v.* praise [**love**].
die Mode, *w.* fashion, *mode.*
der Roma'n, *s.*[2] novel, *romance.*
ſittlich, *adj.* moral.
die Tende'nz, *w.* *tendency.*
der Verfaſſer, *s.*[1] author.
wenn, *sub. conj.* if, **when.**
zeigen, *v.* show [**teach**].

NOTES. — [1] **neue**; one might say neuen instead (§ 288, 3, *a*). — [2] **jedenfalls**, *at any rate;* an adv. formed from auf jeden Fall, *in any case.* — [3] **bei alledem**, *with all that, withal.* — [4] **nichts weniger als**, *anything but.* — [5] **in the way of**, in with dat. — [6] **if**, wenn, which requires the dependent order. — [7] **something right good**, etwas recht Gutes. — [8] **some**, irgend einen. — [9] **only it must be**, nur muß er . . . sein. — [10] **right before you**, gerade vor sich. — [11] **is**, ist doch, the doch serving to emphasize the verb. — [12] **well**, gut, not wohl. — [13] **whoever he may be**, wer er auch sein mag. — [14] **in view of all that**, nach allem, was. — [15] **perhaps the price is**, ist der Preis vielleicht. — [16] **after all**, am Ende, following vielleicht. — [17] **just ask any one**, fragen Sie nur irgend jemand. — [18] **every day**, *acc.* — [19] **some**, irgend ein, to be repeated as the nouns differ in gender.

THE VERB

164. Voice. The active voice represents the subject as acting, the passive as acted upon; i. e. the object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive.

1. Only 'transitive' verbs, i. e. those which govern the accusative, can be used in the passive with a definite subject, but intransitive verbs admit of an impersonal passive.

165. Mode. Of the four modes the indicative and imperative correspond closely to the English indicative and imperative. The subjunctive is used to express doubt or uncertainty (especially in indirect questions and statements), or with an imperative sense translatable by *let*, or with a potential sense translatable by *would* or *should*. The conditional is always translatable by *would* or *should*.

166. The Infinitive. The infinitive is not a mode of the verb, but rather a verbal noun. It is used both with and without zu, and corresponds partly to the English infinitive with and without *to*, and partly to the verbal in *ing*.

167. The Participle. The present participle ends in end and corresponds to the English present participle in

ing. The perfect participle ends always in t or in n, and is further characterized by the prefix ge.

1. But the prefix ge is omitted with verbs in ieren, with inseparable compounds, and in some other cases to be noted further on.

168. Tense. The present and preterit, as consisting of one word, are called 'simple tenses'; the perfect, pluperfect, future and future perfect are formed by means of auxiliaries, and are called 'compound tenses.'

1. The auxiliary of the perfect and pluperfect, which is combined with the perfect participle, is either haben, *have*, or ſein, *be*. All transitive verbs, and many that are intransitive, are conjugated with haben. Intransitive verbs denoting motion, and a few that do not denote motion, are conjugated with ſein. See § 323.

2. The auxiliary of the future and future perfect, which combines with the infinitive, is werden, *become*.

3. The conditional mode has but two tenses, a present and a perfect, the auxiliary being the preterit subjunctive of werden, used in combination with the infinitive.

4. The imperative has but one tense, the present.

169. Person and Number. Person and number are distinguished by endings which are applied to the 'stem' of the verb, sometimes with and sometimes without a 'connecting vowel' e; e. g. du mach-ſt, *thou makest*, but du find-e-ſt, *thou findest*.

1. The stem of a verb is obtained by dropping the final en (or simply the final n if the verb does not end in en) of the present infinitive. In some verbs the stem undergoes an internal vowel change in the preterit and perfect participle.

170. Principal Parts. The 'principal parts' of a verb, so called because when they are known all the

other forms can be determined from them, are (1) the present infinitive, (2) the preterit indicative first person singular, (3) the perfect participle; thus machen, machte, gemacht; finden, fand, gefunden.

CONJUGATION

171. The Auxiliaries of Tense. As the three verbs haben, ſein and werden are needed in the conjugation of all other verbs whatsoever, their inflection is given first. As auxiliaries, they are used only in the simple tenses, but as independent verbs they have complete inflection.

a. To assist the beginner translations are given with the paradigms below, but it should be understood that they will often prove inapplicable. The translation must be varied to suit the connection. Thus du biſt may be 'thou art,' or 'you are,' or 'thou hast,' or 'you have.' In case of the subjunctive, particularly, it is quite impossible to give any one distinctive translation that will not be wrong more often than right. The common use of 'may' and 'might' is quite misleading. As this is so, and as it *very often* happens that the translation of the subjunctive does not differ from that of the corresponding indicative, it has seemed best to let one and the same translation stand for both.

1. The conjugation of haben—principal parts haben, hatte, gehabt—is as follows:

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.
ich habe	*I have*	ich habe
du haſt	*thou hast*	du habeſt
er hat	*he has*	er habe
wir haben	*we have*	wir haben
ihr habt	*you have*	ihr habet
ſie haben	*they have*	ſie haben

PRET. IND.		PRET. SUBJ.
ich hatte	*I had*	ich hätte
du hatteſt	*thou hadst*	du hätteſt
er hatte	*he had*	er hätte
wir hatten	*we had*	wir hätten
ihr hattet	*you had*	ihr hättet
ſie hatten	*they had*	ſie hätten

PERFECT IND.		PERFECT SUBJ.
ich habe gehabt	*I have had*	ich habe gehabt
du haſt gehabt	*thou hast had*	du habeſt gehabt
er hat gehabt	*he has had*	er habe gehabt
wir haben gehabt	*we have had*	wir haben gehabt
ihr habt gehabt	*you have had*	ihr habet gehabt
ſie haben gehabt	*they have had*	ſie haben gehabt

PLUPERF. IND.		PLUPERF. SUBJ.
ich hatte gehabt	*I had had*	ich hätte gehabt
du hatteſt gehabt	*thou hadst had*	du hätteſt gehabt
er hatte gehabt	*he had had*	er hätte gehabt
wir hatten gehabt	*we had had*	wir hätten gehabt
ihr hattet gehabt	*you had had*	ihr hättet gehabt
ſie hatten gehabt	*they had had*	ſie hätten gehabt

FUTURE IND.		FUTURE SUBJ.
ich werde haben	*I shall have*	ich werde haben
du wirſt haben	*thou wilt have*	du werdeſt haben
er wird haben	*he will have*	er werde haben
wir werden haben	*we shall have*	wir werden haben
ihr werdet haben	*you will have*	ihr werdet haben
ſie werden haben	*they will have*	ſie werden haben

FUT. PERF. IND.			FUT. PERF. SUBJ.
ich werde	*I shall*		ich werde
du wirſt	*thou wilt*		du werdeſt
er wird	*he will*	*have had*	er werde
wir werden	*we shall*		wir werden
ihr werdet	*you will*		ihr werdet
ſie werden gehabt haben	*they will*		ſie werden gehabt haben

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde haben	*I should have*
du würdeſt haben	*thou wouldst have*
er würde haben	*he would have*
wir würden haben	*we should have*
ihr würdet haben	*you would have*
ſie würden haben	*they would have*

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	gehabt haben	*I should*	*have had*
du würdeſt		*thou wouldst*	
er würde		*he would*	
wir würden		*we should*	
ihr würdet		*you would*	
ſie würden		*they would*	

IMPERATIVE

—	haben wir, *let us have*
habe (du), *have thou*	habt (ihr), *have (you)*
habe er, *let him have*	haben ſie, *let them have*

PRESENT INFINITIVE

(zu) haben, (*to*) *have*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

habend, *having*

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gehabt zu haben, *to have had*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

gehabt, *had*

2. The conjugation of ſein — principal parts ſein, war, geweſen — is as follows:

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.
ich bin	*I am*	ich ſei
du biſt	*thou art*	du ſei(e)ſt
er iſt	*he is*	er ſei
wir ſind	*we are*	wir ſeien
ihr ſeid	*you are*	ihr ſeiet
ſie ſind	*they are*	ſie ſeien

PRET. IND.		PRET. SUBJ.
ich war	*I was*	ich wäre
du warſt	*thou wert*	du wäreſt
er war	*he was*	er wäre
wir waren	*we were*	wir wären
ihr war(e)t	*you were*	ihr wäret
ſie waren	*they were*	ſie wären
PERFECT INDIC.		**PERFECT SUBJ.**
ich bin geweſen	*I have been*	ich ſei geweſen
du biſt geweſen	*thou hast been*	du ſei(e)ſt geweſen
er iſt geweſen	*he has been*	er ſei geweſen
wir ſind geweſen	*we have been*	wir ſeien geweſen
ihr ſeid geweſen	*you have been*	ihr ſeiet geweſen
ſie ſind geweſen	*they have been*	ſie ſeien geweſen
PLUPERF. IND.		**PLUPERF. SUBJ.**
ich war geweſen	*I had been*	ich wäre geweſen
du warſt geweſen	*thou hadst been*	du wäreſt geweſen
er war geweſen	*he had been*	er wäre geweſen
wir waren geweſen	*we had been*	wir wären geweſen
ihr war(e)t geweſen	*you had been*	ihr wäret geweſen
ſie waren geweſen	*they had been*	ſie wären geweſen
FUTURE INDIC.		**FUTURE SUBJ.**
ich werde ſein	*I shall be*	ich werde ſein
du wirſt ſein	*thou wilt be*	du werdeſt ſein
er wird ſein	*he will be*	er werde ſein
wir werden ſein	*we shall be*	wir werden ſein
ihr werdet ſein	*you will be*	ihr werdet ſein
ſie werden ſein	*they will be*	ſie werden ſein
FUT. PERF. IND.		**FUT. PERF. SUBJ.**
ich werde … geweſen ſein	*I shall … have been*	ich werde … geweſen ſein
du wirſt … geweſen ſein	*thou wilt … have been*	du werdeſt … geweſen ſein
er wird … geweſen ſein	*he will … have been*	er werde … geweſen ſein
wir werden … geweſen ſein	*we shall … have been*	wir werden … geweſen ſein
ihr werdet … geweſen ſein	*you will … have been*	ihr werdet … geweſen ſein
ſie werden … geweſen ſein	*they will … have been*	ſie werden … geweſen ſein

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde ſein	*I should be*
du würdeſt ſein	*thou wouldst be*
er würde ſein	*he would be*
wir würden ſein	*we should be*
ihr würdet ſein	*you would be*
ſie würden ſein	*they would be*

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	geweſen ſein	*I should*	*have been*
du würdeſt		*thou wouldst*	
er würde		*he would*	
wir würden		*we should*	
ihr würdet		*you would*	
ſie würden		*they would*	

IMPERATIVE

—	ſeien wir, *let us be*
ſei (du), *be (thou)*	ſeid (ihr), *be (you)*
ſei er, *let him be*	ſeien ſie, *let them be*

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
(zu) ſein, *(to) be*	ſeiend, *being*

PERFECT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
geweſen zu ſein, *to have been*	geweſen, *been*

3. The conjugation of werden — principal parts werden, wurde or ward, geworden — is as follows:

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.
ich werde	*I become*	ich werde
du wirſt	*thou becomest*	du werdeſt
er wird	*he becomes*	er werde
wir werden	*we become*	wir werden
ihr werdet	*you become*	ihr werdet
ſie werden	*they become*	ſie werden

PRETERIT INDIC.		PRETERIT SUBJ.
ich wurde or ward	*I became*	ich würde
du wurdeſt or wardſt	*thou becamest*	du würdeſt
er wurde or ward	*he became*	er würde
wir wurden	*we became*	wir würden
ihr wurdet	*you became*	ihr würdet
ſie wurden	*they became*	ſie würden

PERFECT INDIC.		PERFECT SUBJ.
ich bin geworden	*I have become*	ich ſei geworden
du biſt geworden	*thou hast become*	du ſei(e)ſt geworden
er iſt geworden	*he has become*	er ſei geworden
wir ſind geworden	*we have become*	wir ſeien geworden
ihr ſeid geworden	*you have become*	ihr ſeiet geworden
ſie ſind geworden	*they have become*	ſie ſeien geworden

PLUPERFECT IND.		PLUPERF. SUBJ.
ich war geworden	*I had become*	ich wäre geworden
du warſt geworden	*thou hadst become*	du wäreſt geworden
er war geworden	*he had become*	er wäre geworden
wir waren geworden	*we had become*	wir wären geworden
ihr war(e)t geworden	*you had become*	ihr wäret geworden
ſie waren geworden	*they had become*	ſie wären geworden

FUTURE IND.		FUTURE SUBJ.
ich werde werden	*I shall become*	ich werde werden
du wirſt werden	*thou wilt become*	du werdeſt werden
er wird werden	*he will become*	er werde werden
wir werden werden	*we shall become*	wir werden werden
ihr werdet werden	*you will become*	ihr werdet werden
ſie werden werden	*they will become*	ſie werden werden

FUT. PERF. IND.			FUT. PERF. SUBJ.
ich werde	*I shall*		ich werde
du wirſt	*thou wilt*		du werdeſt
er wird	*he will*		er werde
wir werden	*we shall*		wir werden
ihr werdet	*you will*		ihr werdet
ſie werden	*they will*		ſie werden
geworden ſein		*have become*	geworden ſein

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde werden	*I should become*
du würdeſt werden	*thou wouldst become*
er würde werden	*he would become*
wir würden werden	*we should become*
ihr würdet werden	*you would become*
ſie würden werden	*they would become*

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	geworden ſein	*I should*	*have become*
du würdeſt		*thou wouldst*	
er würde		*he would*	
wir würden		*we should*	
ihr würdet		*you would*	
ſie würden		*they would*	

IMPERATIVE

—	werden wir, *let us become*
werde (du), *become (thou)*	werdet (ihr), *become (you)*
werde er, *let him become*	werden ſie, *let them become*

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
(zu) werden, *(to) become*	werdend, *becoming*
PERFECT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
geworden zu ſein, *to have become*	geworden, *become*

172. Remarks on the above Paradigms. Notice particularly the difference between corresponding indicative and subjunctive forms, such as haſt – habeſt, hat – habe, iſt – ſei, wird – werde. The following examples will show how the subjunctive is used and how the translation of it must vary: edel ſei der Menſch, *let man be noble;* es ſei wahr oder falſch, *be it true or false;* ich fragte ihn, ob er krank ſei, *I asked him if he was (were) sick.*

1. The third person plural, with ſie written Sie, is used as a second person in polite address. See § 301.

2. The preterit subjunctive is equivalent in meaning to the present conditional, and the pluperfect subjunctive to

the perfect conditional; thus es wäre ſonderbar, *it would be strange*, is the same as es würde ſonderbar ſein, and es wäre ſonderbar geweſen, *it would have been strange*, is the same as es würde ſonderbar geweſen ſein.

3. The third person singular and first person plural of the imperative are supplied from the subjunctive; they require the subject to be expressed, wir always after the verb, er either before or after. The subjects du and ihr are usually omitted. The third person plural of the imperative (also supplied from the subjunctive) is little used, except as a second person, in polite address. Sie is always expressed and always follows the verb; e. g. haben Sie Geduld, *have patience.*

4. In the preterit indicative of werden the forms with u are those ordinarily used, but those with a are very common in books.

173. Rule of Order IV: Compound Tenses. In an independent sentence the uninflected part of a compound tense, i. e. the infinitive or participle, comes last; in a dependent sentence the inflected auxiliary comes last and is immediately preceded by the uninflected part. Thus we have:

a. In the normal order: ich habe ihn ſeit geſtern nicht geſehen, *I have not seen him since yesterday;* Sie werden mich heute abend zu Hauſe finden, *you will find me at home this evening;* es würde mir große Freude gemacht haben, *it would have given me great pleasure.*

b. In the inverted order: ſeit geſtern habe ich ihn nicht geſehen; heute abend werden Sie mich zu Hauſe finden; mir würde es große Freude gemacht haben.

c. In the dependent order: ich weiß gewiß, daß ich ihn ſeit geſtern nicht geſehen habe, *I know for certain that I have not seen him since yesterday;* es iſt wahrſcheinlich, daß Sie mich heute abend zu Hauſe finden werden, *it is probable that you will find me at home this evening;* ich verſichere Sie, daß es mir große Freude gemacht haben würde, *I assure you that it would have given me great pleasure.*

EXERCISE 32

READING LESSON: FORMS OF **haben, ſein** AND **werden.**

Meine liebe Schweſter! Wo biſt du denn eigentlich?[1] Es werden morgen vierzehn Tage ſein, daß ich keine Zeile von Dir oder von der Mutter gehabt habe.[2] Vielleicht ſeid Ihr auf der Ausſtellung geweſen, aber in dem Falle würdet Ihr doch Zeit gehabt haben, ein paar Worte an mich zu ſchreiben. Wenn Du nur nicht krank geweſen biſt! Ich ſage mir zwar öfters[3]: Sei ruhig, habe Geduld; aber die Zeit wird mir am Ende doch gar zu lang.[4] Ich würde allerdings gefaßter ſein, hätteſt Du den Unfall nicht gehabt,[5] denn ich kann die Beſorgnis[6] nicht los werden, daß derſelbe[7] vielleicht ſchlimmer geweſen iſt, als Ihr anfangs[8] zu glauben geneigt wart.[9] Bitte, antworte recht bald auf dieſen Brief, ſei es nur einige Zeilen, dann werde ich wieder froh ſein.

Seit einem Monat bin ich nicht ſo fleißig geweſen, wie früher, weshalb meine Geſundheit bedeutend beſſer geworden iſt. Ich bitte Dich, dem Vater zu ſagen, daß es mir lieb[10] wäre, wenn ich für nächſten Monat einen kleinen Zuſchuß an Taſchengeld hätte. Es wird nämlich bald die Zeit der großen Meſſe ſein, und es wäre doch[11] unangenehm, wenn ich mich dabei zu ſehr einzuſchränken[12] hätte. Erwarte diesmal keinen langen Brief von mir. Ich habe ſchon mehrere Stunden die Feder in der Hand gehabt und bin des Schreibens[13] müde geworden.

EXERCISE 32 a

1. I have been very sick. 2. It would be a pity if he were[14] not at home. 3. On the 11th of February I shall be seventeen years old. 4. Many think they would be[15] happy if they only had[16] money. 5. He had always been my friend. 6. I had always had a friend in[17] him. 7. It was late, the air had become very cold, and we still had a long way before us. 8. Let him only have patience and everything will turn out[18] well in the[19] end. 9. My German would be better perhaps if I had had a better teacher. 10. He would have become famous if he had only been

more industrious. 11. It would be possible if I had more time. 12. Next week [20] I shall be at home every evening.[20] 13. How much money have I had? 14. Do you know [21] how much money I have had this month? [20]

Vocabulary

die Ausſtellung, *w.* exposition.
bedeutend, *pple. adj.* significant; *as adv.* notably.
die Beſorgnis, *s.*[2] fear, solicitude.
ei'nſchrä'nken, *v.* limit.
fleißig, *adj.* industrious.
gar, *adv.* quite, altogether.
die Geduld (*no pl.*) patience.
gefaßt, *pple. adj.* composed, calm.
geneigt, *pple. adj.* inclined.
los, *adj.* rid of, free from, **loose.**
die Meſſe, *w.* fair, *mass.*
müde, *adj.* tired.
öfters, *adv.* often, **oft.**
ſchlimm, *adj.* bad [**slim**].
der Zuſchuß, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), addition, increase.
zwar, *adv.* to be sure, forsooth.

Notes. — [1] **eigentlich,** *pray tell, I'd like to know.* — [2] **daß ich . . . gehabt habe,** *that I have not had,* i. e. *since I have had.* — [3] **öfters;** from öfter, comparative of oft, but without comparative meaning (see Ex. 20, n. 1). — [4] **wird . . . zu lang,** *is really* (doch) *becoming at last quite too long.* — [5] **hätteſt Du . . . nicht gehabt,** *if you had not had;* the pret. and plup. subj. are used, with or without wenn, to denote a condition which is contrary to fact. When wenn is omitted the conditional idea is expressed, as in English, by the inverted order; hätteſt Du nicht gehabt being = wenn Du nicht gehabt hätteſt. — [6] **Beſorgnis,** acc. depending upon los; kann nicht los werden = *can not get rid of;* kann being pres. ind. 1. pers. sing. of können. — [7] **derſelbe,** *it,* i. e. the accident (§ 134, 1). — [8] **anfangs,** *at first.* — [9] **wart;** dependent order after als = *than.* — [10] **lieb,** *agreeable.* — [11] **doch,** *surely.* — [12] **einzuſchränken,** *to limit.* Observe that the zu of the infinitive comes between the parts of the verb. Such verbs, called separable compounds, will be explained further on. — [13] **des Schreibens müde,** *tired of writing.* Notice that the gen. precedes the adj. on which it depends. — [14] **were,** wäre; see n. 5 above and § 359, 1, *a.* — [15] **think they would be,** denken, ſie würden . . . ſein, or, denken, daß ſie . . . ſein würden; daß can be omitted, just as 'that' may be in English, and in such case the order of the dependent clause is normal. — [16] **had,** hätten; see n. 5 above. — [17] **in,** an with dat. — [18] **turn out well,** gut werden. — [19] **in the,** am. — [20] acc. of time. — [21] **know,** wiſſen.

174. Weak and Strong Verbs. Verbs are divided into two great classes, called Weak and Strong. A weak

verb forms its preterit first person singular by adding te or ete to the stem, as mach-en, machte, red-en, red-ete. A strong verb forms its preterit by means of an internal vowel-change, called 'ablaut,' as kommen, kam.

1. The perfect participle of a weak verb always ends in t or et, as gemacht, geredet; that of a strong verb ends in en, as gekommen.

a. Verbs in ie'ren, which are always weak, do not take the prefix ge in the perfect participle; thus from ſtudie'ren, ſtudiert', not geſtudiert.

The Weak Conjugation

175. Examples: loben, *to praise*, conjugated with haben; folgen, *to follow*, conjugated with ſein.

1. Conjugation of loben. Principal parts, loben, lobte, gelobt.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.
ich lobe	*I praise*	ich lobe
du lobſt	*thou praisest*	du lobeſt
er lobt	*he praises*	er lobe
wir loben	*we praise*	wir loben
ihr lobt	*you praise*	ihr lobet
ſie loben	*they praise*	ſie loben
PRET. IND.		PRET. SUBJ.
ich lobte	*I praised*	ich lobte
du lobteſt	*thou praisedst*	du lobteſt
er lobte	*he praised*	er lobte
wir lobten	*we praised*	wir lobten
ihr lobtet	*you praised*	ihr lobtet
ſie lobten	*they praised*	ſie lobten
PERFECT IND.		PERFECT. SUBJ.
ich habe gelobt	*I have praised*	ich habe gelobt
du haſt gelobt	*thou hast praised*	du habeſt gelobt
er hat gelobt	*he has praised*	er habe gelobt
wir haben gelobt	*we have praised*	wir haben gelobt
ihr habt gelobt	*you have praised*	ihr habet gelobt
ſie haben gelobt	*they have praised*	ſie haben gelobt

PLUPERF. IND.		PLUPERF. SUBJ.
ich hatte gelobt	*I had praised*	ich hätte gelobt
du hatteſt gelobt	*thou hadst praised*	du hätteſt gelobt
er hatte gelobt	*he had praised*	er hätte gelobt
wir hatten gelobt	*we had praised*	wir hätten gelobt
ihr hattet gelobt	*you had praised*	ihr hättet gelobt
ſie hatten gelobt	*they had praised*	ſie hätten gelobt

FUTURE IND.		FUTURE SUBJ.
ich werde loben	*I shall praise*	ich werde loben
du wirſt loben	*thou wilt praise*	du werdeſt loben
er wird loben	*he will praise*	er werde loben
wir werden loben	*we shall praise*	wir werden loben
ihr werdet loben	*you will praise*	ihr werdet loben
ſie werden loben	*they will praise*	ſie werden loben

FUT. PERF. IND.			FUT. PERF. SUBJ
ich werde	*I shall*		ich werde
du wirſt	*thou wilt*		du werdeſt
er wird	*he will*		er werde
wir werden	*we shall*		wir werden
ihr werdet	*you will*		ihr werdet
ſie werden	*they will*		ſie werden
gelobt haben	*have praised*		gelobt haben

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde loben	*I should praise*
du würdeſt loben	*thou wouldst praise*
er würde loben	*he would praise*
wir würden loben	*we should praise*
ihr würdet loben	*you would praise*
ſie würden loben	*they would praise*

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	*I should*	
du würdeſt	*thou wouldst*	
er würde	*he would*	
wir würden	*we should*	
ihr würdet	*you would*	
ſie würden	*they would*	
gelobt haben		*have praised*

IMPERATIVE

——	loben wir, *let us praise*
lobe (du), *praise (thou)*	lobt (ihr), *praise (you)*
lobe er, *let him praise*	loben ſie, *let them praise*

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
(zu) loben, *(to) praise*	lobend, *praising*

PERFECT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
gelobt zu haben, *to have praised*	gelobt, *praised*

2. Conjugation of folgen. Principal parts, folgen, folgte, gefolgt.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.
ich folge	*I follow*	ich folge
du folgſt	*thou followest*	du folgeſt
er folgt	*he follows*	er folge
wir folgen	*we follow*	wir folgen
ihr folgt	*you follow*	ihr folget
ſie folgen	*they follow*	ſie folgen
PRET. IND.		**PRET. SUBJ.**
ich folgte	*I followed*	ich folgte
du folgteſt	*thou followedst*	du folgteſt
er folgte	*he followed*	er folgte
wir folgten	*we followed*	wir folgten
ihr folgtet	*you followed*	ihr folgtet
ſie folgten	*they followed*	ſie folgten
PERFECT IND.		**PERFECT SUBJ.**
ich bin gefolgt	*I have followed*	ich ſei gefolgt
du biſt gefolgt	*thou hast followed*	du ſei(e)ſt gefolgt
er iſt gefolgt	*he has followed*	er ſei gefolgt
wir ſind gefolgt	*we have followed*	wir ſeien gefolgt
ihr ſeid gefolgt	*you have followed*	ihr ſeiet gefolgt
ſie ſind gefolgt	*they have followed*	ſie ſeien gefolgt

PLUPERF. IND.		PLUPERF. SUBJ.
ich war gefolgt	*I had followed*	ich wäre gefolgt
du warſt gefolgt	*thou hadst followed*	du wäreſt gefolgt
er war gefolgt	*he had followed*	er wäre gefolgt
wir waren gefolgt	*we had followed*	wir wären gefolgt
ihr war(e)t gefolgt	*you had followed*	ihr wäret gefolgt
ſie waren gefolgt	*they had followed*	ſie wären gefolgt

FUTURE IND.		FUTURE SUBJ.
ich werde folgen	*I shall follow*	ich werde folgen
du wirſt folgen	*thou wilt follow*	du werdeſt folgen
er wird folgen	*he will follow*	er werde folgen
wir werden folgen	*we shall follow*	wir werden folgen
ihr werdet folgen	*you will follow*	ihr werdet folgen
ſie werden folgen	*they will follow*	ſie werden folgen

FUT. PERF. IND.			FUT. PERF. SUBJ.
ich werde	*I shall*		ich werde
du wirſt	*thou wilt*		du werdeſt
er wird	*he will*		er werde
wir werden	*we shall*		wir werden
ihr werdet	*you will*		ihr werdet
ſie werden	*they will*		ſie werden
gefolgt ſein	*have followed*		gefolgt ſein

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde folgen	*I should follow*
du würdeſt folgen	*thou wouldst follow*
er würde folgen	*he would follow*
wir würden folgen	*we should follow*
ihr würdet folgen	*you would follow*
ſie würden folgen	*they would follow*

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	*I should*	
du würdeſt	*thou wouldst*	
er würde	*he would*	
wir würden	*we should*	
ihr würdet	*you would*	
ſie würden	*they would*	
gefolgt ſein		*have followed*

IMPERATIVE

folge (du), *follow (thou)*	folgen wir, *let us follow*
folge er, *let him follow*	folget (ihr), *follow (you)*
	folgen ſie, *let them follow*

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
(zu) folgen, *(to) follow*	folgend, *following*
PERFECT INFINITIVE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
gefolgt zu ſein, *to have followed*	gefolgt, *followed*

176. Use of the Connecting Vowel e. While most weak verbs, like the examples given above, apply the endings ſt, t and te directly to the stem (except in the present subjunctive), there are others that insert the vowel e before these endings in order to facilitate pronunciation. Such are:

1. Verbs whose stems end in d or t; e. g., from reden, *to talk*, du redeſt, er redet, ich redete, geredet; from beten, *to pray*, du beteſt, er betet, betete, gebetet.

2. Verbs whose stem ends in a single m or n preceded by a consonant other than l or r; e. g. from rechnen, *to reckon*, du rechneſt, er rechnet, ich rechnete, gerechnet; from atmen, *to breathe*, du atmeſt, er atmet, atmete, geatmet. But from warnen, *to warn*, du warnſt, er warnt, warnte, gewarnt.

3. Verbs whose stem ends in an *s*-sound (but only before ſt, not before t or te); e. g. from raſen, *to rage*, du raſeſt, but er raſt, er raſte, geraſt; from wünſchen, *to wish* du wünſcheſt, er wünſcht, wünſchte, gewünſcht. But du raſt, du wünſcht, du tanzt etc. also occur.

177. Verbs in eln and ern. Verbs in eln and ern usually drop the e of these suffixes before the e of the first person singular, but retain it elsewhere; thus from handeln, *to act*, ich handle, du handelſt, er handelt, wir handeln, ich handelte, gehandelt, etc.

178. Irregular Weak Verbs. A few weak verbs have internal vowel-change in the preterit and perfect participle; e. g. kennen, *to know*, preterit kannte, participle gekannt. For a list of these verbs see § 330.

EXERCISE 33

Colloquy: Weak Verbs

1

Vater, der Lehrer ſagte uns heute, daß wir bald zwei neue Bücher brauchen würden.

Alſo eile zur Buchhandlung und kaufe ſie. Glücklicherweiſe[1] haſt du das Geld dazu.[2]

Du meinſt doch nicht das Geld, das du mir geſtern geſchenkt haſt?[3]

Gewiß meine ich das. Was haſt du damit gemacht?[4]

Dafür habe ich mir ein Paar Schlittſchuhe gekauft.

Du junger Schelm! Du wirſt mich noch zum Bettler machen.[5] — Was für Bücher verlangſt du denn?

Ein engliſches Leſebuch und Wörterbuch. Ich hoffe, daß du jedenfalls dieſen Kauf billigen wirſt.

Da haſt du recht,[6] mein Sohn; deinen engliſchen Studien bin ich ſtets mit Intereſſe gefolgt. Seid ihr denn mit der Grammatik ſchon fertig?

Nein, noch nicht; aber der Lehrer meint, daß es jetzt an der Zeit wäre,[7] neben der Grammatik eine leichte Lektüre zu verſuchen.

Da hat der Lehrer gewiß recht. Eine Sprache wird man immer am beſten aus der Sprache ſelbſt lernen.

Wie meinſt du das — doch nicht, daß es beſſer geweſen wäre, wenn wir überhaupt keine Grammatik ſtudiert hätten?

Nein; das würde ich nur dann ſagen, wenn du noch ein Kind wäreſt.

2

Father have you any money by you? The teacher says that I shall soon need some more new books.

Well, I gave [8] you some money yesterday. That will suffice, will it not?

Yes, but that was, as you say, a present. You surely did not suppose [9] that I would buy books with that?

You young rogue! You talk as if you still had [10] the money in your pocket.

And so I have [11]; but I am going [12] to buy me a pair of skates with it.

Oh, that's it. — Well, what books do you want, then?

In the first place,[13] a German reader. You will surely be glad to hear that.[14]

Yes, I want you to learn [15] German thoroly. But are you thru with the grammar already?

No, we have only had twenty exercises; there are [16] forty in the book.

I hope that you will do the remaining ones too.[17]

Oh, of course; we shall still have grammar every other day.[18]

EXERCISE 33a

1. I fetched a chair, seated myself, and waited. 2. Some one knocked; I opened the door and asked who was [19] there, but no one answered. 3. We talked of [20] books; he showed great knowledge, and I learned much. 4. I told him [21] what I thought, but it made no difference; he did not believe me.[21] 5. I have heard nothing of [20] the affair. 6. I shall always esteem her. 7. You will soon hear from me. 8. He will show you [21] the way. 9. Let some one open a window. 10. He has studied two years at [22] a German university. 11. Who would have believed it! 12. You have learned much; soon you will no longer [23] need a teacher. 13. I have bought me [21] a new house. 14. I have always followed your advice.[21]

Vocabulary

Remark. — The weak verbs, not counting compounds, which have already been introduced in the preceding exercises, are as follows: ängſtigen, antworten, brauchen, danken, dauern, deuten, fehlen, fragen, freuen, glau-

ben, holen, hören, hüten, klopfen, koſten, lauten, leben, legen, lernen, lieben, loben, machen, meinen, öffnen, reden, ruhen, ſagen, ſchätzen, ſetzen, ſpielen, ſtecken, ſtimmen, ſtudieren, warten, wohnen, wünſchen, zeigen. For the irregular weak verbs bringen, denken, kennen, nennen, see § 330.

die Aufgabe, *w.* exercise.
der Bettler, *s.*[1] beggar.
billigen, *v. w.* approve.
dann, *adv.* **then.**
eilen, *v. w.* make haste.
fertig, *adj.* ready; fertig mit, thru with.
genügen, *v. w.* be **enough,** suffice.
glücklicherweiſe, *adv.* fortunately [**lucky-wise**].
die Gramma'tik, *w. grammar.*
gründlich, *adj.* thoro.
die Handlung, *w.* shop, store.
hoffen, *v. w.* **hope.**
jedenfalls, *adv.* at any rate.
der Kauf, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu), purchase.
kaufen, *v. w.* buy.
die Lektü're, *w.* text for reading.
das Leſebuch, *s.*[3] reading-book, reader.
neben, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) beside, along with.
ob, *sub. conj.* whether; als ob, as if.
der Schelm, *s.*[2] rogue, scamp.
ſchenken, *v. w.* present, give.
der Schlittſchuh, *s.*[2] skate [**slide-shoe**].
ſtets, *adv.* always [**stead-ily**].
übrig, *adj.* remaining [**over-**].
verlangen, *v. w.* demand, want, [**-long**].
verſuchen, *v. w.* try [**-seek**].
das Wörterbuch, *n. s.*[3] dictionary [**word-book**].

Notes. — [1] **Glücklicherweiſe**; formed from the gen. glücklicher Weiſe (Weiſe = *manner*) used adverbially. — [2] **dazu,** *for them,* or *for the purchase.* — [3] **geſchenkt haſt,** *gave,* not *have given;* German often uses the perf. where English prefers a pret. — [4] **gemacht,** *done.* — [5] **mich zum Bettler machen,** *make me a beggar:* see § 265, 2, *a.* — [6] **da haſt du recht,** *there you are right; to* be *right* = recht haben, not recht ſein. — [7] **daß . . . wäre,** *that it would be in order.* — [8] **I gave**; use the perf. — [9] **you surely did not suppose,** du meinteſt doch wohl nicht. — [10] **had,** hätteſt, in dependent order (see Ex. 32, n. 5). — [11] **And so I have,** und ich habe es auch wirklich. — [12] **I am going,** ich werde. — [13] **In the first place,** erſtens. — [14] **You will . . . that,** das wirſt du doch wohl gern hören. — [15] **I want you to learn,** ich wünſche daß du . . . lerneſt (subj.). — [16] **there are,** es ſind. — [17] **too,** auch, before die übrigen. — [18] **every other day,** alle zwei Tage following noch. — [19] **was,** ſei or wäre. — [20] **of,** von. — [21] Use the dat. — [22] **at,** auf, with dat. — [23] **no longer,** nicht mehr.

The Strong Conjugation

179. Characteristics. The distinguishing characteristics of all strong **verbs are, as we have** seen. (1) vowel-

change in the preterit and (2) the ending en in the perfect participle. To these may be added two others which are found only in certain verbs, namely: (3) vowel-change in the present indicative and imperative, and (4) umlaut in the preterit subjunctive.

180. Formation of the Preterit. The vowel of the preterit indicative is always different from that of the infinitive. The first and third persons singular have no ending; elsewhere the endings are as in the present.

1. The final consonant of the stem usually remains the same in all the principal parts, as in geben, gab, gegeben. But a consonant is everywhere liable to be doubled to indicate that the preceding vowel is short; e. g. bitten, bat, gebeten; reiten, ritt, geritten. In a few verbs the consonant changes; e. g. ziehen, zog, gezogen.

2. The preterit subjunctive, first person singular, is regularly formed by adding e to the corresponding indicative form, with umlaut of the root-vowel if possible; e. g. hielt–hielte (from halten); gab–gäbe (from geben).

181. Formation of the Perfect Participle. The ending is always en. The root-vowel may be like that of the infinitive, as in geben, gab, gegeben; or like that of the preterit, as in reiten, ritt, geritten; or unlike either, as in ſingen, ſang, geſungen.

1. The prefix ge is required. For the omission of it in certain rare cases see § 188, 3, *a*.

182. Vowel-Change in the Present. This affects but three forms, namely, the second and third person singular of the present indicative, and in some verbs the second person singular of the imperative. The changes that take place are as follows:

1. Radical a becomes ä in the indicative, but remains unchanged in the imperative; thus from tragen, *to bear*, ich trage, du trägſt, er trägt, wir tragen, imperative trage.

2. Radical e if short becomes i; e. g. helfen, *to help*, ich helfe, du hilfſt, er hilft, wir helfen, imperative hilf. For radical long e the rule is not so simple. In seven verbs it changes to ie, in three to i, and in seven it remains unchanged; e. g. ich ſehe, du ſiehſt, er ſieht, wir ſehen, ſieh; ich nehme, du nimmſt, er nimmt, wir nehmen, nimm; ich ſtehe, du ſtehſt, er ſteht, wir ſtehen, ſteh.

a. Like ſehen are befehlen, empfehlen, geſchehen, leſen, ſcheren, ſtehlen; like nehmen, are geben and treten; like ſtehen, bewegen, gehen, geneſen, heben, pflegen, weben.

3. Other vowels and the diphthongs remain, in general, unchanged, but in laufen, ſtoßen and sometimes in kommen, the stem-vowel undergoes umlaut in the 2. and 3. person indicative. In § 331 will be found a complete list of the strong verbs, with their vowel-changes.

183. The Dropping of the Connecting Vowel. Strong verbs usually reject the connecting vowel in those forms of the present that have undergone vowel-change. If then the stem ends in t, so that two t's would be brought together in the third person singular, the two contract to one; thus es gilt, for gilt't, from gelten, *to be worth*. Otherwise the rules for the use of the connecting vowel are the same as in the case of weak verbs.

1. The following examples will show the difference in the present inflection of like-sounding strong and weak verbs:

Strong		*Weak*
ich halte, du hältſt,	er hält	ich walte, du walteſt, er waltet
ich lade, du lädſt,	er lädt	ich bade, du badeſt, er badet
ich eſſe, du ißt (or iſſeſt),	er ißt	ich preſſe, du preſſeſt, er preßt

2. The imperative second person singular omits the final e in those verbs that have i or ie changed from e; thus lies, from leſen; hilf, from helfen; but trage, from tragen.

184. Examples of Strong Conjugation: ſehen, *to see*, conjugated with haben; fallen, *to fall*, conjugated with ſein.

1. Conjugation of ſehen. Principal parts, ſehen, ſah, geſehen.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.
ich ſehe	*I see*	ich ſehe
du ſiehſt	*thou seest*	du ſeheſt
er ſieht	*he sees*	er ſehe
wir ſehen	*we see*	wir ſehen
ihr ſeht	*you see*	ihr ſehet
ſie ſehen	*they see*	ſie ſehen
PRET. IND.		**PRET. SUBJ.**
ich ſah	*I saw*	ich ſähe
du ſahſt	*thou sawest*	du ſäheſt
er ſah	*he saw*	er ſähe
wir ſahen	*we saw*	wir ſähen
ihr ſaht	*you saw*	ihr ſähet
ſie ſahen	*they saw*	ſie ſähen
PERFECT IND.		**PERFECT SUBJ.**
ich habe geſehen	*I have seen*	ich habe geſehen
du haſt geſehen	*thou hast seen*	du habeſt geſehen
er hat geſehen	*he has seen*	er habe geſehen
wir haben geſehen	*we have seen*	wir haben geſehen
ihr habt geſehen	*you have seen*	ihr habet geſehen
ſie haben geſehen	*they have seen*	ſie haben geſehen
PLUPERF. IND.		**PLUPERF. SUBJ.**
ich hatte geſehen	*I had seen*	ich hätte geſehen
du hatteſt geſehen	*thou hadst seen*	du hätteſt geſehen
er hatte geſehen	*he had seen*	er hätte geſehen
wir hatten geſehen	*we had seen*	wir hätten geſehen
ihr hattet geſehen	*you had seen*	ihr hättet geſehen
ſie hatten geſehen	*they had seen*	ſie hätten geſehen

FUTURE IND.		FUTURE SUBJ.
ich werde ſehen	*I shall see*	ich werde ſehen
du wirſt ſehen	*thou wilt see*	du werdeſt ſehen
er wird ſehen	*he will see*	er werde ſehen
wir werden ſehen	*we shall see*	wir werden ſehen
ihr werdet ſehen	*you will see*	ihr werdet ſehen
ſie werden ſehen	*they will see*	ſie werden ſehen

FUT. PERF. IND.			FUT. PERF. SUBJ.
ich werde	*I shall*		ich werde
du wirſt	*thou wilt*		du werdeſt
er wird	*he will*		er werde
wir werden	*we shall*		wir werden
ihr werdet	*you will*		ihr werdet
ſie werden	*they will*		ſie werden
geſehen haben	*have seen*		geſehen haben

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde ſehen	*I should see*
du würdeſt ſehen	*thou wouldst see*
er würde ſehen	*he would see*
wir würden ſehen	*we should see*
ihr würdet ſehen	*you would see*
ſie würden ſehen	*they would see*

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde	*I should*	
du würdeſt	*thou wouldst*	
er würde	*he would*	
wir würden	*we should*	
ihr würdet	*you would*	
ſie würden	*they would*	
geſehen haben		*have seen*

IMPERATIVE

	ſehen wir, *let us see*
ſieh (du), *see (thou)*	ſeh(e)t (ihr), *see (you)*
ſehe er, *let him see*	ſehen ſie, *let them see*

PRESENT INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE
(zu) ſehen, *(to) see*	ſehend, *seeing*
PERFECT INFINITIVE	**PERFECT PARTICIPLE**
geſehen zu haben, *to have seen*	geſehen, *seen*

2. Conjugation of fallen. Principal parts, fallen, fiel, gefallen.

PRES. IND.		PRES. SUBJ.
ich falle	*I fall*	ich falle
du fällſt	*thou fallest*	du falleſt
er fällt	*he falls*	er falle
wir fallen	*we fall*	wir fallen
ihr fallt	*you fall*	ihr fallet
ſie fallen	*they fall*	ſie fallen
PRET. IND.		**PRET. SUBJ.**
ich fiel	*I fell*	ich fiele
du fielſt	*thou fellest*	du fieleſt
er fiel	*he fell*	er fiele
wir fielen	*we fell*	wir fielen
ihr fielt	*you fell*	ihr fielet
ſie fielen	*they fell*	ſie fielen
PERF. IND.		**PERF. SUBJ.**
ich bin gefallen	*I have fallen*	ich ſei gefallen
du biſt gefallen	*thou hast fallen*	du ſei(e)ſt gefallen
er iſt gefallen	*he has fallen*	er ſei gefallen
wir ſind gefallen	*we have fallen*	wir ſeien gefallen
ihr ſeid gefallen	*you have fallen*	ihr ſeiet gefallen
ſie ſind gefallen	*they have fallen*	ſie ſeien gefallen
PLUPERF. IND.		**PLUPERF. SUBJ.**
ich war gefallen	*I had fallen*	ich wäre gefallen
du warſt gefallen	*thou hadst fallen*	du wäreſt gefallen
er war gefallen	*he had fallen*	er wäre gefallen
wir waren gefallen	*we had fallen*	wir wären gefallen
ihr war(e)t gefallen	*you had fallen*	ihr wäret gefallen
ſie waren gefallen	*they had fallen*	ſie wären gefallen
FUTURE IND.		**FUTURE SUBJ.**
ich werde fallen	*I shall fall*	ich werde fallen
du wirſt fallen	*thou wilt fall*	du werdeſt fallen
er wird fallen	*he will fall*	er werde fallen

wir werden fallen	*we shall fall*	wir werden fallen
ihr werdet fallen	*you will fall*	ihr werdet fallen
ſie werden fallen	*they will fall*	ſie werden fallen

FUT. PERF. IND. FUT. PERF. SUBJ

ich werde	*I shall*		ich werde	
du wirſt	*thou wilt*		du werdeſt	
er wird	*he will*		er werde	
wir werden	*we shall*		wir werden	
ihr werdet	*you will*		ihr werdet	
ſie werden	*they will*		ſie werden	
gefallen ſein		*have fallen*		gefallen ſein

PRESENT CONDITIONAL

ich würde fallen	*I should fall*
du würdeſt fallen	*thou wouldst fall*
er würde fallen	*he would fall*
wir würden fallen	*we should fall*
ihr würdet fallen	*you would fall*
ſie würden fallen	*they would fall*

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

ich würde		*I should*	
du würdeſt		*thou wouldst*	
er würde		*he would*	
wir würden		*we should*	
ihr würdet		*you would*	
ſie würden		*they would*	
gefallen ſein			*have fallen*

IMPERATIVE

	fallen wir, *let us fall*
falle (du), *fall (thou)*	fallet (ihr), *fall (you)*
falle er, *let him fall*	fallen ſie, *let them fall*

PRESENT INFINITIVE

(zu) fallen, *(to) fall*

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

fallend, *falling*

PERFECT INFINITIVE

gefallen zu ſein, *to have fallen*

PERFECT PARTICIPLE

gefallen, *fallen*

185. Irregular Strong Verbs. The three verbs gehen, *go*, ſtehen, *stand*, and tun, *do*, are irregular in that they form their preterit and perfect participle from a stem different from that of the present. They are also without vowel-change in the present. The principal parts are gehen, ging, gegangen; ſtehen, ſtand, geſtanden; tun, tat, getan. The simple tenses of the indicative are inflected as follows:

Present			*Preterit*		
ich gehe	ſtehe	tue	ging	ſtand	tat
du gehſt	ſtehſt	tuſt	gingſt	ſtandſt	tatſt
er geht	ſteht	tut	ging	ſtand	tat
wir gehen	ſtehen	tun	gingen	ſtanden	taten
ihr geht	ſteht	tut	gingt	ſtandet	tatet
ſie gehen	ſtehen	tun	gingen	ſtanden	taten

1. The other forms are regular, gehen being conjugated with ſein, ſtehen and tun with haben.

186. Verbs of Mixed Inflection. A number of verbs which were once strong have passed over, wholly or in part, to the weak conjugation; e. g. rächen, roch, gerochen, *to avenge*, is now usually conjugated rächen, rächte, gerächt.

1. Thus strong and weak forms from the same verb may exist side by side. When this is the case they are sometimes associated with difference of meaning; e. g. the principal parts of ſchaffen in the sense of *create* are ſchaffen, ſchuf, geſchaffen; but in the sense of *do*, *be busy*, ſchaffen, ſchaffte, geſchafft.

187. Rule of Order V: Dependent Infinitives. A dependent infinitive, with or without zu, comes last if the verb is in a simple tense, otherwise next to the last; e. g. ich habe nichts mit der Sache zu tun, *I have nothing to do with the affair;* but ich habe nichts mit der Sache zu tun gehabt, *I have had nothing to do with the affair.*

1. An infinitive dependent upon a verb which itself stands in the dependent order generally comes just before the verb if unmodified, but after it if modified by an object or an adverb; e. g. obwohl ich ihn zu antworten gebeten hatte, *tho I had asked him to answer;* but obwohl ich ihn gebeten hatte, meine Frage zu beantworten, *tho I had asked him to answer my question.*

EXERCISE 34

Reading Lesson: Strong Verbs

Mein lieber Freund! Endlich haſt Du Dein langes Schweigen gebrochen; Dein Brief vom 12. dieſes Monats iſt mir ſoeben zu Händen gekommen. Für die Nachrichten, die Du mir aus der Heimat gibſt, danke ich Dir herzlich, obwohl andere Freunde mir zum Teil[1] ſchon über dieſelben Dinge geſchrieben hatten. Ich ſchließe[2] aus Deinem Briefe, daß es Dir gut geht, und daß Du keine Gefahr läufſt,[3] an[4] der Schwindſucht zu ſterben. Die Beſchreibung Deiner Reiſe nach Chicago war mir höchſt intereſſant. Was Du nicht alles geſehen haſt! Und in wie kurzer Zeit! Denn es ſcheint, daß Du nur drei oder vier Tage dort geblieben biſt.

Nun, ich habe auch kürzlich eine kleine Reiſe gemacht, — eine Fußwanderung[5] im Harzgebirge. Vielleicht wirſt Du gern davon hören. Ich hatte viel von den Schönheiten dieſer Gegend gehört und geleſen, und war natürlich recht neugierig darauf[6] geworden. Vor etwa zwei Wochen ſprach ich eines Tages[7] darüber mit einem Bekannten, der meine Neugierde zu teilen ſchien, und wir trafen die Verabredung, den berühmten Brocken[8] zuſammen in Augenſchein zu nehmen.[9]

EXERCISE 34 a

1. She speaks, reads, and writes German very well. 2. The picture hangs too high. 3. He does not keep[10] his word. 4. My physician advises a long walk every day,[11] but that[12] takes too much time. 5. What would you give for it? 6. I asked[13] him to remain. 7. How long did

you remain? 8. I found him as[14] he was lying by the way, helped him[15] upon[16] his feet and gave him[15] some money. 9 I came home late,[17] sat a while by the stove, wrote a few letters, and then went[18] to bed. 10. You have done much for me. 11. I have written three letters, but he has not answered. 12. We have remained too long already. 13. If you had come a little earlier, I should have found[19] you. 14. I now saw that we had gone too far.

NOTE. — At this point it will be well to review and memorize the principal parts of the strong verbs already introduced in the preceding exercises. Omitting compounds they are as follows, those conjugated with ſein being marked with an asterisk:

bitten	bat	gebeten	ſcheinen	ſchien	geſchienen
*bleiben	blieb	geblieben	ſchreiben	ſchrieb	geſchrieben
finden	fand	gefunden	ſehen	ſah	geſehen
geben	gab	gegeben	*ſein	war	geweſen
*gehen	ging	gegangen	ſitzen	ſaß	geſeſſen
halten	hielt	gehalten	ſprechen	ſprach	geſprochen
heißen	hieß	geheißen	ſtehen	ſtand	geſtanden
helfen	half	geholfen	tun	tat	getan
*kommen	kam	gekommen	tragen	trug	getragen
leſen	las	geleſen	*werden	ward	geworden
liegen	lag	gelegen		wurde	
nehmen	nahm	genommen	ziehen	zog	gezogen
raten	riet	geraten			

VOCABULARY

der Augenſchein, *s.*[2] view [**eye-shine**].
bekannt, *adj.* known; *as subst.* acquaintance.
die Beſchreibung, *w.* description.
brechen, *v. s.* (brach, gebrochen), **break.**
endlich, *adv.* finally [**end-**].
der Fuß, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Füße), **foot.**
die Gefahr, *w.* danger.
die Heimat, *w.* home [**home-**].
herzlich, *adj.* **heart-y**, cordial.
kürzlich, *adv.* lately.
laufen, *v. s.* (lief, gelaufen, *aux.* ſein), run [**leap**].
die Neugierde, *w.* curiosity.
neugierig, *adj.* curious.
obwohl, *sub. conj.* altho.
ſchließen, *v. s.* (ſchloß, geſchloſſen), infer, conclude.
ſchweigen, *v. s.* (ſchwieg, geſchwiegen), be silent.

die Schwindſucht, *w.* consumption.
ſoeben, *adv.* just now [**so-even**].
ſterben, *v. s.* (ſtarb, geſtorben, *aux.* ſein), die [**starve**].
teilen, *v. w.* share [**deal**].
treffen, *v. s.* (traf, getroffen), hit, hit upon.
die Vera'bredung, *w.* agreement, arrangement.
zuſammen, *adv.* together.

NOTES. — [1] **zum Teil,** *in part.* — [2] **ſchließe**; notice that ſchließen has geſchloſſen (not geſchloßen) in the perf. pple. This means that the o is short. — [3] **läufſt**; see § 182, 3. Gefahr laufen = *to run a risk.* — [4] **an,** *of;* the name of the malady *from* which one suffers, or *of* which one dies, is put in the dat. with an. — [5] **Fußwanderung,** *walking tour.* — [6] **darauf,** *with regard to it.* — [7] **eines Tages,** *one day;* for the gen. of time see § 251, 2. — [8] **Brocken,** *Brocken;* the highest summit of the Harz Mountains. — [9] **nehmen**; see § 182, 2. Zu Augenſchein nehmen = *to inspect, take a view of.* — [10] **keep,** halten. — [11] **every day,** acc. — [12] **that**; das, rather than der. — [13] **ask,** bitten. — [14] **as,** wie (*sub. conj.*). — [15] Use the dat. — [16] **upon,** auf with acc. — [17] **home late**; see § 96, 1. — [18] **then went,** ging dann. — [19] **I should have found,** hätte ich gefunden or würde ich . . . gefunden haben. The reason for the inverted order is explained further on in § 200.

EXERCISE 35

READING LESSON: THE SAME CONTINUED

Am nächſten Tage fuhren wir mit der Eiſenbahn bis nach Wernigerode,[1] und von da gingen wir zu Fuß nach Ilſenburg, einem kleinen Dorfe, welches ungefähr vier Stunden[2] vom Brockengipfel entfernt[3] liegt. Hier fanden wir bald ein gutes Gaſthaus, wo wir uns ziemlich früh zu Bett legten. Am folgenden Morgen hingen leichte Wolken am Himmel, und man riet[4] uns, auf gutes Wetter zu warten. Es wäre beſſer geweſen, wenn wir dieſem Rate gefolgt wären, aber dazu waren wir zu ungeduldig. Wir hielten[5] die leichten Wolken nicht für gefährlich.

Alſo machten wir uns früh auf den Weg,[6] und am Anfang ging es auch wirklich ſehr ſchön. Die Morgenluft war höchſt angenehm, die Vögel ſangen in den Bäumen, und eine prächtige Natur bot, während wir höher und höher ſtiegen, immer neue Reize. Nachdem wir etwa eine Stunde gegangen waren, kamen wir an einen 300 Fuß[7] hohen Felſen, welcher den Namen „Ilſenſtein" trägt. Derſelbe liegt dicht am Wege und iſt nicht ſchwer

zu beſteigen.[8] Wir klommen alſo auf den Gipfel und ſaßen wohl eine halbe Stunde droben.

EXERCISE 35 a

1. The river runs through beautiful valleys. 2. He carries his head very high. 3. Let him be silent and go his way.[9] 4. Please shut the door — I have already asked[10] you twice. 5. I have offered you[11] too much already. 6. It seemed impossible to mount higher. 7. At last we came to[12] a little village, which was called Hochstein. 8. I met[13] her at[14] the station and we drove home together. 9. On the summit we saw a little girl who offered us[11] the flowers that she had found. 10. I would be silent if only he had not broken his word. 11. I ran quickly to[12] the river, gave the child[11] my hand and drew it to[12] the land. 12. The child would have died if I had not come. 13. You would have fallen had I not taken you by the hand. 14. Who knows what Byron would have done if he had not died so young?

Vocabulary

beſteigen, *v. s.* (beſtieg, beſtiegen), climb.
bieten, *v. s.* (bot, geboten), offer, **bid.**
dicht, *adj.* close, dense [**tight**].
das Dorf, *s.*[3] village [**thorp**].
droben, *adv.* up there.
die Eiſenbahn, *w.* railway.
entfernt, *adv.* distant.
fahren, *v. s.* (fuhr, gefahren, *aux.* ſein), travel, drive [**fare**].
der Felſen, *s.*[1] rock.
das Gaſthaus, *s.*[3] inn [**guest-house**].
gefährlich, *adj.* dangerous.
der Gipfel, *s.*[1] peak, summit.
der Himmel, *s.*[1] heaven, sky.
klimmen, *v. s.* (klomm, geklommen, *aux.* ſein), **climb.**
nachde'm, *sub. conj.* after.
die Natu'r, *w. nature.*
der Reiz, *s.*[2] charm.
ſingen, *v. s.* (ſang, geſungen), **sing.**
ſteigen, *v. s.* (ſtieg, geſtiegen, *aux.* ſein), climb.
u'ngeduldig, *adj.* impatient.
der Vogel, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö), bird [**fowl**].
während, *sub. conj.* while; *also prep.* (*gen.*), during.
die Wolke, *w.* cloud [**welkin**].

NOTES. — [1] **Wernigero'de,** name of a little city in the Harz Mountains. — [2] **Stunden,** *hours' walk, leagues*; acc. of measure. — [3] **entfernt,** *distant, away*; the acc. of measure is often accompanied by an adv. of measure. — [4] **riet,** *advised.* The verb also means *to guess* (Ex. 30). — [5] **hielten**; halten für = *regard as, consider.* — [6] **ſich auf den Weg machen,** *to start, get under way.* — [7] **Fuß**; used in the sing., as a measure of height, after a numeral. — [8] **beſteigen** is transitive, while ſteigen is intransitive. The construction here requires a transitive verb. — [9] **way,** acc., tho gehen is intransitive; see § 266, 1. — [10] **ask,** bitten; the order: dich ſchon zweimal. — [11] Use the dat.; the order: dir ſchon zu viel. — [12] **to,** an with acc. — [13] **meet,** treffen. — [14] **at,** auf with dat.

EXERCISE 36

READING LESSON: THE SAME CONTINUED

Die Ausſicht von dieſem Punkte werde ich ſo bald nicht vergeſſen. Während wir hier ſaßen und plauderten, deutete mein Reiſekamerad mehrmals[1] auf die Wolken, welche immer noch am Himmel hingen und gerade jetzt höher zu ſteigen und dichter zu werden ſchienen. Wir ſahen, daß es ein Gewitter geben würde, und dachten[2] ſofort an die Worte der Leute im Gaſthauſe. Aber an[3] eine Rückkehr war jetzt nicht mehr zu denken; dazu glaubten[4] wir zu weit gegangen zu ſein. Alſo gingen wir weiter, da kein Obdach zu ſehen[5] war, nach dem Gipfel des Berges zu.[6] Jetzt ſchritten wir natürlich ſchneller, indem[7] wir alle paar Minuten[8] Blicke nach dem Himmel warfen. Von Zeit zu Zeit liefen wir ſogar eine kleine Strecke, aber das wurde bald ermüdend. Endlich brach das Gewitter los, und was für ein Wetter! Der Regen fiel in Strömen, der Wind blies und heulte wie toll[9] und bog die Bäume, daß ſie brachen. Blendende Blitze ſchoſſen überall durch die Luft und ſchlugen bisweilen in die Bäume.

EXERCISE 36 a

1. He stands now where I stood ten years ago. 2. The letter has been lying on my table a whole week. 3. We had mounted higher and higher and stood now upon the summit. 4. William Tell shot an apple from the head of

his child. 5. His heart beats warmly for the poor. 6. We have met and beaten them twice. 7. The thing bends, but it does not break. 8. The wind is blowing cold from the mountains; there will be [10] a storm 9. Prices have risen; everything has become dearer. 10. He cast one glance at [11] the crowd and strode quietly into the building. 11. Poets have always sung of love and beauty. 12. How long have you been standing already? 13. Did you drive or come on foot? 14. Why are you silent? Do you not see what you have done? 15. That throws a strong light upon [11] the whole affair. 16. It struck twelve as we were standing before the door, and I saw that we had come too late.

Vocabulary

die Aussicht, *w.* view **[outsight].**
biegen, *v. s.* (bog, gebogen), bend **[bow].**
blasen, *v. s.* (blies, geblasen), blow.
blenden, *v. w.* **blind,** dazzle.
der Blick, *s.*[2] glance.
der Blitz, *s.*[2] flash, lightning.
ermüden, *v. w.* tire, fatigue.
das Gewitter, *s.*[1] thunderstorm.
heulen, *v. w.* **howl.**
inde'm, *sub. conj.* while, since.
das Obdach, *s.*[3] shelter **[-thatch].**
plaudern, *w.* chat.
der Regen, *s.*[1] **rain.**
die Rückkehr, *w.* return.
schießen, *v. s.* (schoß, geschossen), **shoot.**
schlagen, *v. s.* (schlug, geschlagen), strike, beat **[slay].**
schreiten, *v. s.* (schritt, geschritten, *aux.* sein), step.
sogar, *adv.* actually, even.
die Strecke, *w.* **stretch,** distance.
der Strom, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö), **stream.**
toll, *adj.* mad.
überall, *adv.* everywhere.
vergessen, *v. s.* (vergaß, vergessen), **forget.**
werfen, *v. s.* (warf, geworfen), throw, cast **[warp].**
der Wind, *s.*[2] **wind.**

Notes.— [1] **mehrmals,** *several times.* Notice the inversion (Ex. 29, n. 2). — [2] **dachten**; from denken, dachte, gedacht; one of the irregular weak verbs. — [3] **an . . . denken,** *a return was now no longer to be thought of, there was no thinking of a return any more.* — [4] **glaubten . . . sein,** *believed that we had gone.* — [5] **zu sehen,** *to be seen.* — [6] **nach . . . zu,** *toward.* — [7] **indem . . . warfen,** *while we cast,* or better simply *casting.* A clause with indem is often best translated by the Eng. pple. in *ing.* — [8] **alle paar Minuten,** *every few minutes.* — [9] **wie toll,** *like mad.* — [10] **be,** geben. — [11] **at, upon,** auf with acc.

The Modal Auxiliaries and wiſſen

188. Characteristics. The verbs dürfen, *to be permitted*, können, *can*, mögen, *may*, müſſen, *must*, ſollen, *shall*, wollen, *will*, and wiſſen, *to know*, constitute a class by themselves. The first six are called 'modal auxiliaries.' They and wiſſen were originally strong verbs, but developed weak preterits after the old preterit had acquired present meaning. As a class they have the following peculiarities:

1. In the present indicative the vowel of the singular (except in ſollen) is different from that of the plural, and the third person singular lacks the ending t.

2. Where the infinitive has umlaut, this umlaut disappears in the preterit indicative, but is found in the preterit subjunctive.

3. Each verb (except wiſſen) has two perfect participles, one weak, with prefix ge, and without umlaut, the other strong, without ge, and identical in form with the infinitive; thus from können, gekonnt and können. The strong participle is used only and always in connection with an infinitive; thus ich habe es nicht gekonnt, *I have not been able (to do) it;* but ich habe es nicht tun können, *I have not been able to do it.*

a. There are a few other verbs that show this last peculiarity of the modal auxiliaries; i. e. employ what seems to be the infinitive, and really is so if the verb is weak, in connection with an infinitive. The most common of them are heißen, helfen, laſſen, ſehen and hören. Thus one says ich habe ſagen hören, *I have heard say.*

189. Inflection of the Modal Auxiliaries. The forms are given below without translation, because they must be translated variously. See §§ 190 and 332 ff.

1. **Dürfen.** Principal parts, dürfen, durfte, gedurft.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRET. IND.	PRET. SUBJ.
ich darf	ich dürfe	ich durfte	ich dürfte
du darfſt	du dürfeſt	du durfteſt	du dürfteſt
er darf	er dürfe	er durfte	er dürfte
wir dürfen	wir dürfen	wir durften	wir dürften
ihr dürft	ihr dürfet	ihr durftet	ihr dürftet
ſie dürfen	ſie dürfen	ſie durften	ſie dürften

PERFECT INDIC.

ich habe gedurft
du haſt gedurft etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . dürfen
du haſt . . . dürfen etc.

PERFECT SUBJ.

ich habe gedurft
du habeſt gedurft etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . dürfen
du habeſt . . . dürfen etc.

PLUPERF. INDIC.

ich hatte gedurft
du hatteſt gedurft etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hatte . . . dürfen
du hatteſt . . . dürfen etc.

PLUPERF. SUBJ.

ich hätte gedurft
du hätteſt gedurft etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hätte . . . dürfen
du hätteſt . . . dürfen etc.

FUT. INDIC.

ich werde dürfen
du wirſt dürfen etc.

FUT. SUBJ.

ich werde dürfen
du werdeſt dürfen etc.

FUTURE PERF. INDIC.

ich werde gedurft haben
du wirſt gedurft haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . dürfen
du wirſt haben . . . dürfen etc.

FUTURE PERF. SUBJ.

ich werde gedurft haben
du werdeſt gedurft haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . dürfen
du werdeſt haben . . . dürfen etc.

PRESENT COND.

ich würde dürfen
du würdeſt dürfen etc.

PERFECT COND.

ich würde gedurft haben
du würdeſt gedurft haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich würde haben . . . dürfen etc.

IMPERATIVE (wanting)

PRES. INF.	PRES. PPLE.
(zu) dürfen	dürfend
PERFECT INF.	PERFECT PPLE.
gedurft zu haben	gedurft, dürfen

2. **Können.** Principal parts, können, konnte, gekonnt.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRET. IND.	PRET. SUBJ.
ich kann	ich könne	ich konnte	ich könnte
du kannſt	du könneſt	du konnteſt	du könnteſt
er kann	er könne	er konnte	er könnte
wir können	wir können	wir konnten	wir könnten
ihr könnt	ihr könnet	ihr konntet	ihr könntet
ſie können	ſie können	ſie konnten	ſie könnten

PERFECT IND.

ich habe gekonnt
du haſt gekonnt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . können
du haſt . . . können etc.

PERFECT SUBJ.

ich habe gekonnt
du habeſt gekonnt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . können
du habeſt . . . können etc.

PLUPERF. IND.

ich hatte gekonnt
du hatteſt gekonnt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hatte . . . können
du hatteſt . . . können etc.

PLUPERF. SUBJ.

ich hätte gekonnt
du hätteſt gekonnt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hätte . . . können
du hätteſt . . . können etc.

FUTURE IND.

ich werde können
du wirſt können etc.

FUTURE SUBJ.

ich werde können
du werdeſt können etc.

FUT. PERF. IND.

ich werde gekonnt haben
du wirſt gekonnt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . können
du wirſt haben . . . können etc.

FUT. PERF. SUBJ.

ich werde gekonnt haben
du werdeſt gekonnt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . können
du werdeſt haben . . . können etc.

PRESENT COND.	PERFECT COND.
ich würde können	ich würde gekonnt haben
du würdeſt können etc.	du würdeſt gekonnt haben etc.
	or, with an infinitive,
	ich würde haben . . . können etc

IMPERATIVE (wanting)

PRESENT INF.	PRESENT PPLE.
(zu) können	könnend
PERF. INF.	PERF. PPLE.
gekonnt zu haben	gekonnt, können

3. **Mögen.** Principal parts, mögen, mochte, gemocht.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRET. IND.	PRET. SUBJ.
ich mag	ich möge	ich mochte	ich möchte
du magſt	du mögeſt	du mochteſt	du möchteſt
er mag	er möge	er mochte	er möchte
wir mögen	wir mögen	wir mochten	wir möchten
ihr mögt	ihr möget	ihr mochtet	ihr möchtet
ſie mögen	ſie mögen	ſie mochten	ſie möchten

PERFECT IND.	PERFECT SUBJ.
ich habe gemocht	ich habe gemocht
du haſt gemocht etc.	du habeſt gemocht etc.
or, with an infinitive,	or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . mögen	ich habe . . . mögen
du haſt . . . mögen etc.	du habeſt . . . mögen etc.
PLUPERF. IND.	PLUPERF. SUBJ.
ich hatte gemocht	ich hätte gemocht
du hatteſt gemocht etc.	du hätteſt gemocht etc.
or, with an infinitive,	or, with an infinitive,
ich hatte . . . mögen	ich hätte . . . mögen
du hatteſt . . . mögen etc.	du hätteſt . . . mögen etc.
FUTURE IND.	FUTURE SUBJ.
ich werde mögen	ich werde mögen
du wirſt mögen etc.	du werdeſt mögen etc.

FUT. PERFECT IND.

ich werde gemocht haben
du wirſt gemocht haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . mögen
du wirſt haben . . . mögen etc.

FUT. PERFECT SUBJ.

ich werde gemocht haben
du werdeſt gemocht haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . mögen
du werdeſt haben . . . mögen etc.

PRESENT COND.

ich würde mögen
du würdeſt mögen etc.

PERFECT COND.

ich würde gemocht haben
du würdeſt gemocht haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich würde haben . . . mögen etc.

IMPERATIVE (wanting)

PRES. INF.

(zu) mögen

PRES. PPLE.

mögend

PERF. INF.

gemocht zu haben

PERF. PPLE.

gemocht, mögen

4. **Müſſen.** Principal parts, müſſen, mußte, gemußt.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRET. IND.	PRET. SUBJ.
ich muß	ich müſſe	ich mußte	ich müßte
du mußt	du müſſeſt	du mußteſt	du müßteſt
er muß	er müſſe	er mußte	er müßte
wir müſſen	wir müſſen	wir mußten	wir müßten
ihr müßt	ihr müſſet	ihr mußtet	ihr müßtet
ſie müſſen	ſie müſſen	ſie mußten	ſie müßten

PERF. IND.

ich habe gemußt
du haſt gemußt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . müſſen
du haſt . . . müſſen etc.

PERF. SUBJ.

ich habe gemußt
du habeſt gemußt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . müſſen
du habeſt . . . müſſen etc.

PLUPERF. IND.	PLUPERF. SUBJ.
ich hatte gemußt	ich hätte gemußt
du hatteſt gemußt etc.	du hätteſt gemußt etc.
or, with an infinitive,	or, with an infinitive,
ich hatte . . . müſſen	ich hätte . . . müſſen
du hatteſt . . . müſſen etc.	du hätteſt . . . müſſen etc.
FUTURE IND.	FUTURE SUBJ.
ich werde müſſen	ich werde müſſen
du wirſt müſſen etc.	du werdeſt müſſen etc.
FUT. PERF. IND.	FUT. PERF. SUBJ.
ich werde gemußt haben	ich werde gemußt haben
du wirſt gemußt haben etc.	du werdeſt gemußt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,	or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . müſſen	ich werde haben . . . müſſen
du wirſt haben . . . müſſen etc.	du werdeſt haben . . . müſſen etc.
PRESENT COND.	PERFECT COND.
ich würde müſſen	ich würde gemußt haben
du würdeſt müſſen etc.	du würdeſt gemußt haben
	or, with an infinitive,
	ich würde haben . . . müſſen etc.

IMPERATIVE (wanting)

PRES. INF.	PRES. PPLE.
(zu) müſſen	müſſend
PERF. INF.	PERF. PPLE.
gemußt zu haben	gemußt, müſſen

5. **Sollen.** Principal parts, ſollen, ſollte, geſollt.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRET. IND.	PRET. SUBJ.
ich ſoll	ich ſolle	ich ſollte	ich ſollte
du ſollſt	du ſolleſt	du ſollteſt	du ſollteſt
er ſoll	er ſolle	er ſollte	er ſollte
wir ſollen	wir ſollen	wir ſollten	wir ſollten
ihr ſollt	ihr ſollet	ihr ſolltet	ihr ſolltet
ſie ſollen	ſie ſollen	ſie ſollten	ſie ſollten

PERFECT IND.

ich habe gefollt
du haſt gefollt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . ſollen
du haſt . . . ſollen etc.

PERFECT SUBJ.

ich habe gefollt
du habeſt gefollt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . ſollen
du habeſt . . . ſollen etc.

PLUP. IND.

ich hatte gefollt
du hatteſt gefollt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hatte . . . ſollen
du hatteſt . . . ſollen etc.

PLUP. SUBJ.

ich hätte gefollt
du hätteſt gefollt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hätte . . . ſollen
du hätteſt . . . ſollen etc.

FUT. IND.

ich werde ſollen
du wirſt ſollen etc.

FUT. SUBJ.

ich werde ſollen
du werdeſt ſollen etc.

FUT. PERF. IND.

ich werde gefollt haben
du wirſt gefollt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . ſollen
du wirſt haben . . . ſollen etc.

FUT. PERF. SUBJ.

ich werde gefollt haben
du werdeſt gefollt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . ſollen
du werdeſt etc.

PRES. COND.

ich würde ſollen
du würdeſt ſollen etc.

PERF. COND.

ich würde gefollt haben
du würdeſt gefollt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich würde haben . . . ſollen etc.

IMPERATIVE (wanting)

PRES. INF.

(zu) ſollen

PRES. PPLE.

ſollend

PERF. INFIN.

gefollt zu haben

PERF. PPLE.

gefollt, ſollen

6. **Wollen.** Principal parts, wollen, wollte, gewollt.

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRET. IND.	PRET. SUBJ
ich will	ich wolle	ich wollte	ich wollte
du willſt	du wolleſt	du wollteſt	du wollteſt
er will	er wolle	er wollte	er wollte
wir wollen	wir wollen	wir wollten	wir wollten
ihr wollt	ihr wollet	ihr wolltet	ihr wolltet
ſie wollen	ſie wollen	ſie wollten	ſie wollten

PERF. IND.

ich habe gewollt
du haſt gewollt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . wollen
du haſt . . . wollen etc.

PERF. SUBJ.

ich habe gewollt
du habeſt gewollt
or, with an infinitive,
ich habe . . . wollen
du habeſt . . . wollen etc.

PLUP. IND.

ich hatte gewollt
du hatteſt gewollt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hatte . . . wollen
du hatteſt . . . wollen etc.

PLUP. SUBJ.

ich hätte gewollt
du hätteſt gewollt etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich hätte . . . wollen
du hätteſt . . . wollen etc.

FUT. IND.

ich werde wollen
du wirſt wollen etc.

FUT. SUBJ.

ich werde wollen
du werdeſt wollen etc.

FUT. PERF. IND.

ich werde gewollt haben
du wirſt gewollt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . wollen
du wirſt haben . . . wollen etc.

FUT. PERF. SUBJ.

ich werde gewollt haben
du werdeſt gewollt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich werde haben . . . wollen
du werdeſt haben . . . wollen
etc.

PRES. COND.

ich würde wollen
du würdeſt wollen etc.

PERF. COND.

ich würde gewollt haben
du würdeſt gewollt haben etc.
or, with an infinitive,
ich würde haben . . . wollen
du würdeſt haben . . . wollen
etc.

IMPERATIVE

——	wollen wir
wolle (du)	wollt (ihr)
wolle er	wollen ſie

PRES. INFIN.	PRES. PPLE.
(zu) wollen	wollend
PERF. INFIN.	PERF. PPLE.
gewollt zu haben	gewollt, wollen

190. Inflection of wiſſen. The simple tenses of wiſſen are inflected as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. SUBJ.	PRET. IND.	PRET. SUBJ.
ich weiß	wiſſe	wußte	wüßte
du weißt	wiſſeſt	wußteſt	wüßteſt
er weiß	wiſſe	wußte	wüßte
wir wiſſen	wiſſen	wußten	wüßten
ihr wißt	wiſſet	wußtet	wüßtet
ſie wiſſen	wiſſen	wußten	wüßten

1. The compound tenses are regular; ich habe gewußt, ich hatte gewußt, ich werde wiſſen, ich werde gewußt haben, etc.

2. The imperative is wiſſe (du), wiſſe er, wiſſen wir, wißt (ihr) wiſſen ſie.

191. Use of the Modal Auxiliaries. The use of the modal auxiliaries is highly idiomatic. All of them except dürfen have familiar English cognates, but the English verbs *may*, *can*, *shall* and *will* have but two tenses each, while *must* has but one. This necessitates the use in English of various circumlocutions, particularly in translating the compound tenses; e. g. ich muß, *I must*, but ich mußte, *I had to*, *was obliged to*; ich kann, *I can*, but ich werde können, *I shall be able*. The following are the most important uses.

1. **Dürfen** usually means *to be permitted*, *to have the right*, but is often best translated by *may*, or with a nega-

tive by *must not;* e. g. darf ich ums Brot bitten? *may I ask for the bread?* das dürfen Sie nicht tun, *that you must not do.* The preterit subjunctive may denote probability; e. g. das dürfte der Fall sein, *that might be the case.* Sometimes dürfen approaches the meaning of *dare*, as in ich darf behaupten, *I dare assert.* But it is not cognate with *dare* and is very rarely to be so translated.

2. **Können** in the present is usually equivalent to *can*, but often to *may;* e. g. das kann sein, *that may be.* Ich konnte means *I was able*, ich könnte, *I should be able*, both of which uses are covered by English *could;* e. g. ich konnte es (gestern) nicht finden, *I could not find it (yesterday);* ich könnte es finden (wenn ich ein Licht hätte), *I could find it (if I had a light).*

3. **Mögen** is sometimes equivalent to *may*, as in er mag es behalten, *he may keep it;* more often it is to be rendered by *wish, want, like, care;* e. g. ich mag ihn nicht sehen, *I do not want to see him.* This use is especially common in the preterit subjunctive, ich möchte (gern) being equivalent to *I should like.*

4. **Müssen** is equivalent to *must* only in the present; elsewhere it is to be translated by *be compelled, be obliged*, or the like; e. g. ich mußte lachen, *I had to laugh, I could not help laughing;* er hat den ganzen Tag arbeiten müssen, *he has had to work all day.* Er müßte means *he would have to, he would need.*

5. **Sollen** is sometimes equivalent to *shall*, in the preterit *to should, ought;* e. g. du sollst nicht töten, *thou shalt not kill;* du solltest gehen, *you should (ought to) go.* More often it is best rendered by a form of *be* followed by *to;* e. g. er sollte bald sterben, *he was soon to die.* Very frequently it is used to report what *is said, claimed* or *thought* by some one else than the speaker; e. g. er soll sehr reich sein, *he is said to be very rich.*

6. **Wollen** generally denotes an act of *willing* or *wishing* on the part of the subject; e. g. er will Soldat werden, *he wishes to become a soldier.* It is often to be translated by *to be on the point of;* e. g. er will gehen, *he is on the point of going.* Sometimes it can be rendered by *claim, pretend;* e. g. er will gehört haben, *he claims to have heard.* In the compound tenses translate by *wish* or *want;* e. g. ich habe dich längſt beſuchen wollen, *I have long been wishing to visit you.*

192. The Pluperfect Subjunctive of the Modal Auxiliaries. The pluperfect subjunctive of a modal auxiliary, with accompanying infinitive, is the usual equivalent of English *might, could* or *should,* followed by *have* and a participle. Thus *he could* (or *might*) *have come* generally means *he would have been able to come,* and the German for that is er hätte kommen können. The form er könnte gekommen ſein is much more rarely met with and means *it might be that he came.* So also *you should have done it yourself* is not ordinarily du ſollteſt es ſelbſt getan haben, but du hätteſt es ſelbſt tun ſollen.

1. This construction may take the place of a perfect conditional with *would have* where the latter is connected with an infinitive; thus for *he would have been able to do it* one may say er würde es haben tun können, or er hätte es tun können; for *he would have wished to greet you,* er würde dich haben grüßen wollen, or er hätte dich grüßen wollen (or mögen).

193. Omission of Infinitive with Modal Auxiliary. After any of the modal auxiliaries, the dependent infinitive is often omitted, if it can readily be supplied; as ich muß fort, *I must (go) away;* antworte du, ich kann es nicht, *you answer, I can not.*

1. Thru this ellipsis of a verb some of the modal auxiliaries have acquired apparently the force of transitive verbs; e. g. ich mag das Buch nicht, *I do not like the book*

(do not care to read or to have it); können Sie Deutſch? *can you speak German?*

194. Rule of Order VI: Special Case of Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence containing a compound tense of a modal auxiliary in connection with an infinitive, the participle of the modal auxiliary comes last, next to that the infinitive, and just before that the inflected auxiliary; e. g. ich weiß gewiß, daß ich ſo etwas nie hätte tun können, *I know for certain that I could never have done such a thing;* das iſt ein Rätſel, welches niemand bis jetzt hat löſen können, *that is a riddle which no one has hitherto been able to solve.*

EXERCISE 37

Reading Lesson: Modal Auxiliaries

Wir konnten weder gehen noch ſtehen und mußten alle Augenblicke nach irgend einem Bäumchen greifen, um[1] überhaupt[2] auf den Füßen bleiben zu können. Du weißt, daß ich nicht furchtſam bin, aber ich kann Dich[3] verſichern, daß es kein Spaß war. Während Du jetzt ruhig meine Beſchreibung lieſt,[4] magſt Du vielleicht darüber lachen. Du wirſt ſagen: Es iſt Dir recht geſchehen;[5] Du hätteſt im Gaſthauſe bleiben ſollen. Nun, ich will geſtehen, daß gerade dieſer Gedanke auch mir ein paarmal durch den Kopf fuhr,[6] aber es half nichts.[7] In ſolchem Falle kann man mit dem Narren in Shakeſpeare nur ſagen: Der Reiſende[8] muß eben zufrieden ſein.

Wir waren natürlich in ſehr kurzer Zeit durch und durch naß geworden, und das Weitere konnte uns dann wenig kümmern. Es dauerte noch zwei volle Stunden, bis[9] wir auf den Gipfel kamen und das Brockenhaus[10] vor uns ſahen. Du kannſt mir glauben, wenn ich Dir ſage, daß der Anblick ein ſehr willkommener war, denn jetzt durften wir wieder in eine menſchliche Wohnung treten. Wir ſetzten uns an den Ofen und trockneten unſere Kleider, ſo gut[11] wir konnten. Endlich waren wir alſo auf dem

Brocken, aber was[12] Naturſchönheiten betraf, ſo hätten[13] wir eben ſo gut auf dem Grunde des Meeres ſitzen können. Ein dichter Nebel lag über dem ganzen Berge, und man konnte keine hundert Schritte weit[14] ſehen.

EXERCISE 37 a

1. I know nothing of the affair and will hear nothing of it. 2. Can you speak German? I can't. 3. Shall I tell you what I think? 4. I saw him yesterday; he could not walk and had to lie in bed. 5. Will you not come as soon as[15] possible? I should like to talk with you. 6. What time is it, if I may ask?[16] 7. I do not want to see him again. 8. Travel as you will, you will certainly need more money. 9. If we had time, I could[17] tell you much that[18] you would probably like to know. 10. She will not be able to go this evening. 11. You will have to take us as you find us. 12. I ought to have written, but I haven't been able to find the time. 13. As[19] children we were not allowed to go to the theater. 14. He wished to go along, but we did not want his company. 15. You ought to see it once; it is said[20] to have cost a thousand marks.

Vocabulary

der Anblick, *s.*[2] view, sight.
eben, *adv.* **even,** just.
furchtſam, *adj.* timid [**fright-some**].
geſchehen, *v. s.* (geſchah, geſchehen, *aux.* ſein), happen.
geſtehen, *v. s.* (geſtand, geſtanden), confess.
greifen, *v. s.* (griff, gegriffen), grasp, **grip**(e).
das Kleid, *s.*[3] garment [**cloth**].
kümmern, *v. w.* trouble.
lachen, *v. w.* **laugh.**
das Meer, *s.*[2] sea [**mere**].
menſchlich, *adj.* human.
der Narr, *w.* fool.
naß, *adj.* wet [**nas-ty**].
der Nebel, *s.*[1] fog, mist.
reiſen, *v. w.* travel.
treten, *v. s.* (trat, getreten, *aux.* ſein), step, **tread.**
trocknen, *v. w.* dry.
verſichern, *v. w.* assure.
voll, *adj.* **full.**
weder, *conj.* neither; weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
zufrieden, *adj.* content.

NOTES. — [1] **um** with an inf. means *in order;* here with können, *in order to be able.* — [2] **überhaupt**, *at all.* — [3] **Dich**; some prefer the dat. with versichern. — [4] **lieſt**; for lieſ'ſt; see § 183. — [5] **Es iſt . . . geſchehen**, *it served you right.* — [6] **mir . . . fuhr**, *passed thru my head;* on mir see Ex. 24, n. 3. — [7] **es half nichts**, *it did no good.* — [8] **der Reiſende**, *the traveler;* a present pple. used substantively. The quotation from Shakespeare is found in *As You Like It*, Act II, Scene 4: "When I was at home I was in a better place, but travelers must be content." — [9] **bis**; here a subordinating conjunction = *until.* — [10] **Brockenhaus**; name of an inn on the summit of the Brocken. — [11] **ſo gut**, *as well as;* als being omitted. In such a phrase ſo with following adv. acquires the force of a subordinating conjunction. — [12] **was**; § 141, 1. — [13] **hätten . . . ſitzen können**, *might have been sitting.* — [14] **weit**; lit. *far*, but it does not need to be translated; see Ex. 35, n. 3. — [15] **as soon as possible**, ſo bald als möglich, or möglichſt bald. — [16] **ask**, fragen. — [17] **I could**; inverted order. — [18] **that**; see § 141, 2. — [19] **as**, als. — [20] **it is said**, es ſoll.

EXERCISE 38

COLLOQUY: MODAL AUXILIARIES

1

Weißt du, wie ſpät es iſt? Ich muß ſofort nach Hauſe.

Es iſt ziemlich finſter draußen; glaubſt du, du wirſt den Weg nach deiner Wohnung finden können?

Daran hatte ich nicht gedacht, aber es dürfte[1] nicht ſchwer ſein. Ich könnte im Notfall einen Poliziſten fragen.

Auf die Polizei darfſt[2] du nicht rechnen. Soll ich nicht mit dir gehen? Ich kenne die Straßen beſſer als du.

Ich möchte ſehr gern Geſellſchaft haben. Wie weit mag es denn ſein? Weißt du es?

Ich kann es nicht genau ſagen. Es mag etwa eine Viertelſtunde ſein.

Aber du wirſt den Rückweg allein machen müſſen. Das tut mir leid. Ich hätte früher gehen ſollen.

Nicht doch. Da hätten wir nicht ſo lange plaudern können. Sei[3] meinetwegen ohne Sorge. Die friſche Luft wird mir wohl tun.

Du biſt ſehr freundlich. — Ich möchte wiſſen, wie es unſrem kranken Freunde geht. Er ſoll[4] endlich etwas beſſer ſein.

Ich war heute früh in seinem Hause, aber ich durfte ihn[5] nicht sprechen. Der arme Kerl! Ich hätte so gern etwas sagen mögen,[6] um ihn zu trösten.

2

1 May I ask[7] what time it is? Perhaps I ought[8] to be going home.

2 Oh, it can not be so very late. I haven't a watch,[9] but if you step[10] to the[11] window you can[12] see the city clock.

3 Just think![13] It is on the point of striking[14] twelve. I ought to have gone an hour ago.[15]

4 You must not feel concerned[16] on my account. I could not have used[17] the time more pleasantly.

5 It is pretty dark outside. I wonder if[18] I can find the way home.

6 I hadn't thought of that.[19] If you wish, I will[12] go with you.

7 I should like company, if it doesn't make you too much trouble.

8 Oh, it is no trouble. We will[20] take the short way thru the park.

9 But they say that is[21] dangerous in the night. They claim[22] to have seen footpads there.

10 Nonsense! That is probably[23] an invention of the newspapers. At the most one might[24] meet a beggar there.

Vocabulary

allein, *adj. adv.* **alone.**
draußen, *adv.* outside.
die Erfindung, *w.* invention.
finſter, *adj.* dark.
friſch, *adj.* **fresh.**
gebrauchen, *v. w.* use.
höchſtens, *adv.* at the most.
der Notfall, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), case of **need.**
die Polizei, *w. police.*
der Räuber, *s.*[1] **robber;** Straßenräuber, footpad.
rechnen, *v. w.* **reckon,** count.
der Rückweg, *s.*[2] return.
die Sorge, *w.* care [**sorrow**].
tröſten, *v. w.* comfort [**trust**].
der Unſinn, *s.* (*no pl.*), nonsense.

Notes. — [1] **dürfte . . . ſein,** *can not be;* denoting less confidence than kann nicht ſein. — [2] **darfſt . . . nicht,** *must not.* — [3] **Sei . . . ohne**

Sorge, *be without concern, do not feel concerned.* — [4] **Er ſoll . . . ſein,** *he is said to be.* — [5] **ihn**; object of ſprechen, used here in the sense of *speak to.* — [6] **hätte . . . ſagen mögen,** *should have liked to say.* — [7] **ask,** fragen. — [8] **Perhaps I ought,** ich ſollte wohl. — [9] **watch,** Taſchenuhr. — [10] **if you step,** wenn du . . . trittſt. — [11] **to the,** ans. — [12] **you can,** inverted order. — [13] **Just think,** denke nur. — [14] **It is on the point of striking,** es will eben . . . ſchlagen. — [15] **an hour ago,** vor einer Stunde. — [16] **you must not feel concerned,** du mußt . . . ſein. — [17] **could not have used,** hätte nicht . . . gebrauchen können. — [18] **I wonder if,** ich möchte wiſſen, ob. — [19] **of that,** daran. — [20] **We will,** wir wollen. — [21] **they say that is,** der ſoll . . . ſein. — [22] **They claim to have seen,** man will . . . geſehen haben. — [23] **That is probably,** das mag wohl . . . ſein. — [24] **one might meet,** könnte man . . . treffen.

THE PASSIVE VOICE

195. Formation and Meaning of the Passive. The passive is formed by combining the auxiliary werden with the perfect participle. Werden is inflected regularly thruout, its participle appearing as worden; thus ich werde gelobt, *I am praised;* er iſt gelobt worden, *he has been praised.*

1. It is important to distinguish between the true passive with werden, and the quasi-passive with ſein, between das Buch wird gedruckt, and das Buch iſt gedruckt. To do this it is only necessary to remember that werden means *to become, to pass into the state of;* hence das Buch wird gedruckt means *the book is becoming printed,* i. e. *is printing,* or *being printed* (the work is going on). On the other hand, das Buch iſt gedruckt means *the book* is *printed,* i. e. the work of printing is finished.

2. The forms with werden, then, denote an action going on at the time indicated by the tense of the verb; those with ſein a state or condition that has resulted from a previous action. Further examples: die Tür iſt geſchloſſen, *the door is closed;* die Tür wird um 8 Uhr geſchloſſen, *the door is closed* (i. e. *they close the door*) *at 8 o'clock;* ich kam beinahe zu ſpät; der Brief wurde (eben) geſchrieben; *I came almost*

too late; the letter was (just) being written; ich kam zu ſpät; der Brief war (ſchon) geſchrieben; *I came too late; the letter was (already) written.*

196. Conjugation of the Passive: gelobt werden, *to be praised.*

PRESENT

I am praised, thou art praised etc.

IND.	SUBJ.
ich werde gelobt	ich werde gelobt
du wirſt gelobt	du werdeſt gelobt
er wird gelobt	er werde gelobt
wir werden gelobt etc.	wir werden gelobt etc.

PRETERIT

I was praised, thou wert praised etc.

IND.	SUBJ.
ich wurde (or ward) gelobt	ich würde gelobt
du wurdeſt (or wardſt) gelobt	du würdeſt gelobt
er wurde (or ward) gelobt	er würde gelobt
wir wurden gelobt etc.	wir würden gelobt etc.

PERFECT

I have been praised, thou hast been praised etc.

IND.	SUBJ.
ich bin gelobt worden	ich ſei gelobt worden
du biſt gelobt worden	du ſei(e)ſt gelobt worden
er iſt gelobt worden etc.	er ſei gelobt worden etc.

PLUPERFECT

I had been praised, thou hadst been praised etc.

IND.	SUBJ.
ich war gelobt worden	ich wäre gelobt worden
du warſt gelobt worden	du wäreſt gelobt worden
er war etc. etc.	er wäre etc. etc.

FUTURE

I shall be praised, thou wilt be praised etc.

IND.	SUBJ.
ich werde gelobt werden	ich werde gelobt werden
du wirſt gelobt werden	du werdeſt gelobt werden
er wird etc. etc.	er werde etc. etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

I shall have been praised, thou wilt have been praised etc.

IND.	SUBJ.
ich werde gelobt worden ſein	ich werde gelobt worden ſein
du wirſt gelobt worden ſein	du werdeſt gelobt worden ſein
er wird etc. etc.	er werde etc. etc.

PRESENT CONDITIONAL.

ich würde gelobt werden, *I should be praised*
du würdeſt gelobt werden etc., *thou wouldst be praised* etc.

PERFECT CONDITIONAL

I should have been praised etc.
ich würde gelobt worden ſein
du würdeſt gelobt worden ſein etc.

IMPERATIVE

ſei (du) gelobt, *be thou praised*
ſei er gelobt, *let him be praised*

(Forms with werden, as werde gelobt, er werde gelobt, are rare; see § 344, 1.)

INFINITIVE

PRESENT: gelobt (zu) werden, *to be praised*
PERFECT: gelobt worden (zu) ſein, *to have been praised*

GERUNDIVE

zu lobend, *to be praised, praiseworthy* (§ 370).

197. The Active and the Passive Construction. In going from the active to the passive construction the

object of the active verb becomes the subject of the passive, while the subject of the active, if a personal agent, goes into the dative with von; e. g. wir ſchlugen den Feind, *we beat the enemy*, becomes der Feind wurde von uns geſchlagen, *the enemy was beaten by us*.

1. A non-personal instrument or means is denoted usually by the accusative with durch; e. g. der Feind wurde durch Liſt geſchlagen, *the enemy was beaten by strategy*.

198. The Impersonal Passive of Intransitive Verbs. Intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive, but this use is very common. The impersonal passive can seldom be translated literally; e. g. es wurde getanzt und geſungen, *there was singing and dancing*.

1. Such expressions, therefore, as *I was believed*, *my advice was not followed*, and all others in which the corresponding German verb is intransitive, have to be rendered by impersonal constructions, thus: mir wurde geglaubt; meinem Rate wurde nicht gefolgt.

a. Very often, however, one can substitute for such an intransitive verb a transitive compound which can be used personally in the passive; thus for *my advice was not followed* one can say mein Rat wurde nicht befolgt.

199. Substitutes for the Passive. On the whole the passive is much less used in German than in English. The English passive can be replaced in German (1) by man with the active, as in man ſagt, *it is said;* (2) by a reflexive form (§ 201), as in es verſteht ſich, *it is understood;* (3) by a reflexive with laſſen, *let*, as in es läßt ſich hoffen, *it may be hoped;* es ließ ſich erwarten, *it was to be expected*.

200. Rule of Order VII: Inversion after Subordinate Clause. Any subordinate clause preceding the principal verb of a complex sentence causes inversion; e. g.

wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre, (ſo) würde ich zu Hauſe bleiben, *if I were in your place, I should remain at home;* obwohl er Geld hat, (ſo) hat er doch wenig Verſtand, *tho he has money, he has little sense;* damit er Ruhe haben könnte, zog er ſich aufs Land zurück, *that he might have peace, he retired into the country.*

1. Observe that this is only a special case under the general rule of inversion (§ 87). The subordinate clause always has the force either of an adverb, an adjective or a substantive; and such an element preceding the verb causes inversion.

a. But the clause may be itself the subject, in which case there is no room for inversion; e. g. daß er recht hat, iſt klar, *that he is right is clear.*

2. The adverbial force of a preceding clause is often resumed by means of an adverb, usually ſo, placed just before the main verb (see the first two examples above). This ſo should not be translated.

EXERCISE 39

Reading Lesson: The Passive Voice

Im Brockenhauſe waren[1] aber eine Menge Gäſte verſammelt, unter denen ein lebhaftes Geſpräch geführt wurde. Viele Späße wurden auf unſre Koſten gemacht, was[2] von uns natürlich nicht übel genommen werden konnte. Bald fühlten wir uns wie zu Hauſe und wurden eben ſo luſtig wie die anderen. Obwohl wir ſehr ermüdet waren, gingen wir erſt um 10. Uhr zu Bett. Am folgenden Tage öffneten wir die Augen auf eine neue Welt; die Wolken waren verſchwunden, und man konnte meilenweit[3] nach jeder Richtung ſehen.

Es wird behauptet, daß über zweihundert Städte und Dörfer vom Brockengipfel gezählt werden können. Wie es nun auch[4] damit ſein mag (denn ich habe ſie nicht gezählt), war die Ausſicht jedenfalls eine herrliche; ſie ließ uns fühlen, daß wir aufs

ſchönſte[5] für unſre Mühe belohnt waren. Du weißt wohl, daß viele Sagen vom Brocken erzählt werden. Es iſt dies nämlich der Ort, wo nach altem Volksglauben das große Jahresfeſt[6] der Teufel und Hexen gehalten wurde. Sogar heute noch werden ein Hexentanzplatz und dergleichen[7] andere Dinge dem Reiſenden gezeigt, aber die Geiſter ſind längſt verſchwunden. Wenigſtens ſind keine Teufel oder Hexen von uns geſehen worden.

EXERCISE 39 a

1. Only German is spoken here. 2. The doors are opened at 7 o'clock. 3. The thing is made of wood. 4. Good paper is now made of wood. 5. The child has been found. 6. The missing[8] book is found. 7. The picture was given me[9] by a friend. 8. That[9] can not be helped. 9. I told my story, but I[9] was not believed. 10. The doors will be closed at 11 o'clock. 11. The letter was so badly written that it could not be read. 12. He is esteemed by all who know him. 13. Until now everything that he had written had[10] always been praised. 14. The window can not be opened. 15. The letter is written and is lying on my table. 16. He was seen yesterday evening, but to-day he can not be found.

Vocabulary

behaupten, *v. w.* assert.
belohnen, *v. w.* reward.
fühlen, *v. w.* **feel.**
führen, *v. w.* lead, carry on.
der Gaſt, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), **guest.**
das Geſpräch, *s.*[2] conversation.
der Glaube, *mx.* (*gen.* =ns), faith, belief [be-**lief**].
herrlich, *adj.* glorious, splendid.
die Hexe, *w.* witch.
die Koſten (*pl. only*), *cost.*
luſtig, *adj.* jolly [**lusty**].
laſſen, *v. s.* (ließ, gelaſſen), **let,** cause.
die Meile, *w.* *mile.*
das Papier, *s.*[2] paper.
die Richtung, *w.* direction.
die Sage, *w.* tradition, story [**say**].
der Tanz, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), **dance.**
der Teufel, *s.*[1] *devil.*
übel, *adj. adv.* **evil,** amiss.
verſammeln, *v. w.* gather, assemble.

verſchwinden, *v. s.* (verſchwand, verſchwunden, *aux.* ſein), vanish, disappear.

das Volk, *s.*[3] **folk,** people.

wenigſtens, *adv.* at least.

zählen, *v. w.* count [**tell**].

NOTES. — [1] **waren . . . verſammelt** ; not the passive. The verb refers not to an action, but to a state, the meaning being *were (already) gathered.* — [2] **was,** *a thing which,* the antecedent being a sentence ; see § 141, *a.* — [3] **meilenweit,** *for miles.* — [4] **Wie . . . auch,** *however ;* § 140, 2. — [5] **aufs ſchönſte,** *most beautifully ;* § 112, 2. — [6] **Jahresfeſt,** *annual festival ;* in allusion to the so-called Walpurgis-Night, supposed to be held annually on the eve of the 1st of May. — [7] **dergleichen** ; § 132, 2. — [8] **missing,** fehlend. — [9] Use the dative. — [10] **had,** war, directly after **jetzt.**

REFLEXIVE VERBS

201. Characteristics. A 'reflexive' is a verb that requires a pronominal object referring to the subject. In the third person this object is ſich ; in the first and second it is that form of the personal pronoun which corresponds to the subject and is required by the governing power of the verb ; e. g. er ſchämt ſich (acc.), *he is ashamed ;* er ſchmeichelt ſich (dat.), *he flatters himself ;* ich ſchäme mich, *I am ashamed ;* ihr ſchmeichelt euch, *you flatter yourselves.*

1. Reflexive verbs are conjugated with haben and have no passive. In the normal order the pronoun stands just after the inflected element.

202. Conjugation of a Reflexive Verb: ſich freuen, *to enjoy (glad one's self).*

PRESENT

Ind.		*Subj.*
ich freue mich	*I enjoy*	ich freue mich
du freuſt dich	*thou enjoyest*	du freueſt dich
er freut ſich	*he enjoys*	er freue ſich
wir freuen uns	*we enjoy*	wir freuen uns
ihr freut euch	*you enjoy*	ihr freuet euch
ſie freuen ſich	*they enjoy*	ſie freuen ſich

PRETERIT

Ind.: ich freute mich, du freuteſt dich etc.
Subj.: ich freute mich, du freuteſt dich etc.

PERFECT

Ind.: ich habe mich gefreut, du haſt dich gefreut etc.
Subj.: ich habe mich gefreut, du habeſt dich gefreut etc.

PLUPERFECT

Ind.: ich hatte mich gefreut, du hatteſt dich gefreut etc.
Subj.: ich hätte mich gefreut, du hätteſt dich gefreut etc.

FUTURE

Ind.: ich werde mich freuen, du wirſt dich freuen etc.
Subj.: ich werde mich freuen, du werdeſt dich freuen etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

Ind.: ich werde mich gefreut haben, du wirſt dich gefreut haben etc.
Subj.: ich werde mich gefreut haben, du werdeſt dich etc.

CONDITIONAL

Pres.: ich würde mich freuen, du würdeſt dich freuen etc.
Perf. ich würde mich gefreut haben, du würdeſt dich etc.

IMPERATIVE

——	freuen wir uns
freue (du) dich	freut (ihr) euch
er freue ſich	freuen ſie ſich

INFINITIVE

ſich (zu) freuen — ſich gefreut (zu) haben

PARTICIPLE

ſich freuend — (ſich) gefreut

1. In giving the principal parts of a reflexive verb the pronoun should precede the infinitive, but follow the preterit. With the participle it is best omitted altogether, thus: ſich freuen, freute ſich, gefreut.

203. Reflexive Constructions. Reflexive verbs are regularly intransitive; that is, take no accusative object other than the reflexive pronoun itself; but many of them take a secondary or complementary object in the genitive; e. g. er freut ſich des Lebens, *he enjoys life;* erbarme dich meiner, *have mercy on me.*

1. With other verbs the complementary object is replaced by a prepositional phrase; e. g. er ſehnt ſich nach Ruhe, *he longs for rest;* er fürchtet ſich vor Verrat, *he is afraid of treachery.*

2. Intransitive verbs are often construed with a reflexive object and a factitive predicate; e. g. ſich tot lachen, *to laugh one's self dead;* ſich ſatt eſſen, *to eat one's self full.*

IMPERSONAL VERBS

204. Characteristics. An impersonal verb is a verb used in the third person singular to express the verbal idea in a general way without reference to a definite subject. If expressed the subject is es, but es is often omitted.

1. The verbs always used impersonally are not very numerous. They denote for the most part either operations of nature, as es regnet, *it rains*, or mental and bodily states, as mich dünft, *methinks.* Besides these, however, there is a large number of verbs not ordinarily impersonal which admit freely of impersonal use, as in es geht nicht, *it won't do;* es gibt Leute, *there are people.*

2. Es is apt to be omitted when, under the rules for inversion, it would come after its verb; thus mir ſchwindelt, *I am dizzy*, takes the place of es ſchwindelt mir; so also in the impersonal passive; e. g. am Abend wurde getanzt, *in the evening there was dancing*, instead of es wurde am Abend getanzt.

a. But the omission does not take place with verbs denoting natural phenomena, nor with active verbs not usually impersonal; thus one does not say am Abend regnete, but regnete es, nor mir geht gut, but mir geht es gut.

3. The inflection of an impersonal verb, as such, presents no peculiarities that call for a special paradigm; thus we have from regnen, quite regularly: es regnet, es regnete, es hat geregnet, es wird regnen, etc.

205. Impersonal Constructions. Verbs denoting mental and bodily states are often accompanied by a dative of the person concerned; e. g. dem Vater grauſet, *the father shudders.*

1. Others of these verbs take an accusative object which looks like the subject; as mich ſchläfert, *I am drowsy;* mich dünkt, *methinks.*

2. Some transitive verbs are used impersonally with a direct object, giving rise to idioms that can not be rendered literally; e. g. es hat Gefahr, *there is danger;* es gibt Leute, *there are people;* es gilt das Leben, *it is a matter of life and death.*

3. Intransitive verbs are often used impersonally with a reflexive object, giving rise to idiomatic expressions; as es fragt ſich, *the question arises;* es lohnt ſich der (gen.) Mühe, *it is worth the trouble;* es handelt ſich ums Leben, *it is a question of life.*

a. Such an intransitive reflexive associated with laſſen expresses the idea of possibility; e. g. hier läßt ſich ruhig plaudern, *here we can chat quietly;* es läßt ſich hoffen, *it may be hoped.*

EXERCISE 40

Colloquy: Reflexive and Impersonal Verbs

1

Nun, wie haſt du dich amüſiert? Es war äußerſt warm im Theater, nicht wahr?

Schrecklich. Ich konnte an nichts denken, — nur mich nach frischer Luft sehnen.

Mir ging es eben so; und doch schienen die meisten der Zuschauer sich an dem Stück zu ergötzen.[1] Es wundert mich, wie es ihnen nur möglich war.

Mich auch. Hast du bemerkt, wie die Leute sich über den Zweikampf im dritten Akte freuten?[2]

Ja, aber ich habe die Geschichte überhaupt[3] nicht verstehen können. Worum[4] hat es sich in dem Streite eigentlich gehandelt?

Das fragt sich[5] eben. So viel ich sehen konnte, ärgerte sich der Held über gar nichts.

Und der andere Kerl auch über nichts. Ich glaube, keiner von beiden wußte, warum sie sich schlugen.[6]

Du hast wohl recht. — Aber bemerkst du, wie kalt es geworden ist? Ich glaube, es wird regnen.

Es wäre doch schade, wenn wir uns wegen eines solchen Stückes erkälten sollten.

Wir sind gleich[7] bei meiner Wohnung. Warte einen Augenblick; ich werde dir einen Regenschirm holen.

Nein, das lohnt sich nicht der Mühe. Ich habe nicht weit zu gehen und kann mich beeilen.

Also, auf Wiedersehen! Wir haben jedenfalls das Stück gesehen, wovon so viel geredet wird.

2

1. How good[8] the fresh air feels, doesn't it?
2. Yes, indeed. Wasn't[9] it warm in there, tho?
3. I was really ashamed of myself. I could hardly keep[10] awake.
4. Nor I either,[11] tho the others seemed to be enjoying themselves very well.
5. Oh, to be sure; there are[12] such salamanders, who do not care[13] anything about bad air.
6. So that is[14] the play that there is so much talk about. Well, I am glad that we have seen it.
7. I can not say that. I believe it is going to rain, and I should not like to take cold for such a play.

¶ That would be a pity, to be sure.[15] But the piece is the fashion just now; and when it's a question [16] of fashion, one must put up with things.[17]

¶ Of course, — let one's self be bored [18] in order [19] to be in the fashion. Man [20] is a strange animal.

Vocabulary

der Akt, *s.*[2] *act.*
amüsieren (sich), *v. w.* enjoy (*amuse*) one's self.
ärgern (sich), *v. w.* be vexed.
bemerken, *v. w.* notice, re-**mark.**
drinnen, *adv.* **in there,** inside.
ergötzen (sich), *v. w.* delight.
erkälten (sich), *v. w.* take **cold.**
gefallen, *v. s.* (gefiel, gefallen, *dat.*) please.
handeln, *v. w.;* es handelt sich um, it is a question of.
der Held, *w.* hero.
lohnen (sich), *v. w.* to be worth while.
quälen (sich), *v. w.* be tormented, be bored.
der Regenschirm, *s.*[2] umbrella.
regnen, *v. w.* **rain.**
Salama'nder, *s.*[1] *salamander.*
sehnen (sich), *v. w.* long.
schrecklich, *adj.* terrible.
der Streit, *s.*[2] strife, conflict.
das Stück, *s.*[2] piece, play [**stick**].
das Tier, *s.*[2] animal [**deer**].
wach, *adj.* a-**wake.**
wie'dersehen, *v. s.* see again; auf Wiedersehen, good-bye.
wundern, *v. w.* cause to **wonder;** mich wundert's, I wonder.
der Zuschauer, *s.*[1] spectator.
der Zweikampf, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä), duel.

Notes. — [1] **sich ergötzen an** (dat.), *to take pleasure in.* — [2] **sich freuen über** (acc.), *to be delighted over.* — [3] **überhaupt,** *at all, anyway.* — [4] **Worum hat es . . . gehandelt;** worum = um was. The meaning is: *What was the question at issue?* — [5] **das fragt sich eben,** *that is just the question.* — [6] **sich schlagen,** *to fight.* — [7] **gleich,** *directly, in a moment.* The meaning is: *We are close by.* — [8] **How . . . feels,** wie die frische Luft einem (§ 149, 1) wohl tut! — [9] **Wasn't it . . . tho,** war es doch. — [10] **keep,** bleiben. — [11] **Nor I either,** ich auch nicht. — [12] **there are,** es gibt. — [13] **who do not care anything about,** die sich gar nicht um . . . kümmern. — [14] **So that is,** das ist also. — [15] **to be sure,** allerdings. — [16] **when it's a question of,** wenn es sich um . . . handelt. — [17] **one must put up with things,** muß man sich schon etwas gefallen lassen. — [18] **let one's self be bored,** sich quälen lassen; inf. without zu. — [19] **in order to be,** um . . . zu sein. — [20] **man,** der Mensch.

COMPOUND VERBS

206. Separable and Inseparable Compounds. There are two kinds of compound verbs, separable and inseparable. In the latter the particle always precedes the verb and forms one word with it, as verſtehen, *understand;* er verſteht, *he understands.* In the former the particle is liable to be separated from the verb, as aufzuſtehen, *to rise;* er ſteht früh auf, *he rises early.*

1. In English we have only inseparable composition, as in *beget*, *forgive*, *outrun*, none of which can be broken up without changing the meaning; compare *outrun* with *run out*, *backslide* with *slide back* etc.

207. Differences in Conjugation. The conjugation of a separable compound differs from that of an inseparable in the following particulars:

1. In the simple tenses of a separable verb, except in the dependent order, the prefix comes at the end of the sentence; e. g. from aufſetzen, *to put on*, er ſetzt den Hut auf, *he puts on his hat.* An inseparable compound, as stated above, is never broken up.

2. The zu of the infinitive comes between the parts of a separable compound, the three being written as one word, as aufzuſtehen; with an inseparable compound zu precedes and is written separately, as zu verſtehen.

3. The ge of the past participle comes between the prefix and the verb in a separable compound, the three elements being here also written as one word; e. g. aufgeſtanden, *risen.* In an inseparable compound ge is omitted entirely; e. g. verſtanden, *understood.*

4. Separable compounds invariably accent the prefix; inseparable compounds the verb; as verſte'hen, verſta'nd, verſta'nden; au'fſtehen, ſtand au'f, au'fgeſtanden.

208. The Inseparable Prefixes. The prefixes which always form inseparable verbs are be, ent (emp), er, ge.

ver and zer. These six prefixes are never accented in any part of speech, and are not in use as separate words.

1. Each of these prefixes had originally a definite meaning, and this original meaning is sometimes distinctly discernible in modern German; e. g. er meant *out* and erdenken is *to think out*. In other cases the force of the prefix has blended so closely with that of the verb that it can now be discovered only by the help of historical study (just as in English we have lost all sense of a connection between *have* and *behave*). Sometimes a compound exists with no simple verb corresponding to it; e. g. beginnen, *to begin*. In general the meaning of a compound can not be told from a knowledge of its parts, but must be learned from the dictionary. The most common and easily discernible meanings of the inseparable prefixes are as follows:

a. **Be,** cognate with *be* in *behave*, *beget*, etc. forms transitive verbs from intransitives or from nouns and adjectives; e. g. bedenken, *think about*, *consider*, from denken, *think*; befreien, *set free*, *liberate*, from frei, *free*; bekümmern, *trouble*, from Kummer, *sorrow*.

b. **Ent,** which sometimes takes the form emp, implies *separation*, sometimes *origin*; e. g. entgehen, *escape*, *get away from*; entlaſſen, *dismiss*, *let go away*; entſtehen, *stand forth*, *arise*; entflammen, *flame out*, *burst into flames*.

c. **Er** means *forth*, *out*, often forming transitive verbs of completed action; thus erſtehen, *stand forth*, *arise*; erſcheinen, *shine forth*, *appear*; erdenken, *think out*, *excogitate*; erfinden, *find out*, *invent*; erjagen, *hunt down*, *capture by chasing*; erfragen, *find out by asking*.

d. **Ge** forms numerous compounds in which the meaning of the prefix is not now obvious, and can only be understood by historical study.

e. **Ver,** cognate with *for* in *forgive*, *forget*, etc. means *out*, *away*, *to an end*; e. g. vergehen, *pass away*; verſinken, *sink*

away; verbluten, *bleed to death.* Sometimes it means *amiss*, as in verführen, *lead astray;* verkennen, *misjudge.*

f. Zer means *asunder, in pieces*; e. g. zerſpringen, *burst asunder;* zerbrechen, *break in pieces.*

209. Conjugation of Inseparable Compounds. This does not differ in principle from the conjugation of a simple verb. The following synopsis of the inflection of bekommen, *to get*, conjugated with haben, and verreiſen, *to depart*, conjugated with ſein, will suffice for illustration.

PRESENT

Ind.: ich bekomme, du bekommſt etc.; ich verreiſe, du verreiſeſt etc.

Subj.: ich bekomme, du bekommeſt etc.; ich verreiſe, du verreiſeſt etc.

PRETERIT

Ind.: ich bekam, du bekamſt etc.; ich verreiſte, du verreiſteſt etc.

Subj.: ich bekäme, du bekämeſt etc.; ich verreiſte, du verreiſteſt etc.

PERFECT

Ind.: ich habe bekommen, du haſt bekommen etc.; ich bin verreiſt, du biſt verreiſt etc.

Subj.: ich habe bekommen, du habeſt bekommen etc.; ich ſei verreiſt, du ſei(e)ſt verreiſt etc.

PLUPERFECT

Ind.: ich hatte bekommen, du hatteſt bekommen etc.; ich war verreiſt, du warſt verreiſt etc.

Subj.: ich hätte bekommen, du hätteſt bekommen etc.; ich wäre verreiſt, du wäreſt verreiſt etc.

FUTURE

Ind.: ich werde bekommen, du wirſt bekommen etc.; ich werde verreiſen, du wirſt verreiſen etc.

Subj.: ich werde bekommen, du werdeſt bekommen etc.; ich werde verreiſen, du werdeſt verreiſen etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

Ind.: ich werde bekommen haben, du wirſt bekommen haben etc.; ich werde verreiſt ſein, du wirſt verreiſt ſein etc.

Subj.: ich werde bekommen haben, du werdeſt bekommen haben etc.; ich werde verreiſt ſein, du werdeſt verreiſt ſein etc.

CONDITIONAL

Pres.: ich würde bekommen, ich würde verreiſen etc.

Perf.: ich würde bekommen haben etc.; ich würde verreiſt ſein etc.

(And so on. The remaining forms can easily be supplied.)

1. Observe that the perfect participle of a ge-compound may be like that of the simple verb. It can only be told from the connection whether such a form as gehört comes from hören, *to hear*, or from gehören, *to belong to*. There are many such cases.

210. The Separable Prefixes. These are much more numerous than the inseparable. The list embraces (1) a dozen or more common prepositions, as aus, mit, über; (2) a like number of adverbs of position and direction, such as ab, *off*, empor, *up*, zuſammen, *together;* (3) the particles her, *toward*, and hin, *away from*, together with their very numerous compounds.

1. The separable prefixes are simply adverbs which in certain forms are written with the verb they modify as one word. The German says *come in*, kommen Sie herein, or *he went away*, er ging fort, just as English does; the difference is that English recognizes no such verbs as *intocome*, *away-togo*, corresponding to hereinzukommen and fortzugehen.

2. The particles her and hin require special attention. Her means *toward* the speaker, or the speaker's point of view; hin is its opposite. Thus kommen Sie her, *come here;* wo gehen Sie hin? *where are you going?* kommen Sie herauf, *come up* (the speaker is above); gehen Sie hinauf, *go up* (the

speaker is below); er ſchwamm zu mir herüber, *he swam across to me;* er ſchwamm hinüber, *he swam across* (to the other side). But the speaker may take the actor's point of view without reference to his own; thus er blickte hinauf, *he looked up* (from where he stood); er zog das Kind zu ſich herauf, *he drew the child up to him.*

211. Conjugation of Separable Compounds: a'nfangen, *to begin;* a'breiſen, *to depart.* Principal parts: a'nfangen, fing an, a'ngefangen; a'breiſen, reiſte ab, a'bgereiſt.

PRESENT

Ind.: ich fange an, du fängſt an etc.; ich reiſe ab, du reiſeſt ab etc.

Subj.: ich fange an, du fangeſt an etc.; ich reiſe ab, du reiſteſt ab etc.

PRETERIT

Ind.: ich fing an, du fingſt an etc.; ich reiſte ab, du reiſteſt ab etc.

Subj.: ich finge an, du fingeſt an etc.; ich reiſte ab, du reiſteſt ab etc.

PERFECT

Ind.: ich habe angefangen, du haſt angefangen etc.; ich bin abgereiſt, du biſt abgereiſt etc.

Subj.: ich habe angefangen, du habeſt angefangen etc.; ich ſei abgereiſt, du ſei(e)ſt abgereiſt etc.

PLUPERFECT

Ind.: ich hatte angefangen, du hatteſt angefangen etc.; ich war abgereiſt, du warſt abgereiſt etc.

Subj.: ich hätte angefangen, du hätteſt angefangen etc.; ich wäre abgereiſt, du wäreſt abgereiſt etc.

FUTURE

Ind.: ich werde anfangen, du wirſt anfangen etc.; ich werde abreiſen, du wirſt abreiſen etc.

Subj.: ich werde anfangen, du werdeſt anfangen etc.; ich werde abreiſen, du werdeſt abreiſen etc.

FUTURE PERFECT

Ind.: ich werde angefangen haben, du wirſt angefangen haben, etc.; ich werde abgereiſt ſein, du wirſt abgereiſt ſein etc.

Subj.: ich werde angefangen haben, du werdeſt angefangen haben etc.; ich werde abgereiſt ſein, du werdeſt abgereiſt ſein etc.

CONDITIONAL

Pres.: ich würde anfangen, du würdeſt anfangen etc.; ich würde abreiſen, du würdeſt abreiſen etc.

Perf.: ich würde angefangen haben, du würdeſt angefangen haben etc.; ich würde abgereiſt ſein, du würdeſt abgereiſt ſein etc.

IMPERATIVE

fange (du) an etc.; reiſe (du) ab etc.

INFINITIVE

Present: an(zu)fangen, ab(zu)reiſen.
Perfect: angefangen (zu) haben, abgereiſt (zu) ſein.

PARTICIPLE

Present: anfangend, abreiſend.
Perfect: angefangen, abgereiſt.

212. Doubtful Prefixes. The four prepositions durch, über, um, unter and the adverb wieder enter into composition sometimes as separable, sometimes as inseparable prefixes; thus we have du'rchleſen (las durch, du'rchgeleſen), *to read thru* (*thoroly*), and durchle'ſen (durchla's, durchle'ſen,) *to peruse;* ü'berſetzen (ſetzte über, ü'bergeſetzt), *to cross*, and überſe'tzen (überſe'tzte, überſe'tzt), *to translate.*

1. To this list are sometimes added the prepositions hinter, *behind*, and wider, *against*, but the compounds of these are in reality always inseparable. The reason for not giving them under § 208 is that they belong to the class of

prepositions and in noun-compounds may bear the accent; e. g. Hi'nterhalt, *ambuscade;* Wi'derſpruch, *contradiction* (but hinterha'lten, *hold back*, and widerſpre'chen, *contradict*).

2. The prefixes miß, *amiss, wrongly*, and voll, *fully*, are regularly inseparable; e. g. mißha'ndeln, *to maltreat*, mißha'ndelte, mißha'ndelt; vollfü'hren, *to complete*, vollfü'hrte, vollfü'hrt. But miß is sometimes treated as separable in the infinitive and participle (mi'ßzuhandeln, mi'ßgehandelt). Formations like gemi'ßhandelt, as if the verb were not compounded at all, also occur. Voll is separable only when used as an adjective in the literal sense; e. g. er goß das Glas voll, *he poured the glass full.*

213. Composition with Nouns and Adjectives. There are not a few cases in which a noun or adjective or adverbial phrase, from constant association with a verb, has come to form a compound with it; e. g. tei'lnehmen, *to take part;* wa'hrſagen, *to prophesy;* auseina'nderſetzen, *to explain.*

1. Compounds of this kind are treated in one of two ways: either the first element is regarded as a separable prefix (a noun losing its initial capital), or else it forms with the verb a new verb-stem which has regular weak inflection. Thus from teilnehmen we have nahm teil, teilgenommen, but from wahrſagen, wahrſagte, gewahrſagt.

214. Verbs Doubly Compounded. An inseparable compound may be still further compounded with a separable prefix; e. g. bei'behalten (behielt bei, beibehalten), *to retain.* Such formations omit ge in the participle, since two unaccented prefixes are never permitted to come together.

1. The only prefix that ever precedes a verb already separably compounded is wieder, as in wiederhe'rſtellen, *to restore.* The preterit is written ſtellte wieder her, the participle wiederhe'rgeſtellt.

215. Rule of Order VIII: Separable Compounds. In the simple tenses of a separable compound the prefix comes last if the order is normal or inverted, but next to the last (being then written with the verb as one word) if the order is dependent; e. g. das Konzert fängt um 8 Uhr an, *the concert begins at 8 o'clock;* wenn das Konzert um 8 Uhr anfängt, *if the concert begins at 8 o'clock;* da die Gesellschaft ihm nicht mehr zusagte, kehrte er nach der Stadt zurück, *as the company no longer suited him, he returned to the city.*

EXERCISE 41

Reading Lesson: Compound Verbs

Lieber Herr Müller! Ihr freundlicher Brief vom 15. dieses Monats ist kürzlich hier angekommen, und ich spreche Ihnen dafür meinen herzlichsten Dank aus.

Sie fragen, wo ich mich in der nächsten Zeit[1] aufhalten werde, und ob ich meine Studien in Deutschland noch weiter fortzusetzen gedenke. Nun, beide Fragen sind schwer zu beantworten,[2] denn alles kommt[3] auf die Wünsche meiner Eltern an. Ich habe das deutsche Leben liebgewonnen und würde sehr gern noch einige Monate hier verweilen; aber mein Vater ist, wie Sie wissen, kein reicher Mann, und es sollen[4] jetzt schwere Zeiten über Amerika hereingebrochen sein. Mit jeder Post erwarte ich einen Brief von ihm, worin er mir, wie ich hoffe, seine Lage genau auseinandersetzen wird, und ich werde mich dann natürlich seinen Wünschen unterwerfen.

Da ich vielleicht bald werde abreisen müssen, habe ich indessen die Rolle des Reisenden wiederaufgenommen. Gerade jetzt halte ich mich auf einige Zeit in Köln auf. Das Interessanteste, was diese Stadt darbietet, ist natürlich der große Dom, dessen Bau schon im 13. Jahrhundert angefangen, dann wieder mehrmals unterbrochen und erst 1880 vollendet wurde. Der Dom macht auf mich bei wiederholtem Besuche[5] einen stets gewaltigeren Eindruck; aber ich werde mich auf keine Beschreibung desselben einlassen, da ich Ihnen gewiß nichts Neues mitteilen könnte.

EXERCISE 41 a

1. The train arrives at 5 o'clock p.m. 2. The performance began at 7 o'clock. 3. The performance has already begun. 4. The train has not yet arrived. 5. We stayed two days in the little village and then continued [6] our journey. 6. I explained the situation to him [7] and told him [7] the latest [8] news. 7. The conversation was interrupted, but we resumed it the following day. 8. I submitted the idea to a thoro test.[7] 9. Where do you intend to stay during the summer? 10. I have just answered the letter and expressed my thanks. 11. The picture represents a young man who is just departing for the Old World. 12. How long shall you stay in the city? 13. We arrived toward [9] evening, but our friends had already departed. 14. He repeated his thanks. 15. We had tarried too long on the way; the performance had already begun and the doors were closed.

Vocabulary

Note. — Separable composition will be indicated by an accent; inseparable only where it might be doubtful. For principal parts see § 331.

a'breiſen (ſein), *v. w.* depart.
a'nkommen (ſein), *v. s.* arrive.
au'fhalten (ſich), *v. s.* stay.
au'ſeina'nderſe'tzen, *v. w.* explain.
au'ſſprechen, *v. s.* express.
der Bau, *s.*[2] building.
beantworten, *v. w.* answer.
der Beſuch, *s.*[2] visit.
der Dank, *s.* (*no pl.*), **thanks.**
da'rbieten, *v. s.* offer.
der Dom, *s.*[2] cathedral, *dome.*
der Eindruck, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), impression.
ei'nlaſſen, *v. s.* with ſich, enter upon, go into.
fo'rtſetzen, *v. w.* continue.
gedenken, *v. w.* intend.
gewaltig, *adj.* powerful.
herei'nbrechen, *v. s.* set in.
inde'ſſen, *adv.* meanwhile.
das Jahrhu'ndert, *s.*[2] century.
lie'bgewinnen, *v. s.* grow fond of.
mi'tteilen, *v. w.* impart, tell.
die Poſt, *w.* mail, *post.*
unterbre'chen, *v. s.* interrupt.
unterwe'rfen, *v. s.* submit.
verweilen, *v. w.* tarry.
wiederauf'nehmen, *v. s.* resume.
wiederho'len, *v. w.* repeat.
der Wunſch, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü), **wish.**

Notes. — [1] **in der nächſten Zeit,** *in the near future.* — [2] **beantworten;** the construction requires a transitive verb, whence antworten,

which is not transitive, could not be used. — [3] **kommt . . . auf . . . an**; ankommen auf (with acc.) = *to depend upon.* — [4] **es ſollen**, *are said, it is said that* (191, 5). — [5] **bei wiederholtem Beſuche**, *with (each) repeated visit.* — [6] **and then continued**, und ſetzten dann, not dann ſetzten. — [7] Use the dat. — [8] **the latest**, die neueſten. — [9] **toward**, gegen.

THE PARTICLES*

216. The Adverb. Adverbs modify verbs, adjectives and other adverbs. As in English, an adverb may also be connected directly with a noun, or may stand alone in the predicate; e. g. der Mann dort, *the man yonder;* die Zeit iſt um, *the time is up.*

1. Some adverbs, e. g. wohl, bald, are primitive words used only as adverbs; others, e. g. auf, um, are primitive words used also as prepositions; still others are formed by means of a suffix; e. g. freilich, *to be sure*, from frei; blindlings, *blindly*, from blind. Others, again, are case-forms of nouns, with or without a modifier; e. g. teils, *partly*, from Teil; großenteils, *in great part;* i. e. großen Teils.

a. But the great mass of adverbs are simply adjectives used in the stem-form; e. g. gut, *well;* frei, *freely.* There is thus no need of a suffix, like *ly* in English, having the special function of forming adverbs from adjectives.

2. An adjective used as an adverb is usually capable of comparison, the comparative ending in er, the superlative being the phrase with am or with aufs (§ 112); thus the adverb gut compares gut, beſſer, am beſten or aufs beſte.

a. Adverbs which are not used as adjectives are, in general, not subject to comparison; but there are a few exceptions.

* Only a brief and general account of the uninflected parts of speech is given here, all details being reserved for Part II. Since particles of every kind have been freely introduced in the preceding reading lessons and colloquies, it is to be presumed that the essential facts relating to them are already pretty well understood.

217. The Preposition. Prepositions govern cases, thus forming phrases that have adverbial or adjectival force. There are eight prepositions that always govern the accusative, sixteen that always govern the dative, and nine that govern the accusative or dative with difference of meaning. There are then some thirty or more that regularly govern the genitive, tho some of them may take the dative without difference of meaning. For lists see § 376–7.

1. The prepositions that govern the dative and accusative take the latter case when motion is implied and the phrase answers the question 'whither?' If no motion is implied, and the phrase answers the question 'where?' they take the dative; e.g. er geht ans Fenſter, *he goes to the window;* but er ſteht am Fenſter, *he stands by the window.*

a. There are, however, some cases not provided for by this rule; e.g. über in the sense of *concerning* (neither rest nor motion being implied) always takes the accusative. For fuller information consult the list in Part II.

2. A preposition, as its name implies, regularly comes before the noun it governs, but there are a few that may come after; e.g. one may say meiner Anſicht nach, or nach meiner Anſicht, *in my opinion.*

3. The three prepositions um, in the sense of *in order* (to denote purpose), ohne, *without*, and ſtatt (or anſtatt), *instead*, may govern the infinitive with zu.

218. The Conjunction. Conjunctions connect sentences. They are divided into three classes, as follows, the classification being of great importance on account of its bearing upon the subject of word-order:

1. The general connectives, which do not subordinate the sentence nor modify adverbially the following verb. They are und, *and;* aber (also allein and ſondern, all meaning *but*); denn, *for*, and oder, *or*. These words do not affect the order.

2. The adverbial conjunctions, which, coming first in a clause, combine the functions of a connective (conjunction) and adverbial modifier. They are very numerous. Examples are alſo, *so, accordingly;* nun, now; doch, *but, still;* darauf, *thereupon.* These words cause inversion; e.g. er iſt reich, doch hat er wenig Verſtand, *he is rich, but he has little sense.*

a. The words of this class are strictly adverbs and not conjunctions at all, but they partake of the nature of conjunctions in that they show the logical connection of sentences. They do not always come first in the clause, and when they do not they cause no inversion.

3. The subordinating conjunctions, which subordinate the sentence they introduce and require the dependent order. These are also quite numerous, examples being daß, *that;* ob, *whether;* da, *since;* wenn, *if;* obgleich, *altho.* For a list see §381.

219. The Interjection. Interjections do not enter into the syntactical structure of the sentence, but are independent expressions of feeling. They are usually classified according to the emotions they express, as joy, pain, surprise or the like.

1. But certain interjections are sometimes accompanied by a case-form of a noun; e.g. o des Elends! *oh, the misery!*

EXERCISE 42

Reading Lesson: An Anecdote

Es trug ſich einmal zu, daß die Frau eines armen Schuſters gefährlich erkrankte. Der Mann hatte nichts, womit er einen Arzt bezahlen konnte, und befand ſich daher in großer Not. Er kannte zwar einen geſchickten Arzt, der in einem ſchönen Hauſe ihm gegenüber[1] wohnte, aber er wußte, daß dieſer ein großes Honorar verlangen würde. Lang und traurig überlegte er die Sache bei ſich und kam endlich auf folgenden Gedanken.

Er ging nämlich zu dem Arzte hinüber, ſetzte ihm den Fall aus-

einander und bat ihn, seine Frau zu besuchen. „Haben Sie denn etwas, um mich zu bezahlen?" fragte der Arzt. „Leider nicht viel," antwortete der Schuster; „ich habe nur zwanzig Taler,[2] die ich gerade auf einen solchen Krankheitsfall wie diesen[3] aufgespart habe." (Das war nun erlogen, aber, wie der arme Mann dachte, galt es das Leben seiner Frau.) „Es ist alles, was ich in der Welt besitze, und diese Summe biete ich Ihnen an, wenn Sie meine Frau kurieren." „Und wenn ich sie nicht kuriere?" versetzte der Doktor. „Nun, wenn Sie sich ihrer annehmen wollen," erwiderte der Schuster, „so gebe ich Ihnen das Geld, gleichviel ob Sie sie kurieren oder umbringen."

Der Doktor war jetzt zufrieden und unternahm die Behandlung der Kranken, die aber endlich dem Tode verfiel. Bald darauf verlangte er die zwanzig Taler. „Haben Sie meine Frau kuriert?" fragte der Schuster. „Leider nicht," antwortete der Doktor. „Und haben Sie sie denn umgebracht?" fuhr jener fort. Der Doktor mußte natürlich behaupten, daß er sie auch nicht umgebracht habe.[4] „Also bin ich Ihnen doch wohl nichts schuldig," sagte der Schuster, und damit war das Geschäft abgeschlossen.

Vocabulary

a'bschließen, *v. s.* close up.
a'nbieten, *v. s.* offer.
a'nnehmen (sich, *gen.*) *v. s.* interest one's self in, take charge of.
au'fsparen, *v. w.* save up [**spare**].
die Behandlung, *w.* treatment.
besitzen, *v. s.* possess.
bezahlen, *v. w.* pay.
dahe'r, *adv.* therefore.
erkranken, *v. w.* sicken, be taken sick.
erlügen, *v. s.* invent falsely [**-lie**].
erwidern, *v. w.* reply.
fo'rtfahren, *v. s.* continue.
gegenü'ber, *prep.* (*dat.*) opposite.
gelten, *v. s.* have at stake, involve.
geschickt, *adj.* skillful.
gleichvie'l, *adv.* no matter, just the same.
hinü'bergehen, *v. s.* **go over.**
das Honora'r, *s.*[2] fee.
kurieren, *v. w.* *cure.*
die Not, *s.*[2] **need,** distress.
schuldig, *adj.* indebted.
der Schuster, *s.*[1] cobbler.
der Taler, *s.*[1] thaler, dollar.
traurig, *adj.* sad, sorrowful.
überle'gen, *v. w.* ponder, consider.
u'mbringen, *v. w.* kill.
unterne'hmen, *v. s.* undertake.
verfallen, *v. s.* fall a prey.
versetzen, *v. w.* answer.
zu'tragen (sich), *v. s.* happen.

NOTES. — [1] **ihm gegenüber**; see § 217, 2. — [2] **Taler**; Eng. *dollar* is not cognate with Ger. Taler, but derived from it. The Taler has had very different values, but may be thought of here as about = $0.75. — [3] **wie dieſen**; in apposition with Krankheitsfall. But dieſer, *i. e.* wie dieſer es iſt, would also be correct. — [4] **umgebracht habe**; subjunctive of indirect discourse. An indirect statement generally keeps in German the *tense* that would be used in the direct form, but employs the subjunctive *mode*. The doctor would say in the direct form: ich habe ſie auch nicht umgebracht. The pret. of bringen is brachte (§ 178).

RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES OF WORD-ORDER

Rule I: The Inverted Order. If a sentence begins with any other element than the subject, the subject must follow the verb; e. g. da iſt er, *there he is;* das verſtehe ich nicht, *that I do not understand;* ſchön iſt ſie nicht, *beautiful she is not.*

1. This order, verb before subject, is called 'inverted,' the 'normal' order being subject before verb, as in er iſt da; ich verſtehe das nicht.

2. Inversion occurs in English, e. g. in *said I, great is Mammon;* but while it is somewhat rare in English, it is exceedingly common in German. German tends to begin the sentence with that element which is most prominent in the speaker's thought; and when this is done and the word so put first does not happen to be the subject, inversion must follow. In translating do not imitate the German inverted order at the expense of English idiom.

3. The general connectives und, aber and denn constitute an important exception to the rule above stated. They do not cause inversion.

Rule II: Position of Adverbs. In the normal order an adverb must not come between the subject and the verb; thus *I hardly know,* ich weiß kaum; *he never goes to church,* er geht nie in die Kirche.

1. An adverb of time usually takes precedence of other adverbs; thus *I knew him very well at that time,* ich kannte ihn damals ſehr gut; *he is usually at home evenings,* er iſt abends gewöhnlich zu Hauſe.

Rule III: The Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence the verb, if it is in a simple tense and so consists of one word, comes at the end; e. g. Wiſſen Sie, ob der Doktor zu Hauſe iſt? *Do you know whether the doctor is at home?* Erinnern Sie ſich, wo Sie geſtern zu dieſer Zeit waren? *Do you remember where you were yesterday at this time.*

1. This rule covers all sentences introduced by a subordinating conjunction (§ 381), a relative pronoun or particle, or an indirect interrogative.

2. Subordinate sentences of every kind are usually set off by commas.

Rule IV: Compound Tenses. In an independent sentence the uninflected part of a compound tense, that is, the infinitive or participle, comes last; in a dependent sentence the inflected auxiliary comes last and is immediately preceded by the uninflected part. Thus we have:

a. In the normal order: ich habe ihn ſeit geſtern nicht geſehen, *I have not seen him since yesterday;* Sie werden mich heute abend zu Hauſe finden, *you will find me at home this evening;* es würde mir große Freude gemacht haben, *it would have given me great pleasure.*

b. In the inverted order: ſeit geſtern habe ich ihn nicht geſehen; heute abend werden Sie mich zu Hauſe finden; mir würde es große Freude gemacht haben.

c. In the dependent order: ich weiß gewiß, daß ich ihn ſeit geſtern nicht geſehen habe, *I know for certain that I have not seen him since yesterday;* es iſt wahrſcheinlich, daß Sie mich heute abend zu Hauſe finden werden, *it is probable that you*

will find me at home this evening; ich verſichere Sie, daß es mir große Freude gemacht haben würde, *I assure you that it would have given me great pleasure.*

Rule V: Dependent Infinitive. In an independent sentence a dependent infinitive, with or without zu, comes at the end; e. g. ich habe nichts mit der Sache zu tun, *I have nothing to do with the affair;* ich hörte ihn geſtern dieſelbe Bemerkung machen, *I heard him make the same remark yesterday.*

1. An infinitive dependent upon a verb which itself stands in the dependent order generally comes just before the verb if unmodified, but after it if limited by an object or an adverb; e. g. obwohl ich ihn zu antworten gebeten hatte, *tho I had asked him to answer;* but obwohl ich ihn gebeten hatte, meine Frage zu beantworten, *tho I had asked him to answer my question.*

Rule VI: Special Case of Dependent Order. In a dependent sentence containg a compound tense of a modal auxiliary in connection with an infinitive, the participle of the modal auxiliary comes last, next to that the infinitive, and just before that the inflected auxiliary; e. g. ich weiß gewiß, daß ich ſo etwas nie hätte tun können, *I know for certain that I could never have done such a thing;* das iſt ein Rätſel, welches niemand bis jetzt hat löſen können, *that is a riddle which no one has hitherto been able to solve.*

Rule VII: Inversion after Subordinate Clause. Any subordinate clause preceding the principal verb of a complex sentence causes inversion; e. g. wenn ich an Ihrer Stelle wäre, (ſo) würde ich zu Hauſe bleiben, *if I were in your place, I should remain at home;* obwohl er Geld hat, (ſo) hat er doch wenig Verſtand, *tho he has money he has little sense;* damit er Ruhe haben könnte, zog er ſich aufs Land zurück, *that he might have peace he retired into the country.*

1. Observe that this is only a special case under the general rule of inversion (§ 87). The subordinate clause always has the force either of an adverb, an adjective or a substantive; and such an element preceding the verb causes inversion.

a. But the subordinate clause may be itself the subject, in which case there is no room for inversion; e. g. daß er recht hat, iſt klar, *that he is right is clear.*

2. The adverbial force of a preceding clause is often resumed by means of an adverb, usually ſo, placed just before the main verb (see the first two examples above). This ſo should not be translated.

Rule VIII: Separable Compounds. In the simple tenses of a separable compound the prefix comes last if the order is normal or inverted, but next to the last (being then written with the verb as one word) if the order is dependent; e. g. das Konzert fängt um 8 Uhr an, *the concert begins at 8 o'clock;* wenn das Konzert um 8 Uhr anfängt, *if the concert begins at 8 o'clock;* da die Geſellſchaft ihm nicht mehr zuſagte, kehrte er nach der Stadt zurück, *as the company no longer suited him he returned to the city.*

PART SECOND

INTRODUCTORY

220. Historical Development of German. Altho this grammar deals only with modern literary German, it will be necessary to refer now and then to older and to dialectic usages; for which reason the following brief statements are made at this point:

1. The earliest stage of the German language, as seen in those literary records that antedate the 12th century, is known as 'Old' German (Altdeutsch). The Old German of South Germany is further known as 'High' (Althochdeutsch), that of North Germany as 'Low' (Altniederdeutsch).

2. The second stage, as seen in those writings that date from the period 1100–1500, is known as 'Middle' German, the qualifications 'High' and 'Low' (Mittelhochdeutsch, Mittelniederdeutsch) having the same meaning as before.

3. 'Modern' German (Neuhochdeutsch) is usually dated from the time of Martin Luther (1483–1546). Thru the momentum of the Reformation and the force of Luther's genius the language in which he wrote gradually developed into the standard literary language of all Germany. In the 18th century this language entered upon a new stage thru the influence of the great classical writers. Their language is that of to-day, except in some minor details, while that of Luther is much more archaic.

a. This book deals, then, with late modern German — say the language of the last one hundred and fifty years. For the earlier periods consult Grimm's *Deutsche Grammatik*, 1822–40, 4 vols.; of later and smaller works, Braune's *Althochdeutsche Grammatik*, Paul's *Mittelhochdeutsche Grammatik*, Kluge's *Von Luther bis Lessing*, Blatz's *Neuhochdeutsche Grammatik* mit Berücksichtigung, etc., and Brandt's *German Grammar*.

221. The Literary Language and the Dialects. From the time of Luther the literary language (Schriftsprache) has developed side by side with the dialects, influencing them and influenced by them. It is now the language of books and journals, of schools and courts, and of social intercourse among the educated. But the dialects, often referred to, both individually and collectively, as the *Volkssprache*, are still used by a large portion of the population.

1. Owing to the fact that the *Schriftsprache* was not originally and has never since become identical with the dialect of any one locality, but has been developed and enriched by writers from all parts of Germany, who have drawn more or less upon the resources of their provincial vernacular, it is not now possible to distinguish sharply in all cases between that which is standard German and that which is dialect.

2. The rules of grammar as presented in the following pages must be understood as referring primarily to literary prose. Poetry, subject as it is to the constraints of rhythm, presents frequent deviations from normal linguistic usage. Again, prose itself may be, like poetry, either stately and dignified, or quaint and archaic, or it may reflect the free-and-easy language of common life. The most of the deviations from normal usage, so far as they are not simply improprieties, are either poetic, dialectic, archaic or colloquial.

a. An excellent historical treatise upon the relation of literary German to the dialects is Socin's *Schriftsprache und Dialekte.*

222. Usage and Correctness. Good German is that which is used by good writers and speakers. There is no court of appeal higher than firmly established usage. The chief function of the grammarian, therefore, is to describe and explain the facts as they are.

1. At the same time every language has its laws, its principles, its historical tendencies; and that which is contrary to any of these may properly be put under the ban by the grammarian and pronounced 'incorrect' or 'bad' — at least until the bad has prevailed and thereby become good. Thus grammar may furnish a criterion by which to judge conflicting usages or new inventions that have not yet been generally adopted. It is well to remember, however, that the most of the usages condemned as bad can be found in good literature. The classics teem with 'mistakes' that defy the grammarians.

a. On the relation between the facts of usage and the dogmas of grammar consult Andresen's *Sprachgebrauch und Sprachrichtigkeit im Deutschen*, Keller's *Deutscher Antibarbarus*, Wustmann's *Allerhand Sprachdummheiten.*

THE USE OF THE ARTICLE

223. The Contractions of **der** with a preceding word grow out of its lack of stress. The forms that suffer apheresis and unite with a preceding preposition are (de)m, (da)s and (de)r, the prepositions an, in and von losing their n before m.

1. The usual contractions are am, beim, im, vom, zum, zur (the only one with der), ans, aufs, durchs, fürs, ins and ums. Less common are the dissyllabic forms außerm, hinterm, überm, unterm, hinters, übers, unters. All are best written without an apostrophe.

2. In familiar language the contractions are preferred to the full forms, except when der has determinative or particularizing force; e.g. im Glauben feſt, *firm in (the) faith;* but feſt in dem Glauben, daß der Menſch unſterblich ſei, *in the faith that man is immortal;* am Ufer des Rheins, *on the banks of the Rhine;* but an dem Ufer, wo der Wein wächſt, *on the bank where the vine grows.* Even in such cases contraction may occur; e.g. vom Rechte, das mit uns geboren iſt (G.), *of the right that is born with us.*

3. Contractions with a dissyllabic preposition, also with den (both acc. and dat.) and others not mentioned above, are common in talk; e.g. untern Bäumen; wider's Recht; aufm Berg; mitm Vater; durchn Wald; durchs (= durch des) Feindes Lager.

4. The written forms an, in, sometimes stand for an'n, in'n, i.e. an den, in den; e.g. ſetz' dich in Seſſel (G.), *seat yourself in the settle;* ihr warſt ſie dem Feind an Kopf (G.), *at the head of the trooper.* In such cases there is no omission of the article, the n being pronounced long.

5. The shortened article may attach itself to other parts of speech than prepositions; e.g. hab' ich ihm's (= das) Bad geſegnet (S.), *blessed the bath for him;* ich will gleich's Eſſen zurecht machen (G.), *I will get breakfast at once;* er ſoll'n Vater rufen (Gr.), *he is to call father.*

224. Omission of der. The definite article is a weakened demonstrative. Its usual function is to mark a noun as definite or known. When the noun is not definite, or when its definiteness is shown in some other way, e.g. by its meaning (as in the case of proper names), or by some modifier, or by the general connection, der is not ordinarily used, the noun having either ein or no article at all.

1. To a great extent, therefore, the use and the omission of der coincide closely with the use and omission of *the* in English. Thus der is regularly omitted with a noun limited by a preceding genitive or possessive; e.g. des Landes Wohl, *the land's welfare,* but das Wohl des Landes, *the welfare of the land;* der Güter höchſtes (but das höchſte der Güter), *the highest of blessings.*

a. In such case the limiting genitive itself must have the article, but exceptions occur in poetry; e. g. um Grabes Nacht (G.), *about the night of the grave;* wandelt an Ufers Grün (S.), *on the green of the shore.*

2. Again, both languages often omit the definite article in set phrases consisting of two nouns connected by *and*, or where there is an enumeration of objects belonging to the same category; e. g. über Stock und Stein, *over stock and stone;* durch Gebirg und Tal, *thru mountain and dale;* vergeht mir Hören, Sehn und Denken (G.), *hearing, seeing and thinking forsake me.*

3. In other cases, however, the idiom of the two languages does not correspond, der being omitted where English employs *the.* Thus:

a. In certain prepositional phrases; e. g. gen Osten, *toward the east;* nach Süden, *toward the south;* nach alter Weise, *in the old way;* in deutscher (or in der deutschen) Sprache, *in the German language.* For the converse of these cases, der used but *the* omitted, see § 229.

b. Before certain words of formal or technical reference; e. g. folgender Bericht, *the following report;* gedachter Umstand, *the above-mentioned circumstance.* So also Überbringer, *the bearer;* Inhaber, *the holder;* Unterzeichnet, *the undersigned;* erst, *the former;* letzt, *the latter;* obig, *the above;* besagt, erwähnt, obgemeldet, *the aforesaid*, and others.

c. In the predicate sometimes before Sache, *affair*, Grund, *ground*, Veranlassung, *occasion*, and some others; e. g. Geben ist Sache des Reichen (G.), *giving is the affair of the rich;* (der) Grund dieser Annahme ist folgender, *the ground of this assumption is the following.*

225. Der with Proper Names. The rule is, as in English: No article unless the name is preceded by an adjective; e. g. im Jahre 1770 ging Goethe nach Straßburg, wo er Herder kennen lernte, *in the year 1770 Goethe*

went to Strassburg, where he became acquainted with Herder. But one would say der junge Goethe, nach dem damals franzöſiſchen Straßburg, den ſchon berühmten Herder.

a. Such phrases as *little Karl, old Fritz, young Germany, Brown Bess,* need the article in German; thus, der kleine Karl; der alte Fritz; das junge Deutſchland; die braune Liſel. But jung Siegfried, klein Roland, and the like (with uninflected adjective), occur in songs.

1. But a 'familiar' der often stands before the names of friends, neighbors, acquaintances, etc.; e. g. da iſt der Tell (S.), *there is Tell;* wer iſt der Weislingen (G.)? *who is Weislingen?* The usage is common in the classics where the speakers belong to the common people. .

a. The use of der before Christian names (except where it is needed to show case) is South-German; e. g. der Wilhelm (die Berta) iſt nicht zu Hauſe, *Wilhelm (Berta) is not at home.* Here the North-German prefers to omit the article, tho he may use it to show case, as in ich gab es dem Wilhelm (der Berta).

2. So also der is used before the names of well-known historical and fictitious characters, especially with the oblique cases of names that are not inflected; e. g. kennſt du den Fauſt (G.)? *knowest thou Faust?* die Gedichte des Horaz, *the poems of Horace;* er ſpielt gern den Hamlet, *likes to play Hamlet;* ich ziehe Wagner dem Beethoven vor, *I prefer Wagner to Beethoven.*

a. The converse of this process (treating a well-known proper name as a common noun) is seen when a common noun, losing its article, becomes, as it were, a proper noun; e. g. Knabe ſprach: ich breche dich; Röslein ſprach: ich ſteche dich (G.); *boy said: I'll pluck thee; little rose said: I'll prick thee;* Morgenſtund hat Gold im Mund, *morning hour has gold in its mouth.* So also in stage directions; e. g. Fiſcherknabe fährt in einem Kahn (S.), *(the) fisherboy is rowing a boat.*

b. Proper names used appellatively take an article, as in English; e. g. die Venus von Milo, *the Venus of Milo;* die Shakespeare und die Goethe erſcheinen nicht oft, *the Shakespeares and the Goethes do not appear often.*

3. Names of countries are mostly neuter and take no article unless preceded by an inflected adjective; e. g. Spanien

iſt mein Heimatland, *Spain is my native land;* ganz Spanien, *all Spain;* but das ſchöne Spanien, *beautiful Spain.*

a. On the other hand, the article is regularly used with feminine names of countries, and with a few that are not feminine. Some of these take, or may take, the article in English. Such are:

das (or der) Elſaß, *Alsatia.*	die Normandie, *Normandie*
die Campagne, *the Campagna*	der Peloponnes, *the Peloponnesus*
die Gascogne, *Gascony*	die Pfalz, *the Palatinate*
die Krim, *the Crimea*	die Schweiz, *Switzerland*
die Lauſitz, *Lusatia*	die Tartarei, *Tartary*
die Levante, *the Levant*	die Türkei, *Turkey*
die Moldau, *Moldavia*	die Walachei, *Wallachia*

and others in ei. So also der Breisgau, *the Breisgau*, and others in gau; die Neumark, *the Neumark*, and others in mark; die Wetterau, *the Wetterau*, and others in au; das Vogtland, *the Vogtland*, die Niederlande, *the Netherlands*, and others in land, lande. For das Tirol, (*the*) *Tirol*, heard among the people, the simple Tirol is better.

b. Of names of cities only der Haag, *the Hague*, has the article.

c. Names of mountains take the article, even those that are without it in English; e. g. der Sinai, *Mt. Sinai;* der Veſuv, *Mt. Vesuvius.*

4. Names of seasons, months, days of the week and streets take the article; e. g. der Sommer iſt hin (S.), *summer is past;* in des Maies holden Tagen (U.), *in the lovely days of May;* am Mittwoch, *on Wednesday;* in der Friedrichſtraße, *on Friedrich Street.*

a. But the names of the months omit der in phrases giving the time of the month; e. g. Anfang März, *at the beginning of March;* Ende April, *at the end of April;* am 6ten Juni, *on the 6th of June.* So too in certain prepositional phrases; e. g. ſeit März, *since March*, bis Oktober, *till October.*

226. The Generic Article. With abstract nouns, nouns of material and of class, verbals in en and some others, der is used whenever the word is taken in a general and not in any specific or concrete sense; e. g. es lebe die Freiheit! es lebe der Wein (G.), *long live freedom! long*

live wine! die Kunſt iſt lang, das Leben kurz (G.), *art is long, life short;* der Menſch iſt aufs nächſte mit den Tieren verwandt (G.), *most closely related to (the) animals;* hoch über der Zeit und dem Raume (S.), *high above time and space;* das Schaudern iſt der Menſchheit beſtes Teil (G.), *feeling the thrill of awe is the best part of human nature.*

1. But real and apparent exceptions to this rule are common, especially in poetry. When the article is omitted it will usually be found that the noun is not used in a perfectly general way, but perhaps partitively, to denote *some of* the quality or substance. Or it may characterize an individual or a situation, and so lose its generic quality. Or the omission may be in the interest of conciseness; e. g. das Tier hat auch Vernunft (S.), *the brute has reason too;* was hilft euch Schönheit (G.)? *of what use to you is beauty?* Daſein iſt Pflicht (G.), *existence is duty.*

227. Der for a Possessive. Der may take the place of a possessive when the connection shows clearly who the possessor is. The usage occurs mostly in referring to a part of the body or clothing; e. g. er ſetzt die Schale an den Mund (G.), *he puts the cup to his mouth;* hatte Bänder auf dem Kleide (G.), *had ribbons on his coat.*

a. Where the possessor is denoted by a dat. of interest (§ 259), the dat. together with the article is equivalent to the English possessive; e. g. der Kerl ſprengt mir die Ohren (G.), *is splitting my ears;* wenn ſie dir in die Augen ſehn (G.), *when they look into your eyes;* er zerbricht ſich den Kopf, *he cudgels his brain.*

1. Very often, however, the possessive will be found in such cases, just as in English; e. g. mein armer Kopf iſt mir verrückt (G.), *my poor head is crazed.* Sometimes the meter will govern the choice; e. g. in jeden Quark begräbt er ſeine Naſe (G.), *buries his nose in every pile of dirt.*

2. The use of der before Vater, Mutter, Schweſter, Vetter, etc., is South-German, but very common in the classics; e. g. das muß Sie nicht der Mutter ſagen (G.), *you must not tell your mother that.* The

North-German prefers a possessive, as in English. A possessive should always be used when it would not otherwise be clear whose father, sister, lover, etc., is meant.

228. The Distributive der occurs (chiefly in expressions of price) with the sense of *a, an, per;* e. g. es koſtet zwei Mark das Pfund, *it costs two marks a pound.* So also one may say dreimal die Woche (or in der Woche, or wöchentlich), *three times a week.*

229. Prepositional Phrases — a highly idiomatic element of every language — present numerous peculiarities in the use of the article which must be learned by observation. The following examples will illustrate: in die Kirche gehen, *to go to church;* in die Schule gehen, *to go to school;* auf der Schule, *at school;* in der Schule, *in school;* zum Beiſpiel, *for example;* zum Teil, *in part;* eine zur Frau nehmen, *to take one to wife, for a wife;* einen zum Präſidenten wählen, *to elect one president;* im Himmel, *in heaven* (but *in the sky*); in der Hölle, *in hell;* zur Hölle, *to hell;* im Paradieſe, *in paradise;* zur Geſundheit! *here's to your health!* zur glücklichen Reiſe! *here's to a pleasant journey!*

230. The Use of ein. The indefinite article is the numeral ein weakened by loss of stress. It precedes all other modifiers of its noun except welch, was für and ſolch, and it *may* precede ſolch (§ 135, 1).

1. In talk the forms of ein often suffer apheresis of ei or even of the entire syllable ein; e. g. die ſtellen klug 'ne (= eine) Vorhut aus (S.), *put out a picket;* du biſt 'n (= ein) braver Knabe, *a good boy;* es war mal (= einmal) ein Kaiſer, *there was once an emperor.*

2. The use of ein corresponds in the main very closely to that of *a, an* (but see §§ 228, 229, 231). Thus, just as in English, it may go with an abstract noun or a noun of material to denote a particular case or a concrete object; e. g. eine Freude, *a joy;* eine Schönheit, *a beauty;* ein Glas, *a*

glass. So, too, it may go with a proper name, having then the sense of *one such as ;* e. g. das wäre einem Schiller unmöglich, *that would be impossible for a Schiller.*

a. With verbal nouns ein often serves to emphasize the vehemence, the frequent repetition, or the long continuance of an action ; e. g. das iſt ein Stürmen (G.), *that is a storming,* i. e. *how we go storming ;* das war ein Spazieren (G.), *that was a walking,* i. e. *they were always walking together ;* nun ſoll es an ein Schädelſpalten (G.), *now we'll proceed to a cracking of skulls.*

231. The Omission of ein. In the predicate, and also after als, ein is apt to be omitted before an unmodified noun denoting vocation, rank, character, station in life, less often before one denoting nationality ; e. g. mein Bruder iſt Soldat (G.), *my brother is a soldier ;* er ſtarb als Chriſt (G.), *he died a Christian.*

1. If the noun is modified by an adjective or a genitive, ein is generally used unless noun and modifier form a set phrase ; e. g. er iſt ein großer Dichter, *a great poet ;* but er iſt preußiſcher Soldat, königlicher Rat, Mitglied des Reichstags, *he is a Prussian soldier, (a) royal councillor, (a) member of parliament.*

a. Exceptions to both the above rules are numerous ; so much so that the Grimm Dictionary merely says the article *may* drop out in such cases.

232. Repetition of the Article. If the article is used before the first of two or more nouns connected in the same construction, it must be repeated with each following noun if there is change of gender ; e. g. der König und die Kaiſerin, *the king and the empress ;* der Strom, das Meer, das Salz gehört dem König (S.), *the river, the sea, the salt belong to the king.*

1. If there is no change of gender the repetition *may* be dispensed with, and *must* be if the two nouns refer to the same person or thing ; e. g. der Kaiſer und König, *the em-*

peror and king (one person), but der Kaiſer und der König, two persons; eine grün' und weiße Fahne, *a green-and-white banner*, but eine grüne und eine weiße Fahne, *a green and a white banner*.

2. The rule of repetition applies also to adjectives and possessives; e. g. guter Wein und gutes Bier, *good wine and (good) beer;* die Zeitſchrift für deutſches Altertum und deutſche Literaturgeſchichte, *Journal for German Antiquity and (German) Literary History;* ſein hoher Gang, ſein' edle Geſtalt (G.), *his lofty stride, his noble form.* But an uninflected adjective need not be repeated; e. g. hat Sie gut Bier und Wein (U.)? *have you good beer and wine?*

a. Exceptions to the rule of repetition are common in poetry and in talk; e. g. was ſoll all der Schmerz und Luſt (G.)? *what means all the pain and pleasure?*

THE GENDER OF NOUNS

233. Gender as Determined by Meaning. The brief statement in § 75 may be expanded as follows:

1. Masculine are names of males, points of the compass, stones, winds, seasons, months and days of the week; e. g. Mann, *man;* Stier, *bull;* Hengſt, *stallion;* Eber, *boar;* Bär, *bear;* Hahn, *cock;* Nord, *north* or *north wind;* Kieſel, *flint;* Granit, *granite;* Winter, *winter;* Juli, *July;* Mittwoch, *Wednesday*.

2. Feminine are the names of females, most trees and flowers (especially those ending in e), most German rivers, and nearly all abstract terms; e. g. Kuh, *cow;* Stute, *mare;* Sau, *sow;* Henne, *hen;* Buche, *beech;* Eiche, *oak;* Nelke, *pink;* Donau, *Danube;* Tugend, *virtue;* Macht, *power*.

a. Conspicuous exceptions are the neuters Weib and Frauenzimmer, *woman*, Mädchen, *girl*, and Fräulein, *young lady*. The female of the larger animals usually has, where sex is to be distinguished, a separate name; see examples above. But many names of small animals are fem. without thought of sex; e. g. Maus, *mouse;* Ratte, *rat;* Katze, *cat;* Schlange, *snake;* Nachtigall, *nightingale*.

b. Notable exceptions to the rule for German rivers are der Rhein, der Main, der Neckar. Non-German rivers are mostly mas., but many are fem.; e. g. der Nil, Indus, Ganges, Orinoko, Hudſon, Miſſiſſippi, Tiber; but die Lena, Wolga, Seine, Loire, Themſe (*Thames*).

3. Neuter are names of animals which designate the species or the young without reference to sex; also names of cities and countries (but see § 225, 3), most names of materials, letters of the alphabet, and all words not properly nouns which are used as nouns; e. g. Kind, *child;* Rind, one of the genus *bos;* Schwein, *hog, swine;* Ferkel, *pig;* Pferd, *horse;* Füllen, *colt;* Huhn, *fowl;* das ſchöne Paris, *beautiful Paris;* das neue Italien, *new Italy;* Holz, *wood;* Tuch, *cloth;* das runde s, *the round s;* das Spekulieren, *speculation;* ihr ewiges Weh und Ach, *their eternal woe and alas;* das Stelldichein, *the rendezvous.*

234. Gender as Determined by Form. The few simple rules given in Part I (§§ 79, 83, 88, 93) may be recapitulated and amplified as follows:

1. Masculine are most monosyllabic nouns formed without suffix from a verbal root, nouns in e denoting persons or animals, and nouns of agency or station in er, ler, ner; also those in el denoting instrument, those in en that are not infinitives, and those in ich, ig, ling and rich; e. g. Bund (binden), *league;* Schuß (ſchießen), *shot;* Bote, *messenger;* Löwe, *lion;* Seher, *seer;* Bürger, *citizen;* Kellner, *waiter;* Hebel, *lever;* Wedel, *brush;* Garten, *garden:* Buſen, *bosom;* Fittich, *pinion;* Käfig, *cage;* Wüſtling, *profligate;* Wüterich, *tyrant.*

a. Only a few monosyllabic derivatives from verbal roots are fem. or neu., and those mostly have a mas. counterpart from the same root: cf. das Schloß, *castle,* der Schluß, *end;* das Band, *bond,* and der Bund, *league;* die Zahl, *number,* and der Zoll, *toll.*

b. Nouns in er that do not denote agency or station are of all genders; e. g. der Hader, *quarrel;* die Ader, *vein;* das Ruder, *oar.*

2. Feminine are a multitude of nouns in e, many in t, and a few in nis and ſal (see below under 3); also all in ei, erei,

heit, keit, in, ſchaft, ung and the foreign suffixes age, ie, (t)ion, ik; e. g. Sprache, *speech;* Güte, *goodness;* Kraft, *force;* Wildnis, *desert;* Drangſal, *oppression;* Abtei, *abbey;* Malerei, *painting;* Freiheit, *freedom;* Seligkeit, *blessedness;* Löwin, *lioness;* Freundſchaft, *friendship;* Warnung, *warning;* Paſſage, *passage;* Partie, *match;* Nation, *nation;* Muſik, *music.*

3. Neuter are diminutives in chen and lein, most nouns in ſal, ſel, nis and tum, and most of those with prefix ge; e. g. Mädchen, *girl;* Fräulein, *young lady;* Labſal, *refreshment;* Rätſel, *riddle;* Wachstum, *growth;* Gebirge, *mountain-range;* Gelübde, *vow;* Geſchick, *fate.*

a. Of nouns in ſal, Drangſal, *oppression*, Mühſal, *trouble*, and Trübſal, *affliction.* are now usually fem.; of those in ſel, Stöpſel, *stopper*, is mas.; of those in tum, Irrtum, *error*, and Reichtum, *riches*, are mas. On nouns in nis see below, § 237, 2.

b. While most nouns with the prefix ge are neu., especially if they have the suffix e, there are some, both with and without the suffix, that are mas. or fem.; e. g. der Geſang, *song;* der Geſpiele, *playmate;* die Gefahr, *danger;* die Gemeinde, *community.*

236. Gender of Compounds. The most important exceptions to the principle that compounds have the gender of their final element are as follows:

1. Several words which seem to be compounded with Mut, m., *mind* are feminine, owing to the fact that the modern mut represents two words of the older language, namely *muot*, m., and *muoti*, f. Hence usually in modern German die Anmut, *agreeableness;* die Demut, *humility;* die (but also der) Großmut, *magnanimity;* die Sanftmut, *gentleness;* die Wehmut, *sadness;* but der Edelmut, *nobility;* der Heldenmut, *heroism*, and others.

a. Armut, f., *poverty*, is not a compound of Mut, but an abstract from arm, *poor* (hence Arm-ut, not Ar-mut).

2. Die Antwort, *answer*, but das Wort, *word;* der Abſcheu, *horror*, but die Scheu, *timidity;* der Mittwoch, *Wednesday*, but die Woche, *week.*

3. Compounds of Teil, m. n., *part*, vary somewhat fixedly in gender. Thus Erbteil, *inheritance*, Gegenteil, *counterpart*, and Hinterteil, *back part*, are generally neuter, while Anteil, *share*, Beſtandteil, *element*, Vorteil, *advantage*, and most others are prevailingly masculine.

a. Urteil, n., *judgment*, is not a compound of Teil, but from erteilen, *adjudge*. Cf. *ordeal*.

4. Compound names of places are neuter regardless of the final element; thus der Berg, *mountain*, and die Burg, *castle;* but Freiberg and Freiburg (names of cities) are both neuter. The statement does not apply to appellative nouns like die Wartburg, *the (castle of) Wartburg*.

236. Gender of Borrowed Words. The general rule is that words borrowed from other languages retain the gender they had at home; thus der Prieſter, *priest*, from Gk.-Lat. *presbyter;* der Titel, *title*, from Lat. *titulus;* die Roſe, from *rosa;* das Kloſter, *convent*, from *claustrum;* das Feſt, *festival*, from *festum*.

1. Very often, however, a foreign word has changed its gender to accord with that of other German words of similar form or meaning; thus der Eſſig, *vinegar*, from Lat. *acetum*, n., because other words in ig are mas.; der Körper, *body*, from *corpus*, n., on account of der Leib; die Lilie, *lily*, from *lilium*, n., because it comes from the plu. *lilia*, and other names of flowers are fem.; die Nummer, *number*, from *numerus*, m., on account of die Zahl; das Kame'l, *camel*, from *camélus*, m., because other specific names of large animals are neuter.

a. In other cases the change of gender is less easy to account for; e. g. das Kreuz, *cross*, from *crux*, f.; die Mauer, *wall*, from *murus*, m.; das Echo, *echo*, from *echo*, f.; der Punkt, *point*, from *punctum*, n.; das Genie, *genius*, from Fr. *le génie*.

b. Words borrowed from the English, which has no grammatical gender left, are given a gender from real or fancied analogies; e. g. das Beefſteak, following das Rindfleiſch; der Strike or Streik, following Streich; die Bill; die or das Farm; der or das Sport.

237. Variable Gender. The cases may be grouped under four heads, as follows:

1. Without variation of meaning or form. The variation of gender is mostly dialectic, or due, in the case of borrowed words, to the following of uncertain analogies. A few examples among scores (the usual gender being given first) are:

Angel, f. m. *fish-hook*
Barome'ter, m. n. *barometer*
Bereich, m. n. *realm*
Butter, f. m. *butter*
Cöliba't, n. m. *celibacy*
Floß, n. m. *raft*
Kamin, m. n. *chimney*
Karneval, m. n. *carnival*
Karzer, m. n. *prison*
Kathe'der, m. n. f. *rostrum*
Meter, m. n. *metre*
Otter, m. f. *otter*
Pult, m. n. *desk*
Sofa, m. n. *sofa*
Teller, m. n. *plate*
Ungeſtüm, m. *i.* n. *violence*
Wams, n. m. *jacket*
Zierat, m. f. *ornament*

a. The South-German puts den Butter upon das Teller, instead of die Butter upon den Teller. Rhenish Prussians say das Regenſchirm, *umbrella*, and die Paſtorat, *parsonage*, instead of the usual der Regenſchirm and das Paſtorat; and so on. Cf. Andresen, p. 37 ff.

2. With variation of meaning. Here two sub-groups are to be distinguished:

a. One and the same word has become differentiated in meaning and associated different meanings with different genders. Noteworthy examples are:

Band, n. *band, bond*, m. *volume*
Buckel, m. *humpback*, f. *knob*
Bund, m. *league*, n. *bundle*
Chor, m. *chorus*, n. m. *choir*
Flur, m. *area*, f. *field*
Gift, n. m. *poison*, f. *dowry*
Gehalt, m. *contents*, n. m. *salary*
Lohn, m. *reward*, n. m. *wages*
Ort, m. *place*, m. n. *village*
Pate, m. *godfather*, f. *godmother*
Schild, m. n. *shield*, n. m. *sign*
Schwulſt, m. *bombast*, f. *swelling*
See, m. *lake*, f. *sea*
Steuer, f. *tax*, n. *rudder*
Teil, m. *part*, n. *share*
Verdienſt, n. *merit*, m. *pay*
Wehr, f. *defense*, n. *weir*

(1.) Here belong nouns in nis, which are apt to be neu. if they denote something concrete, but fem. if they denote a state or an action. Thus a number of them are pretty uniformly fem., as Beſorgnis, *anxiety;* Erlaubnis, *permission;* Verdammnis, *damnation.* Others are both neu. and fem., as das Erkenntnis, *the thing cognized*, die Erkenntnis, *the act of cognizing;* das Erſparnis, *that which is saved*, die Erſpar-

nis, *the act of saving*. So also das and die Ärgernis, *vexation*; Befugnis, *authority*; Bekümmernis, *solicitude*; Wagnis, *venture*, and others.

b. Two different words with different meanings and different genders have come to have the same form. Noteworthy examples are:

Alp, m. *nightmare*, f. *alp*
Bauer, m. *peasant*, n. m. *bird-cage*
Erbe, m. *heir*, n. *inheritance*
Heide, m. *heathen*, f. *heath*
Hut, m. *hat*, f. *guard*
Kiefer, m. *jaw*, f. *pine*
Koller, m. *staggers*, n. *jacket*
Kunde, m. *customer*, f. *knowledge*
Leiter, m. *conductor*, f. *ladder*
Mark, f. *mark*, *march*, n. *marrow*
Marſch, m. *march*, f. *marsh*
Maſt, m. *mast*, f. *fodder*
Meſſer, m. *measurer*, n. *knife*
Moment, m. *moment*, n. *factor*
Ohm, m. *uncle*, n. m. f. *awm*
Reis, m. *rice*, n. *twig*
Schauer, m. *shower*, m. n. *shed*
Stift, m. *peg*, n. *foundation*
Tau, m. *dew*, n. *rope*
Tor, m. *fool*, n. *gate*
Weihe, m. f. *hawk*, f. *consecration*

3. With variation of form but not of meaning, save as one form may be rare, archaic or poetical. Here belong a number of pairs, such as:

Backen, m. and Backe, f. *cheek*
Eck, n. and Ecke, f. *corner*
Karren, m. and Karre, f. *cart*
Pfoſten, m. and Pfoſte, f. *post*
Poſſen, m. and Poſſe, f. *drollery*
Quaſt, m. and Quaſte, f. *tassel*
Quell, m. and Quelle, f. *spring*
Ritz, m. and Ritze, f. *crack*
Scherben, m. and Scherbe, f. *potsherd*
Schlaf, m. and Schläfe, f. *temple*
Schurz, m. and Schürze, f. *apron*
Spalt, m. and Spalte, f. *cleft*
Sparren, m. and Sparre, f. *spar*
Trupp, m. and Truppe, f. *troop*
Zeh, m. and Zehe, f. *toe*

THE NUMBER OF NOUNS

238. Defective Number. In German, as in English, some nouns are used only in the singular, as Glück, *luck*, and others only in the plural, as Leute, *people*.

1. The nouns that lack a plural are mainly abstracts and nouns of material, as Güte, *goodness*; Blei, *lead*; Stroh, *straw*. But many such words form a plural with concrete meaning, just as in English; e. g. Schönheiten, *beauties*; Gläſer, *glasses*.

a. In the older language abstracts formed a plu. much more freely than now — a state of affairs from which several stereotyped phrases have survived to the present time. These old plurals, being no longer felt as regular case-forms, are often written with small initial, but the government rules are not altogether consistent. Examples are: zu Gunſten (gunſten), *in favor of*; von Gottes Gnaden, *by God's grace*; in Ehren halten, *hold in honor*; zu Schulden (ſchulden) kommen laſſen, *incur blame*; von ſtatten gehen, *go off*; zu ſtatten kommen, *be of use*; von Nöten (nöten), *of necessity*. So also several titles; as Euer Gnaden, *Your Grace*; Hochwürden, *Worship*; Herrſchaften, *master, mistress, people of the house* (said by servants).

b. Certain nouns that lack a plu. of regular formation substitute therefor a compound; e. g. Tod, *death*, pl. Todesfälle, lit. *cases of death*; Leben, *life* = *biography*, pl. Lebensgeſchichten; Dank, *thanks*, pl. Dankſagungen; Feuer, *fire*, pl. Feuersbrünſte; Rat, *counsel*, pl. Ratſchläge. Bauten, *buildings*, is the pl. not of Bau, m., but of the little used Baute, f.

2. The nouns that lack the singular are fewer. Further examples are: Eltern, *parents*; Gebrüder, *brothers* (mostly in names of firms); Geſchwiſter, *brother(s)* and *sister(s)*; also several names of diseases, as Blattern, *smallpox*; Maſern, *measles*; Röteln, *German measles*; and of festivals, as Ferien, *vacation*; Oſtern, *Easter*; Pfingſten, *Whitsuntide*; Weihnachten, *Christmas*. The last three take a singular verb. Some nouns have a singular, but are used chiefly in the plural, as Zinſen, *interest*; Einkünfte, *income*; Briefſchaften, *letters*.

a. Leute takes the place of Männer in the plu. of several compounds of Mann, if sex is not thought of; e. g. Kaufmann, *merchant*, Kaufleute, *tradespeople*, but Kaufmänner if men are meant. So Edelleute, *gentry*, but Edelmänner, *noblemen*. Others, as Staatsmann, *statesman*, Biedermann, *honest man*, admit only the plu. in Männer.

b. Several English nouns that are only plu. correspond to German nouns that are sing: e. g. die Schere, *the shears*; die Zange, *the tongs*; die Aſche, *the ashes*; der Grünkohl, *the greens*; die Gelbſucht, *the yellows*, die Phyſik, *physics*, and some other names of sciences in *ics*.

239. Duplicate Forms in the Plural. Several nouns have two forms for the plural. The cases are of three kinds, namely:

1. Alternative forms without difference of gender or meaning; e. g. Faden, *thread*, pl. Faden or Fäden; Bett, *bed*, pl. Betten or Bette. See §§ 274, 1, and 278, 1, *a*.

2. Different forms for different genders. Thus, of words that fall under § 237, 1, if the gender varies between mas. and neu., the plu. will remain the same, but if it varies between mas. and fem. or between neu. and fem., there will be a separate form for the fem.; e. g. die Angel, *fish-hook*, has pl. die Angeln, but der Angel has die Angel. Again, from the words under § 237, 3, the pl. of der Quell is die Quelle (rare), that of die Quelle, die Quellen; der Quaſt, pl. die Quaſte, but die Quaſte, pl. die Quaſten.

3. Different forms associated with different meanings; e. g. from das Band, *ribbon*, *bond*, pl. Bande, *bonds*, but Bänder, *ribbons*. See § 276.

240. The Singular for the Plural. A masculine or neuter noun of measure (denoting weight, height, extent, amount, etc.) usually stands in the singular, or what appears to be the singular, after a numeral; e. g. zwei Pfund Tee, *two pounds of tea;* ſechs Fuß hoch, *six feet high;* dreimal, i. e. drei Mal, *three times;* ein Heer von 20,000 Mann, *an army of 20,000 men.*

a. With the measures of time, Jahr, *year*, Jahrhundert, *century*, Monat, *month*, the pl. is more common, but the sing. not rare. So also with Schritt, *pace*, and Pfennig, *penny;* thus drei Jahre, ſechs Monate, hundert Schritte, fünf Pfennige, are better than drei Jahr, ſechs Monat, etc.

1. Feminine nouns of this kind stand in the plural; thus drei Meilen entfernt, *three miles distant;* zwei Ellen Tuch, *two yards of cloth*. Except, however, Mark, *mark*, and sometimes Hand, *hand*. Thus one says es koſtet drei Mark; das Pferd iſt 16 Hand (or Hände) hoch, *the horse is 16 hands high*.

a. Formerly monosyllabic neuters such as Pfund, Mal, Jahr, Buch, Faß, Maß, and also the mas. Mann, formed a pl. just like the sing.; so that fünf Pfund, zehn Jahr, hundert Mann, are really pl. tho not now felt as such. Other masculines have followed the analogy of these; e. g. Fuß, Schritt, Zoll, Kopf (zwei Kopf Kohl, *two heads of cabbage*), Schuß, Stock.

2. In speaking of the joint activity or concern of several subjects German often uses the singular where English prefers the plural; e. g. alle erhoben die Hand, *all raised their hands;* viele verloren das Leben, *many lost their lives.*

3. English plurals such as *the second and third days, the fourth and fifth verses,* should be given in German by the singular; der zweite und der dritte Tag; der vierte und der fünfte Vers.

SYNTAX OF THE CASES

THE NOMINATIVE

241. The Nominative as Subject. The grammatical subject of a sentence is put in the nominative; e. g. der Mann hat recht, *the man is right.*

a. For the omission of the subject see § 302; for the subject anticipated by es, § 303, 3; for the nom. and other cases in apposition, § 270.

242. The Predicate Nominative. The nominative is used in the predicate after certain intransitive and passive verbs; e. g. das ist der rechte Mann, *that is the right man;* es werde Licht, *let there be light;* ich heiße Doktor, *I am called doctor;* das Kind wurde Karl getauft, *the child was christened Karl.*

1. The verbs that take a predicate nominative (without als) are sein, bleiben, heißen, werden, and passive verbs of calling, such as nennen, rufen, schelten, schimpfen, taufen.

a. A few others, as dünken, glänzen, erscheinen, scheinen, sometimes take this construction; e. g. ihr Hut, der ihm eine Krone schien (Richter), *her hat which seemed to him a crown;* nicht ein Kind bin ich erschienen (G.), *not (as) a child have I come forth;* glänze (sc. die Poesie) der schönste Stern (G.), *let it shine (as) the fairest star.* But in these cases one would ordinarily say: wie eine Krone, als Kind, als schönster Stern.

b. After werden, in the sense of *be changed into,* one often meets a dat. with zu instead of a predicate nom.; e. g. da werden Weiber zu Hyänen (S.), *then women become hyenas;* Glück und Unglück wird zur

Grille (G.), *become a whim*. With verbs of making, choosing, electing, appointing etc. this is the regular construction; e.g. er wurde zum Präſidenten erwählt, *he was elected president*. Cf. § 265, 2, *a*.

c. For the exceptional predicate nom. after an infinitive depending on laſſen, as in laß mich dein Freund ſein, *let me be thy friend*, see § 366, 1, *c*.

2. A much greater number of verbs may be followed by a predicate nominative with als denoting the character, capacity, form, or with wie denoting the manner, in which the subject acts, appears, or is acted upon; e.g. er ſtarb als Chriſt (G.), *he died a Christian;* er ſtarb wie ein Chriſt = *he died like a Christian.*

a. This construction with als or wie may be classed under the head of appositional predicate. See § 271.

243. The Nominative in Address and Exclamations. The nominative is the case of direct address, and usually of exclamations; e. g. ihr ſchwebt, ihr Geiſter, neben mir (G.), *ye are hovering near me, ye spirits;* welch Schauſpiel! aber ach! ein Schauſpiel nur (G.)! *what a spectacle! but, alas, only a spectacle!*

244. The Nominative Absolute, so common in English, is in German a rare construction, occurring only with one or two participles; e.g. wir alle freuen uns, ausgenommen du (Gr.), *we are all glad, you excepted;* es ſind unſer fünf, unberechnet der Vorſitzende, *there are five of us, the chairman not counted.*

1. The usual case absolute is the acc. (§ 267). Thus, in the last two examples the more idiomatic construction is: wir alle freuen uns, dich ausgenommen; es ſind unſer fünf, den Vorſitzenden unberechnet.

THE GENITIVE

245. The genitive limits or complements the meaning of, and so is said to depend upon, nouns, adjectives, pronouns, verbs and prepositions. It is also used with an interjection in exclamations.

246. The Adnominal Genitive, translatable usually by the possessive or the objective with *of*, denotes a great variety of relations, of which the more important are indicated below. We have:

1. The partitive genitive, denoting a whole of which the noun limited forms a part; e. g. ein Teil des Chors (G.), *a part of the chorus;* meine Hälfte deines Grams (S.), *my half of thy sorrow;* Tonnen Goldes (S.), *tons of gold;* dies Glas des echten Weines (G.), *this glass of the genuine wine.*

a. But after nouns of number, weight, measure, kind, the older partitive genitive has for the most part given way to simple apposition; thus one no longer says drei Pfund Goldes, *three pounds of gold*, but drei Pfund Gold; not ein Glas Weines, for *a glass of wine*, but ein Glas Wein; not, with Lessing, eine neue Art Zanks, *a new kind of quarrel*, but eine neue Art Zank. If the word limited has an inflected modifier, either the genitive or the appositional construction is proper; e. g. eine Menge fröhlicher (or fröhliche) Kinder, *a crowd of happy children;* ein Glas kalten Wassers, or kaltes Wasser, *a glass of cold water.* See § 272, 1.

b. For the partitive gen. with adjectives and pronouns see § 253; with verbs, § 250.

2. The objective genitive, with verbal nouns, denoting the object of the action; e. g. die Teilung der Erde, *the partition of the earth;* die Erhebung des Menschengeschlechts, *the elevation of the human race.*

a. A genitive limiting a verbal noun and denoting the subject of the action is called, by way of contrast, 'subjective'; e. g. das Wehen des Windes, *the blowing of the wind;* die Erhebung Europas gegen Napoleon, *the rise of Europe against Napoleon.* Both a subjective and an objective gen. may depend on the same noun; e. g. Bismarcks Lösung des Problems, *Bismarck's solution of the problem.*

b. As in English, the objective gen. follows its noun; thus Gottes Liebe can only mean *God's love*, while die Liebe Gottes may mean either (man's) *love of God* or *God's love* (of man). For the objective gen. one can often substitute a preposition with its case; e. g. die Furcht vor

dem Tode, *the fear of death;* die Liebe zu Gott. This substitution should always be made when necessary to avoid ambiguity.

3. The genitive of characteristic; e. g. der Jüngling edlen Gefühles (G.), *the youth of noble feeling;* dies Haus des Glanzes, *this house of splendor.*

a. In the predicate this gen. often stands alone, the noun upon which it would depend being omitted; e. g. er iſt niedriger Abkunft, *he is of low origin;* ich bin guter Dinge, *I am in good spirits;* das Wort iſt ſächlichen Geſchlechts, *the word is of the neuter gender.*

4. The genitive of specification, telling wherein the noun consists, or limiting its generality by means of a more definite term; e. g. das Recht der freien Forſchung, *the right of free investigation;* der Schnee des Alters, *the snows of old age;* des Haſſes Kraft, die Macht der Liebe (G.), *the force of hate, the power of love.* So also with substantive adjectives; e. g. der Beiname des Großen, *the sobriquet (of) the great;* das Prädikat des Schönen, *the predicate (of) the beautiful.*

a. This genitive is also called 'appositional.' Proper names do not take this construction, but stand in apposition; e. g. die Stadt Paris, *the city of Paris;* das Königreich Sachſen, *the kingdom of Saxony;* der Monat März, *the month of March.*

5. The possessive genitive, denoting the owner, author, proprietor; e. g. das Haus meines Vaters, *my father's house;* Schillers Tell, *Schiller's Tell* · des Landvogts Reiter, *the governor's troopers.*

a. The noun limited is sometimes to be supplied from the context; e. g. doch beſſer iſt's, ihr fallt in Gottes Hand als in der Menſchen (S.), *but it is better that you fall into the hand of God than into (that) of men.* Or it may be represented by a demonstrative; e. g. ſeine Ideale ſind immer noch die unſeres Volkes, *his ideals are still those of our people.*

b. By the omission of a noun meaning *property*, or the like, the possessive genitive often comes to stand alone in the predicate; e. g. gebt dem Kaiſer, was des Kaiſers iſt, *give to the emperor what is the emperor's;* der Bube war des Vogts (S.), *the boy was the governor's;* du biſt des Todes, *you are a dead man;* biſt du des Teufels? *are you crazy?*

c. In familiar language this gen. is often replaced by a possessive in agreement with the governing noun; e. g. in dem Wolf ſeinem Leib (Gr.), *in the wolf's body;* auf der Fortuna (dat.) ihrem Schiff (S.), *on Fortune's ship.* So also a possessive may stand pleonastically after the gen.; e. g. nimm meinen Ring und gib mir des Majors ſeinen dafür (L.), *take my ring and give me the Major's for it.*

d. Note also the colloquial ellipsis in ich war heute bei Müllers, *I was at (the) Müllers' to-day,* i. e. *at his (their) house.*

6. The genitive of connection — a general term which, as here used, is meant to include the ideas of cause, origin, relationship, appurtenance, and any others that do not fall clearly under one of the preceding heads; e. g. das Licht der Sonne, *the light of the sun;* der Ruhm der Deutſchen, *the glory of the Germans;* der Gipfel des Berges, *the top of the mountain;* der Sohn des Königs, *the son of the king.*

247. The Dative with von as a Substitute for the Genitive. For the genitive in most of the uses described in the last section it is possible to substitute von with the dative. The construction with von belongs more to familiar language and is gaining upon the more elegant genitive. Thus in the following cases, all from good writers, the genitive would be better: Die Urſachen von dieſem Mangel (Herder), *the causes of this lack;* Herr von ſeinen Handlungen (Gr.), *master of his actions;* die Macht von Rom (Ranke), *the power of Rome;* die eine Seite vom Haus (Gr.), *one side of the house.* But in some cases the construction with von is to be preferred, namely:

1. In certain expressions of rank and title; e. g. der König von Sachſen, *the King of Saxony;* die Jungfrau von Orleans, *the Maid of Orleans;* but Doktor der Philoſophie, *doctor of philosophy.*

2. When the case, if it were genitive, would not be clear; e. g. die Bevölkerung von Paris, *the population of Paris;* die Anſprüche von Menſchen, die nichts beſitzen, *the claims of people who own nothing.*

3. To avoid a genitive depending upon a genitive; e. g. der Erbe von ſeines Vaters mutigem Geiſte, *the inheritor of his father's courageous spirit* (instead of der Erbe des mutigen Geiſtes ſeines Vaters); der Sohn von einem Vetter des großen Dichters, *the son of a cousin of the great poet;* einer von des Prinzen Räten (L.), *one of the prince's counsellors.*

4. When the limiting genitive, if it were used, would be separated from its noun; e. g. von unſrer Partei war kein Freund gegenwärtig, *there was no friend of our party present.*

5. To denote material or characteristic; e. g. das Mäntelchen von ſtarrer Seide (G.), *the cape of stiff silk;* ein Mann von feſtem Charakter, *a man of solid character.*

248. The Genitive as Sole Object of Verbs. A number of verbs take, or may take, a genitive as sole object; e. g. gedenke des Sabbattages, *remember the sabbath day;* ſchone meiner, *spare me;* ich bedarf Ihres Beiſtandes, *I need your assistance.*

1. This construction is on the wane. It is found in the classics, and may still occur, in stately writing, after a pretty large number of verbs. But the most of them admit, or even prefer, besides the genitive, some other construction. Such are (the alternative being put in brackets):

achten, *heed* [auf, acc.]
bedürfen, *need* [acc.]
begehren, *desire* [acc.]
brauchen, *need* [acc.]
danken, *thank* [acc.]
denken, *think* [an, acc.]
entbehren, *lack* [acc.]
entraten, *lack* [acc.]
ermangeln, *lack* [acc.]
erwähnen, *mention* [acc.]
frohlocken, *exult* [über, acc.]
gebrauchen, *use* [acc.]
gedenken, *think*
geneſen, *give birth to*
genießen, *enjoy* [acc.]
gewahren, *perceive* [acc.]
harren, *wait* [auf, acc.]
hüten, *guard* [acc.]
lachen, *laugh* [über, acc.]
mangeln, *lack* [acc.]
pflegen, *attend to* [acc.]
ſchonen, *spare* [acc.]
ſpotten, *mock* [über, acc.]
ſterben, *die* [an, dat.]
(ver)fehlen, *miss* [acc.]
vergeſſen, *forget* [acc.]

verlangen, *desire* [nach, dat.]
wahren, *guard* [acc.]
wahrnehmen, *perceive* [acc.]
walten, *rule* [über, acc.]
warten, *wait* [auf, acc.]

a. Sometimes difference of meaning is associated with difference of construction. Thus lachen and ſpotten are apt to take the gen. when used figuratively in the sense *make light of*; e. g. ich lachte über den Spaß, *laughed at the joke*, but lachte ſeiner Drohungen, *made light of his threats*. Cf. further ſeines Amtes warten, *attend to one's business*, but auf den Zug warten, *wait for the train*; der Ruhe pflegen, *take rest*, but einen Kranken pflegen, *nurse a sick person*.

b. The gen. as sole object is for the most part a gen. of cause, denoting that which occasions the activity or state denoted by the verb; hence Hungers ſterben, *die of hunger*, and eines böſen Todes ſterben, *die an evil death*. Some cases which might seem to come under this head are partitive genitives; e. g. ſich Rats erholen, *get advice* (§ 250); others are adverbial; e. g. des Glaubens leben, *live in the faith* (§ 251). Difficult to classify is Verſteckens ſpielen, *play hide and seek*.

249. The Genitive as Secondary Object occurs with numerous verbs in connection with an accusative; e. g. ich freue mich deines Heils, *I rejoice in thy salvation*; welch andrer Sünde klagt das Herz dich an (S.)? *of what other sin does thy heart accuse thee?* The verbs are:

1. Verbs of 'judicial action' and their kind, the genitive denoting that of which some one is accused, convicted, admonished, deemed worthy, etc. Such are:

anklagen, *accuse*
belehren, *inform*
beſcheiden, *inform*
beſchuldigen, *accuse*
bezichtigen, *accuse*
freiſprechen, *acquit*
losſprechen, *acquit*
mahnen, *admonish*
überführen, *convict*
überheben, *exempt*
überweiſen, *convict*
überzeugen, *convince*
verklagen, *accuse*
(ver)lohnen, *reward*
verſichern, *assure*
vergewiſſern, *assure*
würdigen, *deem worthy*
zeihen, *accuse*

a. Belehren occurs in such locutions as man hat mich eines andern belehrt, *I am otherwise advised*. Beſcheiden in the same sense is now quaint. Überzeugen, verſichern and verbs of acquitting may take the dat. with von instead of the gen. Verſichern admits also a dat. of the person and an acc. of the thing: ich verſichre dir meine Teilnahme, *I assure you of my sympathy*, instead of ich verſichre dich meiner Teilnahme. Mahnen usually takes an with acc.

2. Several verbs of separation or deprivation, the genitive denoting that of which some one is deprived. Such are:

berauben, *rob*	entladen, *relieve*	entſetzen, *dispossess*
entbinden, *release*	entlaſſen, *dismiss*	entwöhnen, *wean*
entblößen, *deprive*	entlaſten, *relieve*	verjagen, *drive out*
entheben, *relieve*	entledigen, *exempt*	verweiſen, *banish*
entkleiden, *divest*		

a. Entbinden, -blößen, -heben, -laſſen, may take a dat. with von. Entlaſſen admits three constructions: thus *to dismiss one from service* is einen ſeines Dienſtes, or vom Dienſte, or aus dem Dienſte entlaſſen. Other compounds of ent take a dat. of the person, and an acc. of the thing. See § 258, 2.

3. A multitude of reflexive verbs with meanings too various to classify. Such are:

ſich abtun, *renounce*	ſich erfrechen, *dare to do*
anmaßen, *claim*	(er)freuen, *enjoy*
annehmen, *take charge*	erinnern, *remember*
bedienen, *make use*	erkühnen, *dare to do*
befleiß(ig)en, *attend to*	erwehren, *keep from*
begeben, *renounce*	getröſten, *expect*
bemächtigen, *get possession*	rühmen, *boast*
bemeiſtern, *get control*	ſchämen, *be ashamed*
beſcheiden, *acquiesce in*	überheben, *boast*
beſinnen, *bethink one's self*	unterfangen, unterwinden, } *dare to, undertake*
entäußern, *renounce*	
enthalten, *refrain from*	vermeſſen, *dare to do*
entledigen, *acquit one's self*	vermuten, *expect*
entſchlagen, *get rid*	verſehen, *expect*
entſinnen, *recollect*	(ver)tröſten, *acquiesce in*
erbarmen, *pity*	verwegen, *dare to do*
erdreiſten, *dare to do*	weigern, *refuse*

a. Some of these verbs admit other constructions; e. g. ſich (er)-freuen, rühmen, ſchämen, the acc. with über; ſich anmaßen, the dat. of the reflexive and the acc. of the thing. Erinnern, with acc., for ſich erinnern, with gen., is a North-German provincialism.

4. Certain impersonal verbs of feeling, the genitive giving the cause of the emotion; e. g. mich jammert ſeiner Not, *I pity his distress.* Such are, letting mich represent the variable personal object:

es dauert mich, *I pity* — es gelüſtet mich, *I desire*
es ekelt mich, *I am disgusted* — es jammert mich, *I pity*
es erbarmt mich, *I pity* — es reut mich, *I regret*
es verdrießt mich, *I am annoyed*

a. With the most of these verbs the gen. is becoming quaint, and über with the acc. or wegen with the gen. (with gelüſtet, nach) and the dat.) is preferred. Note finally es (ver)lohnt ſich der Mühe, *it is worth the trouble.*

250. The Partitive Genitive with Verbs. At an earlier period several verbs might take a genitive to denote that the object was affected only in part; e. g. des Brotes, or Brots, eſſen, *to eat bread, manger du pain*, where one would now say Brot or vom Brote or etwas Brot eſſen; er gibt ſeines Brots den Armen (Lu.), *he giveth of his bread to the poor.*

1. But this construction is now obsolete or quaint, except perhaps after genießen (cf. § 248). Where it occurs in the classics it is usually held to be a Grecism or Gallicism; e. g. brachte die Mutter des herrlichen Weines (G.), *brought (some) of the noble wine;* es ſchenkte der Böhme des perlenden Weins (S.), *poured out (some) of the sparkling wine.*

a. But a few isolated phrases survive in common use; e. g. ſich Rats erholen, *get advice.*

251. The Adverbial Genitive. The genitive is used with verbs to denote various adverbial relations:

1. Place; e. g. jetzt gehe jeder ſeines Weges (S.), *now let each go his way;* das preiſen die Schüler allerorten (G.), *the students praise that everywhere.*

a. The adverbial gen. of place is no longer common, except in the phrase allerorten (allerorts). Where it occurs in the classics after gehen, kommen, ziehen, and other verbs of motion, present usage prefers the acc. (§ 266). Goethe sometimes forces German idiom a little in his use of this construction; e. g. das iſt des Landes nicht der Brauch, *that is not the custom in these parts* (*Faust*, l. 2949, des Landes being = hier zu Lande); glänzen droben klarer (= in der klaren) Nacht, *shine up there in the clear night* (ibid. l. 4647).

2. Time; e. g. die Räte verſammelten ſich des Mittags (G.), *the councillors assembled at noon;* Tages Arbeit, Abends Gäſte (G.), *work by day, guests at night.*

a. This use of the gen. is very common in certain set phrases; e. g. eines Tages, *one day;* eines Abends, *one evening;* vormittags, *forenoons;* abends, *evenings;* nachts, *at night;* neuerdings (i. e. neuer Dinge, with adverbial s), *recently;* von alters her, *from of old;* vor alters, *anciently.* On the acc. of time, as compared with the gen., see § 266, 2, *a.*

3. Manner and degree; e. g. nach Uri fahr' ich ſtehenden Fußes (S.), *I will go to Uri without delay;* meines Wiſſens iſt es das erſte Mal, *so far as I know, it is the first time.*

a. Here the phrases are still more numerous; e. g. feineswegs, *by no means;* glücklicherweiſe, *happily,* and others in =weiſe; gewiſſermaßen, *in a certain sense,* and others in =maßen (gen. of Maß); allerdings, *to be sure;* unverrichteter Sache, *in vain, with errand unaccomplished;* meinerſeits *on my part;* meines Erachtens, *in my opinion;* dergeſtalt, *in such a way;* des weiteren, *in detail.*

252. The Complementary Genitive with Adjectives. Certain adjectives may take a genitive to complement their meaning; e. g. des Gefühls nicht mächtig ſtand ich da (S.), *I stood there not able to control my feelings;* daß ſie des Dranges müd' ſind (S.), *that they are tired of oppression.*

1. The adjectives that take the genitive express for the most part the ideas of power, possession, knowledge, capacity, abundance and their opposites. Such are (including their compounds with un):

anſichtig, *in sight*	fähig, *capable*	inne, *percipient*
bar, *bare*	frei, *free*	kundig, *acquainted*
bedürftig, *in need*	froh, *glad*	ledig, *free*
benötigt, *in need*	gedenk, *mindful*	leer, *empty*
bewußt, *conscious*	gewahr, *aware*	los; *free*
bloß, *bare*	gewärtig, *expectant*	mächtig, *able to control*
einig, *agreed*	gewiß, *certain*	müde, *tired*
eingedenk, *mindful*	gewohnt, *used*	quitt, *done*
erfahren, *experienced*	habhaft, *in possession*	ſatt, *sated*

ſchuldig, *guilty*	verdächtig, *suspicious*	voll, *full*
ſicher, *certain*	verluſtig, *lacking*	wert, *worth*
teilhaft, *partaking*	vermutend, *expectant*	würdig, *worthy*
überdrüſſig, *weary*	verſichert, *assured*	

a. Several of these adjectives, when used predicatively, may take an acc. instead of a gen.; namely, anſichtig, gewahr, gewohnt, habhaft, inne, los, ſatt, vermutend, wert; e. g. als mich die Fee anſichtig wurde (Platen), *when the fairy noticed (became observant of) me;* den Böſen ſind ſie los (G.), *they are rid of the Evil One;* das war die Mühe nicht wert (G.), *not worth the trouble.* — This construction originated thus: The old gen. es in ich bin es los, *I am rid of it*, and similar locutions, came to be felt as an acc., and this led to the use of a real acc. in place of es; i. e. the misunderstood ich bin es los drew after it ich bin das Ding los.

b. Frei, leer, and los may be followed by von, and fähig by zu. Würdig and unwürdig occur sometimes with a dat.; e. g. nichts iſt einem Mann unwürdiger (L.), *more unworthy of a man.*

c. Adverbs that govern the gen. will be treated as prepositions. See § 376.

253. The Partitive Genitive with Adjectives, Pronouns and Adverbs. A genitive of the whole may occur after numerals, after certain pronouns and pronominal adjectives, and after adjectives in the comparative and superlative; e. g. fünf unſres Ordens, *five of our order;* aller guten Dinge ſind drei, *of all good things there are three;* unſer einer, *one of us;* der wackern Männer viele (S.), *many brave men;* der ſchrecklichſte der Schrecken (S.), *the most terrible of terrors.*

1. After a numeral the partitive genitive is no longer common except when the numeral agrees with a noun understood. Thus for neun ganzer Jahre (L.), *nine whole years*, one would now say neun ganze Jahre. But neun unſrer Geſellſchaft, *nine of our company*, or zwanzig der beſten, *twenty of the best*, is good usage, tho the dative with von or unter also occurs.

2. The pronouns and pronominals which admit a partitive genitive are wer, welch, was, all, ander-, beid-, ein, einig-,

etlich-, etwas, genug, jed-, kein, manch, mehrer-, nichts, viel and wenig. But the most of these admit also von or unter with the dative, and this is the preferred construction with jemand and niemand.

a. The old partitive genitive of an adjective after nichts (cf. § 320, 2), etwas, and other indeclinables, ceased long ago to be felt as a genitive, and is now treated as an appositive; e. g. zu was Beſſerm ſind wir geboren (S.), *we are born for something better.* Goethe's zu was Neuen (for Neuem, *Faust*, l. 3254) is for the rime's sake.

b. So also in such expressions as was Wunders, *what (of) wonder*, was Teufels, *what the deuce*, etc., the genitive, ceasing to be felt as such, dropped its case-ending and became an appositive; hence was Wunder, was Teufel, was Henker, was Raub (*Faust*, l. 6549).

c. The form anders, *else*, remains unchanged after wer, jemand, niemand; e. g. wer anders, *who else;* mit niemand anders (not anderm).

3. A partitive genitive may occur after certain adverbs of place; e. g. wohin des Weges, *whither away;* woher des Landes, *from what part of the country;* wo anders or anderswo, *elsewhere;* nirgend anders, *nowhere else.*

4. Quite anomalous is Goethe's use of a partitive gen. with häufig in *Faust*, l. 3098: Ihr habt der Freunde häufig, *you have friends in abundance.*

254. The Genitive with Prepositions. A large number of prepositions and prepositional adverbs govern the genitive. For a list with illustrations, see §§ 376–7.

255. The Genitive in Exclamations. After an interjection the genitive is sometimes used to denote the occasion of the feeling; e. g. o der unglückſeligen Stunde! *oh, the unhappy hour!* pfui des Böſewichts! *out upon the villain!*

1. This construction is distinctly literary, and is becoming rare even in poetry. Common language prefers the nom., or else a prepositional phrase; e. g. mit eurem Golde (S.), *out upon your gold!* pfui über dich! *fie upon you!*

THE DATIVE

256. The dative depends upon verbs, adjectives and prepositions, rarely upon nouns and interjections. Its name, from the Latin *casus dativus*, implies that it is the case of *giving*, i. e. of the indirect object. But it has other functions also.

257. The Dative with Verbs: Sole Object. A large number of intransitive verbs take a single object, or complement of their meaning, in the dative; e. g. ich danke dir, *I thank thee;* den Göttern gleich' ich nicht (G.), *I am not like the gods;* mir wird nachgeſetzt (S.), *I am followed.*

1. The verbs that take the dative as sole object express such ideas as motion or effort toward and away from; disappearance, lack; appurtenance, fitness, suitability; pleasure and displeasure; friendly, gracious, or submissive action, and the reverse; resemblance and correspondence. Some have English equivalents that need no preposition and may seem to be transitive; others require in English a preposition, usually *to*. Such are:

ähneln, *resemble*
antworten, *answer*
begegnen, *meet*
behagen, *please*
bekommen, *befit*
danken, *thank*
dienen, *serve*
drohen, *threaten*
dünken, *seem*
erliegen, *succumb*
(er)ſcheinen, *appear*
fehlen, *fail*
fluchen, *curse*
folgen, *follow*
frommen, *benefit*
gebühren, *befit*
gefallen, *please*
gehören, *belong*
gehorchen, *obey*
genügen, *suffice*
geſchehen, *happen*
(ge)ziemen, *become*
glauben, *believe*
gleichen, *resemble*
grollen, *be angry*
helfen, *help*
huldigen, *pay homage*
mangeln, *be lacking*
nahen, *approach*
nützen, *benefit*
paſſen, *fit*
ſchaden, *injure*
ſchmeicheln, *flatter*
trotzen, *defy*
(ver)trauen, *trust*
weichen, *yield*
wehren, *defend*
zürnen, *be angry*

a. Antworten takes a dat. of the person only: what one answers stands in the acc., that to which one answers in the acc. with auf; e. g. antworte mir, *answer me;* antworte auf meine Frage, *answer my*

question; er antwortete mir keine Silbe, *he answered me not a syllable* — Begegnen occurs in the classics with the acc. — Danken = verdanken may have an acc. of the thing; e. g. ich (ver)danke ihm mein Glück, *I owe to him my happiness.* — Glauben takes the dat. of the person in the sense of *believe*, the acc. with an in that of *believe in* (but in *Faust*, l. 3434, ich glaube ihn = *I believe in him*). — Mangeln now usually has a dat. of the person, the thing needed being in the nom. or dat. with an; e. g. mir mangelt Geld, or es mangelt mir an Geld, instead of ich mangle des Geldes (§ 248, 1).

2. A still larger number of verbs, with meanings similar to those mentioned above, take the dative in virtue of their composition with one of the prefixes an, auf, aus, bei, ein, ent, entgegen, miß, nach, unter, ver, vor, voran, voraus, wider, zu, zuvor. Examples are: abgehen, *be lacking;* angehören, *belong;* auffallen, *surprise;* ausweichen, *evade;* beipflichten, *support;* einfallen, *occur;* entgehen, *escape;* entgegeneilen, *hasten toward;* mißfallen, *displease;* nachstehen, *be inferior;* unterliegen, *succumb;* verschwinden, *vanish;* vorbeugen, *prevent;* voran- and vorausgehen, *precede;* widerstehen, *repel;* zueilen, *hasten to;* zuvorkommen, *anticipate.*

a. Verbal phrases with similar meanings may also take the dat.; e. g. einem zu Hilfe kommen, *come to the aid of one*; einem zur Ehre gereichen, *redound to one's credit.* Cf. § 259, 2.

258. The Dative with Verbs: Secondary Object. Many transitive verbs take a secondary object in the dative, the primary object being usually a noun or pronoun in the accusative, but often an infinitive or a clause; e. g. gebt mir den Helm (S.), *give me the helmet;* ich werde jetzt dich keinem Nachbar reichen (G.), *I shall hand thee now to no neighbor;* Furcht gebietet ihm zu schweigen, *fear bids him be silent;* nun sag' mir eins, man soll kein Wunder glauben (G.), *now let some one tell me that we are not to believe in miracles.* What is here called the secondary object may be:

1. A true indirect object, translatable by the objective with *to*, and occurring chiefly with verbs of giving, com-

municating, showing, proving, and the like (see examples above).

a. Sagen, *say*, is apt to take the dat. with zu when followed by a literal quotation in the direct form; e.g. er ſagte mir, ich ſei verrückt, *told me I was crazy;* but er ſagte zu mir: du biſt verrückt. — Schreiben, *write*, takes the dat., or the acc. with an. — Some verbs of this class, e.g. beweiſen, *show*, and erwähnen, *mention*, admit the acc. with gegen instead of the dat.

b. Some of the verbs given in § 257, 1, may take a direct object in the form of an acc. or a clause; e.g. ich danke dir, daß —, *I thank thee that —;* antworte mir das, *answer me that;* das glaube ich dir nicht, *I do not believe you (when you say) that.*

2. A privative object, denoting that *from* which something is separated, and translatable by the objective with *from;* e.g. der Ring, den er dem Zwerg genommen (W.), *the ring which he had taken from the dwarf;* dieſen Troſt ſoll mir niemand rauben, *no one shall rob me of this comfort.*

a. This dat. occurs after verbs of taking, stealing, withholding, alienating, etc. (many being compounds of ent or weg), some of which, however, may take von instead. It represents an extinct ablative.

3. The beneficiary object, denoting that *for* which something is done; e.g. was kaufſt du deiner Frau zu Weihnachten (Gr.)? *what shall you buy your wife for Christmas?*

a. This construction is comparatively rare with transitive verbs, the acc. with für being preferred. Still it is closely akin to the dat. of interest, which is very common.

4. An object due to the composition of the verb with one of the prefixes mentioned in § 257, 2. It has to be translated in various ways; e.g. ich ſehe dem Dinge kein Ende ab, *I see no end to (of) the thing;* man ſieht dir's an den Augen an (G.), *one can see it by your eyes;* der Wind trieb uns den Staub entgegen, *drove the dust in our faces;* etwas einem Briefe beilegen, *to enclose something in a letter.*

a. With several of these compounds the dat. object is a reflexive pronoun; e.g. ich maße mir das Recht an, *I claim (arrogate to myself) the right;* ich bitte mir das aus, *I make that a condition;* ſich etwas einbilden, *imagine something;* ſich etwas zutrauen, *trust one's self for something.*

259. The Dative of Interest. The dative is freely used to denote the person (less often the thing) concerned in a statement.

a. The translation has to vary greatly; e. g. wie geht es Ihnen? *how goes it with you?* mir ist es einerlei, *it is all the same to me;* dem Vater grauset's (G.), *the father shudders.* In connection with a noun that has the definite article it often has the force of a possessive; e. g. es geht mir ans Herz, *it goes to my heart;* das gereicht ihm zur Ehre, *that redounds to his credit.* It occurs:

1. With transitive verbs as the case of the beneficiary object (see above, § 258, 3). Here belong numerous verbal phrases containing a transitive verb; e. g. das tat er mir zuliebe, *he did that for my sake;* schreib' es dir hinters Ohr, *make a note of it;* diesen muß ich was zum besten geben (G.), *I must do something for these fellows;* ich mache es mir zur Aufgabe, *I make it my task.*

a. Where a personal object is accompanied by a phrase specifying a part of the object there is sometimes a choice between the dat. and the acc.; e. g. er trat mir (or mich) auf den Fuß, *he stepped upon my foot.*

2. With intransitive verbs; e. g. sein Herz schlug der ganzen Menschheit (S.), *his heart beat for all mankind;* wie nur dem Kopf nicht alle Hoffnung schwindet (G.), *how only for that head does all hope not vanish.*

a. Here belong a multitude of impersonal phrases with sein, werden, bleiben, geschehen, gehen, and others; e. g. es ist mir recht, *it suits me;* mir wird so licht (G.), *it grows so clear to me;* es geschieht dir recht, *it serves you right;* es schmeckt mir gut, *it tastes good to me;* es tut mir leid, *I am sorry;* es liegt mir viel daran, *it is of great concern to me.*

b. Add to these the strictly impersonal verbs: es ahnt mir, *I forbode;* es beliebt mir, *I choose;* es ekelt mir, *I am disgusted;* es gebricht mir, *I lack;* es graut mir, *I abhor;* es grauset mir, *I shudder;* es schaudert mir, *I shudder;* es schwindelt mir, *I am giddy;* es träumt mir, *I dream.*

3. With passive verbs (including geſchehen), and sometimes after werden in the sense of zu teil werden; e. g. da wird der Geiſt euch wohl dreſſiert (G.), *there your mind will be well trained*; da ward der Tapferkeit ihr Lohn (G.), *then bravery got its reward;* ein Unrecht iſt mir geſchehen, *a wrong has been done me.*

4. As 'ethical' dative — a personal pronoun interjected loosely in the sentence to indicate indirect interest or sympathetic concern on the part of the speaker or listener; e. g. 'nen Apfel ſchießt der Vater dir vom Baum (S.), *father can shoot an apple from the tree for you;* er hat euch herzlich dran gedacht (G.), *he thought of it earnestly, you'll be glad to hear;* geht mir, nichts weiter davon (G.)! *go, I say, no more of that!*

260. The Dative with Adjectives. A large number of adjectives govern the dative, the most of them occurring chiefly in the predicate; e. g. ich bin ſonſt allen Menſchen gut (G.), *I am kindly disposed to all other men;* die Höflichkeit iſt euch geläufig (G.), *politeness is natural to you;* er iſt dir neidiſch (S.), *he is envious of you.*

1. The adjectives that govern the dat. have meanings similar to those given for verbs in § 257, 1. The list includes, first, participial adjectives from verbs that govern the dat., as entſprechend, *corresponding;* paſſend, *fitting;* angemeſſen, *adapted;* secondly, a large number of words in bar, lich and ig. These suffixes either form passive verbals (the dat. denoting the object for which the action is feasible), as denkbar, *thinkable*, or else they mean *replete with, having the character of*, and the dat. denotes the object toward which the quality is manifested; e. g. dankbar, *grateful;* freundlich, *friendly;* günſtig, *favorable.*

2. Of adjectives not included under the foregoing heads the following are the most common:

abhold, *unfriendly*	eigen(tümlich), *peculiar*	gleich, *like*
ähnlich, *similar*	feind(lich), *hostile*	gut, *kindly disposed*
(an)gehörig, *belonging*	fremd, *strange*	heilſam, *wholesome*
angenehm, *pleasant*	folgſam, *obedient*	hold, *gracious*
bekannt, *known*	gehorſam, *obedient*	leicht, *easy*
benachbart, *neighboring*	gelegen, *opportune*	lieb, *dear*
bequem, *comfortable*	gemein(ſam), *common*	nahe, *near*

neidiſch, *envious* | treu, *true* | willkommen, *welcome*
ſchwer, *difficult* | vorteilhaft, *helpful* | wünſchenswert, *desirable.*
teuer, *dear* | wert, *dear*

a. To these add negative compounds with un, as unangenehm, untreu; also a number of specialized perfect participles, from verbs which may not elsewhere govern the dative; as angeboren, *innate;* beſchieden, *destined;* ergeben, *devoted;* erwünſcht, *wished for;* gelegen, *opportune;* geneigt, *inclined;* gewachſen, *equal;* gewogen, *well disposed;* überlegen, *superior;* unverhofft, *unhoped for;* verbunden, *obliged;* verhaßt, *hateful;* verwandt, *akin.* Besides abhold there are also several other compounds of ab, in which the prefix denotes *aloofness;* e. g. abbrüchig, abtrünnig, *recreant.*

b. A few other adjectives take the dat. when used in the predicate or adverbially in impersonal phrases; e. g. es iſt mir angſt, *I am anxious;* es macht mir bange, *it makes me anxious;* es iſt mir recht, *it suits me;* es tut mir leid, *I am sorry.*

c. With many of the above named adjectives a prepositional construction is admissible; thus für with the acc. after the passive verbals (es iſt für mich denkbar, instead of es iſt mir denkbar), and also after angenehm, heilſam, gut, paſſend, vorteilhaft, and others; gegen with acc. after freundlich, feindlich, gehorſam, treu, and von with dat. after compounds of ab and ent.

261. The Dative with Nouns is rare, but occurs now and then in the classics; e. g. ein Muſter Bürgern und Bauern (G.), *a model for citizens and farmers;* Gewißheit einem neuen Bunde (G.), *certainty to a new covenant.*

1. When it seems to occur in expressions of wishing it is really dependent on a suppressed verb; e. g. Gott ſei Dank, *thanks be (given) to God;* Heil der Jungfrau (S.)! *hail to the Maid!* weh dir! *woe to thee!*

a. Closely akin to this is the dat. with interjections, which is common after wohl; e. g. wohl dir! *well for thee.* After other interjections it is rare; but Schiller has pfui den Elenden! *out upon the wretches;* and Goethe, o den trefflichen Menſchen! *O the excellent people!*

262. The Dative with Prepositions. There are sixteen prepositions that now regularly take the dative, nine that take the dative or accusative according to the nature of the construction, and several more that *may* take the dative instead of some other more usual construction. For lists and illustrations see §§ 376–7.

THE ACCUSATIVE

263. The Accusative as Direct Object. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; e. g. ich lieb' dich, mich reizt deine ſchöne Geſtalt (G.), *I love thee, thy beautiful form charms me.*

a. The object may denote the result of the verbal action and is then called a 'factitive' object; e. g. einen Brief ſchreiben, *to write a letter.*

1. Certain verbs vary between the transitive and the intransitive construction; thus:

a. Ankommen, in the sense of *come over*, and verſichern, *assure*, which usually take the acc., occur also with the dat.

b. A few others which usually take the dat. occur in the classics with the acc. Such are begegnen, *meet;* helfen, *help;* ſchmeicheln, *flatter*, and the impersonals dünken, *seem;* ekeln, *disgust;* grauen and grauſen, *horrify*. After koſten, *cost*, the personal object may be either dat. or acc.; es koſtet dir (or dich) zehn Mark, *it costs you ten marks.*

c. With others the case depends upon the meaning, or the nature of the construction. Thus bezahlen, *pay*, takes a dat. of the person and acc. of the thing (er bezahlte mir das Geld); but if there is only a personal object it stands in the acc. (er bezahlte mich). — Nachahmen, *imitate*, may also take a dat. of the person, and an acc. of the thing. If there is but one object, it may stand in either case, but dem Lehrer nachahmen means *to take the teacher as a model*, while den Lehrer nachahmen means *to ape him maliciously.* — Rufen, *call*, with acc. = *summon*, with dat., *call to*. Cf. further §§ 249, 3, *a*, and 257, 1, *a*.

2. Observe that many verbs which are intransitive in the simple form have transitive compounds of kindred meaning; e. g. dem Rate folgen, but den Rat befolgen, *to follow the advice;* auf eine Frage antworten, but eine Frage beantworten, *to answer a question;* einem ſein Geld rauben, but einen ſeines Geldes berauben, *to rob one of one's money.*

3. After certain impersonal verbs the accusative object, denoting the person concerned, looks as if it were the subject of an intransitive verb; e. g. ihn ſchläfert, *he is drowsy;* mich dünkt, *methinks* (but also mir dünkt, see above under 1, *b*); mich hungert, *I am hungry.* Here belong, further, es

dürſtet, ekelt, friert, ſchaudert mich, *I am thirsty, disgusted, cold, horrified.* All are really transitive, es dünkt mich, meaning *it causes me to think*, ihn ſchläfert, *it makes him drowsy*, etc.

a. A much larger number of transitive verbs, not regularly impersonal, can be used impersonally with an object which may or may not be literally translatable; e. g. es freut mich, *I am glad;* mich überläuft's, *I am all of a tremble;* es faßt mich kalt beim Schopfe (G.), *it is as if a cold hand seized me by the forelock.* Es gibt, *there is, there are*, with acc. object, is equivalent (but see § 340) to a form of ſein, with predicate nom. Notice further the use of the acc. in es ſetzt Hiebe, *they are coming to blows, there is a fight on*, and in es hat Gefahr, *there is danger.* On the es in these idioms see § 303, 1, *a.*

264. The Cognate Accusative. Some intransitive verbs may take, in the accusative, an object which simply repeats, in the form of a noun, the idea of the verb; e. g. ſie ſtirbt einen edlen Tod (G.), *she will die a noble death;* ich möchte bittre Tränen weinen (G.), *I could weep bitter tears;* gar ſchöne Spiele ſpiel' ich mit dir (G.), *very beautiful games I will play with thee.*

1. In like manner an intransitive verb may take a factitive object; e. g. der Lenz lächelt ſeinen Gruß, *Spring smiles its greeting;* was grinſeſt du mir her (G.)? *what art thou grinning at me?*

265. The Accusative as Secondary Object. There are several verbs which may take two objects in the accusative; e. g. die Muſe hatte den Äſopus ſeine Fabeln gelehrt (L.), *the Muse had taught Æsop his fables;* die Hoffnung nenn' ich meine Göttin noch (S.), *I still call Hope my goddess.* The construction may be considered under three heads, as follows:

1. The two objects are the person acted upon and the thing done. Here belong lehren, *teach*, and sometimes also, but only when the thing-object is a neuter pronoun, bitten and fragen, *ask*, bereden and überreden, *persuade;* e. g. lehre mich die wahre Weisheit, *teach me true wisdom;* ich will dich etwas fragen, *I want to ask you something;* ich bitte dich nur

dies, *I ask you only this;* ihr werdet mich das nicht überreden, *you will not persuade me (of) that.* See under *d* below.

a. But after lehren one meets also with a dat. of the person; e.g. nur das Leben lehret jedem, was er sei (G.), *only life teaches every one what he is.* The German of to-day tends to avoid the double acc. with lehren as pedantic; instead of er lehrt mich (die) Musik, *he teaches me music*, say er unterrichtet mich in der Musik. After fragen, nach with dat. is used; after bitten, um with acc.; e.g. ich fragte ihn nach dem Wege, *I asked him the way;* ich bat ihn um Hilfe, *I asked him for help.*

b. With wissen lassen, *tell*, sehen lassen, *show*, and the like, when an infinitive takes the place of the thing-object, the acc. is the rule, but the dat. a not infrequent exception; e.g. laß mich deine Schätze sehen, *let me see your treasures;* but laß es mir durch Eintracht sehen (G.), *prove it to me by harmony.* So, too, the dat. may follow heißen, *bid*, when there is no infinitive; e.g. wer hieß ihm das (L.)? *who bade him that?* — instead of wer hieß ihn das tun?

c. By a confusion, familiar also in English, lernen, *learn*, is sometimes used with the sense and the construction of lehren; e.g. ich lerne sie allerlei lustige Lieder (G.), *I am 'learning' her all sorts of jolly songs.* But this is not good German.

d. In the phrase es nimmt mich Wunder, *I wonder at it*, es is really an old gen. of cause (*wonder seizes me because of it*) which came to be felt as a nom. So also the pronominal acc. after bitten, fragen, bereden and überreden, seems to have resulted from mistaking the es or eines for an acc. in such phrases as ich bitte dich's, ich bitte dich nur eines, and then extending the analogy. In the phrase jemand Lügen strafen, *accuse one of lying*, which looks like an instance of two accusatives, Lügen is probably an old gen. of cause (*chide one for lying*).

2. The two objects are the person or thing named and the name, the verbs those meaning *to call* (nennen, heißen, schelten, schimpfen, taufen); e.g. du nennst dich einen Teil (G.), *you call yourself a part;* ich darf mich nicht des Glückes Liebling schelten (S.), *I can not call myself a favorite of Fortune.*

a. After verbs of making, choosing, appointing — machen, wählen, erwählen, ernennen — what would be in English the second or factitive object is usually put in the dat. with zu; e.g. die Verzweiflung macht mich zur Furie, zum Tier (S.), *makes me a fury, a beast;* der Reichstag erwählte Rudolf zum Kaiser, *elected Rudolf emperor.*

3. The second object is an appositive with als or wie. The verbs are especially those of regarding, representing, knowing, finding, but many others admit the construction; e. g. ihr habt mich ſtets als eine Feindin nur betrachtet (S.), *you have always regarded me only as an enemy;* das Alter findet uns nur noch als wahre Kinder (G.), *old age finds us still real children;* du behandelſt mich wie jene Katze (G.), *you treat me like the cat in the fable.*

a. Als denotes the character or capacity, wie the manner, in which the first object is concerned; e. g. man betrachtete ihn als Spion und behandelte ihn wie einen Hund, *they regarded him as a spy and treated him like a dog.*

b. For the nom. instead of the second object after a reflexive verb see § 271, 3.

c. Certain verbs of regarding and representing, as achten, halten, ausgeben, erklären, are most often followed by für with acc.; e. g. acht' es nicht für Raub (G.), *do not esteem it a derogation;* für was hältſt du das Tier (G.)? *for what do you take the beast?*

266. The Adverbial Accusative. The accusative may be used to denote various adverbial relations, as follows:

1. The way; e. g. wandle deine fürchterliche Straße (S.), *go thy fearful way;* doch ziehen ſie ihren Weg dahin, er geht den ſeinen (G.), *but they go on their way, he goes his.*

a. As used with intransitive verbs the acc. of the way might be regarded as a cognate acc., only we can not separate er ging den kürzeſten Weg from er ſandte mich den kürzeſten Weg, both of which are good German. This acc. is often accompanied by an adverb of direction; e. g. er ging die Treppe hinauf, *he went up the steps;* der Landvogt führt ihn den See herauf (S.), *is bringing him up the lake.*

2. Time; e. g. wir müſſen fort noch dieſe Nacht, *we must go this very night;* und träte ſie den Augenblick herein (G.), *and were she to enter this moment;* er leert' ihn jeden Schmaus (G.), *he drained it at every feast.*

a. As we have seen above, time is also denoted by the gen. In general the gen. is less definite, or is used in phrases implying repeti-

tion or custom; e. g. eines Abends, *one evening;* eines ſchönen Tages (indefinite time); des Abends, nachts, vormittags (custom). In the phrase jeden Abend, *every evening*, the idea of repetition is contained in jeden. Distinguish the acc. of time in gleich dieſen Augenblick, *this very moment*, from the acc. of measure, in warte einen Augenblick, *wait a moment.*

b. Note the use of Ende, *end*, Mitte, *middle*, Anfang, *beginning*, without article before the name of a month; e. g. er kehrte Ende März nach Hauſe, *he returned home the last of March.*

3. Measure of time, space, weight and cost; e. g. er iſt ſchon einen Monat hier, *has been here a month;* wir gingen eine Strecke weiter, *we went a piece further;* es wiegt einen Centner, *it weighs a hundred;* es koſtet ſechs Mark, *it costs six marks.*

a. Measure of difference after an adjective was formerly expressed by a gen., and traces of the construction are found in the classics; e. g. eines Hauptes länger als die Ritter alle (W.), *a head taller than all the knights.* One would now say um ein Haupt länger.

b. The acc. of measure is very often accompanied by an adjective or adverb; e. g. drei Jahre alt; ſechs Fuß hoch; eine Elle breit; drei Meilen entfernt.

267. The Accusative Absolute. The accusative is often used absolutely, as if dependent upon habend understood; e. g. das Schwert im Herzen blickſt du hinauf (G.), *the sword in thy heart, thou lookest up;* ich eile fort, vor mir den Tag, und hinter mir die Nacht (G)., *I hasten on, the day before me and the night behind.* So also in set phrases; e. g. ſie ruhten atmend Arm in Arm (G.), *they rested, panting, arm in arm.*

1. This accusative is often connected with a perfect participle used absolutely; e. g. wenn ich ſo ſaß, den Ellenbogen aufgeſtemmt (G.), *when I would sit thus, with my elbow propped up;* ſchon den Hals entblößt, kniet' ich auf dem Mantel (L.), *my neck already bared, I was kneeling on my mantle.*

2. Different is the acc. dependent upon a verb of wishing or offering; e. g. guten Morgen! *good morning!* dieſen Kuß der ganzen Welt (S.)! *this kiss to the whole world!*

3. Note finally, in this connection, the occasional use of the acc. with an interjection; e. g. pfui dich! *fie upon you!* o mich vergeßlichen (L.)! *oh me, forgetful!* i. e. *how forgetful I am!*

268. The Accusative with Prepositions. The accusative is always used after eight prepositions and sometimes after nine others. For lists see §§ 376–7.

269. The Accusatives with Adjectives. A few adjectives that regularly take the genitive admit the accusative instead. See § 252, 1, *a*.

APPOSITION

270. Immediate Apposition. An appositive agrees in case with its antecedent; e. g. was können wir, ein Volk der Hirten (S.)? *what can we do, a race of shepherds?* das Hauptaugenmerk mein, des Geognoſten (G.), *the chief concern of me, the geologist;* trink ihn aus, den Trank der Labe (G.), *drink it up, the draught of solace.*

1. A noun in apposition with a sentence is put in the nominative; e. g. Pappenheim ſtarb gleich am folgenden Tag, ein unerſetzlicher Verluſt für das kaiſerliche Heer (S.), *Pappenheim died the very next day, an irremediable loss for the imperial army.*

2. For titles in apposition with proper names see § 285.

271. Mediate Apposition. Apposition may be mediated by als or wie (cf. § 242, 2); e. g. komm' ich als Gattin (G.)? *do I come as wife?* wie einen Kreiſel trieb's mich um (S.), *like a top it sent me around.*

1. An appositive with als may denote cause, real or supposed; e. g. mir, als dem älteſten, fiel es zu, *it fell to me as the oldest;* am 24ſten als am Tage, wo — (G.), *on the 24th, that being the day on which —.* Such an appositive may be used to explain an adverb; e. g. doch morgen, als am erſten Oſtertage (G.), *but to-morrow, that being the first Easter holiday.*

a. After als = *in the capacity of*, an appositive may stand in the nominative without regard to the case of its antecedent, and may even explain a possessive; e. g. die Anſprüche dieſes Menſchen als Dichter, *the claims of this man as poet;* ſeine Stellung als Haupt einer großen Partei, *his position as head of a great party.*

b. The rule of congruence in case holds also after als = *than;* e. g. das weiß niemand als ich, *no one but me knows that;* das ſag' ich keinem andern als ihm (Gr.), *I will tell no one but him.*

2. After wie in comparisons the nominative sometimes occurs without regard to the preceding case; e. g. einem Manne wie Sie kann es nicht an Gelde fehlen (L.), *money can not be lacking to a man like you.*

3. After a reflexive pronoun one sometimes meets with the nominative instead of an appositional object; e. g. er bewährte ſich als treuer Freund, *proved himself a true friend;* ich unterzeichne mich als der Ihrige, *I sign myself 'yours';* er fühlt ſich bald ein Mann (G.), *feels himself a man.* But this construction is hardly to be approved except with true reflexives; for zeigt ſich als frecher Lügner, *shows himself a bold liar*, say rather frechen Lügner (Blatz). Still, Lessing wrote: Sie ſehen mich ein Raub der Wellen, *you see me a prey to the waves.*

272. Spurious Apposition. As we have seen (§ 246, 1, *a*, § 253, 2, *a*), an appositional construction has taken the place of an older partitive genitive after indeclinables and also after nouns of weight, measure and number; e. g. etwas Gutes; mit etwas Gutem; ein Glas Wein; eine Menge Kinder.

1. After nouns of weight and measure the appositive generally denotes material and is uninflected; e. g. mit einem Glas Wein, *with a glass of wine;* gegen drei Pfund Silber, *about three pounds of silver.* After a noun of number the rule of apposition holds when the dat. plu. is concerned; e. g. mit drei Dutzend Eiern, *with three dozen eggs;* aus einer Menge Beiſpielen, *from a multitude of examples.*

THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS

273. Strong and Weak Declension.

The terms 'strong' and 'weak,' as applied to the declension of nouns, were introduced by Grimm (*Deutsche Grammatik* II, 597, *Geschichte der deutschen Sprache*, p. 652). Nouns with stem ending in a vowel he called 'strong' because they apply the case-ending directly, thus seeming to rely upon their own resources; whereas the 'weak' nouns need the support of an *n*-suffix. The names are fanciful, but convenient and in universal use. It is therefore best to keep them, tho they have little force as applied to modern German, in which the old vowel-stems no longer appear as such and the original conditions are in other respects very much obscured.

THE STRONG DECLENSION

274. The First Class. Besides the nouns specified in § 79, the First Class contains one masculine in e, namely, Käſe, *cheese*. Here belong also verbal nouns (infinitives) in (e)n, including Sein and Tun, which are the only monosyllables. But infinitives form no plural.

1. The nouns of Class 1 which have umlaut as plural-sign are as follows, the * marking those in which it is optional:

Acker, *field*	*Hammel, *wether*	Nagel, *nail*
Apfel, *apple*	Hammer, *hammer*	Ofen, *stove*
Boden, *ground*	Handel, *trade*	Sattel, *saddle*
*Bogen, *bow*	Kloſter, *convent*	*Schaden, *injury*
Bruder, *brother*	*Laden, *store*	Schnabel, *beak*
*Faden, *thread*	Mangel, *defect*	Schwager, *brother-in-law*
Garten, *garden*	Mantel, *mantle*	Tochter, *daughter*
Graben, *trench*	Mutter, *mother*	Vater, *father*
Hafen, *haven*	Nabel, *navel*	Vogel, *bird*

a. Of the above all are mas. except das Kloſter, die Mutter and die Tochter. — Not good, tho sometimes seen and more often heard, are the plurals Käſten, *boxes*; Krägen, *collars*; Läger, *camps*; Mägen, *stomachs*; Wägen, *wagons*; Wäſſer, *waters*. Some also condemn Bögen as bad. — It is usual to distinguish between Fenſterladen, *shutters*, and Kaufläden, *stores*.

b. The nouns mentioned in § 279, 2, may be regarded as of this class if we posit as nom. the form in en.

275. The Second Class. For the genitive and dative of monosyllables the long forms, e. g. Tages, Tage, are to be looked upon as the normal literary usage; but the short forms Tags, Tag, are common in all styles. In poetry and studied prose rhythm is often a deciding factor in the choice; in the case of compounds, the accent; thus Vo'rſtands, but Verſta'ndes.

a. Some authorities, e. g. Blatz, state that the dropping of e is more apt to occur after a long stem-vowel; i. e. that Baums, Baum, Tags, Tag, are more common than Falls, Fall, Sinns, Sinn. But no great importance can be attached to this principle. For the dat. after a preposition numerous set phrases prefer the short form; e. g. zu Fuß, *on foot;* mit Fleiß, *purposely;* mit Recht, *rightly;* zum Teil, *in part;* mit Weib und Kind, *with wife and child.* But others have the long form; as zu Hauſe, *at home;* bei Tiſche, *at table.*

1. The monosyllabic feminines of Class 2 are as follows (all with umlaut in the plural, if possible):

Angſt, *distress*	Hand, *hand*	Maus, *mouse*
Art, *axe*	Haut, *skin*	Nacht, *night*
Bank, *bench*	Kluft, *gorge*	Naht, *seam*
Braut, *bride*	Kraft, *force*	Not, *need*
Brunſt, *heat*	Kuh, *cow*	Nuß, *nut*
Bruſt, *breast*	-kunft, *coming*	Schnur, *string*
Fauſt, *fist*	Kunſt, *art*	Schwulſt, *swelling*
Flucht, *flight*	Laus, *louse*	Stadt, *city*
Frucht, *fruit*	Luft, *air*	Wand, *wall*
Gans, *goose*	Luſt, *delight*	Wurſt, *sausage*
Gruft, *grave*	Macht, *might*	Zucht, *breeding*
Gunſt, *favor*	Magd, *maid*	Zunft, *guild*

a. Bank = *bank*, is weak. — The phrase zu Gunſten, *in favor of*, also written zu gunſten, preserves an old dat. plu. without umlaut (cf. § 238, 1, *a*). Of like character is Handen in the phrases zu Handen, *at hand*, abhanden, *missing*, vorhanden, *existent*. Note, further, nachten, instead of Nächte, in Weihnachten, *Christmas*. The adverb nachts, *at night*, as if from a mas. stem, descends from an old *nahtes*, formed after the analogy of *tages*. — The verbal -kunft is not used as a separate word, but occurs in numerous compounds, as Ankunft, *arrival*, plu. Ankünfte. — Schwulſt is sometimes weak.

b. Sau, *sow*, used to belong to this class, but is now usually weak, with plu. Sauen, instead of Säue.

2. As a rule masculine monosyllables of Class 2 have umlaut in the plural. The following, however, are without it in the normal usage of to-day, tho many of them also occur with it, especially in early writers:

Aal, *eel*
Aar, *eagle*
Akt, *act*
Amboß, *anvil*
Arm, *arm*
Bau, *building*
Dachs, *badger*
Docht, *wick*
Dolch, *dagger*
Dom, *cathedral*
Druck, *print*
Erlaß, *edict*
Forſt, *forest*
Gau, *district*
Gemahl, *consort*
Grad, *degree*
Hall, *sound*
Halm, *stalk*
Hauch, *breath*
Herzog, *duke*
Huf, *hoof*
Hund, *dog*
Kran, *crane*
Lachs, *salmon*
Laut, *sound*
Luchs, *lynx*
Lump, *rascal*
Molch, *salamander*
Mord, *murder*
Ort, *place*
Park, *park*
Pfad, *path*
Plan, *plan*
Puls, *pulse*
Punkt, *point*
Quaſt, *tassel*
Roſt, *gridiron*
Schall, *sound*
Schluck, *swallow*
Schmuck, *ornament*
Schuft, *wretch*
Schuh, *shoe*
Spalt, *cleft*
Star, *starling*
Stoff, *stuff*
Strolch, *lubber*
Strauß, *ostrich*
=ſuch, *seeking*
Takt, *tempo*
Tag, *day*
Thron, *throne*
Tod, *death*
Trupp, *troop*
Tuſch, *flourish*
Verluſt, *loss*

a. The plu. Baue is rare, its place being taken by Bauten. — Notice Drucke, *prints*, and Abdrucke, *deprints*, but Ausdrücke, *expressions*, and Eindrücke, *impressions*. — The plu. Orte prevails in the collective use; e. g. an allen Orten (cf. the adverb allerorten), *in all places*, but zwei Örter, einzelne Örter. — The usual plu. of Park is not Parke, but Parks. — The plurals Morde, Schmucke, Tode are rare, their place being taken by Mordtaten, Schmuckſachen, and Todesfälle. — Under =ſuch are included Beſuch, *visit*, Verſuch, *attempt*, and others. — Forſt, Gau, Halm, Lump, Strauß, Thron occur also with weak forms, especially in the plu., but the strong are to be preferred.

3. Monosyllabic neuters of Class 2 are regularly without umlaut, but there are two or three exceptions. Das Chor, *choir of a church* (der Chor = *chorus*), makes die Chöre. — Das Floß, *raft*, usually has die Floße, but sometimes Flöße, also Flößer. — Das Boot, *boat*, has Boote, rarely Böte. — Die Röhre, as plural of das Rohr, *reed*, no longer occurs.

4. To Class 2 belong a large number of borrowed words (both masculine and neuter), with accent on the ultima;

e. g. der Admira'l, *admiral;* der Deka'n, *deacon;* der Kapitä'n, *captain;* der Offizie'r, *officer;* der Plura'l, *plural;* das Tale'nt, *talent;* das Manda't, *mandate;* das Telegra'mm, *telegram;* das Adjekti'v, *adjective.*

a. As a rule such foreign words are without umlaut in the plu., but there are a few well established exceptions, namely: Altäre, *altars;* Biſchöfe, *bishops;* Choräle, *chorals;* Kanäle, *canals;* Kapläne, *chaplains;* Kardinäle, *cardinals;* Moräſte, *marshes;* Paläſte, *palaces.* On the other hand, the form without umlaut is still preferred in Admirale, *admirals;* Generale, *generals;* Korporale, *corporals.* Teno'r, *tenor*, has both Tenore and Tenöre.

b. Foreign words in s with preceding short vowel double the s in inflection; e. g. Brama'rbas, *boaster*, plu. -aſſe; I'ltis, *polecat*, plu. -iſſe; O'mnibus, *omnibus*, plu. -uſſe. But Topa's, *topaz*, with long a, plu. Topaſe.

276. The Third Class. The monosyllabic neuters, all with umlaut in the plural if possible, are as follows (the * calling attention to a remark under *a* below:

*Aas, *carcass*
Amt, *office*
Bad, *bath*
*Band, *ribbon*
Bild, *picture*
Blatt, *leaf*
*Brett, *board*
Buch, *book*
Dach, *roof*
*Ding, *thing*
Dorf, *village*
Ei, *egg*
Fach, *specialty*
Faß, *cask*
Feld, *field*
*Gehalt, *salary*
Geld, *money*
Gemach, *room*
*Gemüt, *spirit*
Geſchlecht, *race*
*Geſicht, *face*
Geſpenſt, *ghost*
*Gewand, *garment*
Glas, *glass*
Glied, *limb*
Grab, *grave*
Gras, *grass*
Gut, *estate*
*Haupt, *head*
Haus, *house*
Holz, *wood*
Horn, *horn*
Huhn, *fowl*
*Joch, *yoke*
Kalb, *calf*
Kind, *child*
Kleid, *dress*
Korn, *grain*
Kraut, *weed*
Lamm, *lamb*
*Land, *land*
*Licht, *light*
Lied, *song*
Loch, *hole*
*Mal, *mark*
Mahl, *meal*
Maul, *mouth*
Neſt, *nest*
Pfand, *pledge*
Rad, *wheel*
Reis, *twig*
Rind, *cow, ox*
*Scheit, *billet*
*Schild, *shield*
Schloß, *castle*
Schwert, *sword*
Stift, *peg*
Tal, *valley*
*Trumm, *fragment*
*Tuch, *cloth*
Volk, *folk*
Wams, *jacket*
Weib, *woman*
*Wort, *word*

a. Aas ; plu. (rare) Äser, also Aase. — Band ; plu. Bänder, *ribbons*, but Bande, *bonds* ; Bände, from der Band, = *volumes*. — Brett ; plu. usually Bretter, but often =brette in compounds. — Ding ; regular plu. Dinge, but sometimes Dinger, especially as applied to girls, as in *Faust*, l. 3693, ihr armen, armen Dinger. — Gehalt ; der Gehalt, die Gehalte, are better than das Gehalt, die Gehälter. — Gemüt ; plu. Gemüter, rarely Gemüte. — Gesicht ; plu. Gesichter, *faces*, but Gesichte, *sights, visions*. — Gewand ; plu. Gewänder, rarely Gewande. — Haupt ; plu. Häupter, but note the phrase zu Häupten, *at the head*. — Joch, plu. Joche, but sometimes Jöcher in a technical sense. — Land ; plu. Länder ; Lande is poetic and is also met with in compounds, as die Rheinlande. — Licht ; plu. Lichter, *lights*, but Lichte, *candles*. — Mal ; plu. Mäler, *marks*, but Male, *times*. Denkmal, *monument*, has =mäler or =male. — Scheit ; plu. Scheiter and Scheite. — Schild ; usually der Schild, die Schilde, but also das Schild, die Schilder, especially in the sense of *signs*. — Trumm ; used only in plu., die Trümmer ; and even this has been replaced in part by the weak Trümmern. — Tuch ; plu. Tücher, *pieces of cloth, shawls* ; also in compounds, as Handtücher, *towels* ; but Tuche, *kinds of cloth*. — Wort ; plu. Wörter, *disconnected vocables* ; but Worte, *words*, in connected discourse.

b. The foreign neuters that have come into Class 3 are Hospita'l or Spita'l, *hospital*, plu. =ale or äler ; Regime'nt, *regiment*, plu. =er for military regiments, but =e in other senses ; Kamisol', *waistcoat*, plu. =ole or =öler ; Kapitä'l, *capital of a column*, plu. =äle or =äler.

c. For the uninflected plu. of monosyllabic neuters see § 283, 2.

1. The masculines of Class 3 are :

Bösewicht, *villain*	Mann, *man*	Strauß, *nosegay*
Geist, *spirit*	Ort, *place*	Vormund, *guardian*
Gott, *God*	Rand, *rim*	Wald, *forest*
Irrtum, *error*	Reichtum, *riches*	Wurm, *worm*
Leib, *body*	Strauch, *bush*	

a. These words are interlopers in Class 3, and the most of them have, or have had, secondary plurals in e. Bösewichte is less common than Bösewichter. — Geiste is archaic or technical, = *essences*. — Leibe is archaic. — Mann forms Mannen in the sense of *vassals*. — For Ort see § 275, 2, *a*. — The plu. Rande is rare. — Sträuche is better than Sträucher, and Sträuße than Sträußer. — Wälde and Würme are archaic.

b. Note the anomalous Wiking, *viking*, plu. Wikinger.

THE WEAK DECLENSION

277. Feminines. The monosyllabic nouns referred to in § 92 number about sixty, some of the most common

being Bahn, *track*; Form, *form*; Frau, *wife*; Pflicht, *duty*; See, *sea*; Tat, *deed*; Welt, *world*; Zahl, *number*; Zeit, *time*. A complete list need not be given, since all monosyllabic feminines not included under § 275, 1, are weak. The polysyllabic feminines are countless (cf. § 93, 1).

1. In Old German weak feminines took the ending (e)n in the gen., dat. and acc. sing. The inflection is now obsolete except in auf Erden, *on earth*, but is common in the classics as a poetic license; e. g. im Glanz der Sonnen (S.), *in the light of the sun.*

278. Masculines. Here are included:

1. Nouns in e and a number of others that have lost an e, thus becoming (as a rule) monosyllabic. These last are:

Bär, *bear*	Hageſtolz, *bachelor*	Ochſ(e), *ox*
Burſch(e), *lad*	Held, *hero*	Prinz, *prince*
Chriſt, *Christian*	Herr, *sir*	Pfau, *peacock*
Fink(e), *finch*	Hirt, *shepherd*	Schenk, *cup-bearer*
Fürſt, *prince*	Lump, *vagabond*	Spatz, *sparrow*
Geck, *fop*	Menſch, *man*	Sproß, *scion*
Genoß, *companion*	Mohr, *Moor*	Steinmetz, *mason*
Geſell(e), *companion*	Narr, *fool*	Tor, *fool*
Graf, *count*		

a. Some of the above, as Burſche (in the plu.), Fink (in the sing.), Geck, Hageſtolz, Lump, Pfau, admit of strong inflection. Note also the phrase Narrs genug (W.), *fool enough.*

b. The titles Fürſt, Graf, Prinz (but not Herr) are regularly uninflected when used without the article before a proper name; e. g. Fürſt Bismarcks Reden, *Prince Bismarck's speeches;* ein Brief an Graf von Moltke, *a letter to Count Von Moltke;* mit Prinz Karl, *with Prince Karl;* but Herrn Schmidts Haus, ein Brief an Herrn Schmidt, etc. Note also the undeclined title in mich hat er erwählt zum Fürſt der Liebe (S.), *he has chosen me Prince of Love;* willſt du der Liebe Fürſt dich würdig nennen (S.).

2. Most foreign words in t, ant, ent, denoting persons; also words ending in the Greek suffixes arch, graph, iſt, krat, log(e), nom, ſoph, and some others not easily classifiable; e. g. Poe't, *poet;* Bandi't, *bandit;* Proteſta'nt, *protestant;* Refere'nt, *reviewer;* Mona'rch, *monarch;* Geogra'ph, *geog-*

rapher; Sozialiſt, *socialist;* Demokrat, *democrat;* Philolog, *philologist;* Aſtronom, *astronomer;* Philoſoph, *philosopher;* Satrap, *satrap;* Katholik, *catholic;* Rebell, *rebel;* Veteran, *veteran.*

a. Foreign words in t and nt that do not denote persons are mostly strong, second class, as Salat, *salad;* Granit, *granite;* Moment, *moment;* Horizont, *horizon.* But a few have come into the weak declension; e. g. Brillant, *brilliant;* Elefant, *elephant;* Planet, *planet;* Komet, *comet.*

3. Ethnic names in ar, as Barbar, *barbarian;* Bulgar, *Bulgarian;* Janitſchar, *Janizary;* Magyar, *Magyar;* Tartar, *Tartar;* Ungar, *Hungarian.* Also Baier, *Bavarian,* and Pommer, *Pomeranian.*

THE MIXED DECLENSION

279. Masculines. These may be grouped under three heads, to wit:

1. The following words, which are normally strong in the singular, but weak in the plural:

Bauer, *peasant*	Nachbar, *neighbor*	Stachel, *goad*
Dorn, *thorn*	Nerv, *nerve*	Strahl, *ray*
Gaum, *palate*	Pſalm, *psalm*	Untertan, *subject*
Gevatter, *gossip*	See, *lake*	Vetter, *cousin*
Konſul, *consul*	Sporn, *spur*	Vorfahr, *ancestor*
Maſt, *mast*	Staat, *state*	Zins, *interest*
Muskel, *muscle*		

a. The most of these occur also with weak forms in the sing. and strong in the plu. — Dorn has plu. Dornen = *thorns,* Dörner = *drills;* but one meets also with Dorne and Dörne. — Gaum is rare in the sing., its place being taken by Gaumen. — Muskel and Nerv are often fem. whence the weak plurals. — Sporn has plu. Sporen, less often Sporne and Spören. — Stachel was once fem., whence the plu. Stacheln.

b. Several foreign words are of unsettled inflection; as Faſan, *pheasant;* gen. -s, plu. -en or -e; Magnet, *magnet;* gen. -es or -en, plu. -e or -en; Tribun, *tribune;* gen. -s or -en, plu. -e(n); Pedell, *beadle;* gen. -s or -en, plu. -e(n).

c. In talk one often hears an n-plural where it does not belong; e. g. Pantoffeln, *slippers;* Stiefeln, *boots.* So also with neuters, as Möbeln, *furniture,* and even Fenſtern, *windows.*

2. Several nouns in (e)n with genitive in ens. These are for the most part weak nouns in e that developed a secondary nominative in en, which gave rise to the genitive in ens, the rest of the inflection remaining weak. In some cases the secondary nominative in en has become the usual form. If we start with that, the entire group may be regarded as of Class 1, strong declension. The words, in the form now usual for the nominative, are:

Frieden, *peace*	Glaube, *faith*	Same, *seed*
Funke, *spark*	Haufen, *heap*	Schaden, *injury*
Gedanke, *thought*	Name, *name*	Wille, *will*
Gefallen, *favor*		

a. Buchſtabe, *letter*, and Schmerz, *pain*, sometimes form a gen. in ens, though they have no nom. in en (cf. the neuter Herz, § 97, 2, *a*). — Fels, *rock*, originally strong, developed a secondary form, Felſen, under the influence of which Fels became weak; we have now nom. Fels and Felſen, gen. Felſes (rare), Felſen and Felſens, dat. Felſen and Fels, acc. Felſen and Fels, plu. Felſen (Felſe archaic).

3. Latin masculines in or, plu. o'ren, together with a few of Greek origin in on, plural o'nen; e.g. Do'ktor, plural Dokto'ren; Dä'mon, *demon*, plural Dämo'nen; Ä'on, *æon*, plural Äo'nen.

a. Paſtöre, for Paſtoren, is provincial. Tenore, or Tenöre, *tenors*, is of Italian, not Latin, origin.

280. Neuters. The neuters of the mixed declension are:

1. The following words:

Auge, *eye*	Hemd(e), *shirt*	Juwe'l, *jewel*
Bett, *bed*	Herz, *heart*	Ohr, *ear*
Ende, *end*	Intereſſe, *interest*	Weh, *pain*

a. The older plurals Bette, Hemde, Hember are now practically obsolete. For the inflection of Herz see § 97, 2, *a*. — Juwel, sometimes mas., has also plu. Juwe'le. — Weh forms plu. Wehen only in the sense of *birth-pains*.

2. Latin words in um (together with a few that have dropped um), several in al and il, and most Greek words in

ma; words in ium, al and il have the plural in ien if the Latin plural ended in *ia*. Examples with plural in en: Individuum, *individual*, Individuen; Verb(um), *verb*, Verben (but see § 281, 1); Inſe'kt, *insect*, Inſe'kten; Statu't, *statute*, Statu'ten; Drama, *drama*, Dramen; Thema, *theme*, Themen. With plural in ien: Minera'l, *mineral*, Minera'lien; Kapita'l, *capital*, Kapita'lien; Foſſi'l, *fossil*, Foſſi'lien. Here belong also several plurals without singular; as Mobi'lien, *movables;* Natura'lien, '*specimens*'; Rea'lien, *exact sciences.*

a. Greek words in ma that have lost their final vowel in German form the plu. in me; e. g. Axio'm, *axiom*, plu. Axio'me; Proble'm, *problem*, plu. Proble'me. Cf. § 281.

FOREIGN AND ANOMALOUS INFLECTIONS

281. Latin and Greek Words that have become so far naturalized as to admit of German inflections are provided for in the preceding sections. It remains to consider those which, because of an intractable form, retain more or less the character of foreign words.

1. In the case of Latin and Greek words that have not become naturalized the nom. sing. is now generally used for the entire sing. (but a gen. in s is always permissible unless the word ends in a sibilant), the nom. plu. for the entire plu.; thus das Verbum, *the verb*, des Verbum(s), dem Verbum, die Verba, der Verba, etc. The practice of using Latin inflections in German discourse, tho once very common, is now on the wane, and is hardly to be approved, tho still often met with. For Goethe's Blätter des Codicis, *leaves of the codex*, one would now prefer Blätter des Codex. So also in allen dieſen Caſus (not Caſibus), *in all these cases;* die Bildung ſolcher Compoſita (not Compoſitorum), *the formation of such compounds.*

a. A few words in s that are thus indeclinable in the sing. form German plurals in en; e. g. Globus, *globe*, plu. Globen; Rhythmus, *rhythm*, plu. Rhythmen. So also words in ismus, *ism*, as Solöcismus, *solecism*, plu. Solöcismen. The plu. of Atlas, *atlas*, is Atla'nten; of Primas, *primate*, Prima'ten; of Klima, *climate*, Kli'mata or Kli'mate.

b. Words that admit a German plu. are sometimes given a foreign plu. instead; e. g. Adjekti'v, *adjective*, plu. Adjektive, or -a; Faktum, *fact*, plu. Fakten or Fakta.

282. The Plural in s. Words borrowed from languages that have a plural in *s* often retain such plural in German; e. g. Clowns, Klubs, Lords, Strikes, Parks, Beefsteaks, Checks, Babies, Bills, from the English, and Chefs, Genies, Abbés, Adieus, Arrangements, Bicycles, from the French.

1. A plu. in s is also sometimes given to words, both German and foreign, which are not nouns, but are used as such; e. g. die Facits, *the amounts* (Lat. *facit, it makes*); die Amens, *the amens;* die Wenns und die Abers, *the ifs and the buts.*

2. Thru Low-German influence a plu. in s is sometimes given (in familiar language or for humorous effect) to genuine German words instead of the regular form; e. g. Fräuleins, *misses;* Mädels, *girls;* Jungens, *lads;* Kerls, *fellows.*

283. Defective Inflection.

1. The poets, especially Goethe, sometimes drop the case-ending from the first of two nouns connected in the same construction; e. g. an Tier und Vögeln fehlt es nicht, *there is no lack of beasts and birds* (*Faust*, l. 238); von Sonn- und Welten, *of suns and worlds* (ibid. l. 279).

2. Monosyllabic neuters, and also Mann, once formed an uninflected plu. identical in form with the nom. sing. Such plurals are common in early modern German, and even later in poetry; e. g. drei arme Kind (G.), *three poor children;* über vierzehn Jahr (G.), *over fourteen years.* There is no elision in such cases.

INFLECTION OF PROPER NAMES

284. Personal Names. The brief statements in §§ 99–100 need to be supplemented as follows:

1. Down to about the beginning of this century names of persons were more fully inflected than at present, forming a gen. in ens as well as s, and a dat. and acc. in (e)n; e. g. Goethens, Goethen, Gertrudens, Gertruden. So, too, the gen. in s was used after the article; e. g. das Ansehen des Homers (L.), *the prestige of Homer;* die Leiden des jungen Werthers (G.), *the sufferings of young Werther.* With names in e or a sibilant the gen. in ens is still common in books, tho seldom used in talk; for Helenens, Maxens, the tendency is to employ Helenes, Max'. (Colloquially, Fritz seine Bücher may take the place of Fritz' or

Fritzens Bücher.) The dat. and acc. in en are still used to a certain extent, especially in baptismal names.

a. But when a proper name with preceding adjective and article is followed by the noun on which the gen. depends, the gen. in s is still the rule; thus one would say des jungen Werthers Leiden.

b. To mark the gen. an apostrophe is needed only after a sibilant; e. g. Voß' Schriften, *Voss's writings;* but Schillers, Ciceros Briefe, *Schiller's, Cicero's letters.*

2. More restricted than formerly, again, is the use of Greek and Latin inflections; for Muſäi Schriften, *write* Muſäus' Schriften or die Schriften des Muſäus. Well-known classical names are apt to take the article, after which, of course, there is no inflection; e. g. die Gedichte des Horaz, *the poems of Horace.* Biblical names still retain to a greater degree their Latin inflections; e. g. die Bücher Moſis, *the books of Moses;* die Briefe Pauli, *the letters of Paul.*

a. The name Jeſus Chriſtus forms gen. Jeſu Chriſti, dat. Jeſu Chriſto, acc. Jeſum Chriſtum.

3. A plu. of modern surnames is often formed in s; as die Grimms, die Brentanos, *the Grimms, the Brentanos.*

a. In phrases like bei Müllers, *at (the) Müllers'*, or Engels ſind verreiſt, *the Engels have gone·away*, we have a gen. sing. (cf. § 246, 5, *d*) which has come to be felt as a plu.

b. Christian names form a plu., when one is needed, in e, en, or s; as die Heinriche, die Maxen, die Ottos, die Bertas.

c. Latin names in o, gen. onis, make a plu. in ne or nen; as die Scipionen, die Catone.

d. Note finally die Judaſſe, *the Judases.* But classical names should not be treated thus; say die Plautus, not die Plautuſſe.

285. Names in Connection with Titles. The rule of apposition in § 270 does not fully cover the inflection of names used with titles. Thus:

1. When a name is preceded by a title (other than Herr) that is without the article, only the name is inflected; e. g. Kaiſer Wilhelms Regierung, or die Regierung Kaiſer Wilhelms, *the reign of Emperor William;* mit König Friedrichs Macht; Fürſt Bismarcks Reden; das Lied von Prinz Eugen; Doktor Schmidts Patienten; but Herrn Schmidts Haus; ein Brief an Herrn Schmidt.

a. If a preceding title has the article, then only the title is inflected, and even that may drop an s, not an en; e. g. die Regierung des Kaiſer(s) Wilhelm; die Reden des Fürſten Bismarck; die Wohnung des Doktor(s) Wagner.

b. For *the conduct of Fräulein Müller* one may say das Betragen des Fräuleins Müller, or, treating the title as fem., der Fräulein Müller. The last might be plu., an ambiguity which can be avoided by saying von Fräulein M. Des Fräulein M. is not to be approved, tho often heard. Quite proper is Ihre Fräulein Tochter, nom. and acc. or Ihrer Fräulein Tochter, gen. and dat.

c. The practice of adding in to a title to denote the wife of a man bearing the title is obsolescent; for *Mrs. Dr.* say Frau Doktor; Frau Doktorin means that the lady herself is a doctor. Still more obsolete is the addition of in to surnames to denote female members of the family, as Luiſe Millerin for Luiſe Miller (S.); die Karſchin, *Frau Karsch.*

2. A descriptive appositive must be declined whether the name is itself declined or not; e. g. die Wohnung des Doktor Wagner, des berühmten Naturforſchers, *of Dr. Wagner, the famous naturalist.*

3. When two or more names occur together only the last is subject to inflection; e. g. Ernſt Moritz Arndts Gedichte, *E. M. Arndt's poems.*

a. With names containing von the gen. inflection should go with the preceding name if the phrase denotes place or descent, but with the second if it denotes only nobility; e. g. die Anſprüche Rudolfs von Habsburg, *the claims of Rudolf of Hapsburg;* die Gedichte Heinrich von Kleiſts, *the poems of H. von Kleist.*

THE SYNTAX OF THE ADJECTIVE

286. The Uninflected Attributive. The following statements are supplementary to § 101:

1. In poetry an adjective is often uninflected before a neuter noun (less often before a masculine or feminine) in the nominative and accusative singular; e. g. ein redlich Wort (S.), *an honest word;* ein furchtbar, wütend Schreckniſ (S.), *a fearful, raging terror;* lieb Knabe (S.), *dear boy;* hat Sie gut Bier und Wein (U.)? i. e. gutes Bier und guten Wein.

a. So, too, in colloquial phrases and ballad nicknames; e. g. bar Geld, *cash;* auf gut Glück, *for good luck;* Schön Suschen, *Fair Susie.*

2. An attributive adjective which follows its noun is uninflected. The usage occurs chiefly in poetry; e. g. Röslein rot (G.), *little red rose;* bei einem Wirte wundermild (U.), *with a wondrously generous host;* der Räuber groß und wild, *the robber, tall and fierce;* ein Schloß so hoch und hehr (U.), *a castle so high and grand;* mein Vater selig, *my late father.*

3. An uninflected adjective is sometimes used to characterize a measure, weight, coinage, or the like; e. g. ein Glas bayerisch, *a glass of Bavarian (beer):* fünf Taler bar, *five dollars cash.*

4. Where two or more adjectives occur together in verse, inflection is sometimes confined to the last; e. g. mit grausam, teuflischer Lust (S.), *with cruel, fiendish delight;* ein stolz, verdrießlich, schwerer Narr (S.), *a proud, peevish, stolid fool.* Here grausam, stolz and verdrießlich have the form but not the force of adverbs. Such cases must be distinguished from those in which a true adverb occurs, as in ein herrlich schön geformter Mann (G.), *a man of gloriously beautiful form.*

a. Official designations like Kaiserlich Deutsche Post, *Imperial German Mail*, and Königlich Sächsische Regierung, *Royal Saxon Government*, fall under the head of compound adjectives (§ 109, 5).

3. Lauter, and the archaic eitel, are uninflected in the sense of *sheer, nothing but;* e. g. lauter Unsinn, *sheer nonsense;* mit lauter Wasser, *with nothing but water;* but mit lauterem Wasser, *with pure water.* So, too, genug, *enough*, which usually follows its noun; also, adjectives in erlei and several pronominals. For ganz and halb see § 109, 3.

287. Stems in Uninflected el, en, er show some difference of usage in the matter of contraction. Except before em and en, they usually drop the e of the stem unless both e's be retained; e. g. ein dunkler Tag; ein offnes Fenster; and(e)re Leute; nichts Besseres or Beßres. Before em and en stems in el and en usually drop the e of the stem, those in er that of the ending; thus bei offnem Fenster; mit edlem Stolz (but mit edelm Stolz is not uncommon); die ander(e)n (much better than die andren); zu was Besserm (better than Beßrem).

288. Variable Inflections. Certain cases of variation between strong and weak inflection require particular attention.

1. The use of the weak genitive before a noun in (e)s, without preceding article (§ 104, *a*), as in voll frohen Lebens (G.), *full of joyous life*, is of quite modern origin (17th century). It is still condemned by some grammarians, but is common in the classics and prevails decidedly in the usage of to-day. It is due to a feeling that two strong forms in s should not come together. Schiller has, in *Wallenstein*, both ſtehendes Fußes and ſtehenden Fußes; in *Tell*, both wildes Laufs and muntern Laufs. Goethe's usage is similarly inconsistent. It may be said that argument favors the strong form, but that usage favors the weak.

a. Pronominal adjectives prefer the strong form; e.g. keineswegs, meines Wiſſens, jedes Umſtands, anderes Sinnes. In allenfalls and jedenfalls we have, according to Grimm, not a weak gen., but an acc. with adverbial s.

2. In the nom. of address the adjective is properly strong, as in werter Herr, *worthy sir;* geehrte Herren, *honored sirs.* But lieben Freunde is not uncommon for liebe Freunde.

3. The use of a weak adjective after all forms of der, dies, jen-, jed-, and after all inflected forms of ein, kein and the possessives, is now a settled practice; but exceptions are met with in the classics, especially after die, dieſe and jene in the nom. and acc. plu.

a. After the forms (nom.-acc. pl.) alle, andere, beide, einige, etliche, manche, mehrere, ſolche, viele, wenige, and also after gewiſſe, ſämtliche and verſchiedene, usage permits either strong or weak inflection, but seems to favor weak after alle, beide, manche, ſolche, and strong after the others. Except in the nom.-acc. pl. these words quite regularly weaken a following adjective.

b. After zweier and dreier strong inflection is the rule, but weak occurs.

4. With personal pronouns the rule is: weak inflection except after the nominative and accusative singular; but strong forms occur after mir, dir, ihm, and also after uns and euch when accusative.

a. Strong inflection in these cases marks a less intimate association of noun and adjective, the latter, with its noun, being felt as an appositive even tho not set off by a comma. Thus the usual dat. of du armes Kind is dir armen Kinde, but this easily becomes dir, armem Kinde. Cf. further: ihr ſchönen Damen, *ye fair ladies*, but ihr, ſchöne Damen, *you, fair ladies;* euch, tapfre Helden, ſoll ein Weib bezwingen (S.)? *shall a woman conquer you, brave heroes?*

5. In general two successive adjectives are either both strong or both weak, according to what precedes; e. g. guter alter (not alte) Wein; ein ſchönes neues (not neue) Haus. But when the first adjective is a strong genitive or dative, the second becomes weak if it is not coördinate in meaning with the first, but is a standing epithet of the noun; e. g. mit friſchem, klarem Waſſer, *with fresh, clear water*, but mit friſchem kölniſchen Waſſer, *with fresh cologne;* ein Muſter hoher ſittlichen Güte, *a model of high moral excellence*, i. e. a moral excellence which is high, not an excellence which is high and moral; von großem politiſchen Intereſſe, *of great political interest.* In such cases coördinate adjectives are usually separated by a comma.

a. In like manner the adjectives of reference which dispense with the article (§ 224. 3, *b*) may weaken a following adjective; e. g. folgender bedeutende Umſtand, *the following important circumstance.*

289. The Predicate Adjective. (Supplementary to § 110).

1. The uninflected appositional predicate must be distinguished from the inflected attributive in agreement with a noun understood; e. g. an Hoffnung reich, im Glauben feſt, dacht' ich — (G.), *rich in hope, firm in faith, I thought —;* der Kaiſer, kühn durch die errungenen Siege (S.), *the emperor, emboldened by the victories won;* but alle Menſchen, ſchlechte wie auch gute, *all men, bad as well as good;* weiterer Verkehr, friedlicher und kriegeriſcher, *further intercourse, peaceful and warlike.*

a. While the appositional predicate is not rare, especially in participial constructions, it is much less common in German than in Eng-

lish. The latter is compelled to place the adjective after its noun whenever the adjective is qualified by a phrase; but in most such cases German prefers a prepositive attributive, the phrase being thrown in between the adjective and a preceding article. That is to say, such phrases as *a young woman proud of her beauty*, *a boy prone to idleness*, *in a manner very painful to me*, become in German, usually, eine junge, auf ihre Schönheit ſtolze Dame; ein zur Faulheit geneigter Knabe; in einer für mich höchſt ſchmerzlichen Weiſe.

2. Of the adjectives which are used only in the predicate and hence never inflected (§ 109, 4), the most important are as follows:

abhold, *unfriendly*	gar, *done*	not, *necessary*
abwendig, *alienated*	getroſt, *confident*	nütze, *useful*
anſichtig, *in sight*	gewahr, *aware*	quer, *oblique*
angſt, *anxious*	gewärtig, *expectant*	quitt, *quits*
ausfindig, *evident*	gram, *offended*	ſchuld, *to blame*
bereit, *ready*	habhaft, *in possession*	teilhaft, *participant*
brach, *fallow*	handgemein, *hand to hand*	unpaß, *unsuited*
eingedenk, *mindful*	kund, *known*	verluſtig, *lacking*
feind, *hostile*	leid, *grievous*	

a. Several of the above occur chiefly in set phrases; as abwendig machen, *alienate;* ausfindig machen, *find;* gewahr werden, *notice;* leid tun, *make sorry;* verluſtig gehen, *become lost.*

b. In old German predicate adjectives were declined — a state of affairs from which has survived voller, as stereotyped case-form of voll; e. g. da der Himmel voller Sterne glüht (G.), *since the sky shines full of stars;* das Faß iſt voller Wein, *the cask is full of wine.* Of like origin are halber, *half*, and ſelber, *self.*

290. The Substantive Adjective. An uninflected adjective is sometimes used substantively in set phrases; e. g. zufrieden jauchzet groß und klein (G.), *great and small shout contentedly;* ein Buch für alt und jung, *a book for old and young;* gleich und gleich geſellt ſich gern, *birds of a feather flock together.* Analogous is the elliptical use of the adjective in such a phrase as von jung auf, *from youth up.*

1. The names of languages are substantive adjectives which are indeclinable, except immediately after a form of das; e. g. ich lerne Deutſch, *I am learning German;* wie heißt es auf Engliſch? in mein

geliebtes Deutſch (G.), *into my beloved German;* die Merkmale eines guten Franzöſiſch, *the marks of a good French.* But er ſpricht das Deutſche gut; im Deutſchen lügt man, wenn man höflich iſt (G.). Yet one says das heutige Deutſch (not Deutſche).

a. Adjectives denoting color when used substantively are neuter nouns without inflection save sometimes a genitive in s; das ſchöne Blau (not Blaue) des Himmels, *the lovely blue of the sky*; Schattierungen des Grüns, *shades of green.*

2. Several English nouns are represented in German by substantive adjectives that follow the rules of adjective declension; e. g. ein Beamter, *an official*, der Beamte, eines Beamten, die Beamten; mein Verwandter, *my kinsman*, der Verwandte, die Verwandten; das Äußere, *the exterior*, but ſein Äußeres, *his* or *its exterior.* Such words are subject to the same uncertainty of inflection as other adjectives after alle, andere, etc. (§ 288, 3, *a*); e. g., alle Gelehrte(n); viele Beamte(n).

a. Such a substantive adjective, if preceded by a strong adjective, may become weak, especially in the neut. and the gen. pl.; e. g. ein ſchönes Äußere (instead of Äußeres), *a beautiful exterior;* ein Kreis lieber Verwandten. So, too, one meets with ein großer Gelehrte, *a great scholar*, and ſein reicher Verwandte, *his rich relative:* but Gelehrter and Verwandter are better. In the nom.-acc. pl. without article Verwandte, Beamte, are better than Verwandten, Beamten. But in the dat. sing. without article usage prefers the weak form; e. g. man könnte ihm als Beamten (rather than Beamtem) wenig vorwerfen (Andresen), *one could reproach him with little as official.* Notice further ein dummer Junge (not Junger), *a stupid youth.*

291. Adjectives and Prepositions. As in English the use of prepositions after adjectives is highly idiomatic. The following examples will illustrate (see further under prepositions):

achtſam auf (acc.), *heedful* OF
arm an (dat.), *poor* IN
aufmerkſam auf (acc.), *attentive* TO
bange vor (dat.), *afraid* OF
begierig nach, *eager* FOR
beſchämt über (acc.), *ashamed* OF
beſorgt um, *anxious* ABOUT
blaß vor (dat.), *pale* WITH
blind auf or an (dat.), *blind* IN
böſe auf (acc.), *angry* AT
eiferſüchtig auf (acc.), *jealous* OF
empfänglich für, *susceptible* TO
empfindlich gegen, *sensitive* TO
fähig zu (or gen.), *capable* OF

freundlich gegen, *friendly* TOWARD
krank am Herzen, *sick* AT *heart*
neidiſch auf (acc.), *envious* OF
reich an (dat.), *rich* IN
ſicher vor (dat.), *safe* FROM
ſtolz auf (acc.), *proud* OF
taub gegen, *deaf* TOWARD
verliebt in (acc.), *enamored* OF

292. Comparison with er and eſt is not confined, as in English, to short words; e. g. der allerchriſtlichſte König, *the most Christian king;* das allererbärmlich-langweiligſte Ding von der Welt.

1. A participle should not be compared unless it is in use, or admits of use, as an adjective in the positive degree; e. g. reizender, *more charming;* am bedeutendſten, *most important;* die gewagteſte Annahme, *the boldest assumption.* But exceptions are very frequent in the classics; e. g. etwas Unterrichtenderes (H.), *something more instructive;* an dem in die Augen fallendſten Orte (L.) *in the most obvious place;* auf der blühendſten Wieſe (U.), *on the most flowery meadow.*

2. Adjectives in iſch may drop the e of the superlative ending eſt, but should retain the ſ; e. g. der närriſcheſte or närriſchſte not närriſchte.

293. Umlaut in the Comparative and Superlative appears in fewer words than formerly. In the classics we find such forms as behäglicher, flächer, klärer, which are no longer used. Forms with umlaut are often heard in the dialects where the literary language prefers the unmodified vowel. The following adjectives regularly have umlaut in the comparative, the * marking those for which usage is unsettled:

alt, *old*
arg, *bad*
arm, *poor*
*bang, *afraid*
*blaß, *pale*
*brav, '*good*'
dumm, *stupid*
fromm, *pious*
*geſund, *healthy*
*glatt, *smooth*
grob, *rude*
groß, *great*
hart, *hard*
hoch, *high*
jung, *young*
kalt, *cold*
*karg, *stingy*
klug, *clever*
krank, *sick*
kurz, *short*
lang, *long*
nah, *near*
*naß, *wet*
rot, *red*
ſcharf, *sharp*
*ſchmal, *narrow*
ſchwach, *weak*
ſchwarz, *black*
ſtark, *strong*
warm, *warm*

a. The forms without umlaut seem preferable in case of bang, blaß brav (bräver, der brävſte are South German), geſund, karg ; those with umlaut in case of glatt, naß, ſchmal.

294. Absolute and Relative Comparison. In relative comparison one object is compared with another or with others, as in er iſt älter als ich; die Roſe iſt die ſchönſte aller Blumen. Absolute comparison expresses simply an eminent degree; e. g. eine ältere Dame, *an elderly lady ;* die neueren Sprachen, *the modern languages ;* ein höchſt lehrreiches Buch, *a most instructive book.*

1. The relative superlative is usually preceded by der and may be qualified by a prefixed aller, by some other partitive genitive, or by a phrase with von; e. g. der allerkühnſte Held, *the boldest of all heroes ;* der Güter höchſtes, *the highest of blessings ;* dem ärmlichſten von allen Erdenſöhnen (G.), *the poorest of all the sons of earth.*

a. Except allerliebſt, which is now felt as an absolute superlative, a relative superlative without der may not stand in the predicate; one may say das Bild iſt allerliebſt, *is most lovely*, but not iſt ſchönſt, nor allerſchönſt.

2. The absolute superlative is generally denoted by an adverb, as höchſt, äußerſt, ſehr, recht, überaus, durch und durch; or by composition, as wunderſchön, *wonderfully fine ;* blutwenig, *mighty little ;* pudelnaß, *wet as a drowned rat.*

a. Occasionally the inflected superlative is used absolutely; e. g. weil es die wenigſten können (G.), *since very few can do it ;* Leidenſchaften, die ſich in ſeinem ſchönſten Leibe darſtellten (Arndt), *passions which showed themselves in his most beautiful body.* But in the last example wunderbar ſchönen would be more idiomatic.

3. After ein an inflected superlative is not in general to be approved, since A *highest* is necessarily THE *highest.* Still one meets with ein höchſtes Weſen, *a supreme Being ;* cf. also es gibt ein Äußerſtes in allen Dingen, *there is an extreme in all things.* Goethe is fond of this construction.

4. For *the greatest possible* one may say der größtmögliche or der möglichſt große. The former is more logical, the latter probably more usual. An awkward double superlative, der größtmöglichſte, also occurs.

5. The phrase with am (§ 112) forms a relative superlative capable of use only in the predicate. Its ordinary and proper function is to compare an object not with other objects, but with itself under other conditions; e. g. Schiller war am größten als Dramatiker, *S. was greatest as dramatist.* Here am größten = *at the greatest;* cf. English *at his best.* Cf. further, es wäre mir am liebſten, *it would be* MOST *agreeable to me*, i. e. *I should prefer*, but es wäre mir äußerſt lieb, *it would be extremely agreeable to me.*

a. But modern German often uses the phrase with am in comparing an object with other objects.

295. Comparison with mehr and am meiſten is less common than with *more* and *most* in English (§ 292). The form with mehr is to be preferred whenever the comparison is between different qualities rather than between different degrees of the same quality; e. g. er iſt mehr gelehrt als klug, *he is more learned than wise.*

a. But even in this case good writers sometimes use the comparative in er; thus Goethe has ernſter als lieblich, *more serious than winsome.*

1. Mehr and am meiſten are also used in comparing the indeclinables in § 289, 2; e. g. ſie war mehr ſchuld als ich (G.), *she was more to blame than I;* was mir am meiſten leid tut, *what grieves me most.*

2. Aside from the cases mentioned above, comparison with mehr and am meiſten may occur where it is not strictly required, especially with participial adjectives; e. g. niemand iſt mehr geplagt (G.), *more plagued;* der am meiſten gebildete (G.), *the most cultivated;* ein mehr beſonnenes Gemüt (Platen), *a more circumspect disposition.*

3. Note that the simple meiſt as modifier does not form a superlative, but = meiſtens, *for the most part;* e. g. ſie iſt meiſt liebenswürdig, does not mean *she is most amiable*, but *she is amiable as a general thing.*

296. Defective and Irregular Comparison. (Supplementary to § 114).

1. The following adjectives, denoting position, have no positive except in the form of the preposition or adverb

from which they are derived: äußer, *outer;* hinter, *hinder* inner, *inner;* nieder, *lower;* ober, *upper;* unter, *lower;* vorder, *further forward.* The superlative is formed in each case by adding ſt to the comparative; der äußerſte, der hinterſte etc.

2. Mittler, *middle* (superlative mittelſt), has positive meaning, the real positive mittel having gone out of use except in compounds: thus die Mittelſtufe or die mittlere Stufe, *the middle stage.*

3. The stem of erſt, *first*, appears in ehe, *before*, and eher, *ere;* that of letzt, *last*, in the obsolete laß, *lazy.* Erſteſt and letzteſt occur, but are needless monstrosities.

4. For Goethe's meiner = mehr mein, see § 308, 2.

USE OF THE NUMERALS

297. Notes upon the Cardinals. The form eins is used in counting (where no noun is thought of), except when und follows; e. g. eins, zwei, drei; einmal eins iſt eins; hundert und eins; but ein und zwanzig. So too in giving the time, e. g. halb eins, *half past 12.* But in all these cases ein is also correct, and is preferred in parts of Germany.

a. A thousand and one nights (the noun being fem.) = tauſend und eine Nacht; but *a hundred and one reasons*, or *years* (the noun being mas. or neu.), = hundert und ein Gründe, Jahre.

1. The declined forms zweier, dreier, zweien, dreien are apt to be used when the case would not otherwise be obvious; e. g. durch zweier Zeugen Mund (G.), *by the mouth of two witnesses;* was zweien zu breit iſt dreien zu enge, *too broad for two, too narrow for three.*

a Down to about the close of the 18th century the form zween, *twain*, was used for the mas. and neu., and zwo for the fem.; thus Voss wrote zwo Nächte zugleich und zween der Tag'. These forms, as also the ordinal zwot- = zweit-, are now obsolete or dialectic.

2. The numbers from drei to zwölf are generally unvaried, but may form a nominative or accusative in e (less often a dative in en) in colloquial language, when no noun follows; e. g. es waren unſer fünfe, *five of us.* Note also the phrases

auf allen vieren, *on all fours;* mit vieren, *with coach and four;* vor vieren (G.), *before 4 o'clock.*

3. Fünfzehn, fünfzig are better than funfzehn, funfzig. Fufzehn, fufzig are colloquial. The short forms ſechzehn, ſechzig, ſiebzehn, ſiebzig, are more common than ſechszehn, ſechszig, ſiebenzehn, ſiebenzig.

4. Hundert and tauſend can be used as substantives; e.g. viele Hunderte, *many hundreds;* zu Tauſenden, *by thousands.* Million is regularly so used; hence zwei Millionen, not zwei Million.

298. Expressions of Time. In giving a date the year is designated by a cardinal number, with or without preceding im Jahre; e.g. Schiller iſt 1805 geſtorben (or im Jahre 1805, but in 1805 is not good), *Schiller died in 1805.*

1. The day of the month is designated by an inflected ordinal, with preceding article, followed by the name of the month without preposition; thus am 4. (or 4ten, both being read vierten) Juli, 1776, *on July 4, 1776.* In dating a letter the accusative without preposition (den 4. Juli, 1776) is usual.

2. For the time of day the following are the usual forms of expression: um ſechs (Uhr), *at six (o'clock);* es iſt 6 vorbei, or nach 6, *it is past 6;* ein Viertel (auf) 7, *a quarter past 6;* halb 7, *half past 6;* drei Viertel (auf) 7, *a quarter to* 7.

3. *It happened in the fifties* = es geſchah in den fünfziger Jahren, or in den Fünfzigern. The same for *a man in the fifties.*

299. Numeral Derivatives. Besides those mentioned in § 118 are to be noted:

1. Iteratives in mal, as dreimal, *thrice;* multiplicatives in fach, as dreifach, *threefold;* variatives in erlei, denoting number of kinds, as dreierlei, *of three kinds;* ordinal adverbs in ens, as drittens, *thirdly.*

2. The obsolete or archaic compounds of ſelb; e.g. ich fuhr ſelbdritt(er), *I traveled with two others* (myself the third); ſelbviert, *with*

three others, etc. Selbander, *with one other*, takes the place of ſelb-zweit-, ander having once been commonly used in the sense of *second* (*secundus*); cf. am andern Tage, *on the following day*.

SYNTAX OF THE PRONOUN

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS

300. The Genitive of the personal pronouns occurs mostly with verbs, adjectives and numerals; e. g. ſchone meiner (Heine), *spare me;* ihr Inſtrumente ſpottet mein (G.), *mock me;* dein denk' ich alle Zeit, *I think of thee* (song); ſeiner uneingedenk, *unmindful of him*. After nouns it is rare; e. g. durch die Vergeſſenheit deiner (H.), *forgetfulness of you;* aus Verachtung euer (S.), *from contempt of you*.

1. The short forms mein, dein, ſein, are older than meiner, deiner, ſeiner, and are probably possessives in their origin. They occur chiefly in poetry. In the genitive plural the original and proper forms are unſer and euer, but unſrer and eurer occur in the classics; e. g. und eurer wahrlich hätt' ich nicht gefehlt (S.), *I should not have missed you;* ja dann bedarf es unſerer nicht mehr (S.).

2. The old gen. es still survives in certain locutions, but is no longer felt as a gen.; e. g. ich bin es müde, bin es zufrieden, *I am tired of it, satisfied with it*, where it is felt as an acc.; es nimmt mich Wunder, *I wonder*, where it is felt as a nom. (§ 265, 1, *d*).

301. The Pronouns of Address. The literary use of the pronouns of address is a somewhat complicated subject, the bare essentials of which are as follows:

a. Originally du was the only pronoun used in addressing one person. In the 9th century the plu. ihr began to be employed in certain social relations for politeness' sake, du being retained for all cases where formal politeness would be either unnecessary or out of place, e. g. in addressing intimates, inferiors, the lower animals, inanimate objects, the heart, the soul, one's self in soliloquy; also in prayers and apostrophes to supernatural beings, absent or imaginary persons, abstract qualities, etc. This has always been, and still largely continues to be, the usage of the higher poetry.

1. In the classics, then, ihr, as applied to one person, is polite or deferential, while du is simply natural. Du may imply familiarity or contempt, but it may also comport with the highest regard — a regard that feels no need of artificial speech.

a. Thus in Goethe's *Iphigenie* and *Tasso* the characters use only du. Sometimes fine shades of meaning turn upon the use of the pronoun : thus in *Tell*, l. 1690, the change from ihr to du marks the clearing up of a lover's misunderstanding. In *Faust*, l. 300, the transition from du to ihr marks a *descent* from the tone of reverence to that of everyday polite intercourse. In *Nathan* the hero uses the polite ihr to the obscure Templar, but stands on his dignity in returning the Sultan's du with du.

2. Toward the end of the 16th century began the practice of using Herr, Frau and Fräulein as a polite circumlocution for ihr. This led presently to the use of er, *he*, and ſie, *she*, as pronouns of address.

a. Both usages survive in the classics ; e. g. was ſteht dem Herrn zu Dienſten (*Faust*, l. 1322)? *how can I serve the gentleman* (i. e. *you*)? komme der Herr nur wieder mit zurück, *just come back again with me*, (*Nathan*, I, 3, where the Friar, who usually says ihr to the Templar, several times substitutes the more ceremonious der Herr) ; ſuch' Er den redlichen Gewinn (*Faust*, l. 548), *seek you* (i. e. *let him, the 'gentleman' seek*) *honest gain ;* ach ſeh' Sie nur (ibid. l. 2881), *oh, just see!*

b. Er was at first the acme of politeness ; it survived longest as a form of address to a social or official inferior, as from ruler to subject, master to servant, teacher to pupil. In the classics the sudden transition from du to Er may denote vexation, as in *Faust*, l. 548 and l. 2304 ; that from Er to du, as in *Faust*, l. 2882, an increase of cordiality, a putting aside of ceremony.

3. The next stage was the employment of Sie, *they*, in the sense of *you*.

a. This grew out of the use of a verb in 3. plu. with titles ; e. g. Eure Majeſtät ſind, *your majesty are*, instead of *is ;* Herr Doktor wurden katechiſiert (*Faust*, l. 3523), *the doctor* WERE *catechized*. In such a locution as the last, if a pronoun were to take the place of Doktor, it could only be ſie, *they*. This awkward form of address, which poetry for the most part repudiates, became established about the middle of the 18th century.

4. At present, then, in the language of common life, one uses Sie in addressing strangers (one or more), acquaintances, or any but very intimate friends. Social differences count for nothing, except that for princes and high dignitaries the old forms Euer (Eure) Gnaden, Hoheit, Majeſtät, Excellenz etc. with plural verb are still in use. Du is said to a member of one's family, an intimate friend, a very young child, an animal or a thing. Ihr is appropriate only as plural; i. e. in adressing several persons each one of whom would be du. In advertisements and notices to the public at large good usage avoids a pronoun of direct address.

5. As to the writing of the pronouns of address usage is still somewhat unsettled. Sie and Ihr, when they mean *you* and *your*, are always given a capital. Also Er, Sie = *she*, and their possessives, are best written with a capital when used in address. As to du, dein, ihr, euer, there is no uniformity, but Ihr rather than ihr is usual in referring to one person. The rules recommend that these pronouns be given a capital in letters, where the word will fall under the eye of the person addressed.

302. Omission of Personal Pronouns. As a rule a pronominal subject is expressed, except in the imperative, but ich, du, er, ſie, es, are often omitted in colloquial language; e. g. (ich) danke Ihnen, *thank you;* (ich) bitte, '*please*'; (es) ſchadet nichts, *it does no harm;* (ich) heiße Magiſter (*Faust*, l. 360); (du) erkenneſt dann (ibid. l. 422); (er) geht da ſtracks (ibid. l. 2867).

a. For the omission of es with impersonal verbs see § 204, 2.

1. Far less common is the omission of wir, ihr, ſie (plu.), but cases occur.

2. In the imperative du and ihr are omitted unless emphatic, as in führe du mein Heer (S.), *do thou lead my army.* The other pronouns er, ſie, wir, Sie, are always expressed.

3. The omission of ich in letter-writing is characteristic of the commercial style; e. g. Ihr Geehrtes vom geſtrigen Datum habe erhalten, (*I*) *am in receipt of your favor of yesterday.*

303. Special Uses of es. Besides serving as pronoun of reference to a neuter noun, es has a variety of special uses, as follows:

1. As indefinite subject of impersonal verbs; e. g. es regnet; es tut mir leid. The poets often use such an impersonal es to convey an idea of something mysterious, vast, or gruesome; e. g. bahnlos liegt es hinter mir (S.), *a trackless waste lies behind me;* regt sich's nicht quillend schon (G.)? *is there not already a quickening stir?*

a. The es in es gibt, *there is*, denotes in a general way the situation, or state of affairs, which 'gives,' i. e. affords, or produces, what is denoted by the object (cf. § 340). Quite similar is the es in es hat Gefahr, *there is danger;* es setzt Hiebe, *there is a fight on.*

2. As subject of ist or sind (without reference to the gender or number of the predicate noun) in expressions of identity; e. g. es ist mein Bruder; es ist meine Schwester; es sind Freunde von mir, *they are friends of mine.*

a. But for *it is I, it was you*, etc. (where the predicate is itself a pronoun), German reverses the order, saying ich bin es, du warst (Sie waren) es, etc.

3. As expletive, or formal subject, with all sorts of verbs, to anticipate a real subject which, for any reason, is to come after the verb. This use of es is only in part parallel to that of English *there;* e. g. es war einmal ein König, *there was once a king;* es lebe die Freiheit! *long live freedom!* es irrt der Mensch, *man errs.*

a. The office of the expletive in such cases is simply to justify the inversion. In old German, however, and even later in poetry, the inversion may occur without es; e. g. sah ein Knab' ein Röslein stehn (G.), *a boy saw a little rose growing.*

4. As indefinite object with certain verbs, taking the place of English *it, things, matters;* e. g. es ist ohne Beispiel, wie sie's treiben (S.), *how they carry things on;* wie wir's dann so herrlich weit gebracht (G.), *how we have brought matters so gloriously far.*

a. Sometimes es is used loosely for an object or subject inferrible from, but not distinctly contained in, the context. See e. g. *Faust*, ll. 285, 534.

5. To avoid repetition of a noun, adjective, pronoun, or clause; e. g. er iſt glücklich (iſt Gelehrter, iſt einer der Großen), ich bin es nicht, *he is happy (is a scholar, is one of the leaders), I am not;* wie viel Uhr iſt es? ich weiß es nicht, *what time is it? I do not know.*

6. To refer to a number of persons in a general way; e. g. was ſich ſonſt an meinem Lied erfreuet, wenn es noch lebt (*Faust*, l. 24), *they who* (was) *once delighted in my song, if they still live.*

304. The Reflexive. In a simple independent sentence the reflexive of the third person is always ſich; e. g. ſie hatte kein Geld bei ſich, *she had no money with her;* der Krieg bringt Elend mit ſich, *war brings misery with it;* ſie haben eine ſchöne Zukunft vor ſich, *they have a fine future before them.*

a. But in old German, just as in the English of the above examples, the personal pronoun was used reflexively in the dat. The usage is common down to the 18th century; e. g. die Heiden ſind ihnen ſelbſt ein Geſetz (Lu.), *the heathen are a law unto themselves.*

b. Sich not referring to the subject is rare, but one may say die Freundſchaft verbindet die Menſchen unter ſich, *binds men among themselves*, i. e. *together.*

1. In a subordinate clause ſich refers to the subject of the clause, the subject of the principal verb being referred to by a personal pronoun; e. g. er belobte die Soldaten, die ſich gehorſam gegen ihn bewieſen hatten (Blatz), *he praised the soldiers who had shown themselves obedient to him.*

a. So, too, when the subordinate clause is represented by an infinitive or an adjective: e. g. ſie bat ihn ſich zu entſchuldigen und ſie zu begleiten, *to excuse himself and accompany her;* er borgte das ihm nötige Geld, *he borrowed the money needful to him.*

2. Sich as reciprocal may be ambiguous; ſie gefallen ſich may mean *they please themselves* or *they please each other.* The uncertainty can be removed by the use of the true

reciprocal einander, the adverb gegenſeitig, *mutually*, or the Gallicism der eine, der andere, — ſie gefallen ſich, der (die) eine dem (der) andern.

3. Observe that the usual equivalent of the objective *myself*, *thyself*, etc. is the simple mich, dich, etc. Selbſt or ſelber is added only when emphasis is desired.

THE POSSESSIVES

305. The Absolute Possessive. In agreement with a noun the possessive is always some form of mein, dein, ſein, unſer, euer, ihr, inflected as in § 125; but for the possessive used absolutely, i. e. without a noun, there is a choice between three, in the predicate sometimes four, forms of expression; e. g. *your judgment is more favorable than mine* = Ihr Urteil iſt günſtiger als meines, or das meine, or das meinige.

a. In meaning these forms are to a large degree interchangeable, but der meine belongs in general to more stately, der meinige, to more familiar diction. In the predicate the uninflected form implies simple ownership, while inflection may denote emphasis or contrast; e. g. das Buch iſt mein, but es iſt nicht dein Buch, es iſt meines.

1. Letters end with such formulas as Hochachtungsvoll Ihr (der Ihre, der Ihrige), *respectfully yours;* ganz der Ihrige, der Deinige, etc.; Ihr (Dein) treuer, ergebener, treueſter, ergebenſter, etc.

2. *A friend of mine, a relative of yours* = ein Freund von mir, ein Verwandter von Ihnen.

306. The Compounds meinetwegen, meinesgleichen, etc.

1. Meinetwegen comes from an old dat. plu. *minen wegen* (i. e. meinen Wegen) used adverbially. Developing an excresent t the phrase became meinentwegen, which is still sometimes met with, tho the usual form drops n before t. The halben of meinethalben is also a dat. of Halb, *half*, *behalf*, *sake;* here again the stages were meinen Halben, meinenthalben, meinethalben. Meinetwillen comes from um meinen Willen, *for my sake*, with the same phonetic development as in the other cases.

2. In meinesgleichen we have the adjective gleich, *like*, governing a preceding gen. which logically should be the personal pronoun mein

or meiner, but became the possessive, giving *my like* instead of *the like of me*. The s is hard to account for. It may be due to the analogy of desgleichen, or of noun-stems with gen. in s. After meines the adjective naturally took a weak form.

3. Such compounds as meinerseits, *on my part*, and meinesteils, *for my part*, come under § 251, 3.

307. Notes upon sein and ihr. As in English the possessive of the third person may refer reflexively to the subject of the sentence (= Latin *suus*) or to another noun (= Latin *ejus*); e. g. die Sonne vollendet ihre Reise, *the sun completes its journey;* ihr Anblick gibt den Engeln Stärke (G.), *its aspect* (i. e. *the sight of it*) *gives strength to the angels.*

1. Where an ambiguity might arise it should be avoided by the use of der or derselbe for the possessive that does not refer to the subject of the sentence; e. g. er verdrängte seinen Bruder und trat an dessen Stelle (or an Stelle desselben), *he crowded out his brother and took his* (the brother's) *place;* er besuchte seinen Sohn und dessen Frau, *he visited his son and his daughter-in-law.*

a. Such an ambiguous possessive as appears in the English *he ordered his servant to polish his boots* can be avoided in German by the right use of the dative: er befahl seinem Bedienten ihm die Stiefel zu putzen has reference to the master's boots, sich die Stiefel zu putzen, to the servant's own boots. But many would be content to say seine Stiefel and let the ambiguity stand, as in English.

2. Formerly sein might refer to a fem. noun, ihr being not yet in use as a reflexive possessive. Traces of this usage survive in colloquial phrases; e. g. die Sache hat seine Richtigkeit, *the thing is quite true;* sein Tor kennt jede Kuh, *every cow knows her own gate.*

a. Note further the stereotyped adverb seiner Zeit, meaning not only *in his* or *its time*, but *in her time*, *in our time*, or simply *in due time;* e. g. wir waren seiner Zeit muntere Burschе, *we were merry lads in our day.*

308. Archaisms and Irregularities. In popular poetry the possessive (of course uninflected) may follow its

noun; e. g. Roland gedacht' im Herzen fein = in ſeinem Herzen, *in his heart.*

1. The form Ihro, in Ihro Majeſtät, *your Majesty*, is an old gen. plu. of ſie, introduced in quite modern times after the analogy of Dero (§ 309, 5). It is used only in princely titles, and is either mas. or fem., sing. or plu.

2. The comparison of a possessive, as in Goethe's nun iſt das meine meiner als jemals, *now mine is more mine than ever*, is a bold poetic license. Ordinarily one would say mehr mein.

THE DEMONSTRATIVES

309. Der. (Supplementary to §§ 129–131).

1. The inflection of der was at first precisely that of the definite article, the long forms deſſen, deren, denen being of quite modern origin. Present usage prescribes deſſen, deren, denen when the pronoun is used absolutely, but des, der, den when a noun follows; e. g. des Adels rühme dich (S.), *boast of that nobility;* infolge deſſen, *in consequence of that.*

a. But des, der, are used absolutely in compounds; e. g. deshalb, deswegen (also deſſentwegen), dergleichen, etc. Other archaic exceptions occur in the classics; e. g. des wird Jupiter ergrimmt (G.), *at that Jupiter becomes wroth;* die Gegenwart des, der die Donner wirft (S.), *the presence of him that hurls the thunderbolts.*

2. For the genitive plural of der the usual form is now deren, unless a relative clause follows, in which case derer is preferred, especially if the pronoun refers to persons; e. g. deren habe ich viele geſammelt (G.), *I have collected many of them;* die Mißgunſt derer, die das Übermaß meines Glückes beleidigte (W.), *the ill-will of those whom the excess of my happiness offended.*

a. Derer occurs before noble names even if there is no relative; e. g. das Schloß derer von Stein, *the castle of the Von Steins.*

3. Der is the pronoun most often used before a genitive or phrase with von, to take the place of a noun previously mentioned; e. g. die Wege Gottes ſind verſchieden von denen des Menſchen, *the ways of God are different from those of men;*

die Bevölkerung Londons iſt größer als die von Paris, *greater than that of Paris.* Derjenige also occurs in this use, but is not so good.

a. Das, for die referring to persons, is usually contemptuous; e. g. das ſchlendert wie die Schnecken (S.), *those fellows dawdle like snails.*

5. Dero is an old gen. plu. once common in ceremonious address before high titles; as Dero Gnaden, *your* (properly *their*) *Grace.*

310. The Compounds of da do not refer to living beings, but exceptions occur in familiar language; e. g. ein Paar Kerle, worüber ſie ſtreiten können (G.), *a brace of fellows to quarrel about;* ein Vater hatte drei Söhne, davon (cf. § 314) war der älteſte klug und geſcheit (Gr.), *three sons of whom the eldest was shrewd and clever.*

1. A compound of da should not stand as the antecedent of a relative; e. g. *I thought of what you said* = ich dachte an das (not daran), was du ſagteſt. Note also that some prepositions, notably ohne, never combine with da.

2. Tmesis of a da-compound is rare in literary language, but common in certain dialects; e. g. da behüte mich Gott vor (= davor behüte mich), *God keep me from that.*

311. The Determinatives. De'rjenige is an emphatic der used to particularize the antecedent of a relative; e. g. das iſt derjenige, von dem wir redeten, *that is the man we were talking about;* diejenige Freiheit, die ich mir herausnehme (Kant), *the (particular) liberty I take.*

1. Derſe'lbe must refer to something already known. It is a frequent substitute for er, ſie, es; e. g. Kleinigkeiten, die er von Marianen erhalten oder derſelben geraubt hatte (G.), *trifles that he had received from Mariane or stolen from her.*

a. Some prescribe that derſelbe always be substituted for the acc. es governed by a preposition; e. g. das Kind iſt krank; wir wollen für dasſelbe ſorgen, *we will take care of it.* But others repudiate this rule and prefer für es.

b. Observe the contractions am ſelben Tag = an demſelben Tag, zur ſelben Zeit = zu derſelben Zeit; sometimes also zu dieſer (jener) ſelben Zeit, *at this (that) selfsame time.* Selbig-, for ſelb-, is obsolescent.

c. Einundderſelbe, *one and the same*, is best written as one word with ein uninflected; thus an einunddemſelben Tage, rather than an einem und demſelben.

d. In ceremonious address Dieſelben, sometimes with prefixed Hoch Höchſt, Allerhöchſt, may take the place of Sie.

2. Solch is sometimes used, but not very elegantly, for derſelbe; e. g. ich glaube, meine Gedanken ſind wahr; prüfen Sie ſolche (S.), *I believe my thoughts are true; test them.*

3. The indeclinables ſelbſt and ſelber, while treated in Part I for convenience with the personal pronouns, are not strictly of that class, since they do not denote a person, but emphasize pronouns of every person and also nouns. They may be regarded as a species of determinatives.

a. The two forms ſelbſt and ſelber do not differ in meaning, but ſelbſt may be used adverbially = *even*, while ſelber can not. Further, ſelber always follows the word it emphasizes, while ſelbſt may precede or follow. Cf. § 289, 2, *b*.

THE INTERROGATIVES

312. Wer and was never agree with a noun, seeming exceptions with was being old partitive genitives which have lost an s; e. g. was Wunder(s), *what wonder;* was Teufel! *what the deuce!* Cf. § 253, 2, *b*.

1. Weſſen is less used than *whose;* for *whose picture is that?* idiom prefers (referring to the person portrayed) wer iſt das auf dem Bilde? (referring to the owner of the picture) wem gehört das Bild? The form wes is rare except in compounds, but occurs adjectively; e. g. wes Sinnes der Herr ſei (G.), *of what mind the master may be.*

2. Colloquially, not so often in literature, was is used after prepositions that govern the dative; e. g. zu was taugt es? *what is it good for?* mit was kann ich dienen? *how can I serve you?* Here wozu and womit would be better. On the other hand warum, wofür, etc., are very often, but unnecessarily, substituted for um was, für was, etc.

3. Was is very common in the sense of warum; e. g. was reitſt du ſo ſchnelle (G.)? *why do you ride so fast?* This was is an adverbial accusative.

313. Welch and was für. The neuter welches is sometimes used absolutely (like es, das and was) without reference to the gender or number of a following predicate noun; e. g. die Eltern sannen einen ganzen Tag, welches der schönste Name sei (Riehl), *queried which was the most beautiful name.*

1. Was für is always used adjectively; was für ein, usually so, but sometimes without a noun. In the latter case ein has pronominal inflection; e. g. ein Grund ist es allerdings, aber was für einer! *a reason it is to be sure, but what kind of one!*

THE RELATIVES

314. Der and welch. Der as relative is of secondary origin, having developed out of the demonstrative der. Hence the frequent use of the latter, especially in folk-tales, where one would expect a relative; e. g. es war einmal ein alter König, der war krank, *he was sick*, instead of der krank war, *who was sick*. Cf. also the example with davon in § 310.

1. The genitive singular of der is dessen, deren, dessen, the genitive plural deren (not derer), and the dative plural denen; but short forms, identical with those of the article der, occur in the classics; e. g. die Krone, der (for deren) mein Fürst mich würdig achtete (G.), *the crown of which my prince deemed me worthy;* die Heil- und Linderungskraft, der wir stündlich bedürfen (G.).

2. The use of der as 'compound' relative (containing its own antecedent) is not uncommon; e. g. ach! der mich liebt und kennt, ist in der Weite (G.), *alas, he who loves and knows me is far away.* Such a der differs from wer in that it refers to a particular antecedent.

3. In early modern German a relative is often preceded by als, the effect being a subaudition of cause; e. g. ihr habt diesen Menschen zu mir bracht, als der das Volk abwende (Lu.), *ye have brought this man unto me as one that perverteth the people.* Later this als became all but pleonastic and has now gone out of use, tho common in Lessing and Goethe; e. g. Äneas, als welcher sich an den bloßen Figuren ergö-

tzet (L.), *Æneas, who delights in the mere figures;* aus dem Zimmer, als in welchem ſie allein Ruhe hatte (G.), *from the room in which alone she had peace.*

315. Wer and was. The implied antecedent of wer must be expressed (always *after* wer), if there is change of construction; e. g. wer nicht denkt, dem wird ſie geſchenkt (G.), *who does not think, to him it is given.* In other words, wer can stand only for der, der (not for dem, der, nor for den, der).

a. The rule applies also to was, but less rigidly, since the form was is both nom. and acc.; thus it is permissible to omit das in was ich nicht weiß, (das) macht mich nicht heiß, *what I don't know does'nt bother me;* or even in was mich nicht brennt, (das) blaſ' ich nicht, *what doesn't burn me I don't blow.*

1. Distinguish between the interrogative in wer könnte das glauben? *who could believe that?* the indefinite relative in es iſt wahr, was man auch glauben mag, *it is true, whatever one may think,* and the exclamatory indefinite in wer ſo etwas glauben könnte! *as if any one could believe that!*

2. In general was is not used in referring to a definite noun, but exceptions occur in good writers; e. g. die Alten kannten das Ding nicht, was wir Höflichkeit nennen (L.), *the ancients did not know the thing which we call politeness.* Conversely, das or welches is sometimes used for was in referring to a sentence; e. g. ihm hatte man Hilarien beſtimmt, das ihm ſehr wohl bekannt war (G.), *they had destined Hilarie for him, which was very well known to him.*

3. The form wes is still sometimes used adjectively, just as often in the classics; e. g. wes Standes er auch ſein mochte, *of whatever station he might be.* Without a noun wes is archaic, save in compounds.

4. Was referring to persons is not uncommon in familiar language; e. g. früh übt ſich, was ein Meiſter werden will (S.), *he who wishes to become a master practices early.*

316. Relative Adverbs. A compound of wo or wes is never positively required except when the antecedent is

not a noun or pronoun; thus for *the book of which we were speaking*, *the task I am writing upon*, one may say das Buch, von dem, von welchem, or wovon; die Aufgabe, an der, an welcher, or woran. But in *he rises early, by which he saves much time*, one can only say wodurch, not durch welches, nor durch das, tho durch welches Mittel would be permissible. So also ich war krank, weshalb (not wegen dessen) ich nicht schreiben konnte, *for which reason I could not write.*

1. So as relative is now archaic, but was once very common; e. g. heilig ist das Gesetz, so dem Künstler Schönheit gebietet (S.), *holy is the law which*, etc.

2. An untranslatable da is sometimes added to a relative as a kind of generalizing particle; e. g. wen da dürstet, *whoever thirsts;* keiner, der da dichtet (G.), *no one who makes poetry.* But the usage is now quaint.

a. In like manner a pleonastic denn is often inserted — it is especially common in Goethe — after a relative pronoun or particle; e. g. ihr Betragen, das mir denn nun freilich in einem ganz anderen Lichte erschien (G.), *her conduct that now appeared to me in a quite different light.*

3. Da and its compounds usually have demonstrative force, rarely that of a relative; as in die Zeiten, da ich noch selbst im Werden war (G.), *the times when I myself was still growing.* Allwo and woselbst, relative particles = wo, are archaic.

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

317. All. The undeclined all is most common before der or a possessive in the nominative and accusative singular, masculine and neuter; e. g. all der Schmerz, *all the pain;* all das Leid; all seinen Kummer. In the genitive it is rare but occurs; e. g. der Schauplatz all meiner Glückseligkeit (G.), *the scene of all my happiness.*

1. The form alle occurs mostly after prepositions that govern the dative; as von alledem, *from all that;* aus alledem; trotz alledem. But it may stand as nominative; e. g. alle das Neigen (G.), *all the inclining;* alle sein Mammon (S.), *all his wealth.*

2. Alles may mean *everybody*, as in alles tanzte wie toll (G.), *everybody was dancing like mad*. It may also follow wer, was and even wem, without change of form; e. g. wer war alles da? *who all was there?* wem alles gabſt du das Geld (Gr.)?

3. All does not admit of weak inflection: one says der Vater unſer aller (not allen); das alles, dies alles, nach dem allem (better than allen). For allenfalls, see § 288, 1, *a*.

4. In the classics all sometimes = jed-, *every*; e. g. aller Zuſtand iſt gut (G.), *every condition is good*; bei allem irdiſchen Ding (S.); die Frauen alles Standes (G.). In these cases present usage would prefer the sing. of jed- or the plu. of all. Cf. alle Tage, *every day*; alle paar Minuten, *every few minutes*. Quite common are: wir haben allen Grund, allen Anlaß, *every reason, every occasion*.

5. In like manner early writers use all in the sense of ganz, *the whole*; e. g. allen Winter (Logau); durch alles Leben (Frank). One would now say den ganzen Winter, durch das ganze Leben. Cf. die ganze Nacht, *all night*; ganz Amerika, *all America*. But alle Welt is still common, along with die ganze Welt, for *all the world, tout le monde*.

6. After ohne, all and jed- occur sometimes in the sense of Eng. *any*; e. g. ohne allen (or jeden) Begriff, *without any idea*.

7. Note finally the idioms in aller Eile, *in all haste*; in aller Frühe, *very early in the morning*; also es (der Wein, die Freude) iſt alle, i. e. *is all gone*; er wird ſein bißchen Geld bald alle machen, *he will soon make an end of (run thru) his little money*.

318. Ein-. As pronoun ein- may take the place of (irgend) jemand, *some one, any one*; e. g. da liegt ſchon einer tot (G.), *there lies some one dead*; da fragt niemand, was einer glaubt (S.), *what any one believes*.

1. The neuter form eins may refer to a person; e. g. nun ſag' mir eins (G.), *now let some one tell me*; wenn unſer eins am Spinnen war (G.), *when you and I were at our spinning*.

a. More often it is used, sometimes almost untranslatably, as cognate object of ſingen, trinken and other verbs; e. g. eins ſingen, *sing a song*; eins trinken, *take a drink*; wenn dir das Mädchen keimt, da liebt ſie eins zum Spaß (G.), *she just falls in love for fun*.

319. Einig- and its Synonyms. For the singular of einig- present usage prefers a substitute (ein, irgend ein,

ein wenig, etwas), but it is not uncommon in literature; e. g. aus Furcht des Todes oder sonst einiges Dinges (Claudius), *from fear of death or some other thing;* nach einiger Pause (G.), *after a short pause;* nicht ohne einiges Bedenken, *not without some hesitation.*

1. The plu. einige implies, according to Grimm, more than two but less than five. For five or more one says mehrere, eine Menge, manche, viele. The ill-sounding einige wenige occurs in the sense of *a few*, but *a few* is better denoted by einige alone, or else by ein paar. Note the orthographic distinction in ein paar Minuten, *a few minutes*, but ein Paar Stiefel, *a pair of boots.*

a. Etliche, welche and etwelche have the same meaning as einige, but etwelche is obsolete and etliche becoming so.

2. Einige may precede a numeral; e. g. einige zwanzig, *twenty odd.* The article ein is sometimes used in a similar way; e. g. ein acht Tage, *some eight days.*

3. Mehre for mehrere is not good. For the phrase morgen ein Mehres (L.), *more to-morrow*, one would now prefer morgen mehr, Weiteres, or das Weitere.

320. Etwas, was, nichts. Both was and etwas may mean *something of importance;* e. g. laßt mich auch etwas sein, *let me be something too;* sie rüsten sich schnell, denn sie dünken sich was (G.), *for they think themselves 'some.'*

1. The acc. of etwas forms a common adverb = *somewhat, a little;* e. g. etwas kalt, *somewhat cold.* Distinguish therefore between etwas besser, *somewhat better*, and etwas Besseres, *something better.*

2. Nichts, tho classed for convenience with pronominals, is really a substantive — the gen. of *niht* = *naught*, — which is still preserved as a dat. in the phrases zunichte werden, *come to naught*, and mit nichten, *by no means.* In early modern German nicht took a partitive gen.; e. g. und hätte der Liebe nicht (Lu.), *and had not love*, i. e. *naught of love.* This construction still occurs in the phrase hier ist meines Bleibens nicht, *there is no staying here for me.*

321. Man and its Compounds. Man, from Mann, like French *on* from *homo*, does not individualize at all, whence it is never preceded by irgend, though it may approach the meaning of irgend jemand; e. g. man pocht, *there is a*

knock, some one is knocking. Most often it is an indefinite representative of people at large, mankind, the public, as in man ſagt, *they say, it is said;* man kommt zu ſehn, man will am liebſten ſchaun (G.), *people come to see, they wish to gaze.*

1. Again, man may take the place of a personal pronoun of any person. Goethe often uses it for ich in describing his own doings, and interchanges it with wir in the same sentence. Man ſchweige is much the same, only less brusque, as ſchweige, ſchweigt, or ſchweigen Sie. The policeman says wer iſt man? was will man hier? for *who are you? what do you want here?*

2. Jemand and niemand are compounds of man with excrescent d. For the dative and accusative present usage prefers the uninflected form, tho the dative in em and (less often) the accusative in en, still occur. Their plural is supplied by einige and keine.

322. Viel and wenig. With these words there is great freedom in the use of uninflected forms. Inflection is required only after der or a possessive; e. g. das viele Geld, das er beſitzt, *the large amount of money that he possesses;* trotz ſeines vielen Geldes; mein Weniges, *my little.*

a. But wenig after der or a possessive and in agreement with a noun in the singular is not common. For ſein weniges Talent (G.), *his little talent*, one would now prefer ſein geringes Talent, ſein kleines, or ſein bißchen Talent.

1. Except after der or a possessive, inflection prevails in the plural and genitive singular (where it may be needed to show case), non-inflection in the nominative singular, masculine and neuter; elsewhere both are about equally common. Examples: ſchon viele Tage (S.), *these many days;* er freut ſich vieler Ehre, *enjoys much honor;* viel Lärm um nichts, *much ado about nothing;* viel Geſchrei und wenig Wolle, *much noise and little wool;* viel Dank, *many thanks;* mit vieler Mühe; mit wenig Witz und viel Behagen (G.); viel Grüße hat er aufgetragen (G.).

2. Sometimes inflection is associated with the idea of variety; e. g. ich meine nicht vieles, ſondern viel; ein weniges, aber mit Fleiß (L.); *I*

mean not (a little in) much, but much (in little); a small quantity, but with care. Stahr writes: ich habe vieles geſehen, hier und da auch viel, *many things, here and there also much (of importance);* wer vieles bringt (G.), *he who offers a great variety;* viel Wein, *much wine;* vieler Wein, *many kinds of wine.*

THE VERB

SUPPLEMENTARY DETAILS ON CONJUGATION

323. Haben and ſein as Auxiliaries. All transitive verbs (including reflexives), the modal auxiliaries and many intransitives are conjugated with haben.

1. With a very few exceptions (bleiben, geſchehen, gelingen, glücken, ſein) the verbs that form their perfect tenses with ſein contain the idea of transition from one place or condition to another. They either denote literal motion, as gehen, kommen, or else a change of status, as altern, berſten.

a. Often this idea of change is given by a prefix, and thus we may have a compound conjugated with ſein, while the simple verb takes haben; e. g. ſchlafen, *sleep*, and einſchlafen, *fall asleep*; ſtehen, *stand*, and erſtehen, *arise*. Such compounds are quite numerous and only a few specimens of them are given in the list below. The most important of the verbs that take ſein are, then, the following, together with their intransitive compounds:

altern, *grow old*
aufſtehen, *arise*
begegnen, *meet*
berſten, *burst*
bleiben, *remain*
eilen, *hurry*
entſchlafen, *fall asleep*
erſcheinen, *appear*
ertrinken, *drown*
erwachen, *awaken*
fahren, *go*
fallen, *fall*
fliegen, *fly*
fliehen, *flee*
fließen, *flow*
folgen, *follow*
frieren, *freeze*
gedeihen, *thrive*
gehen, *go*
gelingen, *succeed*
geneſen, *recover*
geſchehen, *happen*
gleiten, *glide*
glücken, *succeed*
klimmen, *climb*
klettern, *clamber*
kommen, *come*
kriechen, *creep*
laufen, *run*
quellen, *gush forth*
reiſen, *set out*
reiten, *ride*
rennen, *run*
rinnen, *flow*
ſcheitern, *be wrecked*
ſchleichen, *creep*
ſchmelzen, *melt*
ſchreiten, *stride*
ſchwimmen, *swim*
ſein, *be*
ſinken, *sink*
ſpringen, *spring*
ſteigen, *climb*
ſterben, *die*
ſtürzen, *rush*
treten, *step*
verarmen, *grow poor*
verhungern, *starve*
wachſen, *grow*
weichen, *recede*
werden, *become*
ziehen, *pass*

b. Intransitives that do not come under any of these heads are conjugated with haben. This is the case not only with verbs which contain no idea of motion, as ſchlafen, *sleep*, but also with verbs of motion that denote simply a verbal activity, without any idea of transition from one point to another. Verbs of motion that are usually of this character are omitted from the list above. Such are, e. g. hüpfen, *hop;* knieen, *kneel;* rauſchen, *rustle;* ſchwanken, *waver;* ſchweben, *sweep;* tanzen, *dance.* But any of these may take ſein, if they express transition; e. g. der Vogel iſt durchs Fenſter gehüpft, *has hopped thru the window.*

c. On the other hand several of the verbs in the list above may take haben if the tense denotes simply a verbal activity, or a temporal, rather than a local, relation; e. g. die haben ſchon was Rechts geſprungen (G.), *have danced a good bit*, but one would say ſind ins Waſſer geſprungen, *have leaped into the water;* er hat viel gereiſt, *he has traveled much*, but er iſt nach Paris gereiſt, *has set out for Paris;* das Kind hat erſt heute gegangen, *has never walked until to-day*, but iſt heute von einem Stuhl zum andern gegangen, *walked from one chair to the other;* ich habe eine Stunde geritten, *I rode for an hour*, but ich bin aufs Land geritten, *rode into the country;* ich habe fortgefahren, *I continued*, but ich bin fortgefahren, *I went away.*

d. The general principle regulating the use of haben and ſein is simple: haben calls attention to a verbal action, ſein to the state or condition that has resulted from the action. There is, however, much confusion of the two auxiliaries, ſein being often used where the rule would call for haben; cf. Goethe's iſt viel gereiſt (*Faust*, l. 3019). Even ſtehen, ſitzen and liegen are sometimes conjugated with ſein. On the other hand, begegnen and folgen occur with haben.

324. Omission of the Auxiliaries. The auxiliaries of tense are often omitted at the end of a dependent clause; e. g. dasjenige, was wir von andern gehört (sc. haben), *that which we have heard from others;* das iſt im Feld derſelbe Rain, wo wir dereinſt gegangen (sc. ſind), *the selfsame tract where we once walked.*

a. In this way it is often possible to avoid an unpleasant concurrence of auxiliaries; e. g. der Sieg, den er errungen (hatte), hatte bewieſen, daß —, *the victory he had won had proved that —;* was damit gewonnen worden (war), war unbedeutend, *what had been gained by this, was insignificant.*

b. The frequent omission of the auxiliary is characteristic of certain authors, e. g. Lessing, Goethe, Richter. With writers on style the matter is a moot-question, some advocating, others disapproving,

the '*hatte-war* style.' In general it is not well to omit the auxiliary if an ambiguity of mode or tense would result. On the other hand, in such a sentence as the following, quoted by Wustmann, the two final war's would be intolerable: da die Zeit, für die das Herrenhaus gewählt worden (war), abgelaufen war, *since the time had expired for which the House of Lords had been chosen.*

325. Periphrastic and Causal Auxiliaries. Standard German recognizes no auxiliary corresponding to English *do* in *I do believe*, *I did think*, etc., but tun is so used in dialect, and the usage is more or less reflected in literature; e. g. die Augen täten ihm ſinken (G.), *his eyes sank*, i. e. *did sink;* (ich) tät ihn recht herzlich lieben (G.), *I loved him right heartily.*

a. Tun as auxiliary usually has pret. ind. tät, not tat. See the examples above. This tät, which looks like a subjunctive but is not, comes from the middle High German *tete*, which was both indicative and subjunctive.

1. Laſſen, *let*, is sometimes called a causative auxiliary, but its meaning may be permissive as well as causal; e. g. laß mich gehen auf deiner Spur (Stolberg), *let me go upon thy track* (permissive); die Mutter ließ einen Pfaffen kommen (G.), *had a priest come* (causal); ich laſſe mir meinen Hermann nicht ſchelten (G.), *I will not let my Hermann be scolded.*

a. On the peculiar passive use of the active inf. after laſſen, as in the last example, see § 366, 1, *a.*

b. Machen, *make*, also occurs as causative auxiliary: e. g. ihr habt mich weidlich ſchwitzen machen (G.), *you have made me sweat vigorously.*

326. Omission of the Augment ge.

1. The prefix ge was not at first a necessary element of the perfect participle. In composition with verbs the particle had various functions, one of which was to denote the completion of the action; e. g. *do der haubtman gelas den brief*, *when the captain finished reading the letter.* Becoming thus associated with the idea of completed action, the particle attached itself more and more to the perfect participle and finally became a regular 'sign' of that form.

a. The above statement sufficiently explains the occasional occurrence in the classics of such participles as funden, for gefunden; kommen, for gekommen, etc. They are survivals.

2. At present the following classes of verbs regularly form their perfect participle without ge:

a. Inseparable compounds and verbs in ie'ren, — because of a feeling that ge should not immediately precede an unaccented syllable.

b. The modal auxiliaries, and also heißen, laſſen, ſehen, when the participle occurs in connection with an infinitive; e. g. ich habe es nicht tun können, *I have not been able to do it;* er hat mich rufen laſſen, *he has had me called.* The old participle of these verbs looks and sounds like an infinitive; for which reason several other verbs that have followed their analogy put the infinitive in place of the participle when an infinitive precedes. Such are, quite regularly, helfen, hören, which seems to have followed ſehen, and sometimes also brauchen, lehren, machen and lernen; e. g. ich habe ſagen hören, *I have heard say;* ich hatte ihn kennen lernen, *I had learned to know him*; ihr habt mich ſchwitzen machen (G.), *you have made me sweat.*

c. Werden in the passive voice, to avoid two concurrent forms with ge.

d. Certain adjective compounds, as hausbacken, *home-baked, homely* (backen instead of gebacken); halbwachſen, *half-grown.*

327. Use of the Connecting Vowel and the Endings. The rules in § 176 present the normal usage of to-day, but there are many exceptions. Solemn or stately diction tends to long forms, easy talk to short, while the poet may take advantage of either for his meter's sake; e. g. redſt du von einem der da lebet (S.)? ich habe gelebt und geliebet (S.); die ſchönſte Jungfrau ſitzet (Heine); begreife nicht, was er an mir find't (G.). Here the normal forms would be: redeſt, lebſt, geliebt, ſitzt, findet.

1. In talk it is usual to drop the connecting vowel e in the pres. ind. 2. sing. after a sibilant (contrary to § 176, 3). In such cases the ſ of the ending ſt is also dropped and the form becomes identical with the 3. sing.; thus du wiſcht, instead of wiſcheſt; du lieſt, for lieſeſt; du läßt, for läſſeſt; du ſitzt, for ſitzeſt. In the pret. such contractions (du aßt, for du aßeſt, from eſſen) are much more rare.

a. So too a final t of the stem is not heard (tho it is best to write it) before ſt; i. e. hältſt, giltſt, fichtſt, are pronounced, usually, hälſt, gilſt, fichſt.

2. In the imv. 2. sing. the ending e belongs properly to all weak verbs. If, therefore, it is omitted, an apostrophe is proper; e. g. lieb'

ſolang du lieben kannſt ; folg' nur dem alten Spruch (G.). But faſſ', preſſ', and the like, become faß, preß.

a. Strong verbs have no ending in the imv. 2. sing. after a radical i or ie changed from e ; thus hilf, tritt, lies. In other cases the use of the final e is in large measure optional. It is quite uniformly omitted in komm, laß and lauf. In beiß(e), fließ(e), geh(e), halt(e), ſauf(e), ſchlaf(e), ſchlag(e), ſchrei(e), ſchweig(e), ſteh(e), ſtoß(e), tu(e), trag(e), zieh(e), the omission of e is at any rate so common that no apostrophe is needed.

b. Strong verbs with radical e that have vowel-change in the pres. ind. should have it also in the imv. 2. sing. ; but trete for tritt, nehme for nimm, meſſe for miß, and other such substitutions of weak for strong inflection, are common in good writers.

3. In early modern German a spurious final e is sometimes found in the pret. ind. 1. and 3. sing. of strong verbs; as ſahe for ſah.

328. Strong and Weak Conjugation.

1 As in the case of nouns, so in that of verbs, the terms 'strong' and 'weak' were introduced by Grimm. They were intended to contrast those verbs which form their pret. by means of an internal vowel-change, thus seeming to rely upon their own inner 'strength,' with those which have the 'weakness' to rely upon foreign aid in the shape of a suffix. The terms are fanciful, but convenient and in universal use. They are at any rate better than 'old' and 'new,' and far better than 'irregular' and 'regular.'

2. The characteristic 'ablaut' of strong verbs (sometimes translated by *gradation*, as umlaut is by *mutation*), is a definite series of changes undergone by the radical vowel in different forms derived from the same root. It is by no means confined to verbs ; thus with binden, band, gebunden, cf. the nouns Binde, Band, Bund.

3. The vowel-change of the pres., in strong verbs, is always a species of umlaut tho it is not always marked by the modern sign of umlaut. It is due (cf. § 21) to the former presence of an i in the endings of the 2. and 3. sing. Thus du trägſt, er trägt, represent an earlier *du tragis(t), er tragit ;* whereas the forms now without umlaut had no i in the ending : ich trage, from *ih tragu*, wir tragen, from *wir tragem-(es)*, etc.

a. Verbs with radical ie formerly made a pres. ind. 2. and 3. sing. and an imv. 2. sing. in eu ; e. g. fleugſt, fleugt, instead of fliegſt, fliegt, from fliegen ; kreuchſt, kreucht, instead of kriechſt, kriecht, from kriechen. These archaic forms are often met with in the classics.

4. In Old and Middle German the pret. of most strong verbs had two different ablaut-stages, i. e. two different radical vowels, one for

the sing., the other for the plu.; thus *ich sang*, *I sang*, but *wir sungen*, *we sang*; *ich reit*, *I rode*, but *wir riten*, *we rode*. In modern German the vowel of the sing. has usually prevailed for the entire tense. In some cases, however, the vowel of the plu. was transferred to the sing. (cf. Eng. *I sang* and *I sung*), giving rise to doublets, such as ich ſtand and ich ſtund. Such double preterits were once common, and one of them, ward, wurde, still survives. Ward is more stately and bookish than wurde.

a. The secondary vowel of the pret. is much more apt to appear in the subj. than in the ind.; thus while ich ſturb, from ſterben, no longer occurs, ich ſtürbe, is common. It even has the advantage of ich ſtärbe, in that it is not liable to be confounded by the ear with ich ſterbe. There are many such cases.

329. Ablaut Classes.

1. It is impossible to draw up a classification of strong verbs that will appreciably facilitate the learning of their forms. They must simply be memorized one by one. The only classification that is of any use (and its value is scientific rather than practical) is that which groups together those verbs which originally had the same series of vowel-changes in their principal parts. Such a group is called an ablaut class.

2. There are in all seven such classes. Since, however, the classification is based primarily upon the older forms, which have undergone great changes with the lapse of time, it can not be made fully intelligible without detailed historical explanations which lie beyond the scope of this work. (Consult Brandt's *German Grammar*, §§ 122 ff. and 459 ff.) In the subjoined scheme is given, first, the vowel of the inf.; then, after the first dash, the vowel of the pret., and after the second dash the vowel of the perf. pple. The statistical numbers refer to the list in § 331. The classes, then, are as follows:

Class I: Ablaut ei — i, ie, — i, ie; e. g. reiten, ritt, geritten; bleiben, blieb, geblieben. 43 verbs.

Class II: Ablaut ie, ü, au, — o — o; e. g. fließen, floß, gefloſſen; lügen, log, gelogen; ſaufen, ſoff, geſoffen. 33 verbs.

Class III: e, i, — a short — u short, o short; e. g. werfen, warf, geworfen; binden, band, gebunden. 47 verbs.

Class IV: Ablaut e, ä — a long — o; e. g. brechen, brach, gebrochen; gebären, gebar, geboren. 16 verbs.

Class V: Ablaut i, e, ie, — a long — e; e. g. bitten, bat, gebeten; geben, gab, gegeben; liegen, lag, gelegen. 15 verbs.

Class VI: Ablaut a — u — a; e. g. fahren, fuhr, gefahren. 15 verbs.

Class VII: Vowel-change which looks like ablaut, but is not; a, au, ei, o, u — ie — a, au, ei, o, u; e. g. fallen, fiel, gefallen; laufen, lief, gelaufen; ſtoßen, ſtieß, geſtoßen. 18 verbs.

Remark. A few verbs have passed out of the class to which they originally and properly belong. Thus bellen, *bark*, formerly made pret. ball, pple. gebollen. But ball early gave way to boll (with the vowel of the pple.), and bellen, boll, gebollen, does not conform to any of the seven classes as above given. In the list below such cases are denoted by a bracketed number; e. g. bellen [III] means that the verb once belonged to Class III.

330. Irregular Weak Verbs. Nine weak verbs have in the preterit and perfect participle a vowel-change which looks like ablaut. These are:

Inf.	*Pret. Ind.*	*Perf. pple.*	*Pret. subj.*
brennen, *burn*	brannte	gebrannt	brennte
bringen, *bring*	brachte	gebracht	brächte
denken, *think*	dachte	gedacht	dächte
dünken, *seem*	deuchte	gedeucht	deuchte
kennen, *know*	kannte	gekannt	kennte
nennen, *name*	nannte	genannt	nennte
rennen, *run*	rannte	gerannt	rennte
ſenden, *send*	ſandte	geſandt	ſendete
wenden, *turn*	wandte	gewandt	wendete

a. dünken, ſenden and wenden are often regular; brennen, kennen, nennen and rennen, rarely so.

1. The only other weak verbs that present any irregularities are haben (§ 171), the modal auxiliaries (§ 189) and wiſſen (§ 190).

331. List of Strong Verbs.

The following list is meant to contain all the verbs of late modern German that have any strong forms. After the principal parts is given, first, the pres. ind. 2. sing., from which the 3. sing. can usually be got by simply dropping ſ of the ending ſt; thus, du bäckſt, er bäckt. Whenever the 3. sing. can not be got in this way, as in du giltſt, er gilt, it is given separately. Next comes the pret. subj. 1. sing., and then the imv. 2 sing., the latter distinguished by an [!]. The Roman numeral gives the ablaut class to which the verb belongs or belonged (§ 329, remark). Obsolete forms are enclosed in [ ], forms that are not to be recommended in ( ). For beginnen, verderben, etc., see under -ginnen, -derben.

Backen, *bake*, buk, gebacken; bäckſt; büke; back(e)! VI. — Often weak thruout, except that there is no pple. gebackt. Buk has short u. Gebakken without ge occurs in hausbacken, neubacken, etc.

-bären, -bar, -boren; -bierſt or bärſt; -bäre; -bier! or -bäre! IV. — Only in gebären, *give birth to* (earlier geberen, whence gebierſt, gebiert, gebier!). Gebäre as pret. subj. is avoided, being like the pres.

Beißen, *bite*, biß, gebiſſen; beiß(eſ)t, beißt; biſſe; beiß(e)! I.

Bellen, *bark*, [boll,] [gebollen]; [billſt]; [bölle]; [bill!] [III.] — Now always weak, but strong forms occur in the classics. Grimm wrote: ein Hund bellt noch heute, wie er zu Anfang der Schöpfung boll, with weak pres. and strong pret. in the same sentence.

Bergen, *hide*, barg, geborgen; birgſt; bürge or bärge; birg! (berge!). III.

Berſten, *burst*, barſt, [borſt], geborſten; birſteſt or birſt, birſt; börſte or bärſte; birſt! III. — Often weak thruout.

Biegen, *bend*, bog, gebogen; biegſt [beugſt]; böge; biege! [beug!] II.

Bieten, *offer*, bot, geboten; bieteſt [beutſt, beut]; böte; biete! [beut!] II.

Binden, *bind*, band, gebunden; bindeſt; bände; binde! III.

Bitten, *ask*, bat, gebeten; bitteſt; bäte; bitte! V.

Blaſen, *blow*, blies, geblaſen; bläſ(eſ)t, bläſt; blieſe; blaſ(e)! VII. — Sometimes weak in pres. The pret. blus (Claudius) is jocose.

Bleiben, *remain*, blieb, geblieben; bleibſt; bliebe; bleib(e)! I.

-bleichen, -blich, -blichen; -bleichſt; -bliche; -bleich(e)! I. — Strong only in erbleichen, verbleichen, *turn pale, die*, which may be weak in the pret. Bleichen, *bleach*, is weak.

Braten, *roast*, briet, gebraten; brätſt, brät; briete; brate! VII. — Sometimes weak, but no gebratet.

Brechen, *break*, brach, gebrochen; brichſt; bräche; brich! (breche!) IV. — Radebrechen, *murder* (a language), is weak: radebrechte, geradebrecht.

-deihen, -dieh, diehen; -deihſt; -diehe; -deihe! I. — Only in gedeihen, *thrive*.

-derben, -darb, -dorben; -dirbſt; -dürbe or -därbe; -dirb! III. — Only in verderben, *ruin, be ruined*, which is apt to be weak when transitive. Verderbt means *morally corrupt;* ein verderbtes Herz, but ein verdorbener (*bankrupt*) Kaufmann.

Dingen, *hire*, dang, gedungen; dingſt; dinge! III. — Originally and still, usually, weak. Pret. subj. always dingte, not dänge, nor dünge. Bedingen, *stipulate*, is usually weak, always so in the ppl. adj. bedingt, *conditioned*.

Dreſchen, *thresh*, drasch or drosch, gedroſchen; driſch(eſ)t, driſchſt; dröſche, or dräſche; driſch! III.—Often weak.

=drießen, =droß, =droſſen. Only in verdrießen, *vex*, which is hardly used except in the 3. sing.; verdrießt [=dreußt]; verdröſſe. II.

Dringen, *press*, drang [drung], gedrungen; dringſt; dränge [drünge]; dringe! III.

Eſſen, *eat*, aß, gegeſſen; iſſeſt or ißt, ißt; äße; iß! (eſſe!) V. — Ge=eſſen contracted to geſſen (cf. *Faust*, l. 2838), where ge ceased to be felt as a prefix, and so was prefixed anew.

Fahren, *go*, fuhr, gefahren; fährſt; führe; fahre! VI.

Fallen, *fall*, fiel, gefallen; fällſt; fiele; falle! VII.

Fangen [fahen], *catch*, fing (fieng), gefangen; fängſt [fähſt]; finge (fienge); fange! VII.

Fechten, *fight*, focht, gefochten; ficht(e)ſt, ficht; föchte; ficht! [III.] — Sometimes weak.

=fehlen, =fahl, =fohlen; =fiehlſt; =föhle or =fähle; =fiehl! (=fehle!) IV. — Only in befehlen, *command*, and empfehlen, *recommend*. Fehlen, *fail*, is weak.

Finden, *find*, fand, gefunden; findeſt; fände; finde! III.

Flechten, *braid*, flocht, geflochten; flicht(e)ſt, flicht; flöchte; flicht! [III.]—Sometimes weak.

=fleißen, =fliß, =fliſſen; =fleißeſt, =fleißt; =fliſſe; =fleiße! I. — Only in ſich befleißen, *attend to*.

Fliegen, *fly*, flog, geflogen; fliegſt [fleugſt]; flöge; fliege; [fleug!] II.

Fliehen, *flee*, floh, geflohen; fliehſt [fleuchſt]; flöhe; fliehe! [fleuch!] II.

Fließen, *flow*, floß, gefloſſen; fließ(eſ)t [fleußt], fließt [fleußt]; flöſſe; fließe! [fleuß!] II.

Fragen, *ask*, fragte (frug), gefragt; fragſt (frägſt); fragte; frage! VI. —A weak verb that has developed strong forms after the analogy of ſchlagen and tragen. But the weak forms are better.

Freſſen, *eat* (said of animals), fraß, gefreſſen; friſſeſt or frißt, frißt; fräße; friß! (freſſe!) V. — A compound of ver and eſſen.

Frieren, *freeze*, fror, gefroren; frierſt; fröre; friere! II.

Gären, *ferment*, gor, gegoren; gierſt; göre; [gier!] [IV.] — Usually weak, especially in the figurative sense *be perturbed*.

Geben, *give*, gab, gegeben; gibſt (giebſt); gäbe, gib! (gieb!) V.

Gehen, *go*, ging (gieng), gegangen; gehſt; ginge (gienge); geh! VII.

Gelten, *be worth*, galt, gegolten; giltſt, gilt; gölte or gälte; gilt! (gelte!) III.

-geſſen, -gaß, -geſſen; -giſſ(eſ)t or -gißt, -gißt; -gäße; -giß! (-geſſe!) V. — Only in **vergeſſen,** *forget.*

Gießen, *pour,* goß, gegoſſen; gieß(eſ)t [geußt], gießt [geußt]; göſſe; gieße! [geuß!] II.

-ginnen, -gann, -gonnen; -ginnſt; -gänne or gönne; -ginne! III. — Only in **beginnen,** *begin.* Begonnte for begann, occurs in the classics.

Gleichen, *be like,* glich, geglichen; gleichſt; gliche; gleiche! I. — Usually weak in the transitive sense *make like.*

Gleißen, *shine,* gliß, gegliſſen; gleiß(eſ)t, gleißt; gliſſe; gleiße! I. — Now usually weak, but little used in any form.

Gleiten, *glide,* glitt, geglitten; gleiteſt; glitte; gleite! I. — Sometimes weak.

Glimmen, *glimmer,* glomm, geglommen; glimmſt; glömme; glimme! [III]. — Sometimes weak.

Graben, *dig,* grub, gegraben; gräbſt; grübe; grabe! VI.

Greifen, *seize,* griff, gegriffen; greifſt; griffe; greife! I.

Greinen, *grin,* [grinn], [gegrinnen]; greinſt; [grinne]; greine! I. — Now weak, and used only in the sense of *whine, cry.*

Halten, *hold,* hielt, gehalten; hältſt, hält; hielte; halte! VII.

Hangen, *hang,* hing (hieng), gehangen; hängſt; hinge (hienge); hange! VII. — There is also a weak hängen, which, like hangen, is both transitive and intransitive.

Hauen, *hew,* hieb, gehauen; hauſt; hiebe; haue! VII. — Hieb is for hiew; there is no change of stem, as in gehen, ging.

Heben, *raise,* hob or hub, gehoben; hebſt, hübe or höbe; hebe! [VI.] The old pple. gehaben survives in **erhaben,** *exalted.*

Heißen, *call, be called,* hieß, geheißen; heiß(eſ)t, heißt; hieße; heiße! VII.

Helfen, *help,* half, geholfen; hilfſt; hülfe or hälfe; hilf! (helfe!) III.

Keifen, *quarrel,* [kiff], [gekiffen]; keifſt; [kiffe]; keife! I. — Now always weak.

Kieſen, *choose,* kor, gekoren; kieſ(eſ)t; köre; kieſe! II. — Often weak. Cf. küren.

Klieben, *cleave,* klob, gekloben; kliebſt; klöbe; kliebe! II. — Usually weak, and little used in any form.

Klimmen, *climb,* klomm, geklommen; klimmſt; klömme; klimme! [III.] — Often weak.

Klingen, *sound,* klang, geklungen; klingſt; klänge; klinge! III. — Often weak.

Kneifen, *pinch*, kniff, gekniffen; kneifſt; kniffe; kneife! I.—Often weak.

Kneipen, *pinch*, [knipp,] [geknippen]; kneipſt; [knippe]; kneipe! I.—Now always weak. Kneipen, *drink*, is weak.

Kommen, *come*, kam, gekommen; kommſt (kömmſt); käme; komm! [IV.]—Kömmſt, kömmt, are common in the classics, but kommſt, kommt, are to be preferred.

Kreiſchen, *scream*, kriſch, gekriſchen; kreiſch(eſ)t, kreiſcht; kriſche; kreiſche! I. See under kreißen.

Kreißen, *scream*, [kriß], [gekriſſen]; kreiß(eſ)t, kreißt; [kriſſe]; kreiße! I.—Both kreißen and kreiſchen, related words, are often weak, kreißen now regularly so.

Kriechen, *creep*, kroch, gekrochen; kriechſt [kreuchſt]; kröche; krieche! [kreuch!] II.

Küren, *choose*, kor, gekoren; kürſt; köre; küre! II.—Often weak. The pret. kor, of kieſen, gave rise to the spurious present küren.

Laden, *load*, lud, geladen; lädſt, lädt; lüde; lade! VI.—Laden, *invite*, was at first weak, but early became confounded with laden, *load*. Both now prefer weak forms in the pres., strong in the pret.

Laſſen, *let*, ließ, gelaſſen; läſſeſt or läßt, läßt; ließe; laß! VII.

Laufen, *run*, lief, gelaufen; läufſt (laufſt); liefe; lauf! VII.

Leiden, *suffer*, litt, gelitten; leideſt; litte; leide! I.—Entleiden and verleiden, from Leid, are weak. So is bemitleiden, *pity*, from Mitleid.

Leihen, *lend*, lieh, geliehen; leihſt; liehe; leihe! I.

Leſen, *read*, las, geleſen; lieſ(eſ)t, lieſt; läſe; lies! (leſe!) V.

=lieren, =lor, =loren; =lierſt; =löre; =liere! II.—Only in verlieren, *lose*.

=lingen, =lang, =lungen; 3. sing. =lingt; =länge. III.—Only in gelingen, *succeed*, and mißlingen, *fail*. Used impersonally.

Löſchen, *go out*, *put out* (of a light), loſch, geloſchen; liſch(eſ)t, liſchſt; löſche; liſch! [III.]—Often weak, especially, when transitive. Originally leſchen, whence liſcheſt, liſcht, liſch!

Lügen, *lie*, *speak falsely*, log, gelogen; lügſt; löge; lüge! II.

Mahlen, *grind*, [muhl], gemahlen; [mählſt]; [mühle]; mahle; VI.—Now weak, except gemahlen.

Meiden, *shun*, mied, gemieden; meideſt; miede; meide! I.

Melken, *milk*, molk, gemolken; milkſt; mölke; milk! [III].—Now usually weak.

Meſſen, *measure*, maß, gemeſſen; miſſeſt or mißt, mißt; mäße, miß! (meſſe!) V.

Nehmen, *take*, nahm, genommen; nimmſt; nähme; nimm! (nehme!) IV.

=neſen, =nas, =neſen; =neſ(eſ)t, =neſt; =näſe; =neſe! V. — Only in geneſen, *recover*.

=nießen, =noß, =noſſen; =nieß(eſ)t, =nießt; =nöſſe; =nieße! II. — Only in genießen, *enjoy*.

Pfeifen, *whistle*, pfiff, gepfiffen; pfeifſt; pfiffe; pfeife! I.

Pflegen, *attend to*, pflog [pflag], gepflogen; pflegſt; pflöge [pfläge]; pflege! [IV.] — Weak in the sense of *nurse*, or *be accustomed*.

Preiſen, *praise*, pries, geprieſen; preiſ(eſ)t, preiſt; prieſe; preiſe! I. — Sometimes weak.

Quellen, *gush forth*, quoll, gequollen; quillſt, quölle; quill! [III.] — Du quillſt, er quillt, early gave rise to a weak quillen. Quellen, *soak*, is weak.

Rächen, *avenge*, [roch], [gerochen]; rächſt; [röche]; räche! [IV.] — Now weak.

Raten, *advise*, riet, geraten; rätſt, rät; riete; rate! VII. — Rarely weak.

Reiben, *rub*, rieb, gerieben; reibſt; riebe; reibe! I.

Reißen, *tear*, riß, geriſſen; reiß(eſ)t; reißt; riſſe; reiße! I.

Reiten, *ride*, ritt, geritten; reiteſt; ritte; reite! I.

Riechen, *smell*, roch, gerochen; riechſt [reuchſt]; röche; rieche! [reuch!] II.

Ringen, *wrestle*, rang, gerungen; ringſt; ränge [rünge]; ringe! III. — Ringen, *form a ring*, and beringen, *give a ring to*, are weak. So is umringen, *surround*, usually; but umrang, umrungen occur.

Rinnen, *run* (of water), rann, geronnen; rinnſt; ränne or rönne; rinne! III.

Rufen, *call*, rief, gerufen; rufſt; riefe; rufe! VII. — Rarely weak.

Salzen, *salt*, [ſielz], geſalzen. VII.—Now weak, except geſalzen.

Saufen, *drink*, ſoff, geſoffen; ſäufſt; ſöffe; ſaufe! II.—Often weak.

Saugen, *suck*, ſog, geſogen; ſaugſt; ſöge; ſauge! II.—Often weak.

Schaffen, *create*, ſchuf, geſchaffen; ſchafft; ſchüfe; ſchaffe! VI.—Schaffen, meaning *work*, *procure*, *command*, is weak.

Schallen, *sound*, ſcholl, geſchollen; ſchallſt; ſchölle; ſchalle! [III.]—Now usually weak, except in stately diction. The forms blend two verbs, viz., a weak ſchallen and a now obsolete ſchellen, ſchall, geſchollen.

=ſchehen, =ſchah, =ſchehen; 3. sing. =ſchieht, =ſchähe. V.—Only in geſchehen, *happen*, and there only in 3. sing.

Scheiden, *part*, ſchied, geſchieden; ſcheideſt; ſchiede; ſcheide! I.—Weak forms are rare and always transitive. Notice the doublet beſchieden, *appointed*, but beſcheiden, *modest*.

Scheinen, *seem*, ſchien, geſchienen; ſcheinſt; ſchiene; ſcheine! I.

Schelten, *scold*, ſchalt, geſcholten; ſchiltſt, ſchilt; ſchölte or ſchälte; ſchilt! (ſchelte!) III.—Rarely weak in pres.

Scheren, *shear*, ſchor, geſchoren; ſchierſt; ſchöre; ſchier! [IV.].—Often weak.

Schieben, *shove*, ſchob, geſchoben; ſchiebſt; ſchöbe; ſchiebe! II.

Schießen, *shoot*, ſchoß, geſchoſſen; ſchieß(eſ)t [ſcheußt], ſchießt [ſcheußt]; ſchöſſe; ſchieße! [ſcheuß!] II.

Schinden, *flay*, ſchund, geſchunden; ſchindeſt; ſchünde; ſchinde! [III.]—Rarely weak.

Schlafen, *sleep*, ſchlief, geſchlafen; ſchläfſt; ſchliefe; ſchlafe! VII.

Schlagen, *strike*, ſchlug, geſchlagen; ſchlägſt; ſchlüge; ſchlage! VI.

Schleichen, *creep*, ſchlich, geſchlichen; ſchleichſt; ſchliche; ſchleiche! I.

Schleifen, *whet*, ſchliff, geſchliffen; ſchleifſt; ſchliffe; ſchleife! I.—Weak in the sense of *slip* or *drag*.

Schleißen, *slit*, ſchliß, geſchliſſen; ſchleiß(eſ)t, ſchleißt; ſchliſſe; ſchleiße! I.

Schliefen, *slip*, ſchloff, geſchloffen; ſchliefſt; ſchlöffe; ſchliefe! II.

Schließen, *shut*, ſchloß, geſchloſſen; ſchließ(eſ)t [ſchleußt], ſchließt [ſchleußt]; ſchlöſſe; ſchließe! [ſchleuß!] II.

Schlingen, *wind*, ſchlang, geſchlungen; ſchlingſt; ſchlänge; ſchlinge! III.

Schmeißen, *dash*, ſchmiß, geſchmiſſen; ſchmeiß(eſ)t, ſchmeißt; ſchmiſſe; ſchmeiße! I.

Schmelzen, *melt*, ſchmolz, geſchmolzen; ſchmilz(eſ)t, ſchmilzt; ſchmölze; ſchmilz! [III.]—Often weak, especially when transitive.

Schnauben, *snort*, ſchnob, geſchnoben; ſchnaubſt; ſchnöbe; ſchnaube! II.—Now usually weak, but strong forms occur.

Schneiden, *cut*, ſchnitt, geſchnitten; ſchneideſt; ſchnitte; ſchneide! I.

Schnieben, *snort*, ſchnob, geſchnoben; ſchniebſt; ſchnöbe; ſchniebe! II.—Now usually weak; a secondary form of ſchnauben.

Schrauben, *screw*, ſchrob, geſchroben; ſchraubſt; ſchröbe; ſchraube! II.—Originally, and still usually, weak.

Schrecken, *be afraid*, ſchrak, [geſchrocken]; ſchrickſt; ſchräke; ſchrick! IV.—Often weak, especially when transitive = *frighten*. Most common in erſchrecken; erſchrocken takes the place of geſchrocken.

Schreiben, *write*, ſchrieb, geſchrieben; ſchreibſt; ſchriebe; ſchreibe! I.

Schreien, *cry*, ſchrie, geſchrieen; ſchreiſt; ſchriee; ſchreie! I.

Schreiten, *stride*, ſchritt, geſchritten; ſchreiteſt; ſchritte; ſchreite! I.

Schroten, *grind*, [ſchriet], geſchroten. VII.— Weak, except geſchroten.

Schwären, *fester*, ſchwor (ſchwur), geſchworen; ſchwierſt; ſchwöre (ſchwüre); ſchwier! [IV.] — Now usually weak in pres., sometimes so in pret. Pple. always geſchworen.

Schweigen, *be silent*, ſchwieg, geſchwiegen; ſchweigſt; ſchwiege; ſchweige! I. — Schweigen, *silence*, is weak.

Schwellen, *swell*, ſchwoll, geſchwollen; ſchwillſt; ſchwölle; ſchwill! (ſchwelle!) [III.] — Weak when transitive.

Schwimmen, *swim*, ſchwamm (ſchwomm), geſchwommen; ſchwimmſt; ſchwämme (ſchwömme); ſchwimme! III.

Schwinden, *vanish*. ſchwand [ſchwund], geſchwunden; ſchwindeſt; ſchwände [ſchwünde]; ſchwinde! III.

Schwingen, *swing*, ſchwang [ſchwung], geſchwungen; ſchwingſt; ſchwänge [ſchwünge]; ſchwinge! III. — Beſchwingen, *endow with wings*, is weak.

Schwören, *swear*, ſchwor or ſchwur, geſchworen; ſchwörſt; ſchwüre or ſchwöre; ſchwöre! [VI.] — Rarely weak.

Sehen, *see*, ſah, geſehen; ſiehſt; ſähe; ſieh! (ſehe)! V.

Sein, *be*, war, geweſen; biſt, iſt; wäre; ſei! V. (ſein replacing weſen).

Sieden, *boil*, ſott, geſotten; ſiedeſt; ſötte; ſiede! II. — Now usually weak; but geſotten as adjective is still common.

Singen, *sing*, ſang [ſung], geſungen; ſingſt; ſänge [ſünge]; ſinge! III.

Sinken, *sink*, ſank [ſunk], geſunken; ſinkſt; ſänke [ſünke]; ſinke! III.

Sinnen, *think*, ſann, geſonnen; ſinnſt; ſänne; ſinne! III. — Sometimes weak. Geſonnen ſein = *to intend;* geſinnt ſein, *to be minded.*

Sitzen, *sit*, ſaß, geſeſſen; ſitz(eſ)t, ſitzt; ſäße; ſitze! V.

Spalten, *split*, [ſpielt], geſpalten. VII. — Now weak, except geſpalten.

Speien, *spit*, ſpie, geſpieen; ſpeiſt; ſpiee; ſpeie! I.—Often weak.

Spinnen, *spin*, ſpann [ſponn], geſponnen; ſpinnſt; ſpönne or ſpänne; ſpinne! III.

Spleißen, *split*, ſpliß, geſpliſſen; ſpleiß(eſ)t, ſpleißt; ſpliſſe; ſpleiße! I.—Sometimes weak, but rare at best, ſpalten taking its place.

Sprechen, *speak*, ſprach, geſprochen; ſprichſt; ſpräche; ſprich! (ſpreche!) IV.

Sprießen, *sprout*, ſproß, geſproſſen; ſprieß(eſ)t [ſpreußt], ſprießt [ſpreußt]; ſpröſſe; ſprieße! [ſpreuß!] II.

Springen, *spring*, ſprang [ſprung], geſprungen; ſpringſt; ſpränge [ſprünge]; ſpringe! III.

Stechen, *prick*, ſtach, geſtochen; ſtichſt; ſtäche; ſtich! [ſteche!] IV.

Stecken, *stick*, ſtak, [geſtocken]; ſtickſt; ſtäke; ſtick! IV.—Now usually and preferably weak.

Stehen, *stand*, ſtand [ſtund], geſtanden; ſtehſt; ſtände or ſtünde; ſteh! VI.

Stehlen, *steal*, ſtahl, geſtohlen; ſtiehlſt; ſtähle or ſtöhle; ſtiehl! (ſtehle!) IV.

Steigen, *climb*, ſtieg, geſtiegen; ſteigſt; ſtiege; ſteige! I.

Sterben, *die*, ſtarb [ſturb], geſtorben; ſtirbſt; ſtürbe or ſtärbe; ſtirb! (ſterbe!) III.

Stieben, *scatter*, ſtob, geſtoben; ſtiebſt; ſtöbe; ſtiebe! II.

Stinken, *stink*, ſtank, geſtunken; ſtinkſt; ſtänke; ſtinke! III.

Stoßen, *push*, ſtieß, geſtoßen; ſtöß(eſ)t, ſtößt; ſtieße; ſtoße! VII.

Streichen, *stroke*, ſtrich, geſtrichen; ſtreichſt; ſtriche; ſtreiche! I.

Streiten, *contend*, ſtritt, geſtritten; ſtreiteſt; ſtritte; ſtreite! I.

Tun, *do*, tat, getan; tuſt; täte; tu! Irregular.

Tragen, *carry*, trug, getragen; trägſt; trüge; trage! VI.—Beantragen, *propose*, and beauftragen, *commission*, are not compounds of tragen. Cf. § 343.

Treffen, *hit*, traf, getroffen; trifft: träfe; triff! (treffe!) IV.

Treiben, *drive*, trieb, getrieben; treibſt; triebe; treibe! I.

Treten, *tread*, trat, getreten; trittſt, tritt; träte; tritt! (trete!) V.

Triefen, *drip*, troff, getroffen; triefſt (treufſt); tröffe; triefe! [treuf!] II.—Now usually weak.

Trinken, *drink*, trank [trunk], getrunken; trinkſt; tränke [trünke]; trinke! III.

Trügen, *cheat*, trog, getrogen; trügſt; tröge; trüge! II.

Wachſen, *grow*, wuchs, gewachſen; wächſ(eſ)t, wächſt; wüchſe; wachſe! VI.—Wachſt, without umlaut, is rare. The pple. without ge occurs in halbwachſen, *half-grown*.

Wägen, *weigh*, wog, gewogen; wägſt; wöge; wäge! [II.]—Cf. wiegen and -wegen.

Waſchen, *wash*, wuſch, gewaſchen wäſch(eſ)t, wäſcht; wüſche; waſche! VI.—Du waſch(eſ)t, er waſcht, without umlaut, are rare.

Weben, *weave*, wob, gewoben; webſt; wöbe; webe! VI.—Now usually weak.

-wegen, -wog, -wogen; -wegſt; -wöge; -wege! [V.]—Only in bewegen, *move*, which is weak, except in the sense of *induce*.

Weichen, *recede*, wich, gewichen; weichſt; wiche; weiche! I.—**Weichen,** *soften*, is weak.

Weiſen, *show*, wies, gewieſen; weiſ(eſ)t, weiſt; wieſe; weiſe! I.

Werben, *sue*, warb [wurb], geworben; wirbſt; würbe or wärbe; wirb! (werbe!) III.

Werden, *become*, ward or wurde, geworden; wirſt, wird; würde! werde! III.

Werfen, *throw*, warf [wurf], geworfen; wirfſt; würfe or wärfe; wirf! (werfe!) III.

Wiegen, *weigh*, wog, gewogen; wiegſt; wöge; wiege! II.—The same as wägen and =wegen. **Wiegen,** *rock*, is weak.

Winden, *wind*, wand, gewunden; windeſt; wände; winde! III.—**Winden,** *sniff*, is weak.

=winnen, =wann, =wonnen; =winnſt; =wönne or =wänne; =winne! III. —Only in **gewinnen,** *win*.

=wirren, in verwirren, *confuse;* always weak, but with strong pple. verworren, along with verwirrt. III.

Zeihen, *accuse*, zieh, geziehen; zeihſt; ziehe; zeihe! I.

Ziehen, *draw*, zog, gezogen; ziehſt [zeuchſt]; zöge; ziehe! [zeuch!] II.

Zwingen, *force*, zwang, gezwungen; zwingſt; zwänge; zwinge! III.

USE OF THE MODAL AUXILIARIES

332. While it belongs to lexicography rather than grammar to explain in detail the meanings of words, the modal auxiliaries are of such peculiar idiomatic importance as to justify a departure from the rule in their case. The brief account in § 191 is therefore recapitulated and amplified in the following sections.

333. Dürfen. The root-meaning is *need*, in which sense it is used by Luther with a gen.; e. g. die Geſunden dürfen des Arztes nicht, *need not a physician* (Luke v, 31). This sense is now given by bedürfen.

1. From the meaning *be in want of* it was an easy step to *have occasion for*, as in Lessing's was darf ich jeden Toren fragen: wer iſt der größte Mann? *what need* (*occasion*) *have I to ask?* This sense is now given by brauchen.

2. From the last meaning came naturally that of *have authority*, hence, *be allowed, be justified in.* This is the usual meaning of dürfen in modern German. Sometimes it approaches können, or, with a negative, müſſen, and is to be translated by *may, can, must*, according

to the connection. Examples: ich darf annehmen, *I may assume;* darf ich bitten? *may I ask?* ich durfte mich ärgern, *I had a right to be annoyed;* er ist krank und darf nicht ausgehen, *can not, must not, go out* (for *he may (possibly) not go out*, one would say er kann möglicherweise nicht ausgehen); hier bin ich Mensch, hier darf ich's sein (G.), *I can be, may be, have the right to be one;* ich darf nicht sagen wie, *I can not, must not, say how* (because propriety forbids), but ich kann nicht sagen wie, *I can not say how* (because I am unable).

3. Dürfen early became confounded with the now obsolete turren, *dare* (ich tar, *I dare;* ich torfte, *I durst*), whence the occasional meaning of *dare, venture;* e. g. wer darf mir's ins Gesicht sagen? *who dares say it to my face?* ich darf behaupten, *I dare assert.* But the student should, in general, be wary of translating dürfen by *dare.*

4. The pret. subj. dürfte is used in mild expressions of probability; e. g. man dürfte manches einwenden, *one might make many objections;* diese Mittel dürften sich nicht bewähren, *these means may not prove effective;* das dürfte der Fall sein, *may be the case.*

334. Können. The original meaning, *to know*, is preserved in a few phrases, mostly of the school; e. g. kannst du die Regel (das Spiel, den Katechismus)? *do you know the rule (the game, the catechism)?* Können Sie Deutsch? *do you know German?* Ich kann es auswendig, *I know it by heart.* Here no verb is understood, tho it may seem natural to supply one.

1. Very often it expresses simple ability, being then = vermögen; e. g. du kannst ja alles, Tell (S.), *you can do everything, you know;* wenn ich etwas auf dich könnte (G.), *if I could influence you somewhat;* was kann die Welt mir wohl gewähren (G.)? *what can the world offer me?*

2. Most commonly it denotes possibility, variously conditioned by circumstances, inclination, the nature of things; e. g. ich kann nicht hohe Worte machen (G.), *I can not make fine phrases* (it being contrary to my nature); kann das natürlich geschehen? *can that happen naturally?* das kann der Fall sein, *that may be the case* (much the same as das mag der Fall sein).

a. If the conditioning circumstances imply a right, or permission, können may take the place of dürfen; e. g. nun könnt ihr hereinkommen, *now you can (may) come in;* kein Kaiser kann, was unser ist, verschenken (S.), *no emperor can (has the right to) give away what is ours.*

3. Akin to the last is that meaning which implies that there is good reason for the action; e. g. Sie können mir glauben, *you may well believe me;* darauf kannst du stolz sein, *you have reason to be proud of that;* in diesem Sinne kannst du's wagen (G.), *you can afford to venture it.*

a. Hence können may convey a request, a suggestion, a mild command or remonstrance. Thus (to a child): kannſt du nicht einmal zu mir kommen, *come and see me, won't you;* (to a servant): Sie können mir eine Flaſche Wein bringen, *you may bring me*, etc.; ich könnte ſpäter zurückkehren, *I might return later (I suppose);* ſo etwas können Sie glauben? *can you believe such a thing.*

335. Mögen. The radical meaning is *to be able*, and this sense is occasionally met with in modern German; e. g. da keiner dich ergründen mag (G.), *since none can fathom thee;* du magſt es prächtig malen (Geibel), *you can* (i. e. *you are the man to*) *paint it gloriously.* But this sense is now for the most part given by the compound vermögen, or else by können, with which mögen is sometimes pleonastically associated; e. g. was ich kann und mag, *as much as ever I can.* Vermögen requires zu before a dependent infinitive; e. g. ich vermag nicht zu urteilen, *I can not judge.*

1. More common, but still not the most common, is the meaning of possibility, conditioned by outward circumstances; e. g. ohn' ihn mag ich auf Erden, mag dort nicht ſelig werden (Bürger), *without him I can not be happy;* was mag wohl drinne ſein (G.)? *what can be in it, pray?* er mochte ein böſes Gewiſſen haben (L.), *he possibly had a bad conscience;* wie möchte das zu erweiſen ſein? *how could that be proved?*

a. Mochte is common in narrative to denote a rough approximation; e. g. ungefähr zwei Monate mochte ich ſo zugebracht haben, *I may have spent about two months thus.*

b. Out of the general meaning of possibility grows the permissive or concessive force of mögen; e. g. ein Ding mag noch ſo närriſch ſein, *however foolish a thing may be;* mag er kommen oder gehen, was ſchiert's mich (L.), *he may come or go, what do I care.* As thus used in indirect discourse it may denote a mild command; e. g. ſie rief, er möge gehen, wohin er wolle, *she called to him to go where he chose.*

2. The subjunctive forms may serve as a periphrasis for a potential or optative mode; e. g. die Straße wird beſtreut, damit die Pferde nicht ausgleiten mögen (G.), *that the horses may not slip;* des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken (U.), *may heaven's hosts protect thee;* möchte ich doch im ſtande ſein (G.), *would that I were able.* Note that in the first two of these examples a simple subjunctive would be undistinguishable from the indicative.

3. The usual office of mögen now is to denote a wish, choice or preference; e. g. ſie mag ſich gerne putzen (G.), *she likes to adorn herself;* magſt du ein redlich Wort von mir vernehmen (S.)? *do you want to hear an honest word?* ich möchte wiſſen, *I should like to know;* ich möchte bittre Tränen weinen (G.), *I would fain weep;* es möchte kein Hund

ſo länger leben (G.), *no dog would care*, etc. The infinitive is often omitted; e. g. behalten Sie es für ſich, ich mag es nicht, *I do not care for it;* warum magſt du, was du nicht vermagſt? *why do you wish to do what you can not do?*

336. Müſſen. In the oldest German müſſen usually means *to have liberty, to be permitted*, i. e. it corresponds to the modern dürfen. This sense appears now only in negative sentences, where müſſen is sometimes interchangeable with dürfen; e. g. das mußt du nicht tun, *you must not do that;* ihr müßt nur nicht erſchrecken (S.), *you must not be frightened.*

1. The modern müſſen generally implies a constraint from without, as of circumstances, authority, duty, logic; e. g. durch dieſe hohle Gaſſe muß er kommen (S.), *he must come* (there being no other way); Sigeth muß fallen, *Sigeth must fall;* ich muß geſtehen, *I must confess;* ich mußte lachen, *I had to laugh;* ihr mußtet euch ſchweigend fügen (S.), *you should have yielded*, = ihr hättet euch fügen ſollen.

2. Less often it denotes certainty, assurance; e. g. dieſer Menſch muß ein Mörder ſein, '*no doubt this man is a murderer*' (Acts xxviii, 4); man muß keinen Philoſophen kennen, wenn man glaubt (L.), *one must needs be a stranger to philosophers*, etc.; es müßte der Teufel dahinter ſtecken (G.), *the devil would needs be in it.*

3. It may denote that something is so fated, ordained, or it may present a voluntary action as due to constraint; e. g. weh mir, was muß ich hören? *alas, what must I hear?* warum mußteſt du mich verlaſſen? *why did you have to leave me?* ich ſetzte mich hin, um zu arbeiten, und war in guter Laune; nun aber mußte ein langweiliger Beſuch mich ſtören, *a tedious call had to interrupt me*, i. e. *it was my fate to be interrupted.*

337. Sollen. The radical meaning of ſollen, to which Schuld is a verbal abstract, is that of obligation, duty. The pret. subj. with present force, corresponds to English *should, ought to*, while the pres. ind. may denote a peremptory command; e. g. er ſollte ſich ſchämen, *he ought to be ashamed;* du ſollſt nicht ſtehlen, *thou shalt not steal.* So in toasts; e. g. der König ſoll leben! *long live the king!*

1. More often, however, ſollen denotes not that something *ought to be*, but that it *is to be*, in accordance with another's will or decree; e. g. er ſoll gleich kommen, *he shall come at once* (i. e. *I promise that he shall*); die Wahl ſollte bald gehalten werden, *the election was soon to be held.* Thus often in confident promises; e. g. in deine Hütte ſoll der Schweizer wallen (S.), *to thy hut the Swiss shall journey.*

a. Hence ſollen corresponds to English *shall* in deliberative questions; e. g. was ſoll ich tun? *what shall I do? what am I to do?* was ſoll der Menſch verlangen (G.)? *what shall man desire?*

b. Similar to the last is the use of ſollen in was ſoll der Hut (S.)? *what is the hat meant for?* was ſoll es bedeuten? *what is it meant to signify?* i. e. *what construction is to be put upon it?*

2. Very often it is used in reporting on hearsay, or on the authority or claim of others; e. g. das Buch ſoll ſehr intereſſant ſein, *is said to be very interesting;* ſoll (or ſollte) das möglich ſein? *can that be possible?* i. e. *shall* (or *should*) *one be expected to believe it?*

3. Now and then ſollte (pret. subj.) has about the force of the conditional; e. g. ich ſollte meinen, *I should think;* man ſollte glauben, *one would believe.*

338. Wollen denotes etymologically a will or intention on the part of the subject; e. g. ich will euch lehren Geſichter machen (G.), *I will teach you to make faces;* du willſt uns gar noch grob begegnen (G.)? *do you actually mean to insult us?*

a. Very often, however, it denotes a wish rather than a will, especially if there is no infinitive; e. g. was wollt ihr da? *what do you want there?* er will noch Dank, *he even wants thanks.* Still fainter is the radical meaning in wollen Sie ſo gut ſein, *will you be so kind* (polite request); wir wollen einen Papſt erwählen, *we will choose a pope* (proposal).

1. Since the intent is apt to be followed by action, wollen often comes to have the meaning *to be on the point of;* e. g. er will gehen, *he is about to go* (common in stage directions); die Uhr ſchrillte (*screeched*) wie immer, wenn ſie eben ſchlagen wollte, *whenever it was about to strike;* der Krieg ſchien ſich nun auf deutſchen Boden ſpielen zu wollen (S.), *seemed about to play.*

2. Specially important is the idiomatic use of wollen with non-personal subjects, which strictly can have no will. The shades of meaning thus given are many and subtle; e. g. das will euch nicht behagen (G.), *that won't suit you,* i. e. *doesn't suit you at all;* das will nichts ſagen, *that means nothing;* es will eben verlauten, *it is just being noised abroad;* es will ohnehin regnen, *it is bound to rain any way;* das Buch will ſtudiert ſein, *the book must be studied* (cf. § 344, 1).

3. Wollen often implies a claim, an attitude, a seeming intention, on the part of the subject; e. g. willſt heller ſehen als deine edeln Väter (S.)? *dost claim to see more clearly?* er will es gehört haben, *he claims to have heard;* ich will es nicht bemerkt haben, *I will act as if I had not noticed it;* ich will es gern gelogen haben, *I am ready to be called a liar for having said it;* ich ſuch' ihn überall, allein er will mir nicht begegnen (G.), *he is bound not to meet me, seems bent on not meeting me;* wir warteten lange auf ihn, da er aber nicht kommen wollte, etc. *but since he*

didn't seem inclined to come; mit der Wahl wollte es immer mehr ernſt werden, *it was bent on becoming*, i. e. *the prospect seemed, more and more serious.*

a. Care must be taken in all cases to avoid confounding wollen with a mere auxiliary of the future; es will mir nicht einleuchten, *I do not understand it at all*, is different from es wird mir nie einleuchten, *I shall never understand it;* er will mir nicht begegnen, in the above example, from er wird mir nicht begegnen, *he will not meet me.* Nevertheless wollen sometimes approaches werden pretty closely; e. g. ich weiß nicht, was das werden will, *I do not know what will come of it* (werden wird would be cacophonous).

4. Notice finally the use of the subjunctive in das wolle Gott nicht, *God forbid;* wollte Gott, daß, *would to God that;* ich wollte lieber nichts davon wiſſen, which may mean *I had rather know nothing of it*, as well as *I preferred to know;* wie wollt' es auch zu euren Ohren kommen (G.)? *how should it come to your ears?*

IMPERSONAL VERBS

339. The Personal and the Impersonal Construction. With certain verbs there is a choice between a personal and an impersonal form of expression; e. g. between es dauert mich and ich bedaure, *I am sorry;* between mich friert and ich friere, *I am cold.*

1. In these cases the impersonal form properly denotes an involuntary experience, the personal a voluntary activity of the subject; thus mir träumte, als ſtünde ich (G.), *I dreamed (the dream came to me) that I stood;* er träumt von einer Palme (Heine), *he is dreaming of a palm-tree;* mich hungert, *I am hungry*, but er hungert aus Geiz, *he goes hungry from avarice.* Still the distinction is often ignored in practice; thus Grimm writes damit ihr nicht friert and damit euch nicht friere, with precisely the same sense.

340. Es gibt, with object in the accusative, is used in the sense of *there is*, if the object is plural, *there are;* e. g. es gibt was Neues, *there is something new;* heute wird's noch ein Gewitter geben, *there will be a shower yet to-day;* o, gibt es Geiſter in der Luft (G.), *if there are spirits in the air.*

1. On the es of this phrase cf. § 303, 1, *a*. Since the pronoun denotes a general situation, es gibt should not be used if the object is a concrete thing definitely limited in time or place. Thus one would not say es gibt einen Dieb (but es iſt ein Dieb) im Hauſe, *there is a thief in the house;* not es gibt (but es ſind) 10 Mark in dem Beutel, *there are 10 marks in the purse.* The object is apt to be a neuter pronoun, a plural, an abstract, an infinitive; e. g. was gibt's? *what's up? what's the matter?* es gibt im Menſchenleben Augenblicke (S.), *there are moments*, etc.: es muß auch ſolche Käuze geben (G.), *there must be such fellows;* hier gibt's zu tun (G.), *here is work to do;* hier gibt's zu unterſcheiden (L.), *here there is a distinction to be made;* was gibt's zu eſſen? *what is there to eat?*

a. The use of the nom. after es gibt, as in es gibt friſcher Hering, *there is fresh herring*, is provincial. So, too, is the use of geben for gibt when the object is plu.; e. g. er iſt ein Kauz, wie's mehr noch geben (G.), *such as there are many more.*

COMPOUND VERBS

341. The Adverbial Prefixes which form separable compounds are as follows, the * marking those that *may* be inseparable:

ab, *off, down*	entzwei, *in two*	ob, *over, upon*
an, *at, on*	entgegen, *toward*	*über, *over*
auf, *up*	fort, *away, forth*	*um, *around*
aus, *out*	gegen, *against*	*unter, *under*
bei, *by, with*	in(ne), *in*	vor, *before*
bevor, *before*	heim, *home*	*wieder, *again*
da(r), *there*	her, *hither*	weg, *away*
dazwiſchen, *between*	hin, *thither*	zu, *to*
*durch, *thru*	hinter, *behind*	zurück, *back*
ein, *into*	mit, *with*	zuſammen, *together*
empor, *up*		

a. To these must be added a number of compound particles formed by combining some two of the words given above, the compounds of da(r), her and hin being especially numerous; e. g. davon, *off;* dahin, *thither;* herauf, *up here;* herein, *in here;* hinab, *down there;* hinüber, *over there;* einher, *along;* umher, *around;* zuvor, *before;* überein, *in accord;* voraus, *in advance.*

1. Bevor hardly occurs as separable prefix except in bevorſtehen, *impend.* — Da occurs in dableiben, daſtehen, but is rare, dar being pre-

ferred, as in darbieten, darreichen, darſtellen. In composition with another particle da is preferred before consonants, dar before vowels; thus dabei, damit, but daran, daraus. — Gegen and in are hardly used alone, their places being taken by entgegen, and ein or inne.

2. Of the separable prefixes, some, as ab, ein, empor, fort, heim, weg, hin and her and their compounds, are used only in composition with verbs or in the predicate after ſein; while others are in use as prepositions or as ordinary adverbs. Distinguish between the compound davonkommen, in für diesmal kommſt du ſo davon (G.), *for this once you shall get off thus*, and the simple verb kommen modified by the adverb davon, in ich bin eben davon gekommen, *I have just come from it* (e. g. from the concert).

3. As to compounds of durch, über, um, unter, wieder, separable composition accents the idea of the prefix and is apt to be preferred if the meaning is literal, while inseparable composition is associated more with figurative meanings; e. g. unſern Zuſtand hatte ſie längſt durchblickt (G.), *she had long since seen thru* (i. e. *comprehended*) *our condition*, but ich nahm ein Fernrohr und blickte durch, *I took a spy-glass and looked thru*; die Kälte durchdringt das ganze Haus, *permeates the whole house*, but das Dach war morſch und das Waſſer drang durch, *the water pressed thru*; der Kutſcher hat ein Kind überfahren, *ran over a child*, but er hat uns übergefahren, *he drove us over* (e. g. over the bridge).

a. In many cases, however, the two modes of composition are used interchangeably without perceptible difference of meaning; thus Goethe writes: am 29. durchging ich die Rolle, *I went thru the rôle*, and in the next sentence: ich ging dieſelbe Rolle durch.

b. As to compounds of wider and hinter see § 212, 1.

342. Phrase-Compounds. By this name we designate those compounds in which the first part (the separable prefix) is an adjective, a noun, or a prepositional phrase. They may be divided into three groups, as follows:

1. Compounds of adjective and verb, the adjective having a factitive sense; e. g. bloßſtellen, *expose;* feſthalten, *hold fast;* freiſprechen, *acquit;* hochachten, *esteem;* losgehen, *go off;* totſchlagen, *kill;* wahrnehmen, *perceive;* weismachen, *hoax.* These and some others follow the ordinary rules of separable composition; thus feſthalten, hielt feſt, feſtgehalten.

a. But a few such compounds are inflected like a simple stem; e. g. liebkoſen, *caress*, liebkoſte, geliebkoſt. So also weisſagen and wahrſagen, *prophesy*. Like the latter are also certain quasi-compounds derived from stems already compounded; as frühſtücken, *breakfast* (from Frühſtück), frühſtückte, gefrühſtückt; langweilen, *bore* (from Langweile); frohlocken, *rejoice*; rechtfertigen, *justify*.

2. Compounds of noun and verb, the noun being the object; e. g. achtgeben, *heed*; dankſagen, *thank*; fehlſchlagen, *miscarry*; glückwünſchen, *congratulate*; hofhalten, *hold court*; hohnlachen, *mock*; hohnſprechen, *defy*; lobſingen, *praise*; preisgeben, *give over*. These and some others follow the rules of separable composition; thus teilnehmen, *participate*, nahm teil, teilgenommen. But hohnlachen admits of both hohnlachte and lachte hohn.

a. Other such compounds are inflected like a simple stem, a strong verb becoming weak; e. g. brandſchatzen, *levy tribute*; lobhudeln, *flatter fulsomely*; luſtwandeln, *walk for pleasure*; mutmaßen, *conjecture*; radebrechen, *torture*; wetterleuchten, *lighten*; willfahren, *gratify*; thus zu luſtwandeln, luſtwandelte, geluſtwandelt; zu radebrechen, radebrechte, geradebrecht. Like these again are certain quasi-compounds, as argwöhnen, *suspect* (from Argwohn); brandmarken, *stigmatize* (from Brandmarke); handhaben (handhabte, gehandhabt), *handle*; hofmeiſtern, *play the pedant with*; ratſchlagen (ratſchlagte, geratſchlagt), *take counsel*; wehklagen, *lament*; wetteifern, *emulate*.

b. Whether the separated noun of such compounds is to be written with a capital, or not, will depend upon how far it has lost its substantive character. The matter is not yet very strictly regulated; thus while the rules prescribe nahm teil and fand ſtatt, they permit ſagte Dank instead of dankſagte. Formerly all such nouns were given a capital, as they still must be if qualified by an adjective; thus ich nahm daran teil, but ich nahm daran keinen Teil. For such matters the wisest must consult the official rules (see Appendix I), or else Duden's *Orthographiſches Wörterbuch*.

c. Numerous compounds of a verb with a noun or adjective admit of use only as participial adjectives or substantive infinitives; e. g. fruchtbringend, *fruitful*; ſinnbetörend, *sense-distracting*; rotblühend, *red-blooming*; das Atemholen, *the drawing of the breath*. But there are no verbs fruchtbringen, atemholen, etc.

3. Compounds of prepositional phrase and verb, as auseinanderſetzen, *explain*; durcheinanderwerfen, *jumble together*.

a. Here may be noticed a numerous class of verbal phrases which are in all respects separable compounds, except that phrase and verb are not written as one word in the inf. and perf. pple. Their spelling is, again, in a very unsettled state. Examples are: zuliebe tun, *do for*

the love of; von ſtatten gehen, *go off;* zu ſtande (or zuſtande) kommen, *come to pass;* in ſtand (or inſtand, also in Stand) ſetzen, *put in position;* zu Grunde gehen, *go to ruin.*

343. Compounds of Compounds. These always have the first prefix separable, as in anerkennen, *recognize*, auferziehen, *bring up.* Seeming exceptions are not really compounds, but are derived from nouns; as beauftragen, *commission* (from Auftrag); benachrichtigen, *apprise* (from Nachricht); verabſcheuen, *abhor* (from Abſcheu). Such verbs are weak and inseparable; thus beauftragte, beauftragt.

1. While verbs doubly compounded are regularly separable (auferziehen, zog auf), there are some of them that are avoided in forms where separation would be in order; e. g. auferſtehen, *rise from the dead;* auserleſen, *select;* einverleiben, *embody.* One can say er iſt auferſtanden, or als er auferſtand, but not er erſtand auf. Some writers even prefer er anerkannte to er erkannte an.

USE OF THE PASSIVE VOICE

344. Werden and Sein. The true passive with werden (§ 195, 1), denotes an activity, the quasi-passive with ſein a state; e. g. es wird behauptet, *it is asserted*, i. e. *people assert;* ſo iſt es nicht gemeint, *it is not meant thus*, i. e. such is not the meaning; dorthin wurde ich gezogen (G.), *I was drawn thither*, i. e. something drew me; ſein gepudertes Haar war in eine runde Locke aufgeſteckt (G.), *was fastened up into a round mass*, i. e. such was the style of hair-dress that had resulted from the operation of 'fastening up'; der Entſchluß war gefaßt (G.), *the resolution was formed*, i. e. had been previously formed; dieſe iſt teils auf Felſen gebaut (G.), *is built partly on rocks*, i. e. has a rock foundation.

a. Such a form as ich bin gezwungen, *I am compelled*, has reference, then, to the state of constraint in which I find myself, whereas ich werde gezwungen implies an agent. Ich bin gezwungen forms a perf. ich bin gezwungen geweſen, *I was constrained.*

1. In old German ſein was used as auxiliary of the passive, and survivals of this usage are still often met with; e. g. in the imv., ſei gelobt regularly takes the place of werde gelobt. So also one says ſeid gegrüßt, not werdet gegrüßt, *be greeted*, and laß es dir geſagt ſein, for *be assured*. Instead of werde überredet, for *be persuaded*, usage prefers laß dich überreden. Noteworthy is the use of ſein after wollen = müſſen; e. g. das Buch will nicht nur durchblättert, ſondern ſtudiert ſein, *must be not only perused but studied*.

2. The pple. geboren, *born*, is used with ſein in speaking of living persons, with werden in speaking of the dead: ich bin geboren, *I was born*, but Luther wurde geboren, *Luther was born*. War geboren is properly a pluperfect in sense.

3 The clumsy forms ending in worden ſein are very rare in the classics.

345. Notes on the Passive Construction. The fundamental use of the passive is to furnish a form of statement in which the action itself, or the object of it, is made more prominent than the active agent; thus in der Blitz traf den Baum, *lightning struck the tree*, one thinks primarily of the lightning, but in der Baum wurde vom Blitz getroffen, of the tree.

a. It follows, therefore, that the passive is out of place if the connection shows that the agent is the real subject of thought.

1. With verbs that take two accusatives in the active, both accusatives become nominatives in the passive; e. g. man nannte ihn Wilhelm den Verſchwiegenen, *they called him William the Silent*, becomes er wurde Wilhelm der Verſchwiegene genannt.

a. After lehren, *teach*, the acc. of the thing-object is sometimes retained, but the construction is rare. Instead of ich wurde die Muſik gelehrt, *I was taught music*, one says ich wurde in der Muſik unterrichtet, or die Muſik wurde mir gelehrt.

2. Exceptions to the general rule that intransitive verbs can only be used impersonally in the passive (§ 198) occur in talk and even in the classics; e. g. von Jammer gefolgt, ſchreitet das Unglück (S.), *misfortune strides on followed by wailing*. Here and elsewhere gefolgt von imitates the Fr. *suivi de*. Other verbs so used occasionally are danken, glauben, helfen, ſchmeicheln; but it is better to follow the rule and to say mir wurde gedankt, geglaubt, geholfen, geſchmeichelt and not ich wurde gedankt, geglaubt, etc.

SYNTAX OF NUMBER AND PERSON

346. Congruence of Number. A verb agrees with its subject in number.

a. Singular titles may take a plural verb; e. g. Eure Majeſtät (Excellenz, Hoheit, Durchlaucht) haben befohlen, *Your Majesty (Excellence, Highness, Serene Highness) has ordered;* Herr Doktor wurden katechiſiert (G.), *the doctor was catechized.* Except in ceremonious address to high dignitaries this construction is no longer common.

1. A collective noun takes a singular verb unless there is a plural appositive; e. g. die Menge macht den Künſtler irr' und ſcheu (G.), *the crowd makes the artist confused and shy;* das Volk iſt frei (G.); das junge Volk der Schnitter fliegt zum Tanz (S.), but eine Menge Gäſte waren verſammelt, *a number of guests were assembled.*

2. After the expletive es the verb takes the number of the logical subject; e. g. es reden und träumen die Menſchen viel (S.), *men talk and dream much.*

a. After es, dies, das, in expressions of identity, the verb takes the number of the predicate noun; e. g. das ſind Taſchenſpielerſachen (G.), *those are juggler's tricks.*

3. Two or more singular subjects require a plural verb only when they denote different persons or things that do not form a unity; otherwise — and the cases are very much more common than in English — the verb stands in the singular; e. g. der König und die Kaiſerin ... machten endlich Friede (Bürger), *the king and the empress finally made peace;* der ganze Himmel und Juno erſtaunten darüber (L.), *all Olympus and Juno were astonished at it;* Altar und Kirche prangt in Feſtesglanz (S.), *altar and church are bright with festal splendor;* der Strom, das Meer, das Salz, gehört dem König (S.); und Fels und Meer wird fortgeriſſen (G.).

a. Very often, especially in poetry, position favors the singular verb, it being made to agree with the nearest subject; e. g. Meiſter rührt ſich und Geſelle (S.), *master and man bestir themselves.*

b. Singular subjects connected by oder, weder ... noch, nicht allein ... ſondern auch, ſowohl ... als, take a singular verb.

347. Congruence of Person. A verb agrees with its subject in person.

1. Where there are subjects of different person, the general rule is that the plural verb stands in the first person, if the first person is represented among the subjects, otherwise in the second; e. g. was du und ich dereinſt im Himmel hoffen (S.), *what you and I hope for one day in heaven;* du und er ſeid beide im Irrtum, *you and he are both in error.*

a. If the verb precedes, or if the subjects are connected by oder, weder . . . noch, nicht allein . . . ſondern auch, ſowohl . . . als, the verb is apt to agree with the nearest subject; e. g. in dieſer Sache, irrſt du und ich (Blatz), *in this matter you and I are mistaken;* entweder du oder ich muß ſterben, *either you or I must die.*

b. In a relative clause (§ 137) the verb stands in the third person, regardless of the person of the antecedent, unless a personal pronoun is inserted after the relative; e. g. o Gott, der im Himmel thront, *who art enthroned;* but der du von dem Himmel biſt (G.), *thou who art in heaven;* biſt du es, der . . . in allen Lebenstiefen zittert? *is it thou that dost tremble?*

USE OF THE TENSES

348. The following account of the tenses must be understood as referring primarily to the tenses of the indicative mode. The use of tenses in the other modes can best be dealt with in treating of the modes themselves.

1. There is nothing in German corresponding to the English 'progressive' forms, *I am going, I have been thinking*, etc. A pres. pple. after a form of ſein is felt as an adjective. Cf., however, Lessing's er iſt die Gräfin hier nicht vermutend, *is not expecting*, which approaches the English usage.

349. The Present is the tense of present time and of general statements true without regard to time; e. g. die Sonne tönt nach alter Weiſe (G.), *the sun makes music as of old;* Genießen macht gemein (G.), *pleasure makes vulgar.*

1. As in English, and even more freely, the pres. may take the place of a fut. to denote a present purpose or a confident expectation; e. g. entſchuldigen Sie mich einen Augenblick, ich bin gleich zurück, *I shall be back directly;* warte nur, ich krieg' ihn ſchon (G.), *just wait, I'll get him.*

2. The historical present for the preterit is common in vivid narration; e. g. plötzlich wurden die Pferde angehalten, drei Räuber überfallen den Wagen und verlangen von dem Reiſenden ſein Geld (Auerbach), *suddenly the horses were stopped, three robbers attack the carriage and demand of the traveler his money.*

3. For the English perfect, denoting that which has been and still is, German uses the present, generally with an adverb of time; e. g. der arme Knabe wartet lange (G.), *has been waiting long;* ſchon viele Tage ſeh' ich's ſchweigend an (S.), *these many days I have been noticing.*

4. For the pres. as mild imperative, see § 363, 3, *c.*

350. The Preterit refers to a particular past time defined by the connection. It is thus the tense for narrating past events in their relation to one another; e. g. es war einmal ein junger Kerl, der ließ ſich als Soldat anwerben, hielt ſich brav und war immer der Tapferſte, wenn es blaue Bohnen regnete (Gr.), *there was once a young fellow who enlisted as a soldier, behaved bravely and was always foremost when it was raining bullets.*

1. Just as in Eng. the pret. may denote a repeated or a continued past action. The former is called the 'iterative,' the latter the 'durative' pret. Examples: wenn ich ſo ſaß bei einem Gelag (G.), *whenever I was sitting thus at a drinking-bout;* Goethe kümmerte ſich wenig um die Politik, *cared little for politics.*

2. For the distinction between the pret. and the perf. see § 351.

351. The Perfect denotes primarily a present status that has resulted from a past action; e. g. ich habe mir ein Pferd gekauft, *I have bought me a horse*, i. e. *I have a horse got by buying,* Chriſt iſt erſtanden, *Christ has arisen*, i. e. *is now on high.*

1. Very frequently, however, the perfect is used, without any implied reference to present time, to report an isolated past occurrence. In such cases English employs the preterit; e. g. Shakespeare hat etwa vierzig Dramen geschrieben, *S. wrote some forty plays* (English permits *has written* only in speaking of a living person); es ist dir recht geschehen, *it served you right;* wo ist er? ich hab' ihn rufen hören (G.), *where is he? I heard him call.*

a. The perf. then, is the tense for reporting isolated or unconnected facts, while the pret. is the tense for narrating events in their connection. With the pret. one thinks of the time when the thing occurred, with the perf. (save as it may be accompanied by an adverb of time), only of the fact that it occurred.

b. But in the written language the pret. encroaches largely upon the domain of the perf. and must very often be translated by the Eng. perf. Thus Steffens' autobiography is called Was ich erlebte, i. e. *what I have experienced.* Cf. Goethe's was ich irrte, was ich strebte, was ich litt und was ich lebte, sind nur Blumen hier im Strauß, *what I have done amiss*, etc. In poetry the two tenses are often used interchangeably; e. g. ich hatte selbst oft grillenhafte Stunden, doch solchen Trieb hab' ich noch nie empfunden (G.), *I have often had crotchety hours myself, but I have never yet felt*, etc.; da lief ich frisch hinzu, so wie ich war, und mit der Axt hab' ich ihm's Bad gesegnet (S.), *then I ran up quickly just as I was and with my axe I blessed his bath.*

c. In the spoken language, on the other hand, especially that of the uneducated, the perf. encroaches on the domain of the pret. In some of the South-German dialects the pret. is practically extinct, the perf. having taken its place. Even good literature is affected to some extent by this tendency.

352. The Pluperfect denotes a past status resulting from a previous action, or an action completed prior to some past time. It corresponds closely to the English pluperfect; e. g. ich hatte Holz gefällt im Wald (S.), *I had been cutting wood in the forest;* er war mit König Friedrichs Macht gezogen in die Prager Schlacht (Bürger), *had marched to the battle of Prague.*

353. The Future and Future Perfect correspond in the main to the English tenses of the same name; e. g. wird

uns das Reich beſchützen (S.)? *will the empire protect us?* er wird ſeine Arbeit bald vollendet haben, *he will soon have completed his work.*

1. By a usage not exactly paralleled in English the future may denote a present, and the future perfect a past, probability ('presumptive' future); e.g. es wird Ihnen bekannt ſein, *it is probably known to you;* du wirſt gehört haben, *you have probably heard.*

2. After wenn the fut. is apt to be replaced by the pres., and the fut. perf. by the perf., just as in Eng.; e.g. wenn einſt ich tot bin . . . und du, mein Auge, . . . nun ausgeweint haſt (Kl.), *when some day I am dead and thou, mine eye, hast done with weeping.*

3. For the fut. as mild imperative see § 363, 3, *c.*

USE OF THE MODES

354. The indicative corresponds closely to the English indicative and presents, as a mode, no peculiar difficulties. On the other hand the subjunctive, which is all but extinct in English, is fully preserved in German and has a variety of special uses which require particular attention.

The Subjunctive

355. Classification of Uses. While the indicative is the mode of actuality, the subjunctive is, broadly speaking, the mode of contingency; it denotes that something is commanded, desired, possible, contrary to fact, reported, thought, or asked. Its various uses may be grouped under five general heads, namely: the imperative subjunctive, the optative subjunctive, the potential subjunctive, the unreal subjunctive, and the dependent subjunctive.

1. For the name 'subjunctive' the Germans employ 'conjunctive' (Konjunktiv). The mode is named, in both languages, from its use in expressing a 'subjoined,' 'conjoined,' i. e. dependent idea (the fifth of the above-named uses). This is upon the whole the most important and characteristic function of the mode. It is, however, of fre-

quent occurrence in sentences that are not formally dependent, while on the other hand, any of the first four varieties may occur in a dependent sentence.

356. The Imperative Subjunctive denotes a command and is usually translatable by *let*. It occurs in the first and third persons (rarely in the first singular), where it fills out the inflection of the imperative; e. g. edel ſei der Menſch (G.), *let man be noble;* doch gehen wir (G.), *but let us go;* geſteh' ich's nur (G.), *just let me confess.*

a. Here belongs the imv. with Sie, — haben Sie die Güte, *have the kindness*, being in its origin = *let them have the kindness* (§ 301, 3).

1. A special variety of the imperative subjunctive is the so-called 'concessive' subjunctive, which concedes a proposition to get a basis for some further statement; e. g. es ſei Fabel oder Geſchichte (L.), *be it (whether it be) truth or fable;* ich bin bei dir, du ſeiſt auch noch ſo ferne (G.), *I am with thee, however distant thou mayest be.*

a. The concessive subjunctive followed by denn or dann has acquired, thru the omission of the old negative particle *ne*, the force of a negative condition translatable by *unless;* i. e. es ne ſei denn, *be it not so then*, became es ſei denn, *unless it be.* Examples: und kommt man hin . . . erhält man nichts, man bringe denn was hin (G.), *one gets nothing unless one brings something there;* doch eher ſtimm' ich nicht mit ein, es regne denn in meinen Wein (L.), *unless it rains in my wine.*

357. The Optative Subjunctive denotes a wish; e. g. umſonſt ſei all dein Ringen (U.), *may all thy striving be in vain;* wären wir nur den Berg vorbei (G.), *if we were only past the hill;* des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken (U.), *may heaven's hosts protect thee.*

1. The present wishes for what is possible and is expected to happen, the preterit that what is so were not so, or *vice versa*, and the pluperfect that what was not so had been so, or *vice versa;* e. g. ſeine Seele ruhe in Frieden, *may his soul rest in peace;* wüßte ich nur, *did I but know* (but I do not know); hätte ich nur gewußt, *had I but known* (but I did not

know); wär' ich weit von hier (S.), *would I were far from here;* o, wäre ich . . . entſeelt dahingeſunken (G.), *would that I had fallen lifeless.*

a. As thus used in the pret. and plup., regularly with inverted order, this subjunctive is practically identical with the unreal subjunctive in conditional clauses. In each of the above examples a conclusion can be supplied in thought.

358. The Potential Subjunctive expresses possibility or contingency. It is usually to be translated by *may, might, could, would;* e. g. er wär' ein Narr (G.), *he would be a fool;* ein heiliger Wille lebt, wie auch der menſchliche wanke (S.), *however the human will may waver;* ich hätte gern nur immer fortgewacht (G.), *I should have liked to keep right on sitting up.*

1. Here belongs, as a special variety, the so-called 'diplomatic' subjunctive, used in modest or tentative expressions of opinion; e. g. ich dächte, *I should think* (a modest substitute for ich denke); nicht daß ich wüßte or daß ich nicht wüßte, *not that I am aware of;* es wäre wohl an der Zeit, *it might perhaps be in order;* das dürfte gefährlich ſein, *that might be dangerous.*

2. Another variety is the 'dubitative' subjunctive, used in questions and exclamations. It usually expresses a real certainty or assurance under the form of a pretended doubt or hesitation, or else it denotes a pretended surprise that what really is (or was) so, should be (or should have been) so; e. g. wer wüßte das nicht? *who wouldn't know that?* was hätten wir zu fürchten? *what should we have to fear?* da ließe ſich ein Pakt mit euch ſchließen (G.)? *so a compact might be made with you?* das wär' antik (G.)! *can that be antique? you call that antique?* das wär' ſie denn (G.)! *can that be she? so that is she, is it?* er hätte das geſagt? ich glaube es nicht (L.), *can he have said that? I do not believe it;* gaſtfreundlich hätte England ſie empfangen (S.)? *you contend that England received her hospitably?*

3. This subjunctive is regularly used in hypothetical relative sentences; e. g. was wär' ein Gott, der nur von außen ſtieße (G.)? *what would a God be who should only interfere from without?* wer ſie nicht kennte, wäre kein Meiſter (G.), *any one who did not* (i. e. *should not*) *know them would be no master.* Often such a clause is best rendered in English by a participle; e. g. wie ein Strahl der Sonne, der zu heiß das Haupt mir träfe (G.), *like a sunbeam falling too hot upon my head.*

4. Observe that the potential subjunctive may stand in a dependent clause without being in the technical sense a 'dependent' subjunctive; e. g. das ſag' ich euch, damit ihr's wiſſet (S.), *I tell you that that you may know it.*

359. The Unreal Subjunctive supposes what is (or was) not so, and states what would be (or would have been) so under the supposition; e. g. wenn ich ein Vöglein wär', und auch zwei Flüglein hätt', flög' ich zu dir, *if I were a little bird and had two little wings, I would fly to thee* (folk-song); wäre Herder methodiſcher geweſen, ſo hätte ich ... die köſtlichſte Anleitung gefunden (G.), *if Herder had been more methodical, I should have found most valuable guidance.*

1. The unreal subjunctive occurs both in the condition (protasis) and in the conclusion (apodosis), when the supposition is contrary to fact. The pret. refers to present time, the plup. to past. The condition may be expressed by means of a conjunction, usually wenn, or by the inverted order. In the conclusion the subjunctive mode may be replaced by the conditional.

a. Closely akin to the unreal subjunctive is the potential subjunctive, used in the pret. to denote a future possibility; e. g. wenn man uns überraſchte (S.), *if some one should surprise us;* und träte ſie den Augenblick herein, wie würdeſt du für deinen Frevel büßen (G.), *were she to come in this moment, how you would atone,* etc. In such cases there is always a present unreality, but it is of no importance, the thought turning altogether upon the future contingency. The two varieties may be closely associated; e. g. wäre nur ein Zaubermantel mein, und trüg' er mich in fremde Länder (G.), *if I only had* (unreal) *a magic mantle, and it would* (potential) *carry me,* etc.

b. If the conclusion is omitted, the condition may be undistinguishable from an optative subjunctive; e. g. hätte ich das nur gewußt! *if I had only known that!* On the other hand the potential subjunctive may often be construed as the conclusion of an implied condition; e. g. er wär' ein Narr, *he would be a fool* (sc. *if he were to marry her*, *Faust*, l. 3571).

2. In poetry the pret. indic. may take the place of the unreal plup. subj. either in the condition or in the conclusion; e. g. mit dieſem zweiten Pfeil durchſchoß ich euch, wenn ich mein liebes Kind getroffen hätte (S.), *with this second arrow I should have shot you thru if I had hit my dear child;* und tratſt du, Herr, nicht zwiſchen uns herein, ſo ſtünde jetzt auch ich, etc. (G.), *if thou hadst not come between us, I should now be standing*, etc.

a. On the other hand an unreal subjunctive in the condition may be followed by an indic. in the conclusion, to denote strong assurance; e. g. und wohnt' er droben auf dem Eispalaſt, . . . ich mache mir Bahn zu ihm (S.), *and if he dwelt up there in the ice-palace, I will* (instead of *I would*) *make my way to him.*

3. A special case of unreal subjunctive is the common construction after als ob, als wenn, *as if*, in which the conclusion is omitted; e. g. ich halte Egmont hier, als ob ich ihm noch was zu ſagen hätte (G.), *I will keep E. here as* (*I would do*) *if I had something to say to him;* er war ſo ſtolz darauf, als ob die Erfindung ſein geweſen wäre (G.), *as if the invention had been his.*

a. Very frequently ob or wenn is omitted, in which case the clause takes the inverted instead of the dependent order; e. g. da ward's ſo eng ihr in der Welt, als hätte ſie Lieb' im Leibe (G.), *as if it had love in its body.*

b. The tenses follow the rule given above, but the pres. may stand for the pret. unless the form would be identical with the corresponding form of the indic.; i. e. one may say als ſei er, or als ob er ſei, instead of als ob er wäre, and als habe er, or als ob er habe, for als ob er hätte, but not als ob ſie haben, nor als haben ſie, for als ob ſie hätten.

360. The Dependent Subjunctive occurs in the object-clause after verbs of *telling*, *thinking*, *feeling*, *asking* and the like; e. g. ſie ſagen, er leſ' auch in den Sternen die künftigen Dinge (S.), *they say that he also reads the future*

in the stars; ihr fühlet nicht, wie ſchlecht ein ſolches Handwerk ſei (G.), *you do not feel how vile such a trade is;* er fragte, wen er vor ſich ſähe (G.), *he asked whom he saw before him;* es hieß, er denk' ihn ganz darum zu kürzen (S.), *it was said that he was thinking to deprive him of it altogether.*

a. The effect of this subjunctive is to express uncertainty, or at any rate to put the content of the object-clause on another's authority. It is thus very commonly used in reporting statements, opinions, rumors, etc. without quoting literally (indirect discourse). Daß is often omitted, in which case the clause has normal order. Such a sentence as es iſt falſch, becomes, then, when reported in the direct form: „Es iſt falſch", ſagt er, or er ſagt: „Es iſt falſch"; in the indirect form: er ſagt, daß es falſch ſei, or er ſagt, es ſei falſch.

1. Not every object-clause with daß requires the subjunctive. If the content of the clause is a fact, or appears as such to the speaker, the indicative is used. The subjunctive indicates that what is stated is matter of report, opinion, assertion, fear, hope, or the like, and relieves the speaker of responsibility for it; e. g. ich ſchwör' euch zu, mir iſt's als wie ein Traum (G.), *I swear to you, it is like a dream to me.* Here the speaker avers what is in his own mind and is to him a fact, hence the indicative; but if the person addressed were to report the saying, he would give it the form: er ſchwört (or ſchwor) mir zu, es ſei ihm wie ein Traum.

a. On the other hand, by an elliptical construction, the dependent subj. may stand in clauses that are not formally object-clauses, to imply that what is stated is matter of rumor, pretence, hope, fear, or the like; e. g. er iſt zurückgetreten, weil er krank ſei, *he has retired because (as he alleges,* or *as people say) he is sick;* but weil er krank iſt, *because he is (actually) sick.* The indic. accepts the report as true, the subj. waives responsibility for it. Observe, then, the force of the modes in the following sentence from Andresen: Mein Bruder widerriet, weil die Sache gefährlich ſei, und weil er den Direktor nicht kennt, *my brother objected because (in his opinion) the thing was dangerous, and because (as a matter of fact) he does not know the director.*

2. Naturally, therefore, those verbs that imply certainty, as verbs of knowing, seeing, proving, showing, comprehending, and phrases such as 'it is clear,' 'the fact is,' are apt to be followed by the indicative; thus one would not say ich weiß, daß es falſch ſei (but iſt), nor es iſt klar, daß er recht habe (but hat), since the uncertainty of the subjunctive would contradict the certainty of the governing clause. Still, good writers sometimes use the subjunctive even after this class of verbs; e. g. du ſiehſt, wie ungeſchickt ich ſei (G.), *you see how unfit I am;* wir wiſſen, daß ſehr oft deutſches u oder o dem gr. oder lat. e zur Seite ſtehe (Gr.), *we know that German u or o often corresponds to Greek or Latin e.*

3. On the other hand, verbs of thinking and communicating (feeling, believing, hoping, fearing, inferring, asserting, writing, teaching, confessing, denying, etc.) are apt to be followed by the subjunctive, tho the indicative is always possible if the object-clause is felt as a fact. This last will be the case especially when the verb is in the first person; e. g. ich fühle (behaupte), daß ich ſchuldlos bin, *I feel (assert) that I am blameless;* but, usually, er fühlt (behauptet), daß er ſchuldlos ſei. After a past tense, however, these verbs prefer the subjunctive without regard to person.

4. When the object-clause is an indirect question the subjunctive is no longer usual after a verb in the present tense; thus, for *tell me who he is and how he lives*, one does not say: ſagen Sie mir, wer er ſei und wie er lebe, but wer er iſt und wie er lebt. In the classics, however, the subjunctive is quite common; e. g. und merkt euch, wie der Teufel ſpaße (G.), *observe how the devil jokes.* Cf. also the second example under § 360. The easy admissibility of either mode is shown by Goethe's line: Nicht was der Knecht ſei, fragt der Herr, nur wie er dient (*Faust*, l. 8794). After a past tense the subjunctive was and still is the rule.

5. When a dependent subj. has a verb depending on it (as often happens in sustained indirect discourse), such verb also stands in the subj. unless it states a fact which is not a part of the narration, but

rests on the narrator's own authority; e. g. es klagte, daß dieſer Tag, welcher mein Glück mache, — wenn er es anders mache — ſein Unglück auf immer entſcheide (L.), *it complained that this day which made my happiness, — if it really did make it, — decided his unhappiness forever;* fordert er, daß ihm Du Chatel ausgeliefert werde, den er den Mörder ſeines Vaters nennt (S.), *he demands that Du Chatel, whom he calls the murderer of his father, be given up to him.*

361. Sequence of Tense in Object-Clauses. The tense of a dependent subjunctive is influenced, (1) by its own natural tense, i. e. the tense it had, or would have, in the direct form; (2) by the tense of the principal verb; (3) by the necessity of resorting, in certain cases, to a change of tense in order to render the subjunctive distinguishable from the indicative. We have, then, the following principles:

1. After a present or future the natural tense remains unchanged (but see 2, *a*, below), save that a preterit indicative (as well as a perfect) usually becomes a perfect subjunctive; e. g. *he says that he is right* becomes er ſagt, daß er recht habe; *he says that he was right*, er ſagt, daß er recht gehabt habe (or daß er recht hatte, but not daß er recht hätte, which might mean *would be right*); er meint, es ſei nicht mehr zu ertragen (S.), *thinks it is no longer to be borne;* ſie meint, du ſeiſt entflohen (G.), *she thinks you ran away* (or, *have run away;* one can not tell which the direct form would be). Cf. Schiller's *Tell*, ll. 92–95.

2. After a past tense the tense of the dependent verb is more variable. A natural present may remain present, or may become preterit; e. g. *he said he was sick* (i. e. *he said: I am sick*), becomes er ſagte, er ſei krank, or er ſagte, er wäre krank (as in English). A natural preterit indicative becomes perfect subjunctive: *he said he came too late* (*he said: I came too late*) becomes er ſagte, er ſei zu ſpät gekommen (käme would mean *would come*, or would correspond to a direct *I come*, and wäre gekommen would mean *would have come*). A natural future remains, or else becomes present condi-

tional; e. g. *he said he would be there* (*he said: I shall be there*) becomes er ſagte, er werde (or würde) da ſein.

a. As to the choice between er ſagte, er ſei krank, and er ſagte, er wäre krank (the direct form being ich bin krank) both literary usage and grammatical authority now favor the former. In old German, however, the latter was the rule. Speaking broadly, South Germans prefer ſei, North Germans wäre. The latter use the pret. freely even after a pres. tense, saying er ſagt, er wäre krank, for *he says that he is sick.* Both usages are abundantly illustrated in good literature; e. g. ſie glaubten, es wäre Hahnengeſchrei (Heine), *they thought it was the crowing of the cock:* die Abergläubiſchen meinen, du hätteſt einen Kobold (Tieck), *the superstitious think you have a kobold;* (usual sequence) ſeine reine Seele fühlte, daß ſie die Hälfte ſeiner ſelbſt ſei (G.), *that she was half of himself.*

b. But while there is in the main a free choice between the pret. and pres. subj., the former is to be employed in those forms in which the subj., if pres., would not be distinguishable from the indic.; thus, while one may say for *he said he had the headache*, er ſagte, er habe Kopfweh, or er ſagte, er hätte Kopfweh, one may not say ich ſagte, ich habe (but only ich hätte), nor ſie ſagten, ſie haben (but only ſie hätten).

The Conditional and Imperative

362. The Conditional Mode is simply a potential, or unreal, subjunctive used in the conclusion of conditional sentences. The present conditional refers to present time and corresponds to the preterit subjunctive, while the perfect conditional refers to past time and corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; e. g. und träte ſie den Augenblick herein, wie würdeſt du für deinen Frevel büßen, *were she to come in, how you would atone* (G.); hätte er die geheimen Triebfedern gekannt, ſo würde er ſich die Mühe gar nicht gegeben haben (G.), *had he known the secret springs, he would not have taken the trouble at all.*

1. For the most part there is a free choice between the subjunctive and the conditional, but the former is avoided when it would be undistinguishable from the indicative, as is regularly the case with weak verbs; i. e. there is a free

choice between ich wäre and ich würde ſein, or between ich ginge and ich würde gehen, but not between ich machte and ich würde machen.

a. In indirect discourse after a past tense the conditional is preferable if futurity is to be denoted; e. g. ich erfuhr, daß ich Sie hier treffen würde (L.), *I learned that I should find you here.* Here träfe would not do.

2. The use of the conditional in the condition, while not uncommon in good writers, is not to be approved; for *if it would only rain soon*, say wenn es doch bald regnete, rather than wenn es doch bald regnen würde. Still, cf. Goethe's würdeſt du es ahnen können, du wäreſt Teufel g'nug, *if you could understand it, you would be devil enough*, etc. In passive conditions würde . . . werden is avoided; e. g. würden wir von ihr betroffen (G.), *if we should be caught by her.*

363. The Imperative denotes a command. Properly it has only a second person, the first and third being supplied from the subjunctive (§ 356).

a. Strictly the imv. has but one tense, though a kind of perf. sometimes occurs in locutions like er habe es umſonſt getan, *let him have done it in vain*, i. e. *let it be in vain that he has done it.*

1. The subjects du and ihr are omitted unless emphatic, but other subjects are expressed; e. g. ſei mein Freund! *be my friend!* ſei du mit mir! *be thou with me!* ſchweigt! *be silent!* but er ſchweige! man ſchweige! ſchweigen wir! always with pronoun.

2. The imv. often has concessive or conditional force. See § 356, 1 and 1, *a.*

3. Substitutes for the imperative are as follows:

a. The inf., in placards and brusque commands; e. g. rechts fahren! *keep to the right!* Maul halten! *hold your tongue!*

b. The perf. pple.; e. g. hinaufgeſchaut (G.)! *look up!* Cf. § 369, 4.

c. The indic., pres. or fut., in mild commands; e. g. Karl, du kommſt mit mir; du aber, Fritz, wirſt zu Hauſe bleiben, *Karl, you come with me; but you, Fritz, will stay at home.*

d. Laſſen with infinitive in place of the regular passive imv.; e. g. laß dich überreden! *be persuaded!* Cf. § 344, 1.

THE INFINITIVE

364. Nature and Development of the Infinitive.

1. In its origin the inf. is a verbal noun having the force of the Eng. verbal in *ing* (which must not be confounded with the pres. pple. in *ing*). In old German it was inflected and the dat. with zu (*ze tragene, for bearing, ze ritene, for riding*), being of frequent occurrence, became a stereotyped phrase (zu tragen, *to bear*, zu reiten, *to ride*). This phrase developed uses of its own and encroached upon the simple inf., while the latter usurped, in a few cases, the functions of a pres. pple.

2. We have, then, in modern German: (1) the substantive inf., translatable usually by the verbal in *ing;* (2) the old inf. without zu, corresponding in the main to the Eng. inf. without *to*, but in part to the pple. in *ing;* (3) the inf. with zu, corresponding in the main to the Eng. inf. with *to*.

365. The substantive Infinitive generally has the article, forms no plural, and is modified by adjectives, not by adverbs; e. g. das Rauchen iſt verboten, *smoking is forbidden;* du liebeſt nicht das laute Lieben (Schwab), *thou lovest not loud loving;* da hört er ein Singen wie Flöten ſo ſüß (S.), *there he hears a singing*, etc.; vergeht mir Hören, Sehn und Denken (G.), *hearing, sight and thought forsake me.*

1. Such a verbal with ein sometimes denotes vehemence, frequent repetition or indefinite continuance. See § 230, 2, *a*.

2. The substantive inf. is a noun, not a verb, and does not admit a separate object in the acc., as it may in Eng. The object becomes either an objective gen., a dat. with von, or else it is written in one word with the inf.; e. g. *he is not the man for (the) making (of) a speech* = er iſt nicht der Mann zum Halten einer Rede (not eine Rede), or zum Redehalten; *writing letters is tedious* = das Schreiben von Briefen, or das Brief(e)ſchreiben, iſt langweilig.

a. Adverbial modifiers must be written with the inf. in one word; hence such words as das Umſichgreifen, *the spreading;* das Nebeneinandergehenſtwerden, *the simultaneous execution;* das Nochnichtdageweſenſein, *the non-existence hitherto.*

366. The Infinitive without zu occurs in various constructions as follows:

1. After the modal auxiliaries and laſſen ; also after tun, when used as auxiliary or with nichts als, *nothing but ;* e. g. es kann ſein, *it may be ;* wir mögen das nicht wieder hören (G.), *we do not want to hear that again ;* laß alles Sinnen ſein (G.), *let all speculation alone ;* was tu' ich weiter fragen? *why do I ask further?* er hat nichts als ſchimpfen getan, *he did nothing but call names.*

a. The inf. with laſſen has active force only when its subject is at the same time the object of laſſen, as in laß mich dir etwas ſagen, *let me tell you something.* Thru the omission of the object-subject in such locutions as the last, the inf. acquired passive force ; i. e. laß ein Licht holen, *let (some one) bring a candle,* came to be felt as = *let a candle be brought, have a candle brought.* Laß dir ſagen, is thus the same thing as laß dir geſagt ſein (§ 344, 1), which also occurs. This use of the inf. then gave rise to the peculiar impersonal passive seen, e. g. in es läßt ſich hoffen, *it lets itself be hoped,* i. e. *there is room for hope, it may be hoped.*

b. This use of the active inf. with passive meaning gives rise sometimes to ambiguity ; e. g. er ließ den Kutſcher fahren, may mean *he let the coachman go,* or *he had him drive,* or *he had him driven.* In such cases the connection must determine the sense.

c. When laſſen is followed by an acc. and that in turn by an intransitive verb with predicate noun, such noun stands regularly in the acc. ; e. g. laß mich deinen Freund ſein (G.), *let me be your friend.* So one would say heiß ihn einen braven Knaben ſein, *bid him be a good boy.* But the nom. occurs now and then in good writers ; e. g. laß den Grafen dieſer Geſandte ſein (L.), *let the Count be this envoy.*

2. As true infinitive after fühlen, heißen, helfen, hören, lehren, lernen, machen, nennen, ſehen ; e. g. ich fühl' ein Herz in meinem Buſen ſchlagen (W.), *feel a heart beat ;* heiß mich nicht reden, heiß mich ſchweigen (G.), *do not bid me speak, bid me be silent ;* helft den gemeinen Feind mir niederhalten (S.), *help me keep down,* etc. ; ich hab' ihn rufen hören (G.), *I heard him call ;* wenn ich dich ihn könnte verachten lehren (G.), *could I teach you to despise him ;* ich habe jetzt dich kennen lernen (G.), *have learned to know you ;* der Kaſus macht mich lachen (G.), *makes me laugh ;* das nenne ich doch beweiſen (W.), *I call that proving ;* er ſah ihn fallen (G.), *he saw it fall.*

a. Several of the above verbs, notably heißen, helfen, lehren, lernen, machen, may take the inf. with zu; e. g. o, lehre mich das Mögliche zu tun (G.), *teach me to do what is possible.*

b. After fühlen, hören, sehen, the active inf. may have passive force, just as after lassen and with a similar possibility of ambiguity; e. g. so hört und sieht man dich beneiden, *thus one hears and sees you envied.* Ich sah ihn schlagen, might mean *I saw him strike* or *I saw him struck.*

3. In place of a present participle, to denote a status, after bleiben, finden, haben, liegen, stehen; e. g. alles blieb stehen, *everything* (or *everybody*) *remained standing;* die Uhr ist stehen geblieben, *the clock has stopped;* heraustretend fand ich den Himmel von Sternen blinken (G.), *I found the sky glittering with stars;* ich habe Geld im Kasten liegen (Gr.), *I have money lying in the box;* Genua liegt schlafen (S.), *Genoa lies sleeping;* was steht ihr horchen (S.)? *why stand you listening?*

a. With all of these verbs, however, except perhaps bleiben, the pres. pple. is the more common construction. Between ich finde ihn schlafen and ich finde ihn schlafend there is no difference unless it be that the pple. better expresses duration. Cf. Schiller's *Jungfrau*, l. 447.

4. After gehen, fahren, reiten, and some other verbs of motion, but only in set phrases; as spazieren gehen (reiten, fahren), *go walking* (*riding, driving*); sich schlafen legen, *lie down to sleep;* jagen gehen, *go hunting.*

5. As subject of verbs, and as predicate after sein and heißen (particularly after das heißt = das nennt man mit Recht, *that is properly called*); e. g. blasen ist nicht flöten (G.), *blowing is not playing the flute;* dieses heißt die Zeit verlieren (U.), *this is losing time;* das hieße die ganze Sache verderben (G.), *that would be to ruin the whole cause.*

a. The inf. in the first example is distinguishable from the true substantive inf. by the fact that a modifier would have to be an adverb, not an adjective.

6. As brusque imv.; e. g. Maul halten! *hold your tongue!*

7. In the idiom er hat gut reden, *it is all well enough for him to talk.*

367. The Infinitive with zu — often called the 'prepositional infinitive' — is used:

1. To denote purpose; e. g. man kommt zu ſchaun (G.), *they come to gaze;* ich eile fort ihr ewiges Licht zu trinken (G.), *I hasten away to drink her eternal light;* ſie nahmen mir's, um mich zu kränken (G.), *they took it from me in order to pain me;* man gab mir zu verſtehen, *they gave me to understand;* ich habe nichts zu eſſen, *I have nothing to eat.*

a. The original force of this inf. is seen if we translate it by *for* with a verbal: *they come for seeing; I have nothing for eating.* When the inf. denotes the purpose for which the subject acts, it is now usually preceded by um, as in the third example above, but it is very common without um in classical poetry.

b. To denote a purpose which is not the purpose of the subject, modern German prefers in general a substantive inf. with zum, or else an equivalent verbal noun; e. g. *he gave me the letter to copy*, er gab mir den Brief zum Abſchreiben (not abzuſchreiben); *he sent me the book to look at*, er ſchickte mir das Buch zur Anſicht (not anzuſehen). Sometimes the purpose can be made the purpose of the subject by the use of laſſen; e. g. *he brought me the watch to repair*, er brachte mir die Uhr um ſie reparieren zu laſſen (*to have it repaired*). It should be observed, however, that exceptions to this rule are common in talk and even in good writers; e. g. er weckte mich, um den Sonnenaufgang anzuſehen (Heine), *he woke me to see the sunrise*, i. e. *that I might see it.*

c. As in Eng., the prepositional inf. may denote destiny or result under the form of purpose; e. g. ſie ſchieden, um ſich nie wiederzuſehen, *they parted never to see each other again.*

2. As subject of verbs; e. g. euch zu gefallen war mein höchſter Wunſch (G.), *to please you was my highest wish.*

3. As object or complement of verbs; e. g. hör' auf mit deinem Gram zu ſpielen (G.), *cease to play with your grief;* da beſchloſſen ſie zu bleiben (S.), *there they decided to remain;* mit der Hand winkt' er mir zu gehen, *with his hand he signed to me to go;* was willſt du dich das Stroh zu dreſchen plagen (G.)? *why will you trouble yourself to thresh straw?* ich nehme mich in acht, mit ſolchen Hexen öffentlich zu gehen (G.), *I am careful not to appear in public with such witches.*

a. The verbs and verbal phrases that are thus followed by the inf with zu are literally too numerous to mention, but the use of the construction corresponds in the main pretty closely to that of the Eng. inf. with *to*. The chief difference is that Ger. does not tolerate the

prepositional inf. with subject-accusative ; for *I know him to be a liar, I judge him to be about 30 years old*, Ger. says: ich weiß, daß er ein Lügner iſt, ich glaube, daß er, etc. Still, classic writers, notably Lessing, sometimes use the construction in imitation of the Latin ; e. g. bis er den rechten Zeitpunkt gekommen zu ſein glaubte (L.), *until he believed the right time to have come.* Cf. further § 366, 2, *a.*

4. As predicate with passive meaning after ſein, bleiben, ſcheinen, ſtehen ; e. g. das iſt zu erwarten, *that is to be expected;* das ſteht nicht zu ändern, *that remains unchangeable.* Cf. § 370, *a.*

5. As complement of nouns and adjectives; e. g. es iſt wohl Zeit zu ſcheiden (G.), *it is time to go, I think ;* dies iſt die Art mit Hexen umzugehn (G.), *that is the way to deal with witches ;* das wäre ſchwer zu beweiſen, *that would be hard to prove ;* ihr wäret wert, gleich in die Eh' zu treten (G.), *you would be fit to enter the married state at once.*

a. The construction is very common after adjectives preceded by zu; e. g. ich bin zu alt um nur zu ſpielen (G.), *too old merely to play.* Observe, however, that the familiar Eng. construction seen in *the story is too good for me to believe, the book is too deep for him to have written* (*it*), where an inf. with subject different from that of the principal verb is mediated by means of *for*, can not be imitated in Ger.; instead of it we have als daß followed by the potential subj.: die Geſchichte iſt zu gut, als daß ich daran glauben könnte; das Buch iſt zu tief, als daß er es hätte ſchreiben können.

b. An inf. which complements the meaning of a noun or an adjective does not need um, tho the useless particle is very often inserted. One meets constantly with sentences of the type: er war geſcheit genug, um den Gedanken zu erfaſſen, aber es fehlte ihm an Mut, um denſelben auszuführen, *he was clever enough to seize the idea, but he lacked courage to carry it out.* But um is superfluous in both cases. Notice, then, the difference between ich gab mir die Mühe ihn zu beſuchen, *I took the trouble to visit him*, and ich gab mir viel Mühe, um ihn zu beſuchen, *I took much trouble in order to visit him.*

6. After the prepositions ohne and (an)ſtatt, as well as um ; e. g. ich muß euren Kummer noch vergrößern, ſtatt ihn zu heilen (S.), *I must increase your grief instead of healing it ;* ſie gehen an dem Hut vorbei, ohne darauf zu achten (S.), *they pass by the hat without noticing it.*

a. Other prepositions do not govern the inf. with zu directly, but combine with an anticipating da; e. g. keiner dachte daran, den Hut zu grüßen (S.), *no one thought of greeting the hat;* er iſt nicht dazu gemacht, anſtrengend zu arbeiten (Gr.), *he is not made for working hard.*

7. Absolutely in exclamations; e. g. was! am Rand des Grabs zu lügen (G.)! *what! to lie with his last breath!* und nun — ums Haar ſich auszuraufen (G.)! *and now — it's enough to make one tear out one's hair!*

THE PARTICIPLE

368. The Present Participle is used:

1. As adjective, adverb, and substantive; e. g. ſchäumende Weine (G.), *foaming wines;* man möchte raſend werden (G.), *one could go mad;* in auffallend kurzer Zeit, *in a surprisingly short time;* die Liebenden, *the lovers;* die Entſagenden (G.), *the votaries of renunciation.*

a. In the predicate after ſein the pres. pple. has adjectival force and denotes a state or a quality. It does not form a tense as it may in Eng. Cf. § 348, 1.

b. A participial adjective has active force and the noun it qualifies should be the subject of the action, as in ein liebendes Herz, *a heart that loves.* But there are some phrases in use which are exceptions; e. g. der betreffende Punkt, *the point concerned;* eine vorhabende Reiſe, *an intended journey;* fahrende Habe, *movables;* die reitende Poſt, *the mounted mail.* Others are also current which are more or less dubious; for eſſende Waren, *eatables*, say rather Eßwaren; for blaſende Inſtrumente (G.), *wind-instruments*, say rather Blasinſtrumente; for fallende Sucht, *falling-sickness*, Fallſucht, etc.

2. As appositional predicate, to denote a concomitant act or state; e. g. wir Schweſtern ſaßen, die Wolle ſpinnend (S.), *we sisters used to sit spinning the wool;* und ihr Kuß war Götterbrot, glühend wie der Wein (G.), *and her kiss was ambrosia, glowing like wine.*

a. Observe that this pple. denotes a concomitant act or state, not one which is past or to come. Still, exceptions occur, just as in Eng.; e. g. dies ſagend ritt er trutziglich von dannen (S.), *saying* (i. e. *having said*) *this he rode away defiantly;* in Zug ans Land ſteigend kehrten wir

im Ochſen ein (G.), *disembarking in Zug we put up at the 'Ox.'* In the permissible phrase das nächſtens erſcheinende Buch, *the book soon to appear*, the idea of futurity is contained in the adverb. Cf. § 370, *a*.

b. The pple. may denote means, but not cause; e. g. kannſt du mich ſchmeichelnd je belügen (G.), *if you can ever deceive me by flattering;* und als wir ſie friſch rudernd bald erreicht (S.), *and when we had presently reached it by rowing briskly;* verſinke ſtampfend (G.), *sink out of sight by stamping.* But for the Eng. causal pple., seen e. g. in the sentence *having nothing else to do, I went to the theater*, Ger. uses a clause with a causal conjunction: da ich ſonſt nichts zu tun hatte, ging ich ins Theater.

c. The appositional pple. usually refers to the subject, but may refer to an oblique case, if there is no chance of ambiguity; e. g. und find' ihn hier . . . ſpitzfind'ge Rätſel löſend (S.), *and find him here guessing cunning riddles;* noch zuckend, mit des Panthers Zähnen zerreißen ſie des Feindes Herz (S.), *still quivering* (i. e. *the heart*) *they rend with the teeth of the panther the heart of their foe.* Such a construction as this last, however, is admissible only in poetry; in prose one would say das noch zuckende Herz. Still less admissible in prose is the use of a pple. referring to some word not contained in the sentence at all; e. g. erſt knieend laß die treue Widmung dir gefallen, hohe Frau (G.), *first kneeling let my loyal homage please thee*, i. e. *accept the homage I offer on my bended knees.*

369. The Perfect Participle is used most frequently in the conjugation of the perfect tenses and the passive voice. Besides this it occurs:

1. As adjective, adverb, and substantive; e. g. geehrter Herr, *honored sir;* die Bedrückten, *the oppressed;* ein verflucht ſchlauer Kerl, *a cursedly sly fellow.*

a. As adjective the perf. pple. of transitive verbs has passive force, while that of certain intransitives conjugated with ſein denotes the state that has resulted from the action; e. g. der gefällte Baum, *the felled tree;* der gefallene Baum, *the fallen tree*, = der Baum, der gefallen iſt; ein mißlungener Verſuch, *an attempt that has failed*, = ein Verſuch, der mißlungen iſt.

b. In general, then, one can not use adjectively the perf. pple. of an intransitive conjugated with haben, because such verbs form no passive. That is, one can not say das geſchlafene Kind, *the slept child*, for das Kind, das geſchlafen hat, tho one may say das eingeſchlafene Kind for das Kind, das eingeſchlafen iſt. There are, however, a few participial adjectives with active force formed from intransitives conjugated with

haben. Such are erfahren, *experienced;* gereift, *traveled* (ein Gereifter, *a traveled man*, just as in Eng.); geſchworen, *sworn* (die Geſchworenen, *the jurors*); ſtudiert, *studied* (ein Studierter, *an educated man*); trunken, *drunk;* verdient, *meritorious;* verſchwiegen, *silent.*

c. There is in Ger. no perf. active pple., tho one meets with awkward attempts to form one by means of habend; e. g. die rühmlichſt gekämpft habende Brigade, *the brigade that had fought most creditably.* Compounds such as ungefrühſtückt (Bismarck), for *without having breakfasted* and ungebetet (Gerok), *without having said grace*, are quite on a par with 'unbreakfasted' and 'unprayed' in Eng. Still less admissible, grammatically, is the use of a perf. pple. with an object, tho it is not so very uncommon, especially when the object is ſich; e. g. das den Grafen befallene Unglück (G.), *the misfortune that had befallen the Count;* an dieſem nach und nach ſich verbreiteten Geheimnis (G.), *this mystery that had spread abroad gradually.*

2. As appositional predicate, in the same way and under the same restrictions as the present participle (§ 368, 2, *a*, *b*); e. g. beſchämt nur ſteh' ich vor ihm da (G.), *I just stand there before him ashamed;* entfernt von dir . . . ergötzt mich noch dein liebevolles Bild (G.), *remote from thee, thy dear image still delights me.*

3. In absolute construction, mostly with an accusative absolute; e. g. ſie ſingt hinaus in die finſtere Nacht, das Auge vom Weinen getrübet (S.), *she sings out into the dark night, her eyes dimmed with tears.*

4. With imperative force, thru the omission of auxiliary and subject; e. g. friſch gewagt! *venture boldly;* hinaufgeſchaut (G.)! *look up!*

5. With kommen and gehen as the equivalent of a pres. pple.; e. g. da kommt mein Weib gelaufen (S.), *thereupon my wife comes running.* But in verloren gehen, *to be lost* (es iſt veloren gegangen, *it is lost*), the participle has passive force.

6. As predicate after heißen; e. g. das heiß' ich endlich fortgeſchritten (G.), *I call that getting along fast;* das heißt die Willkür auf die Spitze getrieben (Andresen), *that is carrying arbitrary caprice too far.* But in this last case treiben would seem to be better on account of the object Willkür.

370. The Gerundive. This is in form the present participle preceded by zu and, when used attributively, de-

clined like any adjective. Its force is that of a future passive participle, denoting feasibility, obligation, propriety; e. g. eine nie zu vergeſſende Freude, *a never-to-be-forgotten joy;* ein ſchwer zu erfüllender Wunſch, *a wish difficult of fulfillment.*

a. For the gerundive in the predicate see § 367, 4. Since the gerundive has passive force it should not be formed from intransitive verbs. Such locutions as das bald zu erſcheinende Buch, for *the book soon to appear*, are ungrammatical, tho several are in use.

SYNTAX OF THE ADVERB

371. Classification of Adverbs. With respect to their function adverbs may be divided into two classes: simple adverbs and adverbial conjunctions.

a. The simple adverbs denote relations of time, place, degree and manner. They may modify a verb, as in gut ſchreiben, *write well;* an adjective, as in ſehr gut, *very good;* an adverb, as in ſehr gerne, *very gladly;* a prepositional phrase, as mitten im Feuer, *right in the fire;* a noun, as in der Mann hier, *the man here;* or they may stand in the predicate, as in es iſt vorbei, *it is past.*

b. The adverbial conjunctions modify adverbially the verb of the sentence in which they stand, but serve at the same time to indicate the logical connection of the clause with what precedes or follows; e. g. zwar iſt es leicht, doch iſt das Leichte ſchwer (G.), *to be sure it is easy, yet the easy is hard.* Since the conjunctional aspect of these words is more important than the adverbial, they are treated further on under the head of conjunctions (§ 380).

1. With respect to their origin adverbs may be divided into three groups: (1) primitive words and compounds of such, as da, *there;* darüber, *over there;* (2) derivatives formed by means of a suffix, as teils, *partly;* blindlings, *blindly;* (3) adjectives in the stem-form, as gut, *well.*

372. Primitive Adverbs. These denote time, place and direction; e. g. jetzt, *now;* dann, *then;* hier, *here;* dort, *yonder;* dahin, *thither;* auf, *up;* unter, *down.* Many of them are in use as prepositions and as verbal prefixes (§ 341).

a. Words of this kind may be called demonstrative or positional adverbs. A few of them form adjectives in ig, as hieſig, from hier, dortig, jetzig, damalig, which are used prepositively; e. g. der damalige König, *the then king* (never der damals König); das hieſige Theater, *the theater of this place.* Cf. also § 296, 1.

1. Besides the demonstrative adverbs there are a few others that admit only of adverbial use, the corresponding adjective, if there be one, having either a different form or a different meaning. Such are bald, *soon* (adj. baldig); eben, *just, lately* (eben as adj. = *smooth, even*); faſt, *almost* (see below, § 373, 3); gar, *quite;* gern, *gladly;* kaum, *scarcely;* ſchon, *already, quite;* ſehr, *very;* wohl, *well, perhaps.* Schon has numerous idiomatic uses as a particle of assurance; e. g. ſchon gut, *all right;* ſchon das erſte Wort, *the very first word;* das ſieht ſchon beſſer aus, *that looks decidedly better;* er wird ſchon kommen, *be assured he will come.* Wohl, while cognate with *well*, does not often modify verbs in that sense: *he writes well* = er ſchreibt gut. When used in the sense of *well*, it is accented, but its most common use is that of an unaccented particle of doubt or uncertainty; e. g. (with stress) ich weiß ſehr wohl, *I know very well;* es iſt wo'hlbeka'nnt, *it is well known;* (without stress) Sie wiſſen wohl, *you probably know;* es iſt wohl bekannt, *it is doubtless known.*

373. Adverb and Adjective. Most adjectives can be used in the stem-form adverbially; e. g. ſo kalt verlaßt ihr die gemeine Sache (S.)? *do you thus coldly desert the common cause?* ſchon wieder ſo ſtolz beſcheiden (L.)? *again already so proudly modest?*

1. While Ger. has no adverbial suffix of universal applicability, the suffix lich, cognate with *ly*, does form a number of adverbs which can not be used adjectively; e. g. freilich, *to be sure* (frei = *free*); ſchwerlich, *hardly* (ſchwer = *heavy, difficult*); ſicherlich, *surely;* wahrlich, *truly.* Cf. also hoffentlich, *as may be hoped* (from hoffend); wiſſentlich, *knowingly* (from wiſſend), and others like them. But most derivatives in lich admit also of adjectival use; e. g. gütlich, *kindly;* neulich, *recent(ly)*; gänzlich, *entirely.*

2. Many adverbs are simply case-forms of adjectives, the genitive being the most common; e. g. rechts, *to the right;* ſtracks, *directly;* zuſehends, *visibly;* höchſtens, *at the most;* zweitens, *secondly.* Where the ending appears to be ens, the en is inflectional.

a. The suffix wärts, cognate with *ward* in *toward*, *homeward*, is the gen. of an old adj. *wert* of uncertain meaning. It is applied to prepositions and nouns; e. g. vorwärts, *forward;* heimwärts, *homeward;* mauerwärts, *toward the wall.*

b. The acc. neut. (undistinguishable from the stem) of a pronominal adjective is often used adverbially; e. g. etwas kalt, *somewhat cold;* viel größer, *much greater.* So, too, comparatives and superlatives; e. g. beſſer bekannt, *better known;* höchſt ſeltſam, *very strange.*

3. In Old Ger. adverbs were regularly formed from adjectives by means of the ending *o;* thus *sconi*, *beautiful*, but *scono*, *beautifully.* As *i* caused umlaut while *o* did not, we have several pairs like ſchon — ſchön; faſt — feſt; fruh (rare) — früh; ſpat (rare) — ſpät. The old adverbial ending still persists, tho no longer required in fern(e), gern(e), lang(e). So often in poetry for the meter's sake; e. g. warte nur balde (G.); und ſchnell und unbegreiflich ſchnelle (G.).

4. The modifier of a participial substantive is regularly an adjective, not an adverb, e. g. ein gründlicher Gelehrter, *a thoro scholar:* ein naher Verwandter, *a near relative.*

374. Adverbs from Nouns. These are always case-forms, the genitive being the most common; e. g. abends, *in the evening, evenings;* vormittags, *forenoons;* teils, *in part;* flugs, *speedily.* Often there is a limiting adjective; e. g. großenteils, *in great part;* keineswegs, *by no means;* gewiſſermaßen, *in some sense;* dergeſtalt, *in such way.*

a. When s had thus come to be felt as an adverbial suffix and not as a case-ending, it was often applied in places where it could not be a case-ending; e. g. nachts, *by night* (from a fem. noun); ſeitens, *on the part of* (von Seiten); allerdings (aller Dinge, gen. plu.); jedenfalls, *in any case* (auf jeden Fall).

b. Adverbs in lings are, in their origin, adverbial genitives of nouns in ling; e. g. blindlings, *in the manner of a blind person* (Blindling), *blindly.* Hence what appears to be an adverbial suffix lings applied to adjectives; e. g. jählings, *precipitately.*

1. A very few adverbs are in their origin datives; e. g. morgen, *tomorrow;* mitten, *in the midst*, shortened from inmitten.

2. A somewhat larger number are accusatives (§ 266), e. g. heim, *home;* weg, *away;* weiſe, in ſtückweiſe, *piecemeal;* zwangsweiſe, *by force;* teilweiſe, *partly.* The conversion of an adverb in weiſe into an adjective, as in die teilweiſe Erneuerung, for *the partial restoration*, is hardly to be approved, tho it is becoming common.

375. Comparison of Adverbs. As a rule only those adverbs which admit of adjectival use can be compared; e. g. willſt heller ſehn als deine edeln Väter (S.)? *dost claim to see more clearly than thy noble fathers?* die geht am weiteſten (S.), *she goes farthest.*

1. Of the list in § 372, 1, eben, faſt, gar and ſchon are not compared. Bald sometimes has balder (bälder), am baldeſten (bäldeſten), but these forms are avoided in favor of eher, am eheſten. Gern has lieber, am liebſten. Sehr compares, like viel, by means of mehr, am meiſten. Wohler, am wohlſten, are rare, their place being taken by beſſer, am beſten.

2. The phrase with am forms a relative, that with aufs an absolute superlative; e. g. ſie ſang am beſten, *she sang best*, i. e. *better than any one else;* but ſie ſang aufs beſte, *she sang her best*, i. e. *as well as she could.* Further examples: der Menſch iſt aufs nächſte mit den Tieren verwandt (G.), *man is very closely related to the lower animals;* von allen Geiſtern, die verneinen, iſt mir der Schalk am wenigſten zur Laſt (G.), *the rogue is least burdensome to me.*

a. An absolute superlative is also made with the ending ens; e. g. höchſtens, *at the most;* meiſtens, *for the most part;* wenigſtens, *at least;* ich danke beſtens, *my best thanks.*

3. A few uninflected superlatives are used adverbially; e. g. höchſt, *in the highest degree, very;* äußerſt, *exceedingly;* meiſt, *for the most part;* jüngſt, *lately;* längſt, *long since.*

4. Comparison that belongs properly to an adverb should not be transferred to a following adjective; thus, say ſchwerer wiegende Gründe, not ſchwerwiegendere Gründe, for *more weighty reasons;* die höchſtgeſtellten, rather than die hochgeſtelleſten, for *those in the highest position.* There are, however, a few well-established exceptions; e. g. hochverehrteſter, for höchſtverehrter, *most honored sir;* die wohlunterrichtetſten, for die am beſten unterrichteten, *the best informed people.*

SYNTAX OF THE PREPOSITION

376. Prepositions and their Cases. Prepositions govern cases, thus forming phrases which generally have

adverbial force, but may modify a noun; e. g. die Sonne tönt nach alter Weiſe (G.), *the sun makes music in the old way;* ein Kampf ums Leben, *a battle for life.*

1. Historically prepositions are most closely akin to adverbs. Even the old monosyllabic prepositions are adverbs in their origin, and the most of them are still in use as adverbs (separable prefixes). Their case-governing power is of secondary origin, having been acquired thru association.

2. The accusative is used after bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, ſonder, um and wider. (For meanings, examples and comments, see § 377.)

3. The dative is used after aus, bei, mit, nach, von and zu; also after ab, außer, binnen, entgegen, gegenüber, gemäß, nächſt, nebſt, ſamt, ſeit and zuwider.

4. The dative or accusative is used after an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor and zwiſchen.

a. The acc. answers to the questions 'whither?' 'how long?' the dat. to the questions 'where?' 'when?' But there are numerous phrases that do not come under this rule. See the list in § 377.

5. The genitive is used after (an)ſtatt, außerhalb, diesſeits, halb, infolge, inmitten, innerhalb, jenſeits, kraft, längs, laut, ob, oberhalb, trotz, um . . . willen, unangeſehen, unbeſchadet, ungeachtet, unterhalb, (ver)mittelſt, vermöge, während, wegen and zufolge.

a. Besides the above there is a large number of prepositional adverbs that govern the gen. Most of them are of recent coinage and the number is constantly increasing. They are not included under § 377. Such are:

abzüglich, *with deduction of*
angeſichts, *in view of*
anläßlich, *apropos of*
antwortlich, *by way of reply to*
ausſchließlich, *exclusive of*
behufs, *for the sake of*
betreffs, *concerning*
bezüglich, *concerning*
einſchließlich, *inclusive of*
gegenwarts, *in the presence of*
gelegentlich, *apropos of*
hinſichtlich, *concerning*
inhaltlich, *according to the content [of*
mangels, *in lack of*
namens, *by the name of*
rückſichtlich, *concerning*
ſeitens, *on the part of*
unfern, *not far from*
unweit, *not far from*
vorbehaltlich, *with reservation of*
zuzüglich, *with addition of*
zwecks, *for the purpose of*

b. Even adverbs of direction, like nördlich, *to the north*, rechts *to the right*, abſeits, *to one side*, are sometimes constructed with a gen., but von with dat. is better; say nördlich vom Dorfe, not nördlich des Dorfes, for *north of the village*. The same is to be said of unfern and unweit, tho the prepositional use of these has become very common. They are sometimes followed by the dat. The order of preference should be: (1) unweit von dem Dorfe, (2) unweit des Dorfes, (3) unweit dem Dorfe.

377. List of Prepositions.

The use of prepositions is highly idiomatic and constitutes a difficult subject for the learner. It is hoped that the following alphabetical list, with the accompanying comments and illustrations, may be found useful for reference.

Ab, dat. As prep. a rare word. It occurs in South Ger. dialect and in the language of business, in the sense of *from* (= von); e. g. ab der Poſt, *from the post-office*. So of the delivery of goods: ab Hamburg, ab Bahnhof (*from depot*), ab hier, etc.

An, dat. and acc., *at*, *by*, *on*.

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position at or near, in phrases of rest; e. g. am Tiſche ſitzen, *sit at table;* am Abend, *at eventide;* es iſt an der Zeit, *it is in order;* am 4. Juli, *on the 4th of July*. It may be = *on*, in the sense of *near to*, or *clinging to* a surface not level; e. g. das Schloß am Meer, *the castle on the sea*, but das Schiff auf dem Meere, *the ship on the sea;* an der Wand, *on the wall* (of a picture), but auf der Mauer (of a person standing 'on the wall'); am Bergesabhang, *on the hill-slope*, but auf dem Berge, *on the hill*. (2) Official position; e. g. an einer Univerſität lehren, *to teach at a university*, but auf einer Univerſität ſtudieren. (3) Occupation, concern; e. g. an einer Aufgabe arbeiten, *work at a task;* an der Feier teilnehmen, *take part in the celebration*. (4) The sphere of plenty and want, increase and decrease: e. g. reich (arm) an Gütern, *rich* (*poor*) *in goods;* Mangel an Verſtand, *lack of sense;* an Stärke abnehmen (zunehmen), *decrease* (*increase*) *in strength*. (5) The seat of defect, disease, peculiarity; e. g. krank am Herzen, *sick at heart;* beſchädigt am Fuße, *injured in the foot;* es iſt an ſich merkwürdig, *it is remarkable in itself*. (6) The occasion of suffering and death; e. g. an einem Fieber krank ſein, *be sick with a fever;* an der Schwindſucht ſterben, *die of consumption*. (7) The seat of evidence; e. g. man ſieht dir's an den Augen an, *one can see by your eyes;* jemand am Geſicht erkennen, *recognize one by his face*. (8) The means of guidance; e. g. ein Tier am Seile führen, *lead an animal by a rope*.

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g. ans Fenſter gehen, *go to the window;* einen Ring an den Finger ſtecken, *put a ring on*

one's finger; an das Ziel gelangen, *arrive at the goal.* (2) The goal of thought; e. g. denkt ihr an mich? *do you think of me?* glaubst du an Gott? *dost thou believe in God?* jemand an den Tod mahnen, *remind one of death.* (3) The object to or for, after certain verbs; e. g. an einen ſchreiben, *write to one;* Waren an einen verkaufen, *sell wares to one.* (4) With bis, the end of a period or space; e. g. bis an ſein ſelig Ende, *even to his blessed end;* bis an die Ohren, *up to the ears.*

Anſtatt, gen.; from Statt, *place, stead,* governed in the dat. or acc. by an, hence = *instead;* e. g. anſtatt der goldnen Lieder, *instead of golden songs.* Sometimes with tmesis; e. g. an Sohnes ſtatt, *in a son's stead.* In talk sometimes with dat.: anſtatt mir, anſtatt dem Vater. But an meiner Statt, anſtatt des Vaters, are better.

Auf, dat. and acc., *on, upon.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position upon, in phrases of rest; e. g. auf dem Boden ſtehen, *stand upon the ground;* auf dem Rücken liegen, *lie upon one's back;* auf dem Fluſſe rudern, *row upon the river.* (2) Location at, in numerous phrases; e. g. auf der Burg ſitzen, *reside at the castle;* auf dem Rathauſe (der Univerſität, dem Balle, der Meſſe) ſein, *be at the town-hall (the university, the ball, the fair).* (3) Status, in a looser locative sense; e. g. auf dem Wege, *on the way;* auf der Neige, *on the decline;* etwas auf dem Spiele haben, *have something at stake;* auf ſeinem Kopfe beſtehen, *insist on one's opinion, be obstinate;* das hat nichts auf ſich, *that amounts to nothing* (i. e. *it is a basis with nothing on it*). See under an.

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g. aufs Dach klettern, *climb upon the roof;* ſich aufs Bett legen, *lie down upon the bed.* The verb of motion need not be expressed; e. g. Waſſer auf meine Mühle, *water to my mill.* (2) The goal of perception, attention, preparation, hope, desire, waiting, etc.; e. g. auf die Uhr ſehen, *look at the clock;* auf gutes Wetter warten (hoffen), *wait (hope) for good weather;* ſich auf den Krieg rüſten, *prepare for the war.* Hence often in wishes, healths, etc.; e. g. auf gute Geſundheit, *here's to your health;* auf gut Glück, *for good luck;* auf Wiederſehn, *good-bye.* Cf. further: Ich bin hier auf kurze Zeit, *for a short time* (looking ahead); auf jeden Fall, *in any case, at all events.* (3) Close sequence; e. g. auf Leid kommt Freud, *after sorrow comes joy;* ich tue es auf deinen Rat (Befehl, Wink), *on your advice (command, suggestion);* ich glaube dir aufs Wort, *I believe you implicitly.* (4) Manner; e. g. auf dieſe Weiſe, *in this manner* = in dieſer Weiſe; auf Deutſch, *in German;* auf eigene Hand, *on one's own 'hook.'* (5) The direction of feeling, after various adjectives, as böſe, eiferſüchtig, neidiſch, ſtolz; e. g. ſie iſt ſtolz auf ihre Schönheit, *proud of her beauty.* (6) The limit of extent, often with bis; e. g. drei Viertel

auf zwei, *a quarter to two;* bis auf Speiſ' und Trank, *even to food and drink.*

Aus, dat., *out of, from.* It denotes: (1) An inner point of departure, with verbs of motion and sensation; e. g. aus der Reihe treten, *step out of the ranks;* einen aus dem Waſſer (den Flammen, der Not) retten, *rescue one from the water (the flames, trouble);* aus dem Fenſter ſehen, *look out of the window.* (2) Simple aloofness, with verbs of rest, or without verb; e. g. laß mich aus der Sache, *leave me out of the affair;* aus den Augen, aus dem Sinn, *out of sight, out of mind.* (3) Origin, both local and logical; e. g. er ſtammt aus guter Familie (aus der Schweiz), *he comes of good family (from Switzerland);* das weiß ich aus Erfahrung, *I know it from experience;* es geſchah aus Unkenntnis, *from ignorance.* (4) Motive; e. g. aus Liebe (Haß, Eiferſucht) handeln, *act from love (hate, jealousy).* (5) Material; e. g. es iſt aus Holz gemacht, *made of wood.*

Außer, dat., *outside of, beside(s).* Formerly with gen., which survives in außer Landes gehen, *go abroad.* It stands before nouns of condition, state, and before pronouns; e. g. außer Atem, *out of breath;* außer Dienſt, *out of service;* außer acht laſſen, *leave out of account;* er iſt außer ſich, *he is beside himself.* Before nouns of place it was once common, but außerhalb is now preferred; e. g. außer dem Lager (Lu.), *outside of the camp;* außer der Stadt (S.), *outside the city.* It is often used in the sense of *except;* e. g. außer mir iſt kein Gott, *there is no God but me.*

Außerhalb, gen., *outside of;* e. g. außerhalb des Tores, *outside the gate;* außerhalb des Geſetzes, *outside of the law.* Sometimes with dat. in the classics and even now; e. g. außerhalb ſeinem Vaterlande (S.); außerhalb dem eingezäunten Hofe (Freytag), *outside the enclosed court.*

Bei, dat., *by, at, near, with.* It denotes: (1) Simple proximity; e. g. beim Fenſter, *by the window;* die Schlacht bei Waterloo, *the battle of,* i. e. *near, W.* (2) Location at, with, among, at the house of, in the works of; e. g. bei einem Gelag, *at a drinking-bout;* bei der Arbeit, *at work;* bei uns zu Lande, *in our country;* beim Onkel wohnen, *live at one's uncle's;* bei einem Profeſſor hören, *hear lectures under a professor;* die Stelle findet ſich bei Schiller, *is found in S.* (3) Status, condition, concomitancy; e. g. er iſt bei Jahren, *well along in years;* er iſt noch bei vollen Kräften, *still in full vigor;* bei ſich, *in one's senses;* ich bin bei Gelde, *I am in funds;* bei Nacht, *at night;* beizeiten, *at times, betimes;* bei gutem Wetter, *the weather being good;* bei dieſer Sachlage, *in view of this situation;* bei offnem Fenſter ſchlafen, *sleep with open window;* beim Gehen, *in walking.* (4) Ground of assertion, prohibition, etc.; e. g. beim Himmel! *by heaven!* das iſt bei Strafe verboten,

forbidden under penalty; bei Leibe nicht! *not for your life!* (5) Measure; e. g. bei einem Haare, *by a hair's breadth;* bei weitem, *by a long way.* (6) Point of seizure; e. g. jemand bei der Hand ergreifen, *seize one by the hand.*

Binnen, dat. and gen., *within.* Formerly of place or time, now only of time; e. g. binnen einiger Tage, *within a few days;* binnen drei Monaten, *within three months.* The dat. now prevails.

Bis, acc., *to, till.* It denotes a limit of motion, time, or space; e. g. ich gehe mit bis Leipzig, *I will go along as far as L.;* von Leipzig bis (nach) Dresden, *from L. to D.;* bis Freitag, *till Friday.* It is often followed by an adverb or another prep.; e. g. bis heute, *until to-day;* bis zum Ende, *to the end;* er steckt in Schulden bis über die Ohren, *he is over his ears in debt.* So in numerical approximations; acht bis zehn Jahre, *eight or ten years.*

Diesseits, gen., *this side of;* from Seite with adverbial s. Diesseits des Mondes, *this side the moon.* The dat. occurs in old writers.

Durch, acc., *thru, by.* It denotes: (1) Transition thru space or time; e. g. durch die Luft fliegen, *fly thru the air;* durch die Nacht wachen, *watch thru the night.* Figuratively: es fuhr mir durch den Kopf, *it flashed thru my head.* With verbs of perception: durch ein Fernrohr sehen, *look thru a telescope.* Often emphasized by an added hindurch; e. g. durch viele Jahre hindurch, *thru many years.* On the adverbial durch, in die ganze Nacht durch, *the whole night thru,* cf. § 266. (2) Means, including personal mediation, but not direct agency, for which see under von; e. g., etwas durch List erlangen, *get something by cunning;* er ließ mir durch einen Boten sagen, *sent word by a messenger.* (3) Ground, cause, occasion; e. g. ich bitte dich durch Gottes Gnaden, *I pray you by God's grace;* durch einen Zufall, *by an accident;* elend durch mich (G.), *miserable thru me.*

Entgegen, dat., *against, toward.* It is really an adverb (separable prefix), but when the verb of motion is omitted it may take on the character of a postpositive preposition; e. g. dem Schnee, dem Regen, dem Wind entgegen (G.), *in face of snow and rain and wind;* ihr steigt hinauf, dem Strom der Reuß entgegen (S.), *facing the current.*

Für, acc., *for.* It implies: (1) Interest, benefit; e. g. etwas für einen tun, *do something for one;* für Weib und Kinder beten, *pray for one's wife and children.* (2) Exchange, equivalence; e. g. für einen handeln, *act for* (i. e. *in lieu of*) *one;* es ist für Geld nicht zu haben, *not to be had for money;* ich halt' ihn für einen Schelm, *take him for a scamp;* fürliebnehmen, *put up with things.* (3) Sphere of application, limitation; e. g. Arznei für ein Fieber, *medicine for a fever;* für einen

Narren ſpricht er gar nicht ſchlecht (G.), *not badly for a fool;* ich für mein Teil, *I for my part;* genug für heute, *enough for to-day;* ich ging im Walde ſo für mich hin (G.), *all by myself.* (4) Succession; e. g. Schritt für Schritt, *step by step.*

Für is of like origin with vor. The two are often confounded in early modern Ger. and even in the classics; e. g. für Furcht ſterben (S.), *die of fear;* weinte für Freuden (G.), *wept for joy.* Für for vor may of course take the dat.; e. g. was hätte er dann noch für ſeinem Mädchen voraus (S.)?

Gegen (gen), acc., *toward, against, facing.* It denotes: (1) The direction of motion, effort or purpose; e. g. gegen den Strom ſchwimmen, *swim against the current;* was können wir gegen Albrechts Heere (S.)? *what can we do against A.'s armies?* ſich gegen die Türe ſtemmen, *brace one's self against the door.* So with nouns; e. g. ein Mittel gegen die Cholera, *a remedy against the cholera.* With verbs of motion gegen is rare in the sense of *toward,* but may occur if the verb is such as to preclude the idea of hostility; thus gegen die Stadt marſchieren, means *to march against the city,* but gegen die Stadt ſpazieren, gegen den Rhein wandern, are permissible, tho nach, or nach . . . zu, is preferred. (2) Direction of feeling, friendly or hostile; e. g. freundlich gegen das Volk, *friendly toward the people;* taub gegen die Bitte, *deaf to the request;* Ehrfurcht gegen das Alter, *respect for age.* (3) Offset, exchange, comparison; e. g. Waren gegen bar Geld verkaufen, *sell wares for cash;* Kriegsgefangene gegen einander austauſchen, *exchange prisoners;* gegen ihn bin ich nichts, *beside him I am nothing;* ein Mehr von zwanzig gegen zwölf (S.), *a majority of twenty to twelve.* (4) Approximation; e. g. gegen Abend, *toward evening;* gegen drei Monate, *about three months.* (5) Position facing; e. g. ein Fenſter gegen Süden, *a window facing the south.*

In early modern Ger. gegen usually took the dat. and this construction is met with now and then in the classics; e. g. ihr werdet gegen der Menge wenig ſein (G.), *few in comparison with the multitude.* The short form gen is common in the Bible and still survives in set phrases; e. g. gen Himmel, *toward the sky.*

Gegenüber, dat., *opposite, in face of, in relation to.* It generally follows its noun and is more often adv. than prep. It is used: (1) Of literal position; e. g. der Kirche gegenüber, or gegenüber der Kirche, *opposite the church.* (Gegenüber von, after Fr. *vis-à-vis de,* also occurs.) (2) Of status; e. g. die Stellung des Staates der Kirche gegenüber, *the attitude of the state in relation to the church;* dieſer Tatſache gegenüber bin ich ſprachlos, *in face of this fact.* Tmesis is common in older writers; e. g. in der Wüſten gegen Moab über, *in the desert over against Moab.*

Gemäß, dat., *according to, in harmony with.* Strictly the adj. gemäß (§ 260) used adverbially. It usually follows its noun; e. g. der Natur gemäß (or naturgemäß) leben, *live according to nature;* dem=gemäß, *accordingly.* Nowadays often with gen.; e. g. gemäß Ihres Schreibens, *according to your letter;* befehlsgemäß, *according to orders.*

Halb, halben, halber, gen., *because of, on account of.* Stereotyped case-forms of the old noun Halb, *side, direction;* always postpositive. Examples: fürſtlicher Hochbegrüßung halb (G.), *in the interest of a princely greeting;* dieſer Hoffnung halben, *on account of this hope;* der Studien halber (Ranke), *in the interest of study.* Now chiefly in compounds; meinethalb(en), altershalber, amtshalber, krankheitshalber, etc.

Hinter, dat. and acc., *behind.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position behind, with verbs of rest; e. g. er iſt hinter dem Hauſe, *behind the house;* hinter dem Berge wohnen, *live on the other side of the mountain.* (2) Concealment; e. g. hinter des Lehrers Rücken, *behind the teacher's back;* es ſteckt etwas dahinter, *there's something behind it.* (3) Support; e. g. er ſteht hinter mir als Bürge, *he stands behind me as security.*

b. With acc. It denotes the goal of motion; e. g. hinters Haus gehen, *go behind the house;* ſchreib' es dir hinters Ohr, *make a note of it.*

In, dat. and acc.; with dat. *in,* with acc. *into.*

a. The dat. marks position, in space or time; e. g. in der Stadt wohnen, *live in the city;* im Fluſſe waten, *wade in the river;* in einem Buche leſen, *read in a book;* er ſtarb im Jahre 1800, *died in the year 1800.*

b. The acc. implies a goal of motion, perception, duration; e. g. in die Stadt gehen, *go into the city;* in den Fluß (hinein) waten, *wade into the river;* in ein Buch ſehen, *look into a book;* er lebte bis ins Jahr 1800, *he lived into the year 1800.* Where a goal of motion is implied Ger. requires the acc. more strictly than Eng. requires *into;* e. g. man pflanzt einen Baum in die Erde, *plants a tree in the ground;* ich ſtecke die Hand in die Taſche, *put my hand in my pocket.* Notice, too, the acc. in phrases of extent; e. g. 20 Fuß in die Höhe, *20 feet high;* wie kann's euch in die Länge freuen (G.)? *how can you like it for a steady thing.*

Infolge, gen., *in consequence of;* = in Folge.

Inmitten, gen., *in the midst of;* = in der Mitte.

Innerhalb, gen., *within, inside of;* of both time and place; e. g. innerhalb des Schloſſes, *within the castle;* innerhalb des Jahres, *within the year.* Common also with dat.

Jenſeits, gen., *on that side of, beyond;* jenſeits dieſer Berge, *beyond these mountains.* Cf. diesſeits.

Kraft, gen., *on the strength of, in virtue of;* e. g. kraft des Berliner Vertrages, *in virtue of the Berlin treaty.* Shortened from in Kraft.

Längs, gen., *along;* e. g. längs des Fluſſes, *along the river.* Common also with dat. An adverbial gen. of lang, with spurious umlaut.

Laut, gen., *according to;* e. g. laut des geſchloſſenen Bundes, *according to the treaty of alliance.* Sometimes with dat. Shortened from nach Laut, *according to the purport.*

Mit, dat., *with.* It denotes: (1) Association, joint activity (friendly and hostile); e. g. komm, geh mit mir, *come, go with me;* mit einem Gegner ſtreiten, *contend with an adversary;* mit Gott, *with God's help.* (2) Concern, often in a very loose sense; e. g. wie ſteht es mit Ihrem Herzen (G.)? *how is it with your heart?* was gibt's mit dem Bauer da (S.)? *what's the matter with the peasant there?* hinaus mit ihm! *out with him!* ich bin mit der Sache fertig, *done with the affair.* (3) Concomitancy, in phrases of manner; e. g. mit Recht, *rightly;* mit wenig Witz, *with little wit.* (4) Appurtenance; e. g. Götz mit der eiſernen Hand, *Götz with the iron hand.* (5) Means; e. g. mit einem Meſſer ſchneiden, *cut with a knife;* mit Genuß betrügen, *deceive with pleasure.* (6) Contemporaneousness; e. g. die Welt wird ſchöner mit jedem Tag, *every day;* mit der Zeit, *in course of time.*

Mitſamt, dat.; the same as ſamt.

Mittels, mittelſt, gen., *by means of;* e. g. mittelſt ihres Anſehens, *by means of their prestige.* Mittels is an adverbial genitive of Mittel; mittelſt has an excrescent t.

Nach, dat., *after, to, according to.* It denotes: (1) Approach, direction of motion, with names of places; e. g. nach Berlin gehen, *go to Berlin;* nach Hauſe eilen, *hurry home.* The object may be an adverb; e. g. nach oben, *up;* nach unten, *down.* Direction, without the idea of arrival, may be expressed by nach . . . zu; e. g. wir fuhren nach der Stadt zu, *drove toward the city.* (2) The direction of effort, desire, attention, etc.; e. g. nach einem ſchlagen, *strike at one;* nach einem Ziele ſchießen, *shoot at a mark;* nach Ruhm ſtreben, *strive for glory;* ſich nach Ruhe ſehnen, *long for rest.* (3) Sequence; e. g. nach einem reden, *speak after one;* eins nach dem andern, *one after the other;* nach kurzer Zeit, *after a short time;* nach Tiſche, *after dinner.* (4) Accordance, often with object preceding; e. g. nach meiner Anſicht, *according to my view;* allem Anſcheine nach, *according to all appearances;* ich kenne ihn dem Namen nach, *know him by name;* es riecht nach Schwefel, *it smells of (like) sulfur.*

Nächſt, dat., *close by, next to;* e. g. nächſt der Brücke, *close by the bridge* (S.). The superlative of nah, used adverbially.

Neben, dat. and acc., *close by, beside.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Simple juxtaposition; e. g. neben einem ſitzen, *sit next to one;* neben der Türe ſchlafen, *sleep by the door.* (2) Addition or comparison; e. g. du ſollſt keine andern Götter neben mir haben, *no other gods beside me;* du haſt noch eine Klugheit neben deiner Liebe (S.), *shrewdness along with your love;* neben ihm bin ich ein Stümper, *a bungler in comparison with him.*

b. With acc. it follows verbs of motion in the sense of *beside, close to;* e. g. er ſtellte ſich neben den Ofen hin (S.), *placed himself by the stove;* er ſetzte ſich neben ſie (G.), *sat down beside her.* But the dat. is not infrequent even after verbs of motion.

Nebſt, dat., *along with, together with;* e. g. der Vater nebſt ſeinen beiden Söhnen, *together with his two sons.* From nebens, an adverbial amplification of neben, with excrescent t.

Ob, dat., *above, over, on account of;* e. g. ob Erden (archaic), *above ground, on earth;* der Prieſter ſprach den Segen ob dem Paare (Lenau), *pronounced the blessing over the pair;* ob all dem edlen Wein (U.), *over,* i. e. *on account of, all the noble wine.* Ob is now rare and confined to stately diction. It occurs also with gen.; e. g. ob des ſeltſamen Gerätes (S.), *on account of the strange implement.*

Ohne, acc., *without;* e. g. ohne guten Grund, *without good reason.* The object may be an inf. with zu or a clause with daß; e. g. bezeugt nur, ohne viel zu wiſſen (G.), *without knowing much;* er ſündigt, ohne daß er es weiß, *sins without knowing it.* Formerly common with dat. and gen., whence the survivals ohnedem, *aside from that,* and zweifelsohne, *doubtless.*

Oberhalb, gen., *above;* e. g. oberhalb des Dorfes, *above the village.* Also with dat.: oberhalb dem Walde, *above the forest.*

Samt, dat., *together with;* e. g. der Vater ſamt den Kindern, *the father together with the children.*

Seit, dat., *since, from the time of;* e. g. ſeit dem letzten Kriege, *since the last war.* Formerly also with gen., whence ſeit alters, *from of old.* The object may be an adverb or adjective; e. g. ſeit geſtern, *since yesterday;* ſeit kurzem, *recently.*

Sonder, acc., *without;* obsolete except in a few phrases such as ſonder Gleichen, also written ſondergleichen, *without peer;* ſonder Zweifel, *doubtless.* Formerly used also with dat. and gen.

Trotz, gen. or dat., *in spite of, in competition with,* hence, *as well as;* e. g. trotz aller Bemühungen, *in spite of all efforts;* trotz dem ſchlechten Wetter, *in spite of the bad weather;* trotz alle dem, *for all that;* dar-

auf verſtehen wir uns trotz einer Nation in der Welt (L.), *we understand that as well as any nation in the world.* Shortened from zu(m) Trotze.

Über, dat. and acc., *over, beyond.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position, with verbs of rest; e. g. über allen Gipfeln iſt Ruh' (G.), *over all the hill-tops is rest;* er wohnt über dem Meere, *lives across the sea.* (2) Occupation; e. g. über einem Buche ſitzen, *sit over a book;* über einem Geſpräch den Zug verſäumen, *miss the train over* (i. e. *thru being absorbed in*) *a conversation.*

b. With acc. it denotes: (1) The goal of motion; e. g. er gießt ihm ein Glas Wein über den Kopf (G.), *pours a glass of wine over his head;* Jammer über die Welt bringen, *bring sorrow over the world;* über eine Brücke gehen, *go over a bridge.* So with nouns that imply crossing; e. g. der Übergang über die Donau, *the crossing of the Danube.* (2) Superiority; e. g. über ein Volk herrſchen, *rule over a people;* über den Feind ſiegen, *prevail over the enemy.* (3) Excess; e. g. das geht über alle Vernunft, *beyond all reason;* über alle Beſchreibung ſchrecklich, *terrible beyond all description;* über zwei Jahre, *over two years.* But this last may also mean *two years hence;* cf. heute über acht Tage, *a week from to-day;* über Nacht, *over night.* Further: einmal über das andere, *time after time;* Briefe über Briefe, *letters upon letters.* (4) Occasion, theme; e. g. über einen Vorfall lachen (weinen, ſich freuen), *laugh* (*weep, rejoice*) *over an occurrence;* über die Kunſt ſchreiben, *write upon art;* Über das Erhabene, *On the Sublime.* So in exclamations: pfui über dich! *out upon you!* According to Brandt, über ein Buch einſchlafen, *to fall asleep over a book,* implies that the book is dull, while über einem Buche einſchlafen, means *simply to fall asleep while reading.*

Um, acc., *about, around.* It denotes: (1) Simple position, often with following her or herum; e. g. ums Feuer ſtehen, *stand about the fire;* alle treten um ihn (G.), *come around him;* um den Teich (herum) ſpazieren, *walk round the pond.* (2) Approximation; e. g. um Weihnachten, *about Christmas;* um drei Stunden, *about three leagues.* In giving the time of day, however, um denotes exact time; e. g. um 3 Uhr, *at 3 o'clock.* (3) Concern, solicitude; e. g. es handelt ſich ums Leben, *it is a question of life;* um eine Sache ſtreiten, *contend about a matter;* um etwas bitten, *ask for something.* (4) Exchange, offset, price; e. g. alles iſt euch feil um Gold (S.), *purchasable for gold;* um alles in der Welt, *of* (*for*) *all things in the world.* (5) Degree of difference; e. g. um einen Zoll zu breit, *too wide by an inch;* um ein Haar, *by a hair's breadth.* (6) Loss, deprivation; e. g. einen ums Leben bringen, *deprive one of life;* um ſchöne Stunden getäuſcht, *cheated of fair hours.*

Um . . . willen, gen., *for the sake of;* e. g. um Gottes willen, *for God's sake;* i. e. um Gottes Willen, *for the will of God.*

Unangeſehen, gen., *not considering.*

Unbeſchadet, gen., *without detriment* (or *prejudice*) *to.* Rarely with dat.

Ungeachtet, gen., *notwithstanding.* Formerly not uncommon with dat., whence demungeachtet (as well as deſſenungeachtet), *nevertheless.*

Unter, dat. and acc. *under, among.*

a. With dat., in constructions of rest, it denotes: (1) Simple position; e. g. unter einem Baume ſitzen, *sit under a tree;* Gretchen unter vielem Volke (G.), *among many people.* So, too, as the equivalent of a partitive gen.; e. g. viele unter den Soldaten, *many among the soldiers.* (2) Status, with reference to superior authority, governing conditions, etc.; e. g. unter einem Offizier dienen, *serve under an officer;* unter Druck ſeufzen, *groan under oppression;* unter ſolchen Umſtänden, *under such circumstances;* ein Buch unter der Preſſe, *a book in press.* (3) Simultaneousness, concomitancy; e. g. unter der Regierung Karls, *under the reign of Karl;* unter dem Donner der Kanonen vorrücken, *advance amid the roar of cannon.*

b. With acc. it denotes the goal of motion; e. g. etwas unter den Tiſch werfen, *throw something under the table;* ich komm' gar wenig unter Leute (G.), *I go little among people.*

Unterhalb, gen., *below;* e. g. unterhalb des Dorfes, *below the village.* Sometimes with dat.

Vermittelſt, gen., *by means of.* The same as mittelſt.

Vermöge, gen., *in virtue of, by dint of;* e. g. vermöge ſeines Fleißes, *by dint of his industry.*

Von, dat., *from, of.* As we have seen (§ 247), von and the dat. may take the place of the gen. in nearly all the latter's uses. Aside from this it denotes: (1) The starting-point; e. g. von Berlin nach Leipzig fahren, *travel from Berlin to Leipzig;* von nun an, *from now on.* (2) Residence, origin; e. g. der Kaufmann von Venedig, *the merchant of Venice;* Rudolf von Habsburg, *Rudolf of Habsburg.* Hence, in modern times, as a mere sign of nobility; e. g. Fürſt von Bismarck, *Prince von Bismarck.* (3) Agency, with passive verbs; e. g. Amerika wurde von Columbus entdeckt, *was discovered by Columbus.* (4) Source; e. g. von allen Seiten, *from all sides;* von der Luft leben, *live on air;* von wem haben Sie das? *from whom have you that?* das iſt nicht gut von dir, *not kind of you;* von Geburt ein Deutſcher, *a German by birth;* naß vom Regen, *wet with rain.* (5) Separation, release; e. g. das Gute vom Schlechten unterſcheiden, *distinguish the good from the bad;* frei von Stolz, *free from pride;* von der Arbeit ruhen, *rest from toil.* (6) Con-

cern; e. g. von der Politik reden, *talk of politics;* die Lehre vom Zufall, *the doctrine of chance.* (7) Specification; e. g. ein Mann von vierzig Jahren, *a man of forty;* ein Engel von einem Weibe, *an angel of a woman.*

Vor, dat. and acc., *before.*

a. With dat. it denotes: (1) Position in place or time; e. g. vor dem Spiegel ſtehen, *stand before the mirror;* vor 3 Uhr, *before three o'clock;* vor einem Monat, *a month ago;* vor Chriſtus, *B. C.* (2) Cause, mostly with words of emotion; e. g. vor Freude weinen, *weep for joy;* Furcht vor dem Tode, *fear of death.* (3) Precedence; e. g., vor allen Dingen, *before all things;* vor einem den Vorrang haben, *take precedence of one.* (4) Exposure, security; e. g. einen vor der Kälte ſchützen, *protect one from the cold;* ſicher vor dem Feinde, *safe from the enemy;* vor dir hab' ich keine Geheimniſſe, *I have no secrets from you.*

b. With acc. it denotes the goal of motion; e. g. vor den Spiegel treten, *step before the mirror;* ſich vor den Kopf ſchießen, *shoot one's self in the head;* vor einen Baum rennen (G.), *run into a tree.*

Während, gen., *during;* e. g. während des Abends, *during the evening.* The pple. of währen, *endure;* währendes Tages, *while the day endures* (§ 251, 1), became während des Tages. Sometimes with dat.

Wegen, gen., *on account of;* e. g. wegen des Wetters, *on account of the weather.* Often postpositive, e. g. der Geſchäfte wegen, *because of business.* Sometimes with dat.

Wider, acc., *against* (but not in a physical sense); e. g. wider das Recht, *contrary to law.*

Zu, dat., *to, at, for.* It denotes: (1) The direction of motion or effort, usually with the idea of arrival; e. g. komm du nur oft zu mir herüber (G.), *come over to my house;* ſie ſang zu ihm, ſie ſprach zu ihm (G.), *she sang to him, she spoke to him;* zu Bett gehen, *go to bed;* zur Kirche gehen, *go to church;* zu Grunde gehen, *go to ruin;* zu Boden fallen, *fall to the ground;* von Ort zu Ort, *from place to place;* von Zeit zu Zeit, *from time to time.* Observe that zu is not used after verbs of motion before names of towns; e. g. *to go to Berlin* is nach Berlin gehen. Sometimes postpositive (with or without preceding nach) in the sense of *toward;* e. g. (nach) der Straße zu, *toward the street.* (2) Position in space or time, with verbs of rest; e. g. zu Hauſe, *at home;* zu Weihnachten, *at Christmas;* im Rathaus zu Bremen, *in the town-hall at Bremen.* (But with names of towns in is more usual.) So, too, of the seat of feeling; e. g. es iſt mir wohl zu Mute, *comfortable in mind.* Observe the idiomatic use of zu with particles of motion; e. g. zur Tür hinaus, *out of* (i. e. *out at, by way of*) *the door.* (3) Purpose,

destination, resultant status; e. g. Waſſer zum Trinken, *water for drinking;* zum Beiſpiel, *for example;* zu meiner großen Freude, *to my great delight;* das iſt nicht zum Lachen, *not for laughter, no laughing-matter;* zum Entzücken! *charming!* zu nichte werden, *come to naught;* zu Tode ärgern, *vex to death;* eine zur Frau nehmen, *take one to wife.* (4) Manner, rate, degree; e. g. zu Fuß, *on foot;* zu Waſſer, *by water;* zu Deutſch, *in German;* zu drei Mark das Stück, *at three marks a piece;* zu Hunderten, *by hundreds;* zum Teil, *in part.* (5) Excess, addition; e. g. dazu, zudem, *besides.*

Zufolge, gen., *in consequence of.*

Zuwider, dat., *against;* e. g. das Glück war uns zuwider, *against us.*

Zwiſchen, dat. and acc., *between.* The dat. follows verbs of rest, the acc. verbs of motion.

SYNTAX OF THE CONJUNCTION

378. Classification of Conjunctions. Conjunctions connect the members of compound or complex sentences (cf. § 411). Those that connect sentences of equal syntactical rank are called 'co-ordinating' conjunctions, while those that introduce dependent clauses are called 'subordinating.' The former class may be subdivided, with reference to their influence on the word-order, into general connectives and adverbial conjunctions.

1. Conjunctions are mainly of adverbial origin, and are not always easily distinguishable from adverbs. The guiding principle is that an adverb modifies a single word, usually the verb, of its clause, while a conjunction limits the clause itself, showing its logical relation to what precedes or follows. But a considerable number of adverbs (see below, § 380, 1) may perform either function, or both at the same time.

379. The General Connectives aber, allein, ſondern, denn, oder and und do not affect the word-order; e. g. aber die Sonne duldet kein Weißes (G.), *but the sun endures nothing white;* denn er war unſer (G.), *for he was ours;* Weib, mach' Platz, oder mein Roß geht über dich hinweg (S.), *woman, give way, or my horse will run over you.*

1. Of the three words for *but*, allein and aber are used without appreciable difference of meaning, but allein always begins its clause, whereas aber may come after one or more words, being then equivalent to *however;* e. g. ich aber blieb mit kummervoller Seele (S.), *I however remained with sorrowful soul.* Sondern is used only after a negative, and introduces a contrast which excludes or contradicts what goes before; e. g. das iſt kein Grund, ſondern nur ein Vorwand, *that is no reason, but only a pretext;* er kam nicht, ſondern er blieb ruhig zu Hauſe, *he did not come, but remained quietly at home.* But if the second proposition does not exclude the first, aber is used even after a negative; e. g. er kam nicht, aber er blieb nicht ohne Grund zu Hauſe, *he did not come, but he had reason for remaining at home.* Sondern is especially common in the correlative phrase nicht allein (or nicht nur) . . . ſondern auch, *not only . . . but also.*

2. Denn, *for*, always begins its clause and is thus easily distinguishable from the inferential denn, *then* (§ 380), which never stands first.

3. Oder, *or*, is often preceded by a correlative entweder, *either;* e. g. entweder ihr kennt mich nicht, oder ihr ſeid ſehr boshaft (G.), *either you do not know me, or you are very malicious.* Entweder sometimes causes inversion, oder very rarely. Oder is often followed by a pleonastic and untranslatable aber; e. g. ich will entweder ſiegen, oder aber ſterben (Gr.), *I will conquer or die.*

4. The use of und corresponds closely to that of *and*. Note, however, the frequent employment of inversion after und, with resumption of the subject by means of a pronoun, usually derſelbe; e. g. die Vorſtellung beginnt um ſechs Uhr, und wird dieſelbe ungefähr drei Stunden dauern, *the performance begins at 6 o'clock and will last about three hours.* This usage is characteristic of the commercial and official styles.

a. By the ellipsis of the verb which it connects logically with what precedes, und sometimes acquires concessive force; e. g. du mußt, und koſtet' es mein Leben (G.), *thou must and should it cost* (i. e. *tho it should cost*) *my life.*

380. The Adverbial Conjunctions are adverbs so far as they modify a particular word of the clause in which they stand, but conjunctions in that they show the logical relation of the clause itself to what precedes or follows. As conjunctions they are apt to begin the clause, in which case they cause inversion; but they may also follow the verb like any other adverb; e. g. zwar iſt es

leicht, doch iſt das Leichte ſchwer (G.), *to be sure it is easy, but the easy is hard;* du magſt zwar reden, du haſt doch unrecht, *you may talk, to be sure, but you are wrong.*

1. It would be impossible to draw up a complete list of the adverbial conjunctions, because they can not be distinguished sharply from other adverbs. Nor is it easy to classify them according to their meaning. Roughly speaking they are either additive (akin in meaning to *also, moreover*), adversative (meaning *but, yet, on the other hand, else, rather*), temporal (such as *soon, now, then, thereupon, firstly*), partitive (like *partly . . . partly, now . . . again*), consecutive (like *hence, therefore, accordingly, so*), or they express assurance, doubt, probability, etc. Some of the more common are as follows:

allerdings, *to be sure*
alſo, *so, then*
andrerſeits, *on the other hand*
auch, *also, too*
bald . . . bald, *now . . . again*
dagegen, *on the contrary*
damals, *at that time*
damit, *therewith*
dann, *then*
darauf, *thereupon*
darum, *therefore*
dazu, *besides*
demnach, *accordingly*
denn, *then*
dennoch, *however*
deshalb, *therefore*
desgleichen, *likewise*
deſſenungeachtet, *notwithstanding*
deswegen, *therefore*
doch, *but, yet, surely*
ebenſo, *likewise*
endlich, *finally*
erſtens, *firstly*
freilich, *to be sure*
gleichfalls, *likewise*
gleichwohl, *nevertheless*
halb . . . halb, *half . . . half*
ja, *indeed, of course*
jedoch, *nevertheless*
nachher, *afterwards*
nämlich, *namely, to explain*
natürlich, *of course*
noch, *yet, still*
nun, *now*
ſo, *so*
ſogar, *even*
ſogleich, *directly*
ſonſt, *else, formerly*
teils . . . teils, *partly . . . partly*
trotzdem, *nevertheless*
überdies, *besides*
übrigens, *moreover*
vielleicht, *perhaps*
vielmehr, *rather*
wohl, *perhaps, I presume*
zudem, *besides*
zuerſt, *first*
zuletzt, *last*
zunächſt, *next*
zwar, *to be sure*

a. Some of the above words, notably auch, doch, erſtens, nämlich, often fail to cause inversion; e.g. auch das iſt falſch, *that too is false;* du ſcheinſt bedenklich, doch du ſcheinſt vergnügt (G.), *you seem pensive, yet you seem happy.* Any word loses its power to cause inversion, when

it is set off by a comma ; e. g. nun, wir ſehen einander wieder (G.), *well, we'll see each other again.* This is often the case with the ordinal adverbs, erſtens, zweitens, ferner, endlich, etc.

b. Auch generally stands just before (with weak stress), or just after (with strong stress), the word to be made prominent ; e. g. auch ich or ich auch, bin Dichter, *I too* (as well as others) *am a poet;* ich bin auch Dichter, or Dichter auch, *I am a poet too* (as well as an orator). The former idea can also be expressed : ich bin auch Dichter.

c. Doch is primarily adversative, = *but, yet,* but its adversative force is often directed against an *imaginary* doubt, denial, opposition, or hesitation, so that it becomes merely a particle of emphasis, = *really, surely, I declare ;* e. g. das iſt doch unerhört, *that is really unheard of ;* treten Sie doch herein, *come in, won't you ?* höre doch, *do hear.* So in combination with ja or wohl ; e. g. du biſt ja doch der Herr, *thou art surely the Lord ;* Sie ſind doch wohl nicht krank, *you are not sick, I hope.* It quite regularly follows a verb put first for emphasis ; e. g. glaub' ich doch, *I do believe ;* hab' ich den Markt und die Straßen doch nie ſo einſam geſehen (G.), *I never did see,* etc.

d. Ja as additive particle, = *indeed, in fact,* need not cause inversion; e. g. ſetzte ſich zu ihm, ja man dürfte beinah' ſagen, auf ihn (G.), *sat down by him, indeed one might almost say, upon him.* More often ja follows the verb with the sense *of course, you know ;* e. g. ich table ihn nicht, er iſt ja nur ein Kind, *I do not blame him, he is only a child, you know ;* Sie wiſſen ja, *you know, of course.*

e. Noch may have additive or temporal force; e. g. ihr ſeid noch ziemlich wohlgebaut (G.), *you are besides pretty well built ;* das iſt noch ſchlimmer, *that is still worse.* As temporal particle it means *yet, still, up to ;* e. g. noch iſt es Zeit, *there is still time ;* noch vor kurzem, *until lately, quite lately ;* das fehlte noch, *that was yet lacking, that caps the climax ;* er kann noch lange leben, *he may yet live long.*

f. Nun differs from jetzt in that the latter only denotes present time as such, while nun implies a relation to what precedes; e. g. ich bin jetzt beſchäftigt, *I am busy now,* but nun traf es ſich, *now it happened* (as part of a narrative) ; nun danket alle Gott, *now all thank God* (in view of his favor).

g. Wohl is sometimes concessive ; e. g. wohl hat er Geld, aber er hat wenig Verſtand, *he has money, to be sure, but he has little sense.* Most often, however, it expresses a lack of perfect assurance, being a sort of verbal interrogation-point to be translated by *perhaps, probably, possibly, I presume, I should say,* etc. ; e. g. du haſt wohl recht, *you are probably right ;* es waren ihrer wohl zwanzig, *there were twenty of them, I should think ;* wie ſpät iſt es wohl ? *how late is it, I wonder ?* The

English *well* at the beginning of the sentence is usually given by nun, not by wohl; e. g. nun, wie geht's? *well, how goes it?* Cf. § 372, 1.

h. So is often used to resume the adverbial force of a preceding clause, especially a conditional clause; e. g. wenn ich das gewußt hätte, so wäre ich nicht gekommen, *if I had known that, I should not have come;* und kommt er auch, so ist's ein Gauch (G.), *and even if he comes, it is a fool.* The use of this so is to make the inversion easier. It should not be translated.

381. The Subordinating Conjunctions introduce dependent clauses which sustain to some word in the main clause the relation of adverb, adjective or noun. They require that the inflected verb stand at the end.

1. Exceptions to the rule of order are not uncommon. Especially is a prepositional phrase often placed after the verb; e. g. und als ich kam ins heimatliche Tal (S.), *when I came into my native valley.* Cf. also § 194. The most important of the subordinating conjunctions are as follows:

als, *as, when, than*
als ob, *as if*
als wenn, *as if*
bevor, *before*
bis, *until*
da, *as, since*
damit, *in order that*
daß, *that*
dieweil, *because*
ehe, *before*
falls, *in case*
indem, *while*
indes (=dessen), *while*
inwiefern, *how far*
inwieweit, *how far*
je + adv. or adj. *the* —
je nachdem, *according as*
nachdem, *after*
ob, *whether*
obgleich, *tho*
obschon, *tho*
obwohl, *tho*
seit(dem), *since*
so, *if*
so + adv. or adj. *as* — *as.*
sowie, *as, just as*
wann, *when*
weil, *because*
wenn, *if, when*
wenn auch, *tho*
wenngleich, *tho*
während, *while*
wie, *how, as*
wo, *where*
wo + prep., or particle
wofern, *so far as, if*
zumal (da), *especially as*

a. Als translates Eng. *when* after a pret.; e. g. als ich noch ein Knabe war (G.), *when I was still a boy.* It may also be = *as* before a historical pres.; e. g. als ich das Vorgemach durchgehe (S.), *as I go thru the anteroom.* After other tenses *when* is given by wenn, which see. Als is the proper conjunction to be used after a comparative; e. g. es ist schlimmer, als ich anfangs vermutete, *it is worse than I at first supposed;* ich bin älter als du, *I am older than you.* So, too, after the positive degree preceded by so; e. g. es ist nicht so schlimm, als du meinst, *not so bad as you think;* ich bin gerade so alt als du, *exactly as old as you.* In both these cases, however, and especially after the positive

degree, it is very common to substitute wie for als. The usage is colloquial, but found abundantly in the best writers. Denn is now little used after a comparative, except to avoid an awkward repetition of als; e. g. Schiller war größer als Dichter denn als Philosoph, *greater as poet than as philosopher.* Als wie, for als, is colloquial, but common in the classics.

b. Da with pret. may denote simple time, like als; e. g. da ihr noch die schöne Welt regiertet (S.), *when you still ruled.* So, too, to define Zeit; e. g. die Zeiten, da ich noch selbst im Werden war (G.), *the times when.* More often, however, it is causal; e. g. da du, o Herr, dich einmal wieder nahst (G.), *since thou dost again draw near.* Somewhat rare is the sense of *tho;* e. g. da sich mein Vater nicht leicht eine Ausgabe erlaubte, so war er dagegen nicht karg (G.), *tho my father did not like to spend money, still he was not niggardly;* werd' ein Fürstenknecht, da du ein Selbstherr sein kannst (S.), *become a vassal, where (tho) you may be a sovereign.*

c. Damit denotes purpose, not result, and is usually followed by the subjunctive; e. g. das sag' ich euch, damit ihr's wisset (S.), *I tell you this that you may know it.* Auf daß, = *in order that,* is common in early modern Ger., but is now archaic; e. g. ehre Vater und Mutter, auf daß es dir wohl gehe (Lu.), *honor thy father and mother in order that,* etc.

d. Daß may denote purpose or result; e. g. alle Blüten müssen vergehen, daß Früchte beglücken (G.), *blossoms must fade that fruits may bless.* But for this daß modern prose prefers damit. Denoting result daß is apt to be preceded by so, auf solche Weise, dergestalt; e. g. er spricht so leise, daß man nicht versteht, *he speaks so low that one does not understand.* After zu . . . als, in result-clauses, the subjunctive is usual; e. g. er spricht zu leise, als daß man ihn verstehen könnte, *he speaks too low for one to understand him.* — Most often daß introduces a substantive or adjective clause; e. g. ich glaube, daß er kommen wird, *I believe that he will come;* meine Behauptung, daß es falsch ist, *my assertion that it is false.* The subjunctive in an object-clause is due to the nature of the thought (§ 360), not to any governing power of daß; e. g. wer dachte, daß die Sache so stünde? *who thought that the affair stood thus?* er meinte, daß es zu spät sei, *he thought that it was too late.* — After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., daß may be omitted, the order becoming normal; e. g. ich glaube, er wird kommen, *I believe he will come* (instead of daß er kommen wird); er sagte, es wäre alles vorüber, *he said that all was over.* — A clause with daß may define a noun of time; e. g. es sind drei Jahre, daß ich hier wohne, *it is three years that I have been living here;* in der Zeit, daß ich bei ihm war, *in the time that I was with him.* — A daß-clause may depend on the preposition außer or ohne; e. g. er

gleicht ſeinem Bruder, außer daß er blaue Augen hat, *except that he has blue eyes;* er kam niemals, ohne daß er ein Geſchenk brachte, *without bringing a present.* — Notice finally the idiom: daß ich nicht wüßte, *not that I know of.*

e. Indem denotes contemporaneousness, often with the subaudition of cause. Usually it is best translated by a verbal in *ing*, or else by a participial construction; e. g. „fürchte dich nicht," ſagte Wilhelm, indem er auf ſie losging (G.), '*do not be afraid*,' *said Wilhelm, advancing toward her;* indem er den Plan zu früh verriet, verdarb er die ganze Sache, *by betraying the plan too soon, he ruined the whole cause.*

f. Je + adv. or adj. introduces 'proportional' clauses, and is usually followed by um ſo or deſto, less often by je, with inversion; e. g. je weniger eine Hand verrichtet, deſto zarter iſt ihr Gefühl, *the less a hand does, the more delicate is its feeling* ('the hand of little employment hath the daintier sense,' *Hamlet*); je mehr ihr lernt, je mehr vergeßt ihr (L.), *the more you learn the more you forget.*

g. Obgleich, obſchon, obwohl often undergo tmesis; e. g. ob ſich gleich auf Deutſch nichts reimet (G.), *tho nothing rimes with 'deutsch.'*

h. So + adv. appears in ſobald, *as soon as;* ſofern, *as far as;* ſolang, *as long as;* ſoviel, ſoweit, *as far as.* These words are sometimes, but not now usually, followed by als; e. g. ſolang' er auf der Erde lebt (G.), *as long as he lives on earth.* A concessive ſo, = *however*, may precede almost any adj. or adv. with dependent order; e. g. erfüll' dein Herz davon, ſo groß es iſt, *fill thy heart with it, great as it is.* But usually there is a following auch; e. g. ſo ſchnell er auch lief, *however fast he ran.*

i. Wann is now always interrogative, direct or indirect; e. g. wann kommt er? *when is he coming?* ich weiß nicht, wann er kommt.

j. Weil is now usually causal, as in er iſt dir neidiſch, weil du glücklich wohnſt (S.), *he is envious of you because you live happily.* But in the classics, and even now in poetry, it is often found in its earlier temporal sense of *while;* e. g. freut euch, weil der Frühling währet (Voss), *rejoice while spring lasts.*

k. Wenn may have conditional or purely temporal meaning. The pret. after the temporal wenn implies repeated or customary action; e. g. an euch nur dacht' ich, wenn ich ſann und ſchrieb (G.), *I thought only of you when(ever) I mused and wrote.* Als ich ſann und ſchrieb would refer to one occasion. Wenn represents Eng. *when* before a pres. or a fut. tense; e. g. wir kommen wieder, wenn der Kuckuck ruft (S.), *when the cuckoo calls.* The conditional wenn may be followed by any tense.

l. Wie as temporal conjunction denotes immediate sequence; e. g. und wie er erwachet, in ſeliger Luſt (S.), *as he awakens, on awakening;*

wie er das hörte, ging er fort, *on hearing that.* It thus differs from als and indem, which imply contemporaneousness. More often wie denotes manner, = *how* or *as;* e. g. ich weiß nicht, wie er lebt, *I know not how he lives;* wir sprachen vom Seeman, und wie er lebt (Heine), *of the sailor and his way of living;* es ist, wie ich dir sagte, *it is as I told you.* A clause with wie may define a noun of manner; e. g. die Art, wie er lebt, *his way of living.* On the very common use of wie for als in comparisons (ich bin älter wie du, ich bin nicht so alt wie du) see above under als.

m. Observe that wann, wie, wo and its compounds may be used as direct interrogatives, with the order as in Eng.; it is only when used indirectly in dependent sentences that they require the dependent order; e. g. wo ist er? wann wird er kommen? *where is he? when will he come?* ich weiß nicht, wann er kommen wird, *I do not know when he will come.* The prepositional compounds of wo, worauf, woran, etc., usually have relative force, but some of them serve also as indirect interrogatives; e. g. die Frage, wovon die Rede ist, *the question under discussion;* ich weiß nicht, wovon die Rede ist, *I do not know what the question under discussion is.* The particle auch (less often nur or immer) placed after an indirect wann, wie or wo, gives the force of Eng. *ever;* e. g. ein heiliger Wille lebt, wie auch der menschliche wanke (S.), *a holy will lives, however the human will may waver;* wie das auch sein mag, *however that may be.*

THE INTERJECTION

382. Nature of the Interjection. The interjection does not form an integral part of the sentence, but is a sentence by itself, i. e. an independent expression of feeling or will.

1. Some interjections are used only as such, either alone or in connection with some other part of speech; e. g. ach! *ah!* ach, Gott! *ah, God! dear me!* pst! *hush!* These may be called the interjections proper.

2. Others are nouns, adjectives, adverbs, verbs, phrases; e. g. heil! *hail!* herrlich! *splendid!* nun! *well!* sieh! *look!* Gottlob! *God be praised!* Here belong all sorts of oaths, adjurations and by-words.

3. Others are calls to animals, imitations of sounds, refrains used in singing; e. g. hist! *haw!* wau! *bow-wow!* miau! *mew!* piff! *bang!* juchheisa! heisa! he! *hurrah! heigho! hoho!*

4. While the interjection has no proper case-governing power and is usually followed by the nom., or by a prepositional phrase, it may be associated with a gen., dat. or acc. See §§ 255, 261, 1, *a*, and 267, 3.

383. List of Interjections.

The interjections and interjectional phrases that fall under 2 and 3 in the above classification are too numerous to mention. The following list comprises only those of class 1, and of these only some of the more important. Such are:

ach! *ah, O, alas*	hallo! *hello*	hui! *whiz*
ah! *ah*	he! *O*	hurra! *hurrah*
aha! *aha*	heda! *ho there*	juchhe! *heigho*
au! *O*	heisa! *heigho*	na! *indeed, well now*
bah! *bah*	hem! hm! *hm*	o! oh! *O, oh*
eh! *eh*	ho! *ho*	oho! *oho*
ei! *oho*	hoho! *hoho*	pfui! *pooh, fie*
ha! *ha*	holla! *hello*	pst! *pst, hush*
haha! *haha*	hu! *whew*	uff! *ugh*

1. It is usual to classify interjections according to the nature of the feeling they denote, but with some of the most common the meaning depends largely on the connection, the tone in which they are uttered, the accompanying gesture, etc. Thus ach most often expresses pain or regret, but it may denote surprise, or even delight. — O, oh, are often simply particles of address. — Bah, pfui, uff, express annoyance or disgust. — He, heda, ho, hallo, are used in attracting attention. — Na is deprecatory, a sort of verbal shrug of the shoulders.

WORD-FORMATION

384. Of Derivation in General. Words are derived from roots, usually with the aid of prefixes and suffixes. Thus, looking at the noun Geburt, *birth*, we find that the prefix ge and the suffix t form a part of numerous other nouns, as well as this one, and have a meaning of their own. They are therefore called formative elements. The root is what remains when all such elements have been removed.

1. From a modern point of view it would seem, then, that the root of Geburt is the syllable *bur*. But Geburt comes from gebären, earlier geberen, which, with its pret. gebar, and its pple. geboren, shows us the

same root in the forms ber, bar, bor. This internal vowel-change, called, as we have seen, 'ablaut,' plays an important part in derivation.

2. The primary factors in derivation are, then, (1) the radical syllable with its possibilities of ablaut, (2) prefixes, and (3) suffixes. A root must always be present, tho its exact meaning is not always determinable. Of the formative elements, suffixes play a much more important part than prefixes. Some suffixes, e. g. heit in Freiheit, and tum in Irrtum, were once independent words; in the case of others no such origin is traceable. A suffix may cause umlaut, which thus enters as a secondary factor into derivation; e. g. Frau, Fräulein.

3. Finally, two or more words, each formed in the manner above described, may combine into a compound; e. g. Geburtstag, *birthday*.

4. *Remark.* The etymology of German words can not be thoroly studied without a knowledge of the older Germanic dialects and of comparative Indo-European Philology (Appendix II). The following treatment of derivation, which does not presuppose such knowledge, must of necessity, therefore, be somewhat superficial.

THE DERIVATION OF NOUNS

385. Nouns of Obscure Derivation. There are many nouns the derivation of which is obscure, either because there is no related verb which shows the root, or because the suffix, if there is one, has no definable meaning which enables us to associate the word with others of a like ending. Such are, e. g. Tag, *day*; Feder, *feather*; Haus, *house*; Buſen, *bosom*; Waſſer, *water*.

1. Such nouns must count, for the student of modern German, as primitive words, tho many of them can be explained by the help of comparative philology. Thus Tag probably comes from a root meaning *to burn:* the 'day' was the *warm* part of the four-and-twenty hours. Again Feder comes from a root meaning *to fly*, plus an instrumental suffix: it meant *means of flying*. But the syllable Feb is meaning-

less in modern German, as is also the suffix er applied to it, tho there are other words in abundance in which er has a definable meaning; e. g. Halter, *holder*, from the root of halten, *hold*. Hence we may call Feder a primitive word, and Halter a derivative, tho both are in reality derivatives.

386. Derivation by Ablaut. Many nouns are derived from strong verbal roots without the aid of a suffix. The root may appear as in the infinitive of the verb, or in some other ablaut-variation; e. g. Fall, *fall*, from fallen; Biß, *bite*, from beißen; Schuß, *shot*, from ſchießen; Zoll, *toll*, from zählen. The great mass of such derivatives are masculine (cf. § 234, 1, *a*).

387. Derivation by Suffix. The great majority of nouns are formed by the aid of a suffix. Some of the suffixes are applied to a verbal root (usually, but not always, in the form shown by the infinitive), others to a verbal stem or to the stem of a noun or adjective. The following alphabetical list contains those which are most important, i. e. those which are now felt, more or less distinctly, as suffixes, and form derivatives that have a definite and easily discernible relation to the primitive base. Those suffixes that contain a front vowel (e, i) are apt to cause umlaut, but there are many exceptions.

1. **Chen** and **lein**, the former cognate with *kin* in *lambkin*, are applied to nouns to form diminutives; e. g. Bäumchen, *little tree*; Röslein, *little rose*. Often there is an implication of familiarity or endearment; e. g. Mütterchen, *little mother*, *mama*; Suschen, *Susie*. Both suffixes usually cause umlaut. Of the two the North German chen is the living suffix and prevails in the language of every-day life, while the South German lein is more literary; cf. Röschen and Röslein, Blümchen and Blümlein. In a few cases there is a stereotyped difference of meaning; e. g. Fräulein, *young lady*, *Miss*, but Frauchen, *little wife*.

2. **De**, attached to verbal roots, denotes the thing done, or a concrete manifestation of the action; e. g. Bürde, *burden*, from -bären, *bear*; Freude, *joy*, from freuen, *rejoice*; Gemälde, *painting*, from malen, *paint*; Gelübde, *vow*, from geloben, *vow*; Zierde, *ornament*, from zieren, *adorn*.

3. **E** is a very common suffix: (1) Attached to verbal roots it forms a multitude of feminines, which denote the action or its concrete effect, less often that which performs the action; e. g. Lüge, *falsehood*, from lügen, *lie;* Lage, *situation*, from liegen, *lie;* Gabe, *gift*, from geben; Sprache, *language*, from ſprechen; Fliege, *fly*, from fliegen; Schlange, *serpent*, from ſchlingen, *wind*. A few masculines denote persons; e. g. Bote, *messenger*, from bieten, *bid*. (2) Attached to adjectives (always with umlaut, if possible), it forms abstracts; e. g. Größe, *greatness*, from groß; Länge, *length*, from lang; Kürze, *brevity*, from kurz.

4. **Ei', erei'.** Ei is of foreign origin, Lat. *ia*, Fr. *ie*, and is always accented. It is appended both to nominal and to verbal stems to form nouns of action and of place; e. g. Heuchelei, *hypocrisy*, from heucheln, *feign;* Abtei, *abbey*, from Abt, *abbot*. As it was often used after er, the suffix came to be felt as erei, and the latter is now much more common than the simple ei. Erei forms nouns of action, as Malerei, *painting*, from malen; of place, as Bäckerei, *bakery*, from backen; of condition, as Sklaverei, *slavery*, from Sklave; rarely also collectives, as Reiterei, *cavalry*, from Reiter. It often implies contempt, as in Spielerei, Kinderei, *child's play;* Juriſterei, *pettifoggery*, from Juriſt.

5. **El**, applied to verbal roots, denotes the instrument; e. g. Zügel, *rein*, from ziehen, *draw;* Klingel, *bell*, from klingen, *ring;* Hebel, *lever*, from heben, *lift*. In South-German dialect el forms diminutives and familiar nicknames; e. g. Mädel, *girl*, instead of Mädchen; Seppel, nickname of Joſeph.

6. **Er, ler, ner.** Er applied to verbal roots denotes the agent; e. g. Seher, *seer*, from ſehen; Jäger, *hunter*, from jagen. It may also denote the instrument; e. g. Schläger, *sword*, from ſchlagen; Bohrer, *gimlet*, from bohren. Attached to noun-stems it denotes a resident or a functionary; e. g. Bürger, *citizen*, from Burg, *castle;* Berliner, *resident of Berlin;* Vogler, *fowler*, from Vogel; Gärtner, *gardener*, from Garten. The use of the suffix er after nouns in el and en (as in the last two examples) gave rise to the two new suffixes ler and ner, which were then appended to nouns not ending in el or en; as Künſtler, *artist*, from Kunſt, *art;* Kellner, *waiter*, from Keller, *cellar*.

7. **Heit, keit.** Heit, cognate with *hood*, in *falsehood*, and *head* in the archaic *drowsihead*, = *drowsiness*, was once an independent word, meaning *manner, person*. It forms abstracts from adjectives, and collectives from nouns; e. g. Freiheit, *freedom*, from frei; Schönheit, *beauty*, from ſchön; Menſchheit, *mankind*, from Menſch; Chriſtenheit, *Christendom*, from Chriſt. As appended to adjectives in ig, it took, by phonetic dissimilation, the form keit; e. g. Seligheit, *blessedness*, from ſelig, became Seligkeit. The new suffix keit was then appended regularly to adjectives in bar, ig and ſam; e. g. Freudigkeit, *joyfulness*,

from freudig; Fruchtbarkeit, *fruitfulness*, from fruchtbar; Langſamkeit, *slowness*, from langſam; Fröhlichkeit, *joyousness*, from fröhlich, *joyous*.

8. **Icht** forms from verbal roots a few nouns that denote the collective result of the action; e. g. Kehricht, *sweepings*, from kehren, *sweep;* Spülicht, *washings*, from ſpülen.

9. **In**, cognate with *en* in *vixen*, earlier *fyxen*, i. e. *she-fox*, forms feminines that correspond to masculines; e. g. Löwin, *lioness;* Königin, *queen;* Fürſtin, *princess*.

10. **Ling**, cognate with *ling*, in *sapling*, *youngling*, is attached to adjectives, to denote one who possesses or exemplifies the quality; e. g. Fremdling, *stranger*, from fremd; Jüngling, *young man*, from jung; Erſtling, *firstling*. Applied to nouns it denotes connection, origin; e. g. Höfling, *courtier*, from Hof; Sprößling, *scion*, from Sproß. Applied to verbal roots it denotes the agent or the object; e. g. Abkömmling, *descendant*, from abkommen; Findling, *foundling*, from finden. In several words its meaning is uncertain and not distinctly felt; e. g. Sperling, *sparrow* (cf. Eng. *starling*); Frühling, *Spring*, from früh; Schmetterling, *butterfly*.

11. **Nis**, earlier spelling niß, nuß, cognate with *ness* in *goodness*, is applied to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality; e. g. Wildnis, *wilderness*, from wild; Fäulnis, *rottenness*, from faul. Attached to verbal roots it denotes the action, its concrete effect, or the place where it is performed; e. g. Kenntnis, *the act of knowing*, or *knowledge*, from kennen; Betrübnis, *affliction*, from betrüben; Gefängnis, *prison*, from fangen.

12. **Sal**, attached to verbal roots, denotes the thing done or a concrete manifestation of the action; e. g. Schickſal, *fate*, from ſchicken, *send;* Trübſal, *trouble*, from trüben; Labſal, *refreshment*, from laben. Sel, with weaker accent, is another form of the same suffix; e. g. Rätſel, *riddle*, from raten, *guess;* Überbleibſel, *remnant*, from überbleiben.

13. **Schaft**, cognate with *ship* in *friendship*, was once an independent word meaning *character*, *being*. It is attached to nouns to form abstracts and collectives; e. g. Feindſchaft, *enmity*, from Feind; Mannſchaft, *crew*, from Mann; Herrſchaft, *dominion*, from Herr; Botſchaft, *message*, from Bote.

14. **Tum**, cognate with *dom* in *kingdom*, was once an independent word meaning *status*, *condition*. It is applied to nouns to denote estate, province, sphere, and to adjectives to denote a concrete manifestation of the quality; e. g. Bürgertum, *citizenship*, from Bürger; Fürſtentum, *principality*, from Fürſt; Altertum, *antiquity*, from Alter; Eigentum, *property*, from eigen, *own;* Heiligtum, *sanctuary*, *halidom*,

from heilig. Observe that it does not form collectives as in Eng.; e. g. Chriſtentum, *Christianity*, but Chriſtenheit, *Christendom*. It is rarely attached to verbal roots, as in Wachstum, *growth*, from wachſen.

15. **Ung**, cognate with *ing* in *ending*, forms from verbal roots nouns that denote the action or its effect; e. g. Warnung, *warning*, from warnen; Faſſung, *form, version*, from faſſen; Meinung, *opinion*, from meinen. It is rarely attached to adjectives, as in Feſtung, *fortress*, from feſt.

388. Derivation by Prefix. Not a few nouns are formed with the aid of a prefix. The word 'prefix,' as here employed, does not include prepositions, adverbs and other parts of speech, that have an independent existence. Such cases as, e. g. Anteil, *share*, and Fürwort, *pronoun*, come under the head of composition. It is also to be observed that many nouns which seem to come from a noun preceded by an inseparable prefix (be, ent, er, ge, ver, zer) are in reality from verbs; thus Beſtand, *constitution*, is not from be + Stand, but from beſtehen; Verfall, *decay*, not from ver + Fall, but from verfallen. The true prefixes, as thus limited, are few in number and, excepting ge, all accented. The more important of them are as follows:

1. **After**, identical with Eng. *after* forms a few nouns denoting something secondary, spurious, false; e. g. Afterbild, *weak imitation*, from Bild; Aftergott, *false god*, from Gott; Afterrede, *calumny*, from Rede; Afterwelt, *posterity*, from Welt.

2. **Ant**, the same as the unaccented ent, emp, in verbal compounds, appears in Antlitz, *face*, and Antwort, *answer*. Its original meaning is *over against*.

3. **Erz**, Eng. *arch*, from Gk. ἀρχ- means *chief, foremost;* e. g. Erzengel, *archangel;* Erzböſewicht, *arch-villain;* Erzdummkopf, *fool of fools*.

4. **Ge**, originally meaning *with*, is prefixed to noun-stems to form collectives, and nouns denoting joint action, association; e. g. Gewölke, *mass of clouds*, from Wolke, *cloud;* Gewäſſer, *waters*, from Waſſer; Gefährte, *comrade, fellow-traveler*, from Fahrt, *journey;* Geſell(e), *companion* (originally *room-mate*, from Saal, *room*); Geſpiele, *playmate*, from Spiel. Prefixed to verbal roots, it forms nouns which denote the action itself or its concrete effect; e. g. Gebrüll, *roaring*, from

brüllen; Gerede, *talk*, from reden; Geſchenk, *present*, from ſchenken; Gebäude, *building*, from bauen. Both classes of derivatives are apt to have the suffix e, and the great mass of them are neuter.

5. **Miß**, cognate with Eng. *mis* in *mistake*, means *wrong, amiss;* e. g. Mißbrauch, *misuse, abuse*, from Brauch, *use;* Mißgeburt, *monstrosity*, from Geburt; Mißmut, *ill-humor*, from Mut.

6. **Un**, cognate with *un* in *untrue*, is a negative prefix, which besides being prefixed to adjectives, as in Eng., is freely used before nouns to reverse their meaning, or to denote something prodigious; e. g. Unmenſch, *monster*, from Menſch; Unding, *absurdity, chimera*, from Ding; Unzahl, *countless number*, from Zahl; Unmaſſe, *prodigious mass*, from Maſſe.

7. **Ur**, cognate with *or* in *ordeal*, ultimately also with *out*, means *primitive, original, very ancient;* e. g. Urmenſch, *primeval man;* Urſprache, *original language;* Urquell, *original source;* Urahnherr, *remote ancestor;* Urgroßmutter, *great-great-grandmother*.

THE DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES

389. Primitive Adjectives. A large number of adjectives, the most of them monosyllabic, must count as primitive words; e. g. alt, *old;* gut, *good;* reich, *rich;* böſe, *base;* eitel, *vain*.

1. Speaking generally, the monosyllabic adjectives are really derived, like the nouns, from verbal roots, and had originally a formative suffix; thus alt goes back to an ideal form *al-dá*, in which *da* is a participial suffix and *al* a root meaning *to grow* (cognate with Lat. *al-o, nourish*); so that alt meant originally *grown up*. But there is no root *al* in German, and t is not felt as a suffix; hence the word is to be regarded as primitive. There are, however, a few monosyllabic adjectives which are formed by ablaut from verbal roots that do exist in modern German; e. g. brach, *fallow*, from brechen, *break;* glatt, *smooth*, from gleiten, *slip*.

2. In many cases the old formative suffix has left traces of itself in the umlaut of the root-vowel, or in a final e, or both. Thus ſchön, *beautiful*, was once *sconi*, and the *i* caused umlaut before it disappeared. So böſe is from an older *bosi*, the suffix *i* remaining as e.

390. Adjectival Suffixes. Most adjectives are formed by means of a suffix. The term 'suffix' does not embrace

independent words which appear as the final element of a compound and preserve their own proper meaning; e. g. voll, *full*, in ſchmerzvoll, *painful;* reich in gedankenreich, *rich in thought, thoughtful.* On the other hand it may properly include endings such as -artig, -mäßig, -ſelig, which, as suffixes, are not identical with the adjectives artig, mäßig, ſelig. The most important of the adjective-forming suffixes are, then, as follows:

1. **Artig,** a derivative of Art, *kind, manner*, forms adjectives of manner from nouns and adjectives; e. g. blitzartig, *lightning-like*, from Blitz; hundartig, *dog-like*, from Hund; großartig, *grand*, from groß; fremdartig, *strange*, from fremd. Notice also derartig, *of that kind*, from the adverbial gen. der Art.

2. **Bar,** from the root of -bären, *bear*, is attached to verbal roots, sometimes also to nouns, and very rarely to adjectives. Its Eng. equivalent is generally, tho with some exceptions, an adjective in *able, ible;* e. g. dienſtbar, *serviceable*, from Dienſt; ſchiffbar *navigable*, from Schiff; mannbar, *marriageable*, from Mann; furchtbar, *fearful, terrible*, from Furcht; denkbar, *thinkable*, from denken; haltbar, *tenable*, from halten; lesbar, *readable, legible*, from leſen; offenbar, *evident*, from offen.

3. **En, ern.** En, cognate with *en* in *wooden*, forms adjectives of material from nouns; e. g. golden, *golden;* ledern, *leathern*, from Leder. Its use after nouns in er, as in ledern, gave rise to the new suffix ern, which is of very common occurrence; e. g. bleiern, *leaden*, from Blei; hölzern, *wooden*, from Holz; ſtählern, *of steel*, from Stahl.

4. **Er** forms indeclinable adjectives from names of cities; e. g. der Kölner Dom, *the Cologne Cathedral.* These adjectives are stereotyped genitives plural, but are no longer felt as genitives. Some authorities insist that one should not say ein Verein Leipziger Lehrer for *an association of Leipzig teachers*, but ein Verein von Leipziger Lehrern (§ 247,2). But the former locution is very common.

5. **Erlei** forms, from numerals, indeclinable adjectives denoting the *number of kinds;* e. g. einerlei, *of one kind;* mancherlei, *of many kinds.* In their origin these words are adverbial genitives of an old fem. noun Leie, meaning *manner, way.*

6. **Fach** forms multiplicative adjectives from numerals. It corresponds to Eng. *fold;* e. g. dreifach, *threefold;* vielfach, *manifold.*

7. **Faltig, fältig,** a derivative of Falt, *fold*, forms multiplicative adjectives from numerals ; e. g. dreifaltig, or dreifältig, *threefold, triple;* mannigfaltig (or -fältig), *manifold.*

8. **Haft,** in its origin a pple. of haben, meaning *had, possessed, found*, is attached to nouns, rarely to verbal roots, and still more rarely to adjectives. It means *partaking of the nature of;* e. g. knabenhaft, *boyish*, from Knabe; ſchalkhaft, *roguish*, from Schalk; fehlerhaft, *erroneous*, from Fehler; ſpaßhaft, *jocose*, from Spaß; boshaft, *malicious*, from böſe (earlier *bos-i*); krankhaft, *sickly, morbid*, from krank; ſeßhaft, wohnhaft, *resident*, from ſitzen and wohnen.

9. **Icht** forms from nouns a few adjectives of quality ; e. g. töricht, *foolish*, from Tor; nebelicht, *cloudy*, from Nebel; ölicht, *oily*, from Öl.

10. **Ig,** cognate with *y* in *milky*, is one of the commonest of suffixes, being attached to nouns, adjectives, adverbs, and sometimes to verbal roots. Its force is that of the Eng. suffixes *y, ful, ous;* e. g. blutig, *bloody*, from Blut; freudig, *joyful*, from Freude; einig, *united*, from ein; wahrhaftig, *true*, from wahrhaft; heutig, *of to-day*, from heute; damalig, *of that time*, from damals; gültig, *valid*, from gelten.

11. **Iſch,** is cognate with *ish* in *boyish*, and is used in much the same way ; e. g. kindiſch, *childish* (with depreciatory meaning as compared with kindlich, *childlike*); weibiſch, *womanish* (but weiblich, *womanly, feminine*). It is the preferred suffix to form adjectives from proper names and foreign words ; e. g. römiſch, *Roman* (as well as *Romish*); amerikaniſch, *American;* bayeriſch, *Bavarian;* logiſch, *logical;* philoſophiſch, *philosophical.* A proper adjective in iſch often takes the place of a limiting gen.; e. g. die Leſſing'ſche Theorie, *the theory of Lessing.*

12. **Lich,** cognate with *ly* in *friendly*, is the most common of the adjectival suffixes. Attached to nouns it corresponds in the main to Eng. *ly, ous, ful;* e. g. göttlich, *godly, divine*, from Gott; täglich, *daily*, from Tag; gefährlich, *dangerous*, from Gefahr; ſchädlich, *harmful*, from Schade. After verbal roots its meaning is similar to that of bar; e. g. leidlich, *tolerable*, from leiden; tu(n)lich, *feasible*, from tun; möglich, *possible*, from mögen. Derivatives in lich and bar are sometimes formed from the same root with hardly perceptible difference of meaning; e. g. greifbar and greiflich, *that can be grasped*, from greifen. More often there is a difference of meaning, bar having a more distinctly passive force ; e. g. ausführbar, *practicable;* ausführlich, *complete;* undenkbar, *unthinkable*, undenklich, *immemorial.* Attached to adjectives lich usually has weakening force ; e. g. gütlich, *kindly*, from gut; reinlich, *cleanly*, from rein; ſüßlich, *sweetish*, from ſüß. Lich forms a few derivatives that are used only as adverbs (e. g. freilich, § 373, 1),

but it has never become, like Eng. *ly*, a true adverbial suffix. Adjectives in iglich, e. g., wonniglich, *rapturous*, from Wonne, wonnig, belong now to stately diction and are becoming quaint.

13. **Los** is cognate with *less* in *endless* and is used in much the same way; e. g. grundlos, *groundless;* freudlos, *joyless*. As independent word it means *free from, rid of*.

14. **Mäßig,** a derivative of Maß, *manner*, forms adjectives of manner from nouns; e. g. regelmäßig, *regular*, from Regel, *rule;* volksmäßig, *popular*, from Volk.

15. **Sam,** cognate with *some* in *lonesome*, is attached to nouns, adjectives and verbal roots. After nouns it has the force of Eng. *-some;* e. g. furchtſam, *fearsome, timid* (with active meaning in contrast with furchtbar, *fearful*), from Furcht; mühſam, *toilsome*, from Mühe; heilſam, *wholesome*, from Heil. To adjectives it gives a modified meaning which is not definable in general terms; e. g. langſam, *slow*, from lang, *long;* einſam, *solitary, lonesome*, from ein, *one;* wachſam, *vigilant*, from wach, *awake*. Attached to verbal roots it forms verbals with passive, less often with active, meaning; e. g. lenkſam, *tractable*, from lenken; biegſam, *flexible*, from biegen; ſchweigſam, *silent*, from ſchweigen; aufmerkſam, *attentive*, from aufmerken.

16. **Selig,** derived from the noun-suffix ſal in such words as trübſelig, *sad*, from Trübſal, forms adjectives of manner, quality, character; e. g. ſaumſelig, *dilatory*, from Saumſal; mühſelig, *toilsome*, from Mühſal. In other cases the ending ſelig is the adjective ſelig, *happy*, e. g. gottſelig, *godly, happy in God*. In glückſelig, *happy*, from obsolete Glückſal, the independent ſelig is now felt.

391. Adjectival Prefixes. These are in general the same as the noun-forming prefixes mentioned in § 388. Thus:

1. **Erz,** always accented, forms absolute superlatives, mostly with a humorous tinge; e. g. erzfaul = äußerſt faul, *extremely lazy*.

2. **Ge,** besides forming several adjectives that must count as primitive words, is prefixed to adjectives and verbal roots with a force which is not now distinctly felt and can hardly be defined in general terms (cf. § 396, 4); e. g. genug, *enough;* genau, *exact;* gerecht, *righteous*, from recht; getreu, *faithful*, from treu; geſcheit, *clever*, from ſcheiden; gemäß, *conformable*, from meſſen; genehm, *acceptable*, from nehmen.

3. **Un,** as negative prefix, is cognate with Eng. *un*, and is used in much the same way, except that its accent is variable. If the basic adjective is not derived from a verbal root, un usually has the chief stress; e. g. u'nruhig, *uneasy;* u'nrichtig, *incorrect;* u'nfruchtbar, *un-*

fruitful. Notice, however, such exceptions as unе'ndlich, *infinite;* ungeheu'er, *uncanny, prodigious.* The same principle holds if the basic adjective *is* derived from a verbal root, but is not a verbal in bar, lich, or ſam; e. g. u'nerhört, *unheard of;* u'nangenehm, *unpleasant;* u'nbequem, *uncomfortable.* Verbals in bar, lich and ſam generally accent the root-syllable; e. g. unde'nkbar, *unthinkable;* unglau'blich, *incredible;* unbie'gſam, *inflexible.* But in some of this last class the accent is unsettled; e. g. u'nverzeihlich, or unverzei'hlich, *unpardonable.* Observe finally that un may form negatives to which there is no corresponding positive; e. g. unſä'glich, *unspeakable;* u'nverhofft, *unhoped-for.*

4. **Ur,** always accented, has the same force as in nouns; e. g. uralt, *very ancient.*

THE DERIVATION OF VERBS

392. Primitive Verbs. All verbs that are derived directly from a monosyllabic root, with no other suffix than the usual en of the infinitive, must count as primitive words. Such are all of the strong verbs and a large number of older weak verbs; e. g. haben, *have;* holen, *fetch;* reden, *talk.*

1. It is to be noted, however, that the modern en of the inf. represents several different suffixes of the older language. One of the most common of these was the syllable *jan*, which has caused umlaut in some stems that, under the above definition, would have to be regarded as primitive; e. g. hören, *hear*, goes back to an earlier **hōr-jan.*

393. Derivation by Umlaut. Many verbs are derived by umlaut of the root-vowel from verbal roots, nouns and adjectives. The umlaut is due to the old suffix *ja*, and is not always marked by the modern sign of umlaut. Thus we have:

1. A number of factitive verbs from strong roots, but with the root-vowel of the preterit, less often that of the infinitive; e. g. tränken, *make drink, water*, cognate with *drench*, from trinken; führen, *make go, lead*, from fahren; wenden, *make turn*, from winden; legen, *make lie, lay*, from liegen; ſetzen, *make sit, set*, from ſitzen; fällen, *make fall, fell*, from fallen.

a. In a few such factitives there is change of the final consonant; e. g. ätzen, *make eat, etch*, from eſſen; ſchnitzen, *carve*, from ſchneiden; beizen, *macerate*, from beißen, *bite;* ſchmücken, *adorn*, from ſchmiegen, *lie smooth*. The same mode of formation appears in the weak verb wecken *awake* (transitive), from wachen, *be awake*.

2. Numerous derivatives from nouns and adjectives, the umlaut being due to analogy, or to the fact that the basic word has it; e. g. fürchten, *fear*, from Furcht; küſſen, *kiss*, from Kuß; gründen, *found*, from Grund; bäumen, *rear*, from Baum; ſchwärzen, *blacken*, from ſchwarz; öffnen, *open*, from offen; grünen, *be green*, from grün.

394. Denominatives without Umlaut. A verb formed from a noun or adjective is called a 'denominative.' Many such of late origin are formed without umlaut by simply adding en. They are mostly intransitive. Examples: hauſen, *dwell*, from Haus; wurzeln, *be rooted*, from Wurzel; landen, *land*, from Land; altern, *age*, from Alter; kranken, *be ill* (cf. kränken, *grieve*); erſtarken, *grow strong* (cf. ſtärken, *strengthen*).

395. Derivation by Suffix. The verbal suffixes are appended to the root, thus forming a new stem which then receives the n or en of the infinitive. The most important of them are as follows:

1. **Ch** forms a very few intensives; e. g. horchen, *hearken*, from hören; ſchnarchen, *snore*, from ſchnarren, *utter a harsh sound*.

2. **El** forms iteratives, often with diminutive or derisive force, from verbs, nouns and adjectives; e. g. tänzeln, *caper*, from tanzen, *dance;* grübeln, *grub*, from graben, *dig;* lächeln, *smile*, from lachen, *laugh;* hüſteln, *cough slightly*, from huſten, *cough;* liebeln, *make love*, 'spoon,' from lieben; handeln, *act, trade*, from Hand; kränkeln, *be sickly*, from krank.

3. **Er** forms iteratives and intensives, often with causative force; e. g. plätſchern, *spatter*, from platſchen, *splash;* glimmern, *glimmer*, from glimmen, *shine;* zögern, *linger*, from ziehen, *draw;* ſtäubern or ſtöbern, *fly like dust*, from ſtauben. In several verbs of this formation the root is onomatopoetic and does not appear in any simpler form; e. g.

flüſtern, *whisper;* räuſpern, *clear the throat.* Different is the ern of verbs derived from adjectives (perhaps comparatives) in er; e. g. ſäubern, *clean*, from ſauber; vergrößern, *enlarge*, from größer.

4. **Ier**, always accented, is of foreign origin, being derived from Fr. *ir*, *ier*, in such verbs as *partir*, *étudier*. In general the suffix is attached only to foreign roots, as ſtudieren, *study;* regieren, *rule;* etablieren, *establish;* telegraphieren, *telegraph*. In a few cases, however, the base is German; e. g. buchſtabieren, *spell*, from Buchſtabe; ſtolzieren, *strut*, from ſtolz. Verbs in ieren are very numerous, an immense number of them having been coined unnecessarily. The present tendency, at least in dignified writing, is to discard those for which there are good native equivalents; e. g. to use gründen or einrichten for etablieren; ärgern for vexieren; ankündigen for annoncieren, etc.

5. **Ig**, as verbal suffix, is simply the adjectival suffix ig applied at first in such cases as einigen, *unite*, from einig, or mäßigen, *moderate*, from mäßig, and then extended by analogy to stems that have no adjective in ig; e. g. reinigen, *cleanse*, from rein; benachrichtigen, *inform*, from Nachricht; endigen, *end*, from Ende.

6. **Zen** is attached to several pronouns and onomatopoetic roots. The verbs in zen mean *to utter the word* or *sound* denoted by the base; e. g. duzen, *address with* du; ihrzen, *address with* ihr; ächzen, *groan, say* ach; ſeufzen, *sigh;* ſchluchzen, *sob.*

396. Derivation by Prefix. The unaccented inseparable prefixes are briefly treated in Part I, § 208. The account there given is amplified in the following paragraphs:

1. **Be**, i. e. bei weakened by loss of stress, is thought to have meant originally *by*, *around*, *on all sides*, as in beſchneiden, *cut around, trim, circumcise*. But this force is now rarely apparent. Usually when prefixed to a verbal root be has intensive or perfective force, denoting thoroness of operation, or the completed effect of the action upon an object; e. g. befragen, *ply with questions, question*, from fragen, *ask;* beſehen, *look at carefully, inspect*, from ſehen; begraben, *bury*, from graben, *dig;* beſtehen, *withstand, insist*, from ſtehen; bedenken, *consider*, from denken. Often the difference between the simple verb and the compound is one of construction rather than of meaning; e. g. befolgen, *follow* (acc.), from folgen (dat.); beachten, *heed* (acc.), from achten, (gen., or acc. with auf).

a. Prefixed to nouns be forms verbs that mean *to provide with, bestow, convert into*, that which is denoted by the stem; e. g. bemän-

teln, *mantle*, from Mantel; beeinfluſſen, *influence*, from Einfluß; befreunden, *befriend*, from Freund. Some of these derivates have the suffix er, others ig; e. g. begeiſtern, *inspire*, from Geiſt; bevölkern, *people*, from Volk; beendigen, *terminate*, from Ende; beherzigen, *encourage*, from Herz. A few derivates in be, from nouns, occur only in the perf. ppl.; e. g. benachbart, *neighboring*, from Nachbar; bejahrt, *along in years*, from Jahr.

b. Prefixed to adjectives be forms verbs that mean to *invest with*, or *put in operation*, the quality denoted by the stem; e. g. beſeligen, *make happy*, from ſelig; befähigen, *make capable*, *authorize*, from fähig. The stem may be a comparative; e. g. bereichern, *enrich*, from reicher; befördern, *further*, from vorder.

2. **Ent**, weak form of the accented ant, in Antwort, meant originally *over against*, *in return;* cf. entgelten, *re-pay*, *re-quite*. As prefixed to verbal roots it has now two clearly defined uses. First, it forms inceptives or inchoatives (denoting the beginning of an action); e. g. entblühen, *blossom*, *come to bloom*, from blühen; entzünden, *kindle*, from zünden; entſchlafen, *fall asleep*, from ſchlafen. Secondly, it denotes separation or removal, involving often a simple undoing or reversal of the action denoted by the root; e. g. entgehen, *escape*, from gehen; entnehmen, *take away*, *borrow*, from nehmen; entdecken, *discover*, from decken; entbinden, *unfasten*, *deliver*, from binden.

a. Prefixed to nouns it has privative force; e. g. enthaupten, *behead*, from Haupt; entblättern, *deprive of leaves*, from Blätter; entſchädigen, *indemnify*, from Schade. Before adjectives that contain already the idea of aloofness, separation, it has simply factitive force; e. g. entfremden, *alienate*, from fremd, *strange;* entblößen, *expose*, from bloß, *bare;* entäußern, *alienate*, from äußer, *outward*.

b. Aside from its inchoative and privative use, ent forms a number of verbs in which the force of the prefix is dimly felt, the compound differing but slightly perhaps from the simple verb; e. g. entbieten, *offer*, from bieten, *offer;* entrichten, *set right*, *discharge* (a debt), from richten, *set right;* enthalten, *contain*, from halten, *hold*.

c. The three verbs empfangen (empfahen), empfehlen, and empfinden, contain the prefix in the form emp, ntf having become mpf.

3. **Er**, the same as the accented ur in Urquell, ultimately also cognate with aus, *out*, meant originally *out*, *forth*, *to the end*. According as it looks to the beginning or the end, it forms, from verbal roots: (1) Intransitive inchoatives; e. g. erſtehen, *stand forth*, *arise*, from ſtehen; erblühen, *blossom*, from blühen; erwachen, *awaken* (*come into the state of wakefulness* denoted by the durative wachen). (2) Transitive perfectives, denoting attainment of a goal; e. g. erdenken, *think out*, *excogitate*, from denken; erjagen, *hunt down*, *capture by hunting;* erfahren, erleben, *experience* (*reach by going*, or *living*); erbetteln, *get by begging*.

a. Prefixed to adjectives er forms inchoatives and factitives; e. g. erkranken, *fall ill;* erblinden, *become blind;* ermuntern, *make cheerful, cheer up;* erneuern, *renew;* ſich erdreiſten, *make one's self bold, presume.* Cf. also, from a noun-stem, ſich ermannen, *make one's self a man, nerve one's self.*

4. **Ge,** called by the Grimm Dictionary, which devotes some eighteen pages to it, 'the most wonderful word of our language,' meant originally *with, together.* Cf. § 388, 4. It is possibly cognate with Lat. *cum-, con-, co-.* The radical meaning is still dimly felt in gerinnen, *run together, curdle,* and gefrieren, *cool together, freeze, con-geal.* (Cf. the nouns Gebrüder, *brothers,* belonging together in family or firm; Gefährte, *fellow-traveler,* etc.).

a. From the meaning *together* came that of fitness, appurtenance; e. g. gehören, *belong to;* gebühren, *befit;* geziemen, *beseem.*

b. Hence also the perfective force of ge (cf. Lat. *conficio,* with *facio*); e. g. gelangen, *arrive at;* gereichen, *reach to, suffice;* geraten, *come into;* geneſen, *get well;* gewinnen, *gain.* Out of this meaning grew its use as sign of the perf. pple. (§ 326, 1).

c. In a few verbs ge has durative force, denoting a permanent or persistent condition; e. g. ſich gebaren, *behave one's self;* gedenken, *think of, intend;* geruhen, *please, be minded* (not from ruhen, but from an obsolete root cognate with *reck*); gebären, *bear, be in a state of bearing.*

d. In many cases, however, the force of ge is quite indeterminate. Indeed some of the explanations given above may be classed as doubtful, and in no case is the force of ge very distinctly felt even by educated speakers. In glauben, Glück, Gnade, it appears reduced to g.

5. **Ver,** cognate with *for* in *forgive,* at first meant *forth, away.* Like er it may look to the beginning or the end, and forms, accordingly: (1) Verbs that denote a final departure or removal from a previous status; e. g. vergehen, *pass away;* vertreiben, *drive out;* verſenden, *send away, despatch;* vergießen, *pour out, spill.* (2) Perfectives that denote a final issue, closing up, using up, or wasting, as the result of the action; e. g. verblühen, *go out of bloom, fade;* verbluten, *bleed to death;* freſſen, i. e. vereſſen, *eat up, devour;* verſchwinden, *vanish;* vergraben, *bury;* verſiegeln, *seal up;* verbrauchen, *use up;* verſpielen, *waste in play.*

a. Out of the first meaning grows that which simply negatives the meaning of the basic verb (cf. *dis-pense* and *dis-unite*); e. g. verbieten, *forbid,* from bieten, *offer;* vergeſſen, *forget,* from obsolete geſſen, *get;* verſagen, *refuse.*

b. The final issue being often conceived as wrong, ver comes to mean *amiss, wrongly, in excess, too long;* e. g. verkehren, *pervert (give a wrong turn)*, from kehren, *turn;* verkennen, *misjudge;* verführen, *lead astray, seduce;* verſitzen, *sit too long;* verſchlafen, *oversleep.*

c. Prefixed to a noun or adjective ver has factitive force; e. g. vergolden, *gild*, from Gold; vergöttern, *idolize*, from Gott; verewigen, *eternalize;* verlängern, *make longer*, from länger.

d. In some cases the perfective force of ver is so weakly felt that the compound hardly differs appreciably from the simple verb; e. g. vermeiden, *avoid*, and meiden; verleugnen, *deny*, and leugnen.

6. **Zer,** without cognate in modern English, means *asunder, apart, in pieces;* e. g. zerreißen, *tear in pieces;* zertreten, *crush by treading;* zerfallen, *fall to pieces.*

DERIVATION OF PRONOUNS AND PARTICLES

397. The Pronouns. Of the derivation of pronouns there is little to be said. The personal pronouns, as also the simple possessives and demonstratives, are primitive words formed from pronominal roots. The amplified possessive-stems meinig, deinig, etc., have the adjectival suffix ig. Derſelbe is a compound of der and ſelb, cognate with *self*, which was sometimes uninflected in older German, but is now always inflected with the sense of English *same.*

1. Of the intensives ſelber, ſelbſt, the former is a stereotyped nom. sing. mas. of ſelb, while the latter comes from the gen. ſelbes with excrescent t, due perhaps to superlatives in ſt.

2. The relative pronouns are of secondary origin, der being the demonstrative der, and welch the interrogative welch, which is from the old interrogative stem *hva, hve*, with suffix lich = *like.* Welch is thus = *what-like.* The same suffix appears in ſolch = *so-like.* Wer and was are interrogatives, the r being the ending of the nom. sing. mas., and s, representing an older t (cf. Eng. *what*), that of the neu.

3. The indefinite pronouns are either primitive words (all, ander, beide, jed-, man, viel), compounds of such (jemand = je + man, niemand = nie + man, jedermann = jeder Mann), or they have adjectival suffixes already mentioned (einig, etlich, jeglich, wenig, manch, which is identical with mannig in mannigfalt).

398. The Particles have been pretty fully treated, with respect to their derivation, in preceding sections. Those adverbs which are simply uninflected adjectives have, of course, the derivation of adjectives. On the adverbial suffixes (e)s, ens, lings, wärts, weiſe, see §§ 373–4.

1. The prepositions and conjunctions are mainly of adverbial origin (§§ 376, 378, 1). For the derivation of those prepositions that are not primitive words consult the list in § 377. The conjunctions are either primitive words and compounds of such, or they have the derivation of adverbs. There are no principles of derivation applicable to them as a class. The same is true of the interjections.

WORD-COMBINATION

COMPOUND NOUNS

399. Of Noun-Composition in General. Two or more words combined into one and used substantively constitute a compound noun. The last element is nearly always a noun, has weak stress and determines the gender and declension of the whole. The first element may be any part of speech; it has strong stress and contains the dominant idea; e. g. Frá'chtzu'g, *freight-train;* Schné'llzu'g, *fast train;* Éi'ſenbahn-A'ngelegenheiten, *railway-affairs.*

1. A few compound nouns have an adjective, adverb or phrase as final element; e. g. Já'hrhu'ndert, *century;* Le'bewo'hl, *farewell;* Nimmerſatt, *never-full* (of a glutton or toper); Stélldichein, *rendez-vous;* Springinsfeld, *jump-afield, romp;* Garaus (from gar aus), *finishing-stroke.* But such compounds are comparatively rare and stand apart from the ordinary principles of composition.

400. Compounds of Noun and Noun are the most numerous class. They are formed in German much more freely than in English and hence can not always be translated by an equivalent compound. The important facts relating to them are as follows:

1. The first element may be the simple stem—the earliest mode of composition; e. g. Hausherr, *head of the house;* Buchhandlung, *bookstore;* Vaterland, *native country.*

a. Observe, however, that many nouns now monosyllabic once had a stem-suffix. The final vowel of this suffix, becoming e, rendered the 'stem,' for the purposes of composition, in some cases like the plu., with which it later became confused; e. g. Tagebuch, *day-book, diary* (not *days-book*, tho it looks so); Hundeſteuer, *dog-tax;* Pferdefleiſch, *horse-flesh.* In Bräutigam, *bridegroom*, i. e. *bride-man*, and Nachtigall, *nightingale*, i. e. *night-singer*, the old stem-suffix persists as i.

2. More often the first element is the genitive singular in (e)s, (e)n, or the genitive plural in er, en, e; e. g. Geiſteskraft, *intellectual power;* Knabenalter, *boyhood;* Frauenkloſter, *nunnery;* Geiſterreich, *spirit-realm;* Gänſeſtall, *goose-pen;* Mäuſefraß, *damage done by the gnawing of mice.* Possibly the last two cases should come under 1, *a*, above.

a. The ending (e)s of mas. and neu. nouns, having come to be felt simply as a connecting link in compounds, was then applied also to feminines, which would not take it as separate words; e. g. Liebesbrief, *love-letter*; Geburtstag, *birthday;* Wahrheitsliebe, *love of truth;* Feſtungsmauer, *fortress-wall.* It is thus now quite commonly applied to feminines in t, heit, keit, ſchaft, ung.

b. So, too, the ending en may be added to fem. nouns in the sing.; e. g. Ehrenwort, *word of honor*; Sonnenaufgang, *sunrise.* But these nouns once had en in the gen. regularly. In other cases the final e of a fem. in e is dropped; e. g. Schullehrer, *school-teacher.*

3. With respect to its meaning the first element may limit the second in almost any syntactic relation. Thus it may be equivalent to

a. An appositive; e. g. Gottmenſch, *God-man;* Sternblume, *star-flower.*

b. A genitive, which may be: (1) Partitive, as in Landesteil, *part of the land, district.* (2) Objective, as in Thronbeſteigung, *mounting of the throne;* Kaiſerwahl, *imperial election.* (3) Subjective, as in Blitzſchlag, *lightning-stroke.* (4) Of specification, as in Gefühlsmann, *man of feeling.* (5) Of connection, as in Fürſtenſohn, *son of a prince;* Meereswelle, *wave of the sea.*

c. An accusative, as in Schuhmacher, *shoemaker.*

d. A prepositional phrase denoting purpose, destination, material, source, instrument, place, manner, etc.; e. g. Waſſerglas, *glass for water;* Strohhut, *straw hat;* Freudetränen, *tears of joy;* Dampfſchiff, *steamboat;* Waſſerfahrt, *journey by water;* Fußſoldat, *foot-soldier.*

4. While in general no hyphen is needed between the parts of a compound, very long or unusual compounds should be bisected or trisected for the convenience of the eye; e. g. Feuerverſicherungs-Geſellſchaft, *fire-insurance company;* Perſonal-Veränderungs-Nachweiſung, *report on changes of personnel.* But there is no fixed rule on this subject.

401. Compounds of Adjective and Noun. The adjective is uninflected and the compound has a specific meaning, different from that which would be given by the inflected adjective in agreement with the noun; e. g. Jungfrau, *young (unmarried) woman;* Schwarzwald, *Black Forest;* Altſtadt, *old-town, old part of town;* Sauerkraut, *sauerkraut;* Hellſeher, *clairvoyant.*

a. A few spurious compounds contain an inflected adjective in agreement; e. g. die La'ngewei'le, *tedium*, gen.-dat. der Lange(n)weile; das Hohelied, *Song of Solomon*, des Hohenliedes, dem Hohenliede; der Hoheprieſter, *high-priest*, ein Hoherprieſter, des Hohenprieſters, zwei Hoheprieſter; der Geheim(e)rat, *privy counsellor*, ein Geheim(er)rat, des Geheim(en)rats, zwei Geheim(e)räte, die Geheim(en)räte.

1. Substantive adjectives take the form of a weak gen. plu.; e. g. Armenſteuer, *poor-tax;* Krankenhaus, *house for the sick, hospital;* Heiligenſchein, *saintly halo.*

2. Here belong also compounds of numeral and noun; e. g. Dreieck, *triangle;* Viergeſpann, *coach and four.*

402. Compounds of Verb and Noun. The first element is the simple root, sometimes with a connecting e, which represents an earlier stem-suffix; e. g. Schießpulver, *gunpowder*, from ſchießen, *shoot;* Nennwort, *noun*, from nennen; Hörſaal, *lecture-room*, from hören; Leſebuch, *reading-book*, from leſen; Heiſchеſatz, *postulate*, from heiſchen.

403. Compounds of Particle and Noun are quite numerous; e. g. Jawort, *assent*, from ja; Jetztzeit, *present time*, from jetzt; Fürwort, *pronoun;* Anhöhe, *acclivity;* Vorrecht, *prerogative;* Mißmut, *ill-humor;* Oberhaupt, *chieftain;* Unterabteilung, *subdivision.*

1. Numerous words which might seem at first sight to come under this head are not compounds of particle and noun, but derivatives of a compound verb; e. g. Ausgang, *exit*, from ausgehen; Wohltat, *benefit*, from wohltun; Überzieher, *overcoat*, from überziehen.

COMPOUND ADJECTIVES

404. Noun and Adjective. This is the most common type of compound adjective. The first element may be the stem or the genitive. It denotes various syntactic relations, which are easily understood. Examples: geiſtreich, *clever, spiritual;* geiſtesarm, *intellectually poor;* hoffnungsvoll, *hopeful;* menſchenleer, *devoid of men, uninhabited;* herzenskrank, *sick at heart;* arbeitsfähig, *capable of work.*

1. Many compounds of this type imply comparison, the first element being intensive; e. g. rieſengroß, *tall as a giant, gigantic;* blitzſchnell, *quick as lightning;* morgenſchön, *beautiful as the morning;* blutarm, *poor to the very blood, very poor* (but it may also mean *poor in blood*); pudelnaß, *soaking wet* (wet as a poodle emerging from the water).

2. The second element may be a participle (sometimes without ge), the first denoting the object, agent, instrument, or some adverbial relation; e. g. herzzerreißend, *heart-rending;* gottverlaſſen, *God-forsaken;* meerumgeben, *sea-girt;* herzgeliebt, *dearly beloved;* grundverkehrt, *radically perverted;* hausbacken, *home-baked, homely.*

a. Vergeſſen, *forgotten*, occurs with active force as if for vergeſſend; e. g. pflichtvergeſſen, ehrvergeſſen, *duty-forgetting, honor-forgetting.*

405. Adjective (or Adverb) and Adjective. Compounds of two adjectives, denoting a combination of the two qualities, are quite common. The first has the stem-form and is thus not formally distinguishable from an adverb; e. g. altdeutſch, *old German;* tollkühn, *foolhardy;* hellgrün, *bright green.*

a. Compounds of three adjectives also occur; e. g. althochdeutſch, *Old High German;* rotweißblau, *red white and blue.*

1. In such a compound as edel-ſtumm (G.), tho we can hardly translate it except by *nobly mute*, edel is not a true adverb. Where the first element is an adverb the second is a participle; e. g. neubacken, *new-baked;* halbwachſen, *half-grown;* heißgeliebt, *fervently loved;* hochgeprieſen, *highly-praised.*

2. A noun with preceding adjectival modifier is converted into a compound adjective by means of the suffixes ig, iſch, lich, both elements taking the stem-form; e. g. einäugig, *one-eyed;* altmodiſch, *old-fashioned;* fremdſprachlich, *pertaining to foreign languages.* The usual suffix is ig.

406. Other Types of Compound Adjective occur, but are less common. Thus the first element may be:

1. The pronoun ſelbſt; e. g. ſelbſtverſtändlich, *obvious.*

2. A verbal root; e. g. lerneifrig, *eager to learn;* denkwürdig, *memorable.*

3. A particle; e g. anſtellig, *handy;* abhold, *ungracious.*

OTHER COMPOUNDS

407. The Composition of Verbs, the subject being bound up with that of conjugation, has been fully treated in preceding sections. For inseparable composition see §§ 206–8 and 396; for compounds of separable particle and verb, §§ 210–12 and 341; for compounds of adjective and verb, or noun and verb, §§ 213 and 342; for compounds of compounds, §§ 214 and 343.

408. Compound Particles generally accent the second element. A compound adverb may consist of (1) noun + adverb, as ſtromau'f, *upstream;* (2) adverb (preposition) + adverb, as ſofo'rt, *at once;* dahi'n, *thither;* umhe'r, *round about;* überau's, *altogether;* zuglei'ch, *at the same time;* (3) preposition + case, as überhau'pt, *in general;* vorha'nden, *at hand, extant;* inde'ſſen, *meanwhile.*

a. But the first element receives the accent if it is a pronoun or adjective, or if it is formed by means of one of the adverbial suffixes; e. g. de'mgemäß, *accordingly;* de'rgeſtalt, *in such way;* mei'netwegen, *on my account;* a'llerdings, *to be sure;* neu'erdings, *recently;* a'nderenfalls, *in the other event;* vo'rmittags, *forenoons;* zu'ſehends, *visibly:*

tei'lweiſe, *partly*. Some other exceptions occur; e. g. au'ßerhalb, and other compounds of halb, i'rgendwo, de'nnoch. Ei'nmal, means *once (and no more)*; einma'l, *once (upon a time)*, *just*.

1. Compound prepositions consist of preposition + case; e. g. anſta'tt, *instead*; info'lge, *in consequence of*. Binnen is a compound of bei and the adverb innen. For others consult the list in § 377.

2. Compound conjunctions consist of two adverbs or of conjunction + adverb: e. g. wiewohl, *altho*; ſobald, *as soon as*; obgleich, obwohl, *altho*. Dieweil, archaic for *because*, is the adverbial acc. die Weil(e), *the while*.

THE SENTENCE

409. Since the analysis of the sentence and the nomenclature applicable thereto are the same for German as for English, a brief treatment of the subject in its general aspects will be sufficient.

410. The Simple Sentence consists of a single subject and a single verb, each perhaps with modifiers. The subject is always a noun or pronoun. The modifiers of the subject may be: article, attributive adjective, limiting genitive, adnominal phrase, appositive (appositional predicate) and sometimes an adverb. The modifiers of the verb may be: object, predicate adverb, dependent infinitive.

1 With respect to its form the simple sentence is either (1) assertive, as er hat das Ziel erreicht, *he has reached the goal*; (2) interrogative, as hat er das Ziel erreicht? (3) optative-imperative, as möge er das Ziel erreichen, *may he reach the goal*, or er behalte das Ziel im Auge, *let him keep the goal in view*. To these may be added (4) the exclamatory type, which, however, may have the dependent form; e. g. wie ſchnell er das Ziel erreicht hat! *how quickly he has reached the goal!* Cf. § 413, 1, *b*.

a. An initial verb with following doch renders an assertive sentence emphatic; e. g. iſt doch die Stadt wie gekehrt (G.), *really the city is as if swept*. Cf. § 419, 5.

b. Any of the above forms may be negatived by the adverb nicht. As in English, double negation is now regarded as vulgar and ungram-

matical, but it is common in the spoken language and is found abundantly in the best literature of all periods; e. g. es iſt als hätte niemand nichts zu treiben (G.), *it is as if no one had anything to do;* nur kein Geld hat ſie nicht (L.), *only she hasn't any money.* See the multitude of examples in the Grimm Dictionary, under kein.

c. A pleonastic nicht may occur (1) in exclamatory sentences, (2) in dependent clauses after a verb of denying, doubting, forbidding, hindering, or the like, and (3) after a comparative; e. g from Gleim, wie munter war ſie nicht! *how lively she was!* i. e. what degree of liveliness did she *not* exhibit? wie ſchwer ſind nicht die Mittel zu erwerben (G.)! *how hard the means are to obtain!* ich will zwar nicht leugnen, daß an dieſen Büchern nicht manches zu verbeſſern ſein ſollte (L.), *I will not deny that many things in these books might be capable of improvement;* wer zweifelt, daß ihr nicht . . . die Großmut ſelber ſeid (L.)? *who doubts that you are magnanimity itself?* das iſt ſogar unendlich wahrer als ihr es ſelbſt nicht empfindet (G.), *that is indeed infinitely more true than you yourself feel.* This last usage is due to French influence and has now gone out of vogue.

411. The Compound Sentence consists of two or more simple sentences co-ordinately connected; e. g. die Kunſt iſt lang, und kurz iſt unſer Leben (G.), *art is long and our life is short.*

a. A sentence consisting of two connected subjects with one verb, or of two verbs with one subject, may be classed as 'partly compound.'

1. The conjunctions that unite the members of a compound sentence are the general connectives (§ 379) and the adverbial conjunctions (§ 380).

412. The Complex Sentence consists of two sentences, one of which is subordinate to some word in the other; e. g. ich ſehe nicht, warum du fragſt, *I do not see why you ask.* The important characteristic of the dependent clause is the final position of the verb.

1. A clause may be dependent in fact without being so in form; e. g. geſchrieben ſteht: im Anfang war das Wort, *it is written: in the beginning was the word.*

2. Every dependent clause performs the function of a substantive, an adjective, or an adverb. We have to do, therefore, with three kinds of

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

413. Substantive Clauses are introduced by daß, a relative pronoun, or an indirect interrogative. The latter may be either an interrogative pronoun, a compound of wo, or one of the conjunctions ob, wann, wie, wo, rarely als.

1. The clause may be subject, object (of verb or preposition), predicate, or appositive; e. g. was wirklich iſt, iſt vernünftig, *what is real is rational;* wie ſie die Augen niederſchlägt, hat tief ſich in mein Herz geprägt (G.), *her way of casting down her eyes has impressed itself deeply on my heart;* ich fühle wohl, daß mich der Herr nur ſchont (G.), *I feel sure that you are only sparing me;* du biſt am Ende — was du biſt (G.), *you are after all — what you are;* er ſündigt, ohne daß er es weiß, *he sins without knowing it;* der Satz, daß alle Menſchen gleich ſind, *the proposition that all men are equal.*

a. As to the mode and tense of object-clauses, see §§ 360-61.

b. The omission of the verb before object-clauses with was, wie, was für, has given rise to exclamatory sentences of dependent form; e. g. was du nicht alles zu erzählen haſt (G.)! *what all haven't you to tell!* wie alles ſich zum Ganzen webt (G.)! *how everything weaves itself into a whole!* But exclamatory sentences do not by any means always have this form. Cf. Goethe's wie lieb' ich dich! wie blickt dein Auge! wie liebſt du mich!

c. A substantive clause is often anticipated by a compound of da; e. g. der Wert der Erfindung beſteht darin, daß ſie überall anwendbar iſt, *the value of the invention consists therein that it is universally applicable.* So a daß-clause may follow an interjection; e. g. ach! daß die Menſchen ſo unglücklich ſind (G.)! *alas, that people are so unfortunate!*

d. Clauses with als ob, or als with inversion (§ 359, 3, *a*), while formally adverbial, sometimes have substantive character; e. g. damit Sie nicht glauben, als handelte ich übereilt (G.), *that you may not believe that I acted overhastily.*

414. Adjective Clauses modify a noun or pronoun and are introduced by a relative pronoun, a compound of wo (rarely da), or one of the conjunctions als, da, wann (rare), wenn, wie, wo; e. g. der Gott, der Eiſen wachſen ließ (Arndt),

the God who caused iron to grow; den lieb' ich, der Unmögliches begehrt (G.), *I love him who desires the impossible;* man durchſuchte alle Örter, wo Fremde wohnen konnten (S.), *all places where strangers might dwell;* die Zeiten, da ich noch ſelbſt im Werden war (G.), *the time when I myself was still growing.*

415. Adverbial Clauses either define an adverb or limit the verb of the main sentence. They are introduced by the subordinating conjunctions and may be classified as follows (see § 381 for further examples and comments).

1. Local, introduced by wo and its compounds, rarely by da; e. g. bleibt, wo ihr ſeid, *remain where you are;* überall, wohin mein Fuß mich trug (S.), *everywhere where my feet carried me.*

2. Temporal, introduced by als, bevor, bis, da, ehe, indem, indes nachdem, ſeit(dem), ſobald, ſolange, ſo oft, wann (archaic), wenn, während, wie, wo and its compounds; e. g. damals ſchien er mir gewandt, als ich ihn noch nicht verſtand (G.), *at that time he seemed to me clever when I did not yet understand him;* bleibt doch, bis meine Wirtin kommt (S.), *remain, won't you, until my wife comes.*

3. Conditional, introduced by als with inversion (§ 359, 3, *a*), als ob, als wenn, es ſei denn daß (§ 356, 1, *a*), falls, im Falle daß, ſo (archaic), wenn; e. g. wir könnten viel, wenn wir zuſammenſtünden (S.), *we could do much if we stood together.* For the mode of conditional clauses see § 359.

a. As a variety of conditional clause we may regard the restrictive clause introduced by inwiefern, inwieweit, ſofern, ſoweit, wofern; e. g er ehrt die Wiſſenſchaft, ſofern ſie nützt (G.), *he honors science so far as it is useful.*

b. A conditional clause is often thrown into the form of an interrogative sentence; e. g. o, gibt es Geiſter in der Luft (G.), *O, if there are spirits in the air.*

4. Concessive, introduced by obgleich, obſchon, obwohl, ob zwar, ſo + adverb or adjective, wenn auch, wenngleich, wenn ſchon, wiewohl, wie auch, trotzdem daß, ungeachtet daß; e. g. gehorchen will ich, ob ich gleich hier noch manches ſagen könnte (G.), *I will obey, tho I might say much on this point;* ſo gut man wählt, kann man ſich doch betrügen, *however well one chooses (tho one choose ever so well), one may be mistaken.*

a. Concession can be expressed by simple inversion with following gleich, auch, ſchon, und (§ 379, 4, *a*); e. g. iſt gleich die Zahl nicht voll (S.), *altho the number is not complete;* und ſollt' er auch ſtraucheln überall (S.), *and tho he should stumble everywhere.*

5. Causal, introduced by da, indem, weil, zumal (da); e. g. ich kann fröhlich ſcheiden, da meine Augen dieſen Tag geſehen (S.), *I can depart happy, since my eyes have seen this day.*

6. Proportional, introduced by je, je nachdem, wie; e. g. je eher du zu uns zurücke kehrſt, je ſchöner wirſt du uns willkommen ſein (G.), *the sooner you return to us,* etc.

7. Comparative, introduced by als, wie, gleichwie, ſowie; e. g. der träge Gang des Krieges tat dem König ebenſoviel Schaden, als er den Rebellen Vorteil brachte (S.), *the slow progress of the war injured the king just as much as it profited the rebels;* ihr ſeht die Sachen, wie man die Sachen eben ſieht (G.), *you see things as people do just see them.*

a. The clauses with als ob, als wenn, classed above as conditional, are strictly a combination of comparative and conditional.

b. Where the verb is the same in both clauses, it is often omitted in the second, just as in English; e. g. du nimmſt es höher, als ich ſelbſt (es nehme) (G.), *you take it more seriously than I myself.*

8. Final, denoting purpose, and introduced by daß, damit, auf daß (archaic); e. g. eilt heim mit ſorgender Seele, damit er die Friſt nicht verfehle (S.), *hurries home with anxious heart, in order that he may not fail to be on time.*

9. Consecutive, denoting result, and introduced by daß, usually with preceding ſo, der Art, dergeſtalt, etc.; e. g. der Wind wehte ſo ſtark, daß wir kaum rudern konnten, *the wind blew so hard that we could scarcely row.*

a. The peculiar use of the daß-clause after a comparative or zu (§ 367, 5, *a*) grew out of an ellipsis of ſo; i. e. er iſt größer (zu groß), als daß der Neid ihm ſchaden könnte, *he is too great for envy to injure him,* stands for er iſt größer als ſo groß, daß, etc.

WORD-ORDER

416. Types of Word-Order. We have to distinguish three types of word-order according as the finite verb occupies second place, first place, or last place, in relation to other elements of the sentence.

a. Essentially, then, the subject of word-order is all bound up in the position of the finite verb. This is the basis of classification and the point which should receive the learner's attention before everything else.

1. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies second place may be called the *assertive order*. It presents two cases. If the subject precedes, as in er iſt da, we have the *normal order*. If an adjunct of the verb precedes, thus requiring the subject to follow the verb, as in da iſt er, we have the *inverted order*.

a. The terms 'normal' and 'inverted' are used in a somewhat conventional sense. It is not to be understood that the order er iſt da is either more ancient or more common than the order da iſt er. From the German point of view there would be no serious impropriety in taking the latter as the starting-point, and regarding the former as an 'inversion.' Indeed, some recent grammarians ignore this distinction entirely and call every sentence 'normal' in which the finite verb occupies second place. It is, however, convenient for some purposes to keep the term 'inversion' in its traditional sense.

2. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies first place, as in iſt er da, may be called the *interrogative order*, tho its use is not confined to interrogative sentences.

3. That arrangement in which the finite verb occupies last place, as in (ich weiß nicht) ob er da iſt, being characteristic of dependent clauses, may be called the *dependent order*.

417. The Normal Order is used for independent assertive sentences in which no other element precedes the subject in order of thought. The arrangement is: first, the subject and its modifiers; second, the finite verb; third, the adjuncts of the verb; last, the non-finite part of the verb. Examples: der Schäfer putzte ſich zum Tanz (G.), *the shepherd dressed himself for the dance;* das enge Leben ſteht mir gar nicht an (G.), *the narrow life does not suit me at all;* ihr habt ihn treulich eingeſungen (G.), *you have faithfully sung him to sleep.*

1. Observe that in the normal order the finite verb must have second place; no adjunct of the verb may intervene between it and the subject. Thus, where English says *I really believe, he soon returned*, etc., German says ich glaube wirklich, er kehrte bald zurück.

a. A few words are excepted from this rule, namely: aber, quite frequently; auch, when its force falls on the preceding subject; sometimes also doch, indeſſen, jedoch, dagegen, trotzdem, nämlich, alſo, and a few others; e. g. das alſo war des Pudels Kern (G.), *so that was the kernel of the poodle.* Other exceptions may occur in case of phrases possessing a quasi-adnominal character; e. g. Morley, in ſeiner engliſchen Literaturgeſchichte, fügt Angaben . . . bei (Scherer), *Morley, in his History of English Literature, adds statements*, etc. So very often in poetry, which cares little for rules of order; e. g. der alte Winter, in ſeiner Schwäche, zog ſich in rauhe Berge zurück (G.), *Old Winter, in his weakness, has retired*, etc.

b. There is, however, no limit to the number of words, phrases and even clauses, which may precede the finite verb, provided that they all belong to the subject and so form one element of the sentence; e. g. König Jakob von England, der gleichgültig zugeſehen hatte, wie ſein Eidam die böhmiſche Krone verlor, erwachte aus ſeiner Fühlloſigkeit (S.), *King James of England, who had looked on indifferently while his son-in-law lost the Bohemian crown, awoke from his apathy.*

2. The non-finite part of the verb (i. e. the infinitive or participle of a compound tense, or an adverb that has become so closely associated with the verb as to form a part of it, under the name of a 'separable prefix') comes last, a participle preceding an infinitive; e. g. er reiſt morgen ab, *he departs to-morrow;* er wird morgen abreiſen, *he will depart to-morrow;* er iſt ſchon abgereiſt, *he has already departed;* er wird wohl ſchon abgereiſt ſein, *he has probably departed already.*

3. As to the adjuncts of the verb (object, predicate-word, adverb), these are arranged after the finite verb in accordance with principles to be explained below (§ 421–4). The arrangement of these elements is the same in all three (or four) types of word-order.

4. While the normal order is most common in assertive sentences, it is also frequently used for imperative senten-

ces; e.g. er ſtehe feſt und ſehe hier ſich um (G.), *let him stand fast and look about him here.*

418. The Inverted Order is used for independent assertive sentences, in which some adjunct of the verb comes first in order of thought. The arrangement is the same as in the normal order, except that the subject follows the verb instead of preceding it; e. g. den Göttern gleich' ich nicht (G.), *I am not like the gods;* ungern heb' ich das Gaſtrecht auf (G.), *I do not like to refuse hospitality;* doch iſt es jedem eingeboren (G.), *yet it is natural to every one.*

a. The element put first may be an adverb, object, predicate-word, or a part of the verb itself. The initial position does not necessarily imply emphasis any more than in the case of the subject. In talk it simply reflects the order in which the thought presents itself to the speaker's mind. In studied writing it may be a matter of style.

1. Observe then that when an adjunct of the verb begins the sentence, the finite verb itself must have second place: neither the subject nor any second adjunct may intervene before the verb. Where, then, English says *true it is; money I have not; evidently you are wrong; beautiful to be sure she is not*, German must say: wahr iſt es; Geld habe ich nicht; offenbar haben Sie unrecht; ſchön iſt ſie freilich nicht.

a. An exception to this rule is permitted in the case of doch, ja, nämlich, and, in general, of any adverb which is separated by a pause from what follows and hence is not felt as beginning the sentence; e. g. doch viel iſt mir bewußt (G.), *yet much is known to me;* gewiß, Albert iſt der beſte Menſch unter dem Himmel (G.), *certainly, Albert is the best man under the sun.* The same principle applies also, of course, to interjections; e. g. fürwahr! es iſt ſehr wohl getan (G.), *forsooth, it is very well done.* To bring a word under this exception it is not necessary that the separating pause be written. Thus in the last two examples Goethe actually wrote: gewiß Albert iſt, and fürwahr es iſt.

b. For a similar reason the general connectives, und, aber, allein, ſondern, denn, and entweder . . . oder, precede the subject without causing inversion; they are not felt as adjuncts of the verb, but simply as connecting links.

c. Excepted from the rule, again, are initial adverbs the force of which is felt with the subject rather than with the verb; e. g. auch ich, *I too;* ſelbſt der König, *even the king;* nur der, *only he.*

d. From the general principle stated above it follows that a sentence should not begin with two adverbs, unless they are so connected as to form in reality but one element of the sentence; e. g. den andern Morgen war leider das magiſche Gerüſt wieder verſchwunden (G.), *the next morning, alas, the magic stage had again disappeared.* Here one could not say den andern Morgen leider war, nor leider den andern Morgen war, tho it would be permissible to say den andern Morgen, leider, war, since the pause makes leider parenthetical and thus deprives it of the character of a direct adjunct of war verſchwunden. On the other hand, connected adverbs count as one element; e. g. gegen Abend um die beſtimmte Zeit ward Wilhelm abgeholt (G.), *toward evening at the appointed time they called for Wilhelm.*

2. A preceding subordinate clause having the value of an object or an adverb has the same effect upon the order as any other object or adverb; e. g. ob er gefährlich verwundet iſt, wiſſen wir nicht (L.), *whether he is dangerously wounded we do not know;* als ich noch ein Knabe war (G.), ſperrte man mich ein, *when I was yet a boy they shut me up.*

a. Such a clause is very often resumed by a pronoun or an adverb, which makes the inversion easier; thus in the last two examples one might say ob er gefährlich verwundet iſt, das wiſſen wir nicht; als ich noch ein Knabe war, da ſperrte man mich ein. When there is no resuming particle, the subject is sometimes allowed to precede the verb; e. g. wie es in ſolchen Fällen zu gehen pflegte, niemand war vorbereitet (G.), *as is wont to happen in such cases, no one was prepared.*

b. Parenthetical sentences meaning *said he, thought he,* and the like, put the verb first because what precedes is the object; e. g. „verzeih' mir," ſagte Wilhelm lächelnd (G.), '*pardon me,*' *said Wilhelm with a smile.*

3. An appositive preceding the subject is treated like an adjunct of the verb and causes inversion; e. g. nachdenkend über dieſes Abenteuer, ging er nach ſeinem Zimmer (G.), *meditating upon this adventure, he went to his room.*

4. The usual position of the subject in the inverted order is immediately after the verb, but an unemphatic pronoun or

adverb may come between; e. g. auf dem Schauplatze hatten ſich viele Zuſchauer eingefunden (G.), *in the theater a number of spectators had found places;* endlich kamen wirklich Menſchen an (G.), *at last persons actually arrived.*

5. If an inverted clause is followed by another co-ordinate clause having the same subject, an adverb may not precede the second verb unless the subject is repeated; e. g. da kam ſie zu einem königlichen Garten und beim Mondenſchimmer ſah ſie, daß — (G.), *thereupon she came to a royal garden and saw by the moonlight that —.* Here it would have been equally correct to say und ſah beim Mondenſchimmer, daß, but not und beim Mondenſchimmer ſah, daß.

a. For the unnecessary resumption of the subject after und by means of derſelbe, see § 379, 4.

b. If the second clause of the compound sentence has a new subject, it usually stands in the normal order; e. g. endlich kam er zurück, und ſie begrüßte ihn mit Freude, *at last he came back and she greeted him with joy.*

6. The effect of inversion without the form of it can be produced by using the expletive es to anticipate a subject which, for stylistic, metrical or other reasons, it is desired to have follow the verb; e. g. es reden und träumen die Menſchen viel (S.), *men talk and dream much;* es irrt der Menſch, ſo lang er ſtrebt (G.), *man errs as long as he strives.*

419. The Interrogative Order puts the finite verb first. It is used:

1. In all interrogative sentences except such as begin with an interrogative pronoun; e. g. kennſt du den Fauſt (G.)? *knowest thou Faust?* was wettet ihr (G.)? *what will you wager?* wer weiß? *who knows?*

2. In optative sentences; e. g. wären wir nur den Berg vorbei (G.), *would that we were past the hill.*

a. But the subject may precede in an optative sentence; e. g. des Himmels Heere mögen dich bedecken (U.), *may heaven's hosts protect thee.* So, too, with the real subject anticipated by es; e. g. es lebe die Freiheit, *long live freedom.*

3. In imperative sentences, more especially when the verb is in the second person; e.g. betracht' ihn recht (G.), *look at him carefully;* führe du mein Heer (S.), *lead thou my army;* bezähme jeder die gerechte Wut (S.), *let every one control his righteous wrath;* geſteh' ich's nur (G.), *just let me confess.*

a. But imperative sentences may also take the normal or the inverted order, especially in the third person; e.g. er ſtehe feſt und ſehe hier ſich um (G.), *let him stand firm and look about him here;* jetzt gehe jeder ſeines Weges ſtill (S.), *now let each quietly go his way;* doch gehen wir (G.), *but let us go.*

4. In conditional sentences; e.g. irre ich nicht, *if I am not mistaken;* hat etwas Wert, es muß zu Tage kommen (G.), *if a thing has value, it must come to the light.*

5. In emphatic assertive sentences, the verb being usually followed by doch; e.g. ſind doch ein wunderlich Volk die Weiber (G.), *indeed, women are a strange race.* Such a sentence is often best translated by a question.

a. In older German the finite verb might come first without special emphasis, and traces of this freedom are preserved in poetry; e.g. ſah ein Knab' ein Röslein ſtehn, *a boy saw a little rose growing.* But in prose one would now need to say: Es ſah ein Knab' u. ſ. w.

420. The Dependent Order is used in dependent clauses introduced by a relative pronoun or particle, an indirect interrogative, or a subordinating conjunction; e.g. ich bin der Geiſt, der ſtets verneint (G.), *I am the spirit that always denies;* weh mir, wenn du nichts Beſſeres weißt (G.), *woe is me if you know of nothing better;* wer weiß, wo nun es die vier Winde haben (G.), *who knows where the four winds have it now?*

a. A sentence may be logically but not formally dependent, i. e. it may be without a subordinating conjunction. Such a clause takes the normal order; e.g. du ſiehſt, ein Hund und kein Geſpenſt iſt da (G.), *you see, a dog and no spirit is there;* ſie meint, du ſeieſt entflohen (G.), *she thinks you have run away.*

b. In the universality of its application the dependent order is a comparatively recent development of literary usage. Early modern German allows the finite verb considerable freedom of position, and

this freedom it still preserves in colloquial language and in poetry; e. g. wenn es nicht wär' durch falsche Leut' verraten worden (G.), *if it had not been betrayed by treacherous persons;* ich weiß nicht, was soll es bedeuten (Heine), *I know not what to make of it;* wenn ich so saß bei einem Gelag (G.), *when I would be sitting thus at a revel;* wenn mit Blumen die Erde sich kleidet neu, wenn die Brünnlein fließen im lieblichen Mai (S.), *when the earth clothes itself anew with flowers, when the springs flow in lovely May.*

1. A special case is presented by the compound tenses of the modal auxiliaries and those verbs (§ 326, 1, *b*), which follow their analogy in substituting what looks like the infinitive for the participle. In such case the tense-auxiliary precedes the two 'infinitives' and may be separated from them by intervening words; e. g. ich sehe nicht, wie mein Bruder hätte schöner ausgebildet werden können (G.), *I do not see how my brother could have been better educated.*

a. Lessing is fond of omitting the tense-auxiliary in such cases; e. g. so merken die Ausleger sehr wohl an, daß der Dichter hierdurch jene als Barbaren, diese als gesittete Völker schildern wollen, *the commentators remark very properly that the poet intended by this to represent the former as barbarians, the latter as civilized people.*

b. Aside from the case just mentioned, some writers occasionally prefer to place the tense-auxiliary before instead of after the perfect infinitive of a compound tense; e. g. es scheinet dem Leser weit kürzer auf dem Papiere, als es den Zuschauern wird vorgekommen sein (L.), *it seems to the reader much shorter on paper than it probably appeared to the spectators.*

2. The dependent order may occur in exclamatory sentences thru the omission of a governing verb; e. g. wie sich die platten Burschе freuen (G.)! *how the low fellows enjoy themselves!*

3. The subject of a dependent clause usually stands just after the introductory connective, but a short unemphatic pronoun or adverb often intervenes before it; e. g. du stehst nur hier, weil dich mein Vater brauchte (G.), *you only stand here because my father used you.*

4. In old German the finite verb might stand at the end in sentences not dependent, and traces of this freedom are

preserved in poetry; e. g. denk', Kind, um alles in der Welt, der Herr dich für ein Fräulein hält (G.), *the gentleman takes you for a fine young lady.*

POSITION OF ADJUNCTS

421. Adjuncts of the Noun. An attributive adjective or participle precedes its noun and is preceded by its own modifiers; e. g. von echtem, aus der Quelle geschöpftem Golde (G.), *of genuine gold obtained from the source;* ein berühmter, und damals wegen seiner Talente sehr geschätzter Weltmann (G.), *a gentleman of reputation, who was at that time very much esteemed for his talents.*

1. An appositive generally follows its noun, but may precede; if an adjective or participle, it usually follows its own modifiers, but may precede them for stylistic reasons. Thus it would be natural to say: durch diese Worte tief gerührt, brach sie in Tränen aus, *deeply touched by these words, she burst into tears.* But if a relative clause were to follow Worte, one might prefer to change the order and say: tief gerührt durch diese Worte, die offenbar vom Herzen kamen, brach sie in Tränen aus.

2. A limiting genitive, except a proper name, generally follows its noun, but exceptions are very frequent, especially in poetry.

422. Adjuncts of the Verb: A General Principle. The adjuncts of the verb come in the reverse order of their importance, the more weighty elements tending toward the end.

1. Observe that this is only a general tendency, the operation of which is more or less crossed and interfered with by other considerations. As a tendency, however, it is important. It explains, in the first place, the final position of the infinitive or participle of a compound tense: these, being felt as parts of the verb, are of course highly essential elements of the predication.

2. The same principle explains the final position of an adverb, adjective, noun or phrase, that has become so intimately associated with the verb as to form a part of it; e. g. auf in aufſtehen; bloß in bloßſtellen; Teil in teilnehmen; in Stand in inſtandſetzen.

3. So, too, we can account for the final position of a predicate adjective in relation to a limiting genitive; e. g. du biſt dir nur des einen Triebs bewußt (G.), *thou art conscious only of the one impulse.* Here bewußt is felt as the important element of the predication. On the other hand a weighty prepositional phrase may easily follow a predicate adjective; e. g. ſie iſt ſehr ſtolz auf ihre Schönheit, *she is very proud of her beauty.*

423. Position of Objects. From the general principle just stated it follows that short, unemphatic, pronominal objects tend toward the beginning; e. g. ich kenne ihn ſchon ſeit Jahren, *I have known him these many years;* ich habe ihm längſt vergeben, *I have long since forgiven him.*

1. The least emphatic pronouns are es and the reflexive, which accordingly precede; e. g. ich gab es dir, *I gave it to you;* ſie nähert ſich ihm, *she approaches him.* As betwen these two ſich comes first, but with exceptions.

2. In general a direct object (especially if it denote a person) is of more importance than an indirect object (especially if it denote a thing), and hence comes nearer the end; e. g. der Anblick gibt den Engeln Stärke, *the sight gives strength to the angels.* But where both objects are persons, or both things, this relation may easily be reversed; e. g. ſie ſtellte den Herrn ihrem Bruder vor, *she introduced the gentleman to her brother;* er widmete ſeine Kräfte dem Dienſte des Vaterlands, *he devoted his powers to the service of his country.*

a. On the other hand an accusative object very regularly precedes a genitive or a prepositional phrase; e. g. der lange Krieg beraubte das Vaterland ſeiner kräftigſten Söhne (Gr.), *the long war robbed the country of its strongest sons;* er befreite die Philoſophie von ihren Feſſeln, *freed philosophy from its fetters.*

424. Position of Adverbs. The general rule is that the adverbs of direction (auf, ab, her, hin, etc.) are of most im-

portance: they accordingly come last under the name of separable prefixes; e. g. die Sonne geht jetzt um 6 Uhr auf, *the sun rises now at 6 o'clock.*

1. Next in importance are the negative adverbs nicht, nie, niemals, keineswegs; these accordingly tend toward the end, especially in emphatic negations; e. g. das Leben iſt der Güter höchſtes nicht (S.), *life is not the highest of blessings;* daß die Beſchränkung die Unendlichkeit keineswegs ausſchließe (S.), *that limitation by no means excludes infinity;* ich kann die Stelle nicht überſetzen, *I can not translate the passage.*

a. But a negative adverb that is not felt as an adjunct of the verb usually stands before the particular word or phrase that it modifies; thus one would ordinarily say in prose: das Leben iſt nicht das höchſte der Güter.

2. An adverb of time generally precedes one of place or manner; that is, among the relations denoted by adverbs that of manner or degree is more important than that of place, place more important than time. But this order of precedence varies easily under the influence of special emphasis.

425. Dependent Infinitives are preceded by their own modifiers; e. g. du brauchſt dich nicht darüber zu ängſtigen, *you do not need to trouble yourself about that;* Wilhelm konnte ſich nicht entſchließen, die Rolle des lebenden Königs dem Pedanten zu überlaſſen, *could not make up his mind to leave the role of the living king to the pedant.*

1. The prepositional infinitive is often incorporated in the sentence as one of the verbal adjuncts, especially if it stands alone or has no modifier of great importance; e. g. das Mädchen fing zu weinen an, *began to cry;* da ſie zu weinen anfing, *as she began to cry.* But one would say: ſie fing an, heftig zu weinen; da ſie anfing, heftig zu weinen.

426. Dependent Clauses. Since dependent clauses have the value of substantives, adverbs or adjectives, their position falls under the rules already given. Thus:

1. An adverbial clause should not intervene between subject and verb in the normal order. Such a type of sentence as *the party, tho it had suffered defeat, was not discouraged,* must become: die Partei war, obwohl ſie eine Niederlage erlitten hatte, keineswegs entmutigt; or else: die Partei war keineswegs entmutigt, obwohl ſie, etc.; or else: obwohl die Partei eine Niederlage erlitten hatte, war ſie, etc.

2. So, too, a sentence should not begin with two adverbial clauses. In English we may say: *As soon as the horses were ready, altho it was still very early, we got under way.* This becomes in German: Sobald die Pferde bereit waren, machten wir uns, obwohl es noch ſehr früh war, auf den Weg; or else: machten wir uns auf den Weg, obwohl es noch ſehr früh war.

3. Whether a dependent clause should be incorporated in the structure of the main sentence or attached to it as an appendix, is a question of style. An important principle is that a sentence should not end weakly after a subordinate clause. Thus one would not say: er fuhr, ſobald er gefrühſtückt hatte, ab, but er fuhr ab, ſobald er gefrühſtückt hatte, *he left as soon as he had breakfasted.* On the other hand one might very well say: er fuhr, ſobald er gefrühſtückt hatte, in der größten Eile ab.

4. To explain further the principles according to which clauses are concatenated into more or less elaborate periods, is the province of a treatise on style, rather than of a grammar.

EXERCISES IN SYNTAX

EXERCISE I*

Use of the Articles

§§ 224–32

1. Fall has come and the birds are flying towards the south. 2. Youth is the spring-time of life. 3. Art is long, life short. 4. Innocence has a friend in heaven. 5. The Greeks called sleep the brother of death. 6. Love makes the cleverest man a fool (§ 265, 2, *a*). 7. Here nature is loveliest in June. 8. Without language man would be like the animals. 9. My home is far in the south, in beautiful Spain. 10. On Wednesday the children are in school all day. 11. Little Karl came running to meet his mother (§ 369, 5). 12. Father is now in Switzerland; he is coming home the last of September (§ 96, 1).

EXERCISE II

The Articles — *Continued*

1. Frogs can live on land or in water. 2. One can now ascend Vesuvius by rail. 3. Water is best, says a Greek proverb; and for my part I prefer water to wine. 4. The king and queen go to church twice a week. 5. She sat by the window, her eyes (§ 267) red with weeping. 6. Give me your hand and look straight in my face. 7. The *what* of a work interests men more than the *how*. 8. The art of speaking is too much neglected by most men. 9. There is (§ 340) a courtesy of the heart; it is akin to love. 10. The more he writes the worse his style becomes. 11. These

*Note. — These exercises, for which consult the general English-German vocabulary at the end of the book, are designed to accompany and illustrate a systematic course in the essentials of German syntax as treated in Part Second. A knowledge of Part First is of course presupposed.

apples cost ten pfennigs apiece. 12. The book appeared at the same time in English and in German. 13. Green and blue (§290, 1, *a*) seem to be nature's favorite colors.

EXERCISE III

Peculiarities of Number

§§ 240 and 346

1. An army of ten thousand men lay only three or four miles distant. 2. The book cost me seven marks and fifty pfennigs. 3. Two glasses of wine are always too much for him. 4. A thousand francs is a very considerable sum. 5. The horse is fifteen hands high and weighs a thousand pounds. 6. Three years is a short time. 7. As we passed by, the people stuck their heads out of the windows. 8. A large number of guests came to the festival. 9. A swarm of bees had attached itself to a tree in our garden. 10. Eating and drinking keep body and soul together. 11. Field, forest and village (= the landscape) lay before us in the soft morning light. 12. Easter comes very early this year. 13. If your Highness commands, our servant can attend to it at once.

EXERCISE IV

The Nominative

§§ 241–243

1. He is called Hans, with the nickname "little Hans." 2. I speak to you as your neighbor and good friend. 3. He remained a pious Christian to the end of his days. 4. There remains one more question, which seems the most difficult of all. 5. He died a poor man. 6. If I were self-possessed I should not be called Tell (§ 225, 1). 7. The peasant could still count as a handsome man. 8. Alas, that I was born a beggar! 9. It is not given to every one to become a great scholar. 10. There was nothing to be seen but the deep-black shadows of the trees. 11. I speak as a friend of the

people. 12. She looks exactly like her mother. 13. He is rightly to be called the savior of his country. 14. Alas, your home-land has become to you a foreign country!

EXERCISE V

The Adnominal Genitive

§§ 246-7

1. From the summit of the mountain one can see the king's castle. 2. I have received a letter of the following import. 3. The first part of the book has to do with the history of the English language. 4. The young people were of the same opinion. 5. That is not every one's affair. 6. A man of middle age entered the room and began to talk; he seemed a person of intelligence. 7. Yes, we are of one heart, of one blood. 8. O, learn to feel of what stock you are! 9. The King of Prussia has a castle in the city of Berlin. 10. I am a dead man if they seize me. 11. I do what belongs to my office. 12. With a dozen good friends he now passed several days of undisturbed happiness.

EXERCISE VI

The Genitive with Verbs

§§ 248-9

1. You must not be ashamed of your choice. 2. Enjoy life while you are young. 3. If you need me you will know where to find me. 4. I can not do without your help. 5. Oh, do not mention those old follies. 6. Not all are free who make light of their chains. 7. Carried too far, severity fails of its wise purpose. 8. Any man may boast of his industry. 9. A general gayety took possession of the little company. 10. Of what crime do you accuse him? 11. You are still young enough so that good breeding may teach you a better way. 12. Please help yourself to the bread and butter.

EXERCISE VII

Further Uses of the Genitive

§§ 251–5

1. Every workman is worthy of his pay. 2. I know a being that is worthy of him. 3. I am tired of living and of ruling. 4. The house of his parents was always full of the best society. 5. From the beginning we were sure of victory. 6. The fellow is quite incapable of learning. 7. But they always remained mindful of their origin. 8. One day the bear returned from his wandering. 9. Shall you be able to come before this man with a calm face? 10. Let each one go his way. 11. To my knowledge I have never treated you unkindly. 12. I often hear her walking about softly in the night. 13. As is well known (= in known manner) he was in his day a famous poet. 14. The man is a tailor by trade. 15. Oh, the unhappy hour!

EXERCISE VIII

The Dative with Verbs

§§ 257–8

1. The soul of man, says Goethe, resembles water. 2. I can not help you. 3. I told the boy that he must obey his parents. 4. It harms a man if everybody flatters him. 5. No man of honor will submit to the disgrace. 6. I gladly follow the example that you give me. 7. I forgive you, but I trust you no longer. 8. If you have faithfully served the state, that redounds to your honor. 9. Who is a brother to me? He who comes to my aid in trouble. 10. He who wishes to please all will always displease the best. 11. I look forward calmly to my fate. 12. It seems to me that I have met you before.

EXERCISE IX

Further Uses of the Dative

§§ 259–61

1. The time is favorable to our plan. 2. A good book is ever welcome to the traveler. 3. To all these children I was

"the good uncle." 4. Tears stood in the old man's eyes. 5. Truth is necessary to the soul. 6. This rose blooms not for me. 7. I had a strange feeling, as if the place were familiar to me. 8. The sun has burned my face. 9. It does one good to look into your face once more. 10. When will a savior come to (= for) this land? 11. I demand obedience to the law. 12. (I want you to) look at those handsome boys there!

EXERCISE X

The Accusative with Verbs

§§ 263–5

1. That makes no great difference. 2. Why have you not answered my letter all this time? 3. No one can rob me of my honor. 4. Methinks you would have done better if you had followed my advice. 5. What would man be if he had never dreamed the dream of freedom? 6. His duty is to stand guard before the gate of the palace. 7. Let each one fight his battle alone. 8. I wonder whether he will ever come back? 9. The ancient Greeks taught their youth wisdom out of Homer. 10. Who is permitted to call the child by its right name? 11. I at least consider him a great poet. 12. I can not make him my friend.

EXERCISE XI

Further Uses of the Accusative

§§ 266-9

1. He sent me the nearest way into the city. 2. The governor himself is bringing him up the lake. 3. The child has fallen down stairs. 4. This very night yet he must leave the city. 5. He lives about an hour's walk further up the valley. 6. A good half of the way not a tree is to be seen. 7. He is six feet high and weighs two hundred pounds. 8. The war lasted only a month, but it cost ten thousand human lives and an immense sum of money. 9. Every

Sunday, year in and year out, she writes me a long letter. 10. The stranger sat at the table, his head supported upon his arms and his cloak drawn closely about him. 11. But, jesting aside, what do you really want of me? 12. We walked hand in hand, our eyes fixed upon the guide. 13. Frederick the Great thought the Nibelungenlied not worth a charge of powder. 14. She has given me her word; I am content (with it).

EXERCISE XII

Apposition

§§ 270–1 and 285

1. They shall not have it, the free German Rhine. 2. There came the governor riding (§ 369, 5) from Küssnacht, his castle. 3. Oh, do not forsake it, the holy cause of thy country. 4. We were received by an old man, the servant of the prince. 5. We admire the deeds of the brave Prince Friedrich Karl. 6. The passage is found in the "Sorrows of Young Werther," a novel by Goethe. 7. The name (of) poetic genius was just then anything but honorable. 8. I will not endure it longer to lie here idly as a prisoner. 9. His Majesty King May's first songstress, Dame Nightingale, has just returned from the south. 10. I come to you as a friend whom I can trust. 11. We arrived on the 15th of the month, a dark, rainy day. 12. He is no longer satisfied with his position as German teacher. 13. I have a desire for something new. 14. The meal consisted of a large piece of bread, two glasses of milk and half a dozen boiled eggs.

EXERCISE XIII

The Adjective

§§ 288–94

1. Free word befits free man. 2. You dear child, come, go with me. 3. Oh, woe to me, poor girl! 4. You, dear friends, will certainly not forget me. 5. They sent us young

people into another room. 6. Many good books are my quiet friends. 7. Nothing remains but a handful of light dust. 8. The German and English languages are closely akin. 9. All good spirits praise the Lord. 10. Of all good things there are three. 11. He has come-to-be of another mind. 12. The following important point must not be forgotten. 13. He has at any rate a handsome exterior. 14. The strong man is mightiest alone. 15. I have but few acquaintances in the city. 16. A man of fine moral feeling would never do such a thing.

EXERCISE XIV

The Personal Pronouns

§§ 300–4

1. I see you do not know me, but I remember you very well. 2. The sight of you reminds me of old times. 3. Children, can you not be quiet? I am ashamed of you. 4. Be quiet, poodle! what do you want, you stupid beast? 5. One of us would never have done the like. 6. There are three of them, if I am not mistaken. 7. When you know our plan, you will give it a better name. 8. She took the Bible and read in it a long time. 9. Then we should be slaves and deserve to be such. 10. And there is a call (= it calls) from the depths: Dear boy, thou art mine. 11. The father is a merchant and the son intends to become one. 12. It is easy living (§ 205, 3, *a*) with this man. 13. I opened her eyes with regard to herself. 14. One can compare Venice only to itself. 15. He asked one of the men to fetch him his sword.

EXERCISE XV

The Possessives

§§ 305–8

1. He has his own room, I have mine. 2. Your house has always been mine. 3. If one names the best names, mine too is named. 4. Think of your happiness and of mine.

5. God's ways are not like ours. 6. We love art; our hearts grow warm (§ 240, 2) in its light. 7. The castle was in its day inhabited by brave knights. 8. The unhappy lady lived now only for her daughter and her (= the daughter's) children. 9. Siegfried killed the dragon and bathed himself in its blood. 10. Joy was to be seen in all their faces (*i. e.* in the faces of them all). 11. It is not well to be thinking always of one's own happiness. 12. There are people who have no idea of mine and thine.

EXERCISE XVI

Demonstratives and Relatives

§§ 309–11; 314–16

1. The bonds of friendship are often stronger than those of blood. 2. Herder was older than Goethe; the latter was born in 1749, the former in 1744. 3. The face resembles that of the deceased king. 4. The prize falls to the lot of him who deserves it. 5. It is you who are (§ 137, 2) to blame for the whole misfortune. 6. Hail to thee, Macbeth, who wilt one day be king. 7. He who seizes the moment, he (that) is the right man. 8. Whoever tells me the truth, him I call my friend. 9. He went back the same way he had come. 10. There was once a king and queen who lived at peace with each other, and had twelve children that were all boys. 11. Oh, that sort of people (§ 309, 4) must always be drinking and eating! 12. Whoso stands, let him see to it that he do not fall. 13. That is not the worst that you have done. 14. What I see with my own eyes, that I know.

EXERCISE XVII

Indefinite Pronominals

§§ 317–22

1. All my trouble was in vain. 2. How did you come by all that money? 3. Every few days he writes us a long letter. 4. I had every reason to regard him as my friend. 5.

The world becomes more beautiful (with) every day. 6. One or the other of you is to blame for it. 7. So they both loved each other, but neither would confess it to the other. 8. I can only remain a few days. 9. In a certain sense I owe you everything. 10. I have seen much, but nothing important. 11. No one lives as he would like; everybody lives only as he can. 12. We are born for something better. 13. I find little good in the book. 14. Man wants but little here below.

EXERCISE XVIII

The Auxiliaries of Tense

§ 323

1. Winter has come and the birds have flown southward. 2. He would certainly have become famous, if he had not died so early. 3. I have ridden to and fro for two hours. 4. The gentleman was not at home when we arrived; he had ridden to the city. 5. Goethe had traveled more than Schiller and seen more of the world. 6. Your tears have flowed too long already. 7. Your father has aged rapidly of late. 8. I have only met one sad man. 9. In spite of everything, I have continued to believe in his fidelity. 10. The water had pressed into the city. 11. I could hardly stand, for I had remained awake all night. 12. This watch has never gone right from the beginning.

EXERCISE XIX

Modal Auxiliaries

§§ 333–8

1. It might be difficult to find anything better. 2. One must not wish to seem richer than one is. 3. The world shall tremble if I must perish. 4. It was already too dark (§ 367, 5, *a*) for one to be able to find the way easily. 5. I might have lived a pretty life, if I had not been a fool. 6. The man claims to have lived here, but I cannot remember him. 7. I may have been a boy of fourteen at the time

8. I send you herewith the little that I have been able to save. 9. I should like to travel, but I must not think of traveling this year. 10. He could not have (done) it, even if he had wished. 11. What's the use of all that? You will never be able to convince me. 12. You should show him his mistake, but, if it may be, without paining him.

EXERCISE XX

Passive, Impersonal and Reflexive Constructions

§§ 344–5

1. He has been made better by misfortune. 2. I should like to write more, but I am this moment interrupted by a call. 3. Another way had to be found. 4. I had written thus far yesterday, when I was called away. 5. From your journey one does not always return (§ 205, 3). 6. Care is taken that every one may have (§ 358, 4) enough to eat. 7. That is easy to say but hard to practice. 8. It was to be expected (§ 366, 1, *a*) that you would lose your way. 9. I like it better at home; I have never been drawn (§ 303, 1) to foreign parts. 10. It may be hoped that the great riddle is at last solved. 11. God be praised, the child is found. 12. My greetings to thee (§ 344, 1), thou lofty house!

EXERCISE XXI

Tenses of the Indicative

§§ 348-53

1. To-morrow I celebrate my twentieth birthday. 2. I am going into the garden — shall be back in ten minutes. 3. You just run and get me my purse. 4. He will do no more harm; I have killed him. 5. I know secret ways that no man ever trod. 6. Where, I wonder, did he pass (§ 353, 1) the night? 7. Show the lawyer this letter and you (will) have won your case. 8. A good man will always choose the better part. 9. His life is over (= he has lived), the

stroke of death has fallen. 10. The inn where we spent the summer three years ago is closed. 11. I shall certainly visit you as often as I have time. 12. I think that I saw him last evening in the theater. 13. I learned German years ago as a child. 14. There will be singing and dancing until the sun rises.

EXERCISE XXII

Imperative and Optative Subjunctive

§§ 355–7

1. Let there be truth between us. 2. Let him go his way. 3. Let him be bound (§ 199, 1) to the linden tree yonder. 4. Let us go home; it is getting dark already. 5. Let some one mount the tower and see how things (§ 303, 4) are going. 6. Let him rest in peace! 7. May he rest in peace! 8. Be the story true or false, it is at any rate interesting. 9. Were I only well, how happy I should be! 10. May the day never appear! 11. Oh, that I had never lived to look on that! 12. God help the poor people! 13. Let no one enter the room, whoever he may be. 14. I shall not see him, unless it be (§ 356, 1, *a*) that he comes here.

EXERCISE XXIII

Potential and Unreal Subjunctive

§§ 358–9

1. How would it be with you if I should withdraw my army? 2. We could do much if we stood together. 3. If I had arrived a moment earlier I might have saved her life. 4. I couldn't state the true reason. 5. I should not like to assert such a thing. 6. I should think it would be better not to answer the letter at all. 7. So that's (§ 358, 2) finished! Well, what next? 8. There, now you have my reasons! I say no more. 9. Can it be that he is back already? it seems impossible. 10. So (you think) there is nothing more to be feared? 11. What? (you say) it was robbers who attacked

us? 12. Had I only known the truth, I could have helped you. 13. It was as if something strange were coming between them. 14. It was almost as if he had now reached the goal of his journey. 15. The end of the letter was exactly as if he had written it himself. 16. Some books appear to be written not that one may learn from them, but that one may know that the author knew something.

EXERCISE XXIV

Dependent Subjunctive

§§ 360–1

1. Do you think I am a child? 2. Socrates believed that the soul of man is immortal. 3. The belief that life is good is natural to man. 4. They felt that without freedom everything was lost. 5. He said that he should return on the morrow. 6. She demanded that I give back all the letters that she might have written to me. 7. They said that I had not changed, only my face was pale. 8. I have no other wish than that you should be friends. 9. No one knew who he was or how he lived. 10. My guide asserted that he did not know whence the robbers came. 11. She wrote me a week ago that she was lying ill in bed and could not even read. 12. The boys reported that the bear was right at hand; that they had themselves seen him and had then run away in fear.

EXERCISE XXV

The Infinitive

§§ 364–7

1. Acting is easy, thinking is difficult, says Goethe. 2. The life of a woman is an eternal going and coming, or lifting and carrying. 3. Doing right causes (one) to rest quietly. 4. To die is nothing, but to live and not to be able to see, that is a misfortune. 5. I feel myself becoming gradually young again. 6. It is hard to swim against the stream.

7. In this room there must be no smoking. 8. He has never learned to swim; who will help me save him? 9. It befits a noble man to heed the word of women. 10. I am ready to accompany you. 11. The question is hard to answer. 12. Suddenly I heard my name called from the distance. 13. To satisfy the mother, I had a doctor summoned. 14. I am too old merely to play, too young to be without a wish.

EXERCISE XXVI

The Participle

§§ 368–71

1. She has been ailing these two weeks. 2. We went against the danger (that was) threatening us. 3. A drunken man is always repulsive. 4. The task in question was satisfactorily (satisfyingly) performed. 5. The ancients imagined their gods as living in Olympus. 6. The letters that have reached (§ 369, 1) me say not a word of this intended journey. 7. Boldly ventured is half won. 8. The concert did not please me at all, one single piece excepted. 9. Her eye remained fixed upon the child (who had) now fallen asleep. 10. There comes a man running at full speed. 11. The whole question is a hard one to answer. 12. Looked at from the workman's point of view, the question appears quite different.

EXERCISE XXVII

Conditional and Imperative

§§ 362–3

1. If you should get into trouble I would gladly help you. 2. I promised to write as soon as the ship should arrive in Hamburg. 3. I feared that she would take cold. 4. Without him the affair would have gone quite differently. 5. They invited me to a family festival to which a number of guests would be coming. 6. Any one who saw it for the first time would step back with horror. 7. O, let us hear everything;

you have time. 8. Be not deceived by false prophets. 9. Greetings to you, noble gentlemen, greetings to you, fair ladies! 10. For God's sake, don't lose your head! 11. The child kept calling: Wake up, dear mother, wake up!

EXERCISE XXVIII

Prepositions

§ 377

1. At your age and with your great wealth you can confidently undertake it. 2. Old in years, rich in goods, he still leads, as in his youth, a simple life. 3. It is hard to swim against the current. 4. Come, fly with me away beyond the mountains. 5. In accordance with your wish I enclose his letter. 6. In my opinion there is no danger. 7. The number of the fallen is estimated at a hundred. 8. That is forbidden under a penalty of ten marks. 9. He is proud of his reputation. 10. The tower is ninety to a hundred feet high. 11. Confronted by such vulgarity, I can only keep silent. 12. He who does not lose his understanding over certain things has none to lose. 13. Such an angel of a child I never saw before. 14. He is taller than I by a whole head. 15. She had fallen asleep over the book.

EXERCISE XXIX

Conjunctions

§§ 378–81

1. He is no genuine friend of the workingmen, but (he) always acts in his own interest. 2. He is no genuine friend of the workingmen, but he has other good qualities. 3. You are not safe in Uri; for the tyrants lend a hand to one another. 4. Sorrows last but a short time; therefore we should endure them with patience. 5. The more I worked, the worse my situation became. 6. As she entered the room I noticed that she had been weeping. 7. When(ever) the

day was very hot the child would go into the woods. 8. God helps only (then) when men no longer help. 9. So may God help you as you pity me. 10. I will not do it, and even if you should promise me the world for a reward. 11. It was nearly 8 o'clock when the performance began. 12. I must bring you into jolly company that you may see how easily life can be lived. 13. I could live with him, tho I shouldn't like to have him for a husband.

APPENDIX I

ORTHOGRAPHY

1. Spelling Reform in Germany. German spelling is based in a general way upon the usage handed down by the writers, grammarians and lexicographers of the eighteenth century. But this traditional spelling, while much better than our own, is not free from defects. It represents simple sounds by compound signs, as in Saal, hier, ich; different sounds by the same sign, as in Bad – da, gehen – Tag; the same sound by different signs, as in Glas – Haß, Bäume – Freude, and it has a much-used silent h. Differences of usage with regard to these and other points led, in 1876, to a movement for governmental regulation of orthography. Prussia, Bavaria, Saxony, Württemberg and other German governments published official spelling-books, and the spelling thus prescribed soon began to make its way into books and journals. The first edition of this grammar, published in 1895, followed the Prussian rules.

2. The New Official Spelling. As the spelling-books issued by the various governments differed more or less in matters of detail, the *uniform* regulation of spelling became a desideratum. An orthographic conference was accordingly held at Berlin, in June, 1901, for the purpose of agreeing upon a common system. The recommendations of this conference have since been adopted thruout the empire, and also in Austria and Switzerland. The general principles of the new regulations are set forth in Regeln für die deutsche Rechtschreibung, nebst Wörterverzeichnis, Berlin, 1902. But since the 'rules' admit of not a few exceptions in favor of conventional usage, one can not easily spell by them without frequently referring to the accompanying 'word-list'; and as this, in turn, contains only a limited number of representative words, the student, or at any rate the teacher, should have at hand one of the more compendious orthographic dictionaries, such as Gemss' *Wörterbuch für die deutsche Rechtschreibung*, Berlin, 1902, or Duden's *Orthographisches Wörterbuch.* These excellent manuals, which cost but a small sum, seldom leave one in doubt about even the smallest detail of the official spelling. Practically we have followed Duden in this grammar.

3. The Old Spelling and the New. Since many writers and editors still continue to use the older spelling, tho with more or less diversity in details, we append a list of the more important points regulated by the official rules.

1. Ä, Ö, Ü, Äu, are to be preferred to Ae, Oe, Ue, Aeu. The same in Roman type.

2. Ä and äu are to be preferred to e and eu in words which have kindred with a, au; hence rächen (on account of Rache); Ärmel (Arm); räumen (Raum); but echt, not ächt, Hering, not Häring, leugnen, not läugnen, etc. There are, however, a few exceptions; thus edel (in spite of Adel), Eltern in spite of alt.

a. In a few cases ä and e distinguish words of different meaning; e. g., Ähre, *ear of grain*, and Ehre, *honor;* Lärche, *larch*, and Lerche, *lark*.

3. Ai is written only in a few words, of which the more common are Bai, Hain, Kaiſer, Laie, Mai, Maid, Mais. Elsewhere ei is used. Observe, however, the distinctive spellings: Laib, *loaf*, and Leib, *body;* Saite, *string*, and Seite, *side;* Waiſe, *orphan*, and Weiſe, *tune*.

4. The use of doubled vowels is somewhat restricted, tho by no means done away with. Thus the following words are to be spelled with a single vowel: bar, Barſchaft, Herd, Herde, Los, loſen, Loſung, los, Maß, quer, Schaf, Scham, Schale, Schar, Schoß, ſelig, Star, Wage, Wagen, Ware.

5. The simple i is preferred to ie in gibſt, gibt, gib, and also in ſing, hing; but ie to i in verbs in ieren. The spelling distinguishes Fiber, *fiber*, from Fieber, *fever;* Mine, *mine*, from Miene, *expression;* Lid, *eyelid*, from Lied, *song;* Stil, *style*, from Stiel, *stem;* wider, *against*, from wieder, *again*.

6. Except in Stadt, *city*, which is thus distinguished from Statt, *place*, the combination dt is to be written only where t is inflectional, as in ladt, wandte, geſandt. Write therefore tot, not todt; Brot not Brodt nor Brod; so also Schwert, geſcheit, Ernte.

7. The endings ich and ig are to be distinguished in writing, tho pronounced alike; hence Fittich, Pfirſich, Teppich, but Honig, Eſſig, Käfig. For others consult the 'word-list,' or Duden.

8. Ph is to be used only in foreign words, as Philoſophie, Philiſter. Write therefore, Efeu, Adolf, Rudolf, Weſtfalen.

a. As to the use of initial v and f (vor but für, fließen but Vließ), consult the dictionary.

9. S, not ß, is to be written in the pronominal forms, des, wes, dies and their compounds, and also in the suffix nis.

a. Medial ſ becomes s before a suffix of derivation, but not before an inflectional t; hence, Häschen, from Haſe; Röschen, from Roſe; weislich, from weiſe; but reiſt, from reiſen.

b. In Roman type the rules prescribe that ß be represented by ſs, or else by a special digraph, ß. But non-German printers usually employ sz or ss. The objection that ss does not distinguish ſſ from ß is not important, as the sounds are identical.

10. Th is to be written only in foreign words, as Theater, Thema, Theorie. This is upon the whole the most important and characteristic rule of the official spelling. Prior to the convention of 1901, th, while discarded in favor of the simple t in a large number of words, was retained in Thal, That, thun, Thor, Thür, in which it took the place of h after the vowel as sign of length (Thal instead of Tahl etc.). This absurd and confusing anomaly has now been got rid of. Write therefore not only Tier, Teil, rat, raten, wert, Reichtum, as in the first edition of this grammar, but also Tal, Taler, Tat, tun, Träne, Tor, Tür. In the case of the word for *tea*, the new rules allow either Thee or Tee. Let the student prefer Tee. The next step, it may be hoped, will be to discard the useless th in all common nouns of whatever origin.

11. Three concurrent consonants are avoided in some cases (by dropping one), permitted in others, e. g., dennoch (i. e. denn noch), Mittag, Schiffahrt; but alliebend, Betttuch or Bettuch, Stillleben or Stilleben (when divided at the end of a line, always Bett-tuch, Still-leben).

a. Final h before the suffix heit is dropped; e. g.; Roheit. So, too, Hoheit, from Hoch; but Weichheit, from weich.

b. The plural of See, Armee, is either Seeen, Armeeen, or Seen, Armeen.

12. In foreign words k is written for a guttural c, z for the affricate; as Katalog, Klaſſe, klerikal, Zirkel, Offizier. But a good many exceptions are allowed, especially in case of French words; e. g., Coupé, Ceder or Zeder, Concept or Konzept. When in doubt whether to write c, k or z, consult Duden's dictionary.

13. The use of initial capitals is greatly restricted. Nouns used adjectively, as ein bißchen, ein paar, das iſt ſchade; adverbially, as abends, nachts, vormittags; prepositionally, as kraft, mittels, trotz, mangels, or as parts of a verbal phrase, as ſtattfinden, inſtand ſetzen, are to be written with a small initial.

a. This is the most difficult subject that the rules deal with, and they leave it in a rather unsatisfactory condition; thus one may write zu Gunſten, zu gunſten or zugunſten; zu ſtatten or zuſtatten. When in doubt consult Duden.

b. Adjectives from names of persons have a small initial when their meaning is general; e. g., die luthe'riſche Kirche, *the Lutheran church*; but die Lu'theriſche Bibelüberſetzung, *Luther's translation of the Bible.*

c. Adjectival phrases, such as im ganzen, fürs erſte, bei weitem, des weiteren, etc. have a small initial.

14. The apostrophe is to be used sparingly, for the purpose of marking the suppression of a letter usually written. But on this point the rules are not very precise, and there is much diversity of usage. Omit the apostrophe at any rate in aufs, unterm, etc., and in the genitive of proper names that do not end in a sibilant.

4. **The Roman Letters** are extensively used in scientific writings of every kind. In using the Roman letters many writers, particularly philologists, discard altogether the initial capital of nouns and thus avoid the most serious practical difficulty of German orthography.

APPENDIX II

ENGLISH-GERMAN COGNATES

1. **The Relation of English to German** is a subject which belongs rather to comparative linguistics than to German grammar, and can not be studied to the best advantage without some knowledge of Old English, Old German, Gothic, Latin, Greek, Sanskrit and general phonetics. Such knowledge is not presupposed for the users of this book. At the same time it is important that every student who approaches German by way of English, learn to recognize the familiar words of his mother tongue in their unfamiliar German forms, and acquire the habit of thinking clearly and correctly, if not profoundly, concerning the relationship of cognates. To this end, it is hoped, the following paragraphs will be found helpful. What is here given, however, is only a very elementary introduction to a large and difficult subject.

a. The most valuable of all helps for the study of German words in their relation to cognate forms in other languages is Kluge's *Etymologishes Wörterbuch der deutschen Sprache.*

2. The Indo-European Family of Languages. German and English belong to the Germanic (sometimes called Teutonic) branch of the Indo-European (also called Aryan and Indo-Germanic) family of languages. The Indo-European family has ten branches, three of them Asiatic and seven European. The Asiatic branches are the

Indic, Iranic and Armenian. The European branches are the Hellenic, Italic, Germanic, Slavic, Baltic, Keltic and Albanian.

a. Observe that these names are the names of 'branches' put forth in ancient times by the Indo-European parent-stem. Each one of them has branched again and again, thus giving rise in our day to a large number of separate languages and dialects variously related to one another.

1. When we say that the languages of the ancient Hindus, Persians, Greeks, Italians, Germans, Slavs, etc., belong to the same 'family,' this means that the remote ancestors of these various peoples once dwelt together, forming a single community and speaking a common language. Where this pro-ethnic Indo-European home was located — whether in Asia or in Europe — when the dispersion began, and how it proceeded, are still moot questions.

2. The Indo-European parent-speech is known to us in a measure through the process of restoration. By a comparison of cognate forms, as they actually appear in the derived languages, scholars have been able to reconstruct the alphabet, the grammar, and in part the vocabulary, of the parent-speech. Thus Eng. *brother*, Lat. *frāter*, Gk. φράτηρ, Sansk. *bhrātar*, point back to an I.-E. parent-form * *bhrā̆ter* (a prefixed * is used to distinguish ideal reconstructions from words historically known).

3. The Germanic Branch of the Indo-European Family. There was a time during which the ancestors of the various peoples now known to us as Germanic, having parted from the Indo-European parent-stock, still dwelt together in one community and spoke a common language. Later this Germanic stock parted into three branches, the eastern, the northern and the western. The eastern branch is known chiefly from the extinct Gothic. The northern branch gave rise to the Scandinavian languages, Danish, Swedish, Icelandic and Norwegian. The western branch gave rise to German, English, Dutch, Flemish and Frisian.

1. Where the pro-ethnic home of the Germanic race was situated is not precisely known, nor have we any historical remains of their language in this stage of its history. It is possible, however, by comparison of derived forms, to reconstruct the alphabet, the grammar,

and in large part the vocabulary, of the Germanic parent-speech. Thus Gothic *brōthar*, Old English *brōthor*, Old High German *bruodar*, Old Low German *brōthar*, and Old Icelandic *brōthir*, point back to a Germanic **brōthar*.

4. Phonetic Change. In every language the pronunciation of words is more or less subject to change. Thru a modified mode of utterance a sound is converted into another sound or ceases to be heard. In this way, given time enough, the pronunciation of a word may change to almost any imaginable extent. Thus English *ten* is the same word as Latin *decem*, only it is pronounced differently.

1. But changes of pronunciation do not take place at hap-hazard. When a particular tendency to change sets in, at a given time and in a given language, it does its work thoroly and uniformly. For example, if the tendency is to convert *d* into *t*, it will convert *d* into *t* *everywhere*, unless there is some interfering cause. Such a uniformly operating tendency to change of pronunciation is called a phonetic law. The principal causes that interfere with the uniform operation of phonetic laws are the position of the sound with respect to other sounds or to the accent, and the attracting influence — analogy — of other words.

2. Spelling is often an imperfect and deceptive representation of sounds, and is much more conservative than pronunciation. One of the most important maxims that the student of linguistics has to learn, is to think in terms of sounds, not in terms of letters.

5. The Germanic Shifting of Consonants. If, now, we compare a large number of Indo-European words, ideally restored, with their Germanic descendants, ideally restored, we shall find that the latter have undergone changes both in their vowels and in their consonants. One set of these changes, affecting the explosive consonants, or stops, is of fundamental importance in the study of English and German etymology, viz.: the Indo-European voiced aspirates *bh*, *dh*, *gh*, become, in Germanic, the voiced stops *b*, *d*, *g*; the voiced stops *b*, *d*, *g*, become voiceless, giving *p*, *t*, *k*, and the voiceless stops *p*, *t*, *k*, become spirant, giving *f*, *th*, *h*.

1. The following examples will illustrate:

Indo-European	*Greek*	*Latin*	*Germanic*	*English*
*bhrāter	φράτηρ	frater	*brōthar	brother
*dhē, *dhō	θῆναι	facio	*dōn	do
*ghans-	χήν	(h)anser	*gans	goose
*dwo	δύο	duo	*two	two
*genu	γόνυ	genu	*kniwa	knee
*pād-	πούς (ποδ-ός)	pes (ped-is)	*fōt	foot
*trejis	τρεῖς	tres	*thrijis	three
*kun-	κύων (κυ-νός)	canis	*hun-dos	hound

a. There are some exceptions to this law due to the operation of special causes. But a discussion of these, or of the changes undergone by the vowels and non-explosive consonants, would take us too far a-field for the present purpose. Consult Brugmann's *Grundriss der vergleichenden Grammatik*, vol. 1.

6. The High German Shifting of Consonants. If we examine in turn the consonantal system of High German, we shall find it to have undergone a second shifting of consonants, which differentiates High German more or less completely from all the other Germanic languages. This second shifting consists in the conversion of Germanic *d* into *t*, *t* into *s* or *ts*, *th* into *d*, and *p* into *f* or *pf*. Thus Gc. **dago-*, Eng. *day*, becomes Ger. Tag; Gc. **two*, Eng. *two*, Ger. zwei; Gc. **itan*, Eng. *eat*, Ger. eſſen; Gc. **thrijis*, Eng. *three*, Ger. drei; Gc. **diupa*, Eng. *deep*, Ger. tief.

1. The High German shifting began in the 7th century, or earlier, in South Germany, and spread thence northward with diminishing thoroness. Except the conversion of *th* into *d*, it did not affect the Low German dialects. Even in South Germany the time at which the change began, and the thoroness with which it was carried thru, vary with the different dialects.

a. The two shiftings described in this and the last section are often called, after one of their discoverers, 'Grimm's Law.' The first is know in German as die germaniſche, the second as die hochdeutſche, Lautverſchiebung.

2. German words borrowed from other languages previous to the High German shifting shared in the general change, as kurz, from Lat.

curtus, Eng. *curt;* but words borrowed after the shifting retain their original consonants, as Titel, from Lat. *titulus*, Eng. *title*. Thus the form of a word may give a clew to its provenience and the date of its adoption.

3. English, which has grown out of an amalgamation of Low German dialects carried into Britain in the 5th and 6th centuries, preserves unchanged the Germanic *d*, *t*, *th*, and *p*, which High German shifted to *t*, *s* or *ts*, *d*, and *f* or *pf*. But in some other respects German has been more conservative than English. This will appear from the following detailed statements.

7. The Labials correspond, in English and German, as follows:

1. Eng. *p* = Germ. f, ff, pf; e. g. up – auf; ripe – reif; sleep – ſchlafen; hope – hoffen; plight – Pflicht; camp – Kampf; plant – Pflanze.

a. Pf is the regular representative of original *p* in words borrowed previous to the High German shifting, as in Pflanze, from Lat. *planta;* pfropfen, from Lat. *propago*. A Ger. p corresponding to an Eng. *p* is evidence of late borrowing; e. g. Pein – pain; Pech – pitch; plump – plump.

b. A preceding ſ prevents p from shifting; e. g. spin – ſpinnen; lisp – liſpeln.

2. Eng. *b* initial = Ger. b; e. g. bear – Bär; break – brechen; bid – bieten; burst – berſten.

a. While Eng. preserves an *initial* Gc. *b* unchanged, it converts a medial Gc. *b* into *v* and a final Gc. *b* into *f*, *ff*. Hence Ger. *b* medial = Eng. *v*, and Ger. *b* final (pronounced as *p*) = Eng. *f*, *ff;* e. g. haben – have; Knabe – knave; ſterben – starve; ab – of, off; Dieb, thief; halb – half. Exceptions are due to late borrowing on the one side or on the other; e. g. Ebbe – ebb; Giebel – gable.

3. Eng. *f* initial = Ger. f (sometimes written v); e. g. foot – Fuß; feather – Feder; fly – fliegen; father – Vater; fleece – Vließ.

a. Eng. *f*, *ff*, medial or final, may either preserve an original Gc. *f* unchanged, or it may come from Gc. *b* (see above, 2, *a*). In the former case it will appear in Ger. as f, ff, in the latter as b; e. g. hoof – Huf; stiff – ſteif; wolf – Wolf; wife – Weib; life – Leib; of – ab; calf – Kalb.

b. Eng. *ft* = Ger. ft; e. g. soft – ſanft; drift – Trift; craft – Kraft.

4. Eng. *v* initial hardly occurs except in borrowed words (*vat* and *vixen* should be *fat* and *fixen*), where it corresponds to Ger. v, sometimes to f, rarely to w; e. g. verse – Vers; vane – Fahne; vetch – Wicke.

a. Eng. *v* medial usually represents Gc. *b*, in which case it corresponds to Ger. b, in a few cases to f; e. g. over – über; salve – Salbe; live – leben; devil – Teufel; oven — Ofen. Medial v = *v* is evidence of late borrowing; e. g. slave – Sklave.

8. The Dentals correspond as follows:

1. Eng. *t.* = Ger. z, tz, ſſ, s, ß; e. g. two – zwei; twig – Zweig; sit – ſitzen; cat – Katze; eat – eſſen; water – Waſſer; this – dies; that – das; lot – Los; bite – beißen; foot – Fuß.

a. Observe that z, tz, ſſ, s, and ß are five ways of writing two sounds, viz. the affricate *ts* and the voiceless sibilant *s*. The affricate is written z when initial, and also after l, n, r, but tz after a short vowel, where it takes the place of zz from Gc. *tt*. Hence, tin – Zinn; salt – Salz; mint – Münze; heart – Herz; heat – Hitze (Gc. *hittja); cat – Katze (Gc. *katta). The simple voiceless sibilant is written ſſ when medial after a short vowel, but ß when final, or medial after a long vowel. In a very few words, however, final s takes the place of ß. Hence, let – laſſen; mete – meſſen; write – reißen; shoot – ſchießen; shot – Schuß; vat – Faß; that – das; lot – Los.

b. A preceding spirant (f, ſ, ch) prevents t from shifting; e. g. craft – Kraft; oft – oft; strong – ſtreng; breast – Bruſt; might – Macht; plight – Pflicht. So, too, the combination tr does not shift; hence, true – treu; tread – treten; bitter – bitter (Gc. *bitr); otter – Otter (Gc. *ôtr). Other exceptions are due to late borrowing; e. g. temple – Tempel (from Lat. *templum*); senate – Senat (from Lat. *senatus*). Bottom – Boden presents an irregularity that has not yet been fully explained.

2. Eng. *d* = Ger. t; e. g. daughter – Tochter; day – Tag; ford – Furt; hard – hart; hold – halten; heed – hüten; side – Seite; door – Tür; do – tun; dale – Tal.

a. A preceding *n*, and sometimes a preceding *l*, prevented Gc. *d* from shifting in Ger.; hence, bind – binden; send – ſenden; wild – wild; bold – bald (but old – alt, and cold – kalt). Notice that in und – and, altho the final d is pronounced as t, and can not occur medially (as the d of wild may in wildes), we have no real case of Gc. *d* shifting to t. It comes under the general rule that all voiced final consonants have become voiceless in Ger. — Except after n and l, Ger. d corresponding to Eng. *d* is evidence of late borrowing; e. g. Dogge – dog; Decke – deck.

3. Eng. *th* = Ger. d; e. g. three – drei; thin – dünn; feather – Feder; loathe – leiden; both – beide; heath – Heide.

a. A very few exceptions to this rule, as father – Vater, weather – Wetter, are due to the fact that Eng. *th* is an interloper, taking the

place (under Norse influence) of an older *d*. The Old English ancestors of *father* and *weather* are *fæder* and *weder*. Another small group of exceptions, as thousand – tauſend, thaw – tauen, are due probably to an early assimilation of the initial stop to the voiceless consonant which usually preceded it.

4. Eng. *s* = Ger. ſ, ß, ß; e. g. soap – Seife; send – ſenden; glass – Glas; less – los; horse – Roß; breast – Bruſt.

a. But Gc. initial *s* before *w* is regularly converted in Ger. into ſch; hence, swine – Schwein; swell – ſchwellen; sweat – Schweiß. So, too, in the standard pronunciation before p and t, tho the sound is written ſ; hence, stead – Statt; steel – Stahl; spin – ſpinnen; sprout – Sproß. For Eng. *sh* see below (§ 9, 1, *a*).

9. The Gutturals correspond as follows:

1. The Gc. voiceless stop *k* either remains unchanged, being written in Eng. as *c*, *k*, *ck*, and in Ger. as k, ck; or else it becomes in Ger. the spirant ch and in Eng. the affricate *tsh* (written sometimes as *ch*, again as *tch*). Hence, Eng. *c*, *k*, *ck*, *ch*, *tch* = Ger. k, ck, ch; e. g. kiss – küſſen; cow – Kuh; bake – backen; seek – ſuchen; weak – weich; chalk – Kalk; churl – Kerl; lick – lecken; stick – Stück; watch – wachen; ditch – Teich; stretch – ſtrecken.

a. Gc. *sk* becomes Engl. *sh*. Ger. ſch; e. g. shape – ſchaffen; shoot – ſchießen; fish – Fiſch; rash – raſch.

2. The Gc. voiced stop *g* remains unchanged in Ger. when initial; when medial or final, it is usually (but not in all dialects) converted into a spirant, tho still written as g. In Eng. it is generally unchanged when initial, tho in several words it has become, after passing thru a spirant stage, a palatal semivowel (written *y*). When medial or final, it usually became first spirant, then semivocalic, and the semivowel combined with a preceding vowel to form a diphthong. Our spelling preserves it as *y* or *w*. Examples: geben – give; groß – great; gelb – yellow; geſtern – yester-; ſagen – say; Tag – day; legen – lay; Auge – eye; ſchlug – slew; Bogen – bow; Magen – maw; Vogel – fowl; Regen – rain; folgen – follow; Talg – tallow; Sorge – sorrow.

a. The Gc. combination *gj* becomes in Eng. a voiced affricate, written *dg*, in Ger. ck; e. g. edge – Ecke; ridge – Rücken; bridge – Brücke.

3. The Gc. guttural spirant *h* appears initially both in Ger. and Eng. as the breath *h* – h; e. g. heart – Herz; horn – Horn; have – haben. Medially it appears in Ger. as silent h, finally as silent h or as ch. In Eng. it has either disappeared entirely, or it appears in our

spelling as *gh*, which is either silent or labialized to an *f*-sound; e. g. ſehen – see ; zehn – ten ; nah – nigh ; hoch – high ; roh – rough ; Flucht – flight ; durch – through ; lachen – laugh ; zäh – tough.

10. The Liquids, Nasals and Semivowels l, r, m, n, ng, j, w, usually correspond in the two languages, the Ger. j being the orthographic equivalent of Eng. *y*. Observe, too, that the old labial semivowel *w* has become spirant in modern Ger. Examples: learn – lernen; old – alt ; red – rot; heart – Herz; man – Mann; stem – Stamm; lamb – Lamm (the Eng. *b* is an othographic superfluity); nut – Nuß ; find – finden; sing – ſingen ; long – lang ; year – Jahr ; yoke – Joch; wine – Wein ; wit – wiſſen.

a. A noteworthy difference is seen, however, in the fact that Ger. retains, while Eng. drops, an original *n* before a spirant in the accented syllable ; e. g. ander – other ; fünf – five ; Gans – goose ; ſanft – soft.

b. In a few words Ger. final n corresponds to Eng. final *m ;* e. g. Buſen – bosom ; Beſen – besom ; Boden – bottom.

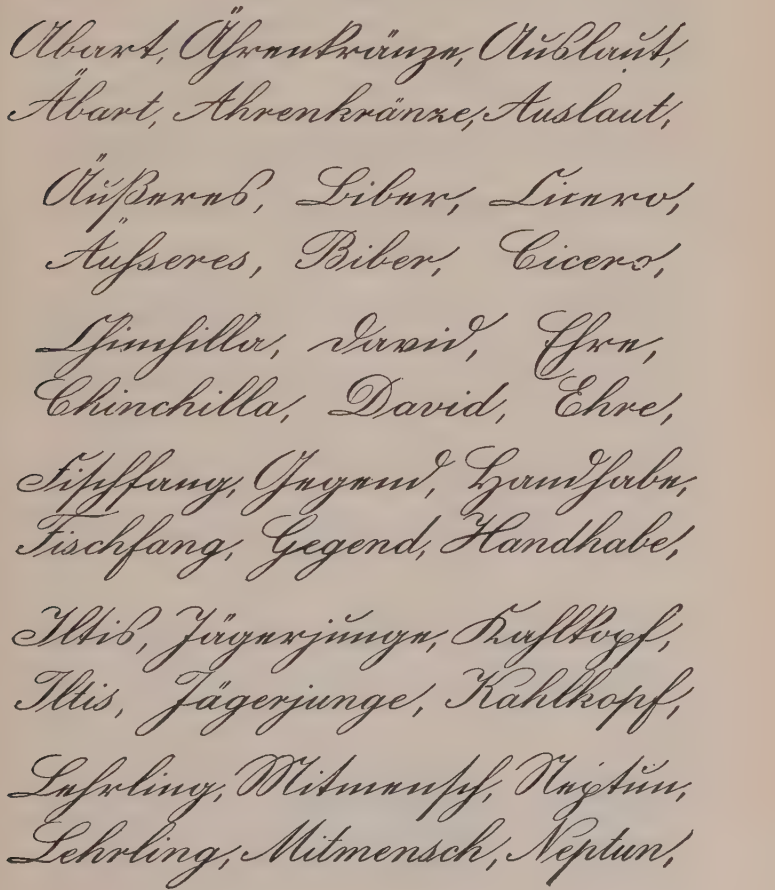
11. The Vowels and Diphthongs. The correspondence of vowels and diphthongs is a much more difficult and complicated subject than that of the consonants. To the beginner it will seem altogether chaotic. Compare, e. g. the pairs : Vater – father ; Stamm – stem ; Nacht – night ; ſchlafen – sleep; ſanft – soft ; lachen – laugh. Here German a has six different representatives in English, and conversely English *a* with its various sounds is diversely represented in German.

1. It must not be supposed, however, that the changes undergone by the vowels, in either language, are any less subject to law than those undergone by the consonants. It is only that the laws are very much more intricate, especially in Eng. with its deceptive historical spelling. There are no simple and general rules that would be of any value, and to give accurate detailed rules would carry us too far into the realm of historical phonetics. The vocalism of Eng. and Ger. can not be studied intelligently without a knowledge of Old and Middle English and of Old and Middle High German.

APPENDIX III

THE GERMAN SCRIPT

I.—SELECTED WORDS SHOWING CAPITAL AND SMALL LETTERS WITH ROMAN EQUIVALENTS



Oberon, Ölgötze, Pappe,
Oberon, Ölgötze, Pappe,

Quinquennium, Rührei,
Quinquennium, Rührei,

Sanskrit, Schriftsprache, Strasse,
Sanskrit, Schriftsprache, Strasse,

Schlüssel, Temperatur, Trotzkopf,
Schlüssel, Temperatur, Trotzkopf,

Uhu, Überbürdung, Vivisektion,
Uhu, Überbürdung, Vivisektion,

Werwolf, Xerxes, York,
Werwolf, Xerxes, York,

Zeitz, Zickzack,
Lady, Zickzack!

II.—THE LETTER ON PAGE 147 OF THIS GRAMMAR

Göttingen den 23. Juni, 1893.

Mein lieber Freund!

Endlich hast du dein langes Schweigen gebrochen; dein Brief vom 12. dieses Monats ist mir soeben in die Hände gekommen. Für die Nachrichten, die du mir aus der Heimat giebst, danke ich dir herzlich, obwohl andere Freunde mir zum Teil über dieselben Dinge geschrieben hatten. Ich schließe aus deinem Briefe, daß es dir gut geht, und daß du keine Gefahr läufst, an der Schwindsucht zu sterben. Die Beschreibung deiner Reise nach Chicago war mir höchst interessant. Was du nicht alles gesehen hast! Und in wie kurzer

Zeit! Denn es scheint, daß Du nur ein paar Tage dort geblieben bist.

Nun ich habe auch kürzlich eine kleine Reise gemacht, - eine Fußwanderung im Harzgebirge. Vielleicht wirst Du gern davon hören. Ich hatte viel von den Schönheiten dieser Gegend gehört und gelesen, und war natürlich recht neugierig darauf geworden. Vor etwa zwei Wochen sprach ich eines Tages darüber mit einem Freunde, der meine Neugierde zu teilen schien, und wir trafen die Verabredung, den berühmten Brocken zusammen in Augenschein zu nehmen.

III.—THE SONG AT THE BEGINNING OF SCHILLER'S WILHELM TELL

Es lächelt der See, er ladet zum Bade,
Der Knabe schlief ein am grünen Gestade;
Da hört er ein Klingen,
Wie Flöten so süß,
Wie Stimmen der Engel
Im Paradies.
Und wie er erwachet in seliger Lust,
Da spülen die Wasser ihm um die Brust,
Und es ruft aus den Tiefen:
Lieb Knabe bist mein!
Ich locke den Schläfer,
Ich zieh' ihn herein.

EXPLANATIONS

The following abbreviations are used in the grammar and vocabularies:

acc. accusative.
adj. adjective.
adv. adverb, or adverbial conjunction.
art. article.
aux. auxiliary.
cf. compare.
comp. comparative.
conj. conjunction.
dat. dative.
def. definite.
dem. demonstrative.
Eng. English.
Ex. Exercise.
f. feminine noun.
fem. feminine.
Fr. French.
fut. future.
G. Goethe.
Gc. Germanic.
gen. genitive.
Ger. German.
Gk. Greek.
Gr. Grimm.
I.-E. Indo-European.
impers. impersonal(ly).
imv. imperative.
indcl. indeclinable.
indef. indefinite.
ind(ic). indicative.
inf. infinitive.
inter. interrogative.
interj. interjection.
intr(ans). intransitive.
irr. irregular.
Kl. Klopstock.
L. Lessing.
Lat. Latin.
lit. literally.
Lu. Luther.
m. masculine noun.
mas(c). masculine.
mx. mixed.
n. neuter noun.
neu(t). neuter.
nom. nominative.
num. numeral.
perf. perfect.
pers. person(al).
pl(u). plural.
plup. pluperfect.
poss. possessive.
ppl. participial.
pple. participle.
pres. present.
prep. preposition.
pret. preterit.
pron. pronoun.
refl. reflexive.
rel. relative.
S. Schiller.
s. strong.
sing. singular.
sub. subordinating.
subj. subjunctive.
subst. substantive(ly).
superl. superlative.
s. v. sub voce, under the word.
tr(ans). transitive.
U. Uhland.
v. verb.
W. Wieland.
w. weak.

English words printed in heavy-faced type are cognate with the German vocabulary-word preceding. A hyphen shows that only a part of the English word is cognate with the German, or *vice versa*. Brackets enclose cognates which are obsolete, imaginary, or such as do not now translate the German word. An English word printed in Italics is *borrowed* from the same source as the corresponding German word. For the principal parts of strong verbs see § 331.

GERMAN-ENGLISH

A

Abbildung, die, *w.* picture, illustration.
Abend, der, *s.*[2] even-ing; —blatt, das, *s.*[3] evening paper; —eſſen, das, *s.*[1] evening meal, supper.
Abenteuer, das, *s.*[1] *adventure.*
aber, *conj. adv.* but, however.
abreiſen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein), depart, leave [-**rise**].
abſchließen, *v. s.* close up.
abſchreiben, *v. s.* copy.
Abweſenheit, die, *w.* absence.
ach, *interj.* oh! ah!
Adreſſe, die, *w. address.*
Advokat', der, *w.* lawyer [*advocate*].
Affe, der, *w.* **ape,** monkey.
ähnlich, *adj.* (*dat.*) similar (to).
Akt, der, *s.*[2] *act.*
all, *pron. adj.* **all,** every; **alles** (*used alone*) everything.
allein', *adj. adv.* **alone.**
allerdings', *adv.* to be sure [of **all things**].
allerlei', *adj.* (*indcl.*) **all** sorts of.
allerliebſt', *adj.* (§ 294, 1, *a*) most charming *or* delightful.
als, *sub. conj.* than, when, **as.**
alſo', *adv.* so, then, accordingly [**also**].
alt, *adj.* **old.**
Altar', der, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* ä) *altar.*
Alter, das, *s.*[1] age, old age.
Altertum, das, *s.*[3] (§ 91) antiquity.
Amerika, *n.* (§ 225, 3) *America.*
Amerika'ner, der, *s.*[1] *American.*
amerika'niſch, *adj. American.*
amüſieren (ſich), *v. w.* enjoy, (*amuse*) one's self.
an, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **on,** by, at, to.
anbieten, *v. s.* offer.
Anblick, der, *s.*[2] view, sight.
ander, *adj.* **other,** else.
anders, *adv.* other-wise, differently.
anderthalb, *adj.* one and a half (§ 118, 3, *b*).
Anfang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) beginning; **anfangs,** in the beginning, at first (§ 251, 2).
anfangen, *v. s.* begin.
Angelegenheit, die, *w.* affair.
angenehm, *adj.* pleasant, agreeable.
Angſt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Ä) *anxiety,* apprehension, fear.
ängſtigen (ſich), *v. w.* torment one's self, be anxious.
ankommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) arrive.
annehmen, *v. s.* take (on) assume, accept; ſich — (*gen.*) interest one's self in, take charge of.
Anſicht, die, *w.* view, opinion, [-**sight**]; —**karte,** souvenir card.
anſtatt, *prep.* (*gen.*) in-**stead** of.
anſtecken, *v. w.* light, ignite.
Antwort, die, *w.* **answer.**
antworten, *v. w.* (*intr.*) **answer.**
Anzahl, die (*no pl.*) number, quantity.
Anzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) suit (of clothes).
Apfel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* Ä) **apple;** —**ſchuß,** der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe) **apple-shot.**
April', der, *s.*[2] *April.*
Arbeit, die, *w.* work, labor.
arbeiten, *v. w.* work.
Arbeiter, der, *s.*[1] workingman.
ärgern (ſich), *v. w.* be vexed, angry.
arm, *adj.* poor.
Arm, der, *s.*[2] **arm.**
Armee', die, *w. army.*
Art, die, *w.* kind, sort.
artig, *adj.* good, well-behaved.
Arznei', die, *w.* medicine.

Arzt, der, *s.*² (*pl.* Ä) physician.
atmen, *v. w.* breathe.
auch, *adv.* also, too [eke].
auf, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) on, upon; *adv.* **up.**
Aufbruch, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) departure, start [**up-break**].
aufeinander, *adv.* **one** after **another.**
Aufenthalt, der, *s.*² stay, sojourn.
Aufgabe, die, *w.* exercise.
Aufgang, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) rising, rise.
aufgehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) **go up,** rise.
aufhalten (ſich), *v. s.* stay.
aufhören, *v. w.* stop, cease.
aufrichtig, *adj.* sincere, frank, candid [**upright**].
Aufſatz, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ä), essay, composition.
aufſparen, *v. w.* save up [**-spare**].
aufſtehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) get up, rise.
aufwachſen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) grow up.
Aufzug, der, *s.*² (pl. ü) act (of a play), [**up-tug**, i. e. of the curtain].
Auge, das, *mx.* **eye**; **-nblick**, der, *s.*² moment, instant; **-nkrankheit**, die, *w.* **-nleiden**, das, *s.*¹ malady of the eyes; **-nſchein**, der, *s.*² view [**eye-shine**].
Auguſt', der, *s.*² *August.*
aus, *prep.* (*dat.*) **out** of, from.
Ausdruck, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) expression.
aus'einan'derſetzen, *v. w.* explain.
Ausflug, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) excursion [**out-fly**-ing].
Ausgabe, die, *w.* edition.
ausländiſch, *adj.* foreign [**outlandish**].
ausruhen (ſich), *v. w.* rest one's self.
Ausſchuß, der, *s.*² (*pl.* -üſſe), committee.
ausſehen, *v. s.* look, appear.
außer, *prep.* (*dat.*) except, **outside** of [**outer**]; äußerſt, *adv.* exceedingly, extremely.
außerdem', *adv.* besides.
Ausſicht, die, *w.* view, prospect [**out-sight**].
Ausſprache, die, *w.* pronunciation.
ausſprechen, *v. s.* express, pronounce.
Ausſtellung, die, *w.* exposition.
auswendig, *adv.* by heart.
ausziehen, *v. s.* take off (a garment).
Autor, der, *mx. author.*

B

Bach, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) brook [**beck**].
Bad, das, *s.*³ **bath.**
Bahnhof, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ö) station, depot.
bald, *adv.* soon [**bold**].
Ball, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ä), **ball.**
Band, das, *s.* ², ³ (§ 90, 1), **band,** bond, ribbon.
bang(e), *adv.* anxiously; — machen, *with dat. of pers.* to trouble.
Bank, die, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) **bench.**
Bart, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) **beard.**
Bau, der, *s.*² (§ 275, 2, *a*), building.
bauen, *v. w.* build.
Bauer, der, *mx.* peasant [**boor**].
Baum, der, *s.*² (*pl.* äu) tree [**beam**].
beantworten, *v. w.* (*tr.*) **answer.**
bedauern, *v. w.* pity.
bedeuten, *v. w.* signify, mean; bedeutend, *ppl. adj.* significant; *as adv.* notably.
Bedienung, die, *w.* service.
Bedingung, die, *w.* condition.
Bedürfnis, das, *s.*² need, necessity.
beeilen (ſich), *v. w.* hurry.
befehlen, *v. s.* command, order.
befinden (ſich), *v. s.* **find** (one's self), 'do.'
begegnen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein, *dat.*) meet.
begehen, *v. s.* commit.
begierig, *adj.* eager.
beginnen, *v. s.* **begin.**
begleiten, *v. w.* accompany [**-lead**].
begreifen, *v. s.* comprehend [**-gripe**].

begreiflich, *adj.* comprehensible [-gripe-].
Begriff, der, *s.*[2] idea, conception [-grip].
behalten, *v. s.* keep, retain [-**hold**].
Behandlung, die, *w.* treatment [-handling].
behaupten, *v. w.* assert.
behilflich, *adj.* **help**-ful.
bei, *prep.* (*dat.*) **by**, at, with, at the house of.
beide, *pron. adj.* **both**, two (§ 148).
beina he, *adv.* almost [-**nigh**].
Beispiel, das, *s.*[2] example [-**spell**].
beißen, *v. s.* **bite**.
bekannt, *adj.* known; *as noun*, acquaintance (§ 290, 2).
Bekanntschaft, die, *w.* acquaintance.
bekennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) acknowledge, confess.
bekommen, *v. s.* get, obtain, receive.
belohnen, *v. w.* reward, repay.
bemerken, *v. w.* notice, re-**mark**.
benutzen, *v. w.* employ, use.
bequem, *adj.* comfortable [quem = **come**].
bereit, *adj.* **-ready**, prepared.
bereuen, *v. w.* regret, **-rue**.
Berg, der, *s.*[2] mountain [**barrow**].
Bericht, der, *s.*[2] report, information.
berühmt, *adj.* famous.
beschäftigt, *ppl. adj.* busied, occupied, busy.
beschreiben, *v. s.* describe [**-shrive**, *-scribe*].
Beschreibung, die, *w.* description.
besehen, *v. s.* look at, examine, [be-see].
besetzen, *v. w.* occupy, fill [**beset**].
besitzen, *v. s.* possess.
besonder, *adj.* special; **—s**, *adv.* especially, particularly.
Besorgnis, die, *s.*[2] care, anxiety, fear, solicitude [-**sorrow**-].
Besprechung, die, *w.* discussion.
bestehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185) last, endure; consist (of, aus; in, in); insist (upon, auf, *dat.*).
besteigen, *v. s.* (*tr.*) climb.
bestimmen, *v. w.* destine, intend.
bestrafen, *v. w.* punish.
Besuch, der, *s.*[2] visit [-**seek**].
besuchen, *v. w.* visit, attend [-**seek**, beseech].
beträchtlich, *adj.* considerable.
betragen, *v. s.* amount to.
Betragen, das (*no pl.*) conduct, behavior.
Betreff, der (*no pl.*) reference, regard; in betreff (*with gen.*), in regard to, in the matter of.
betreffen, *v. s.* concern; was . . . betrifft, as far as . . . is concerned, as for . . .
Bett, das, *mx.* (§ 280, 1) **bed**.
Bettler, der, *s.*[1] beggar.
Beutel, der, *s.*[1] purse.
Beweis, der, *s.*[2] proof [-**wise**].
beweisen, *v. s.* prove [-**wise**].
Bewohner, der, *s.*[1] inhabitant, occupant.
bezahlen, *v. w.* pay.
Bezug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) reference, regard.
Bibel, die, *w. bible*.
Bibliothek', die, *w.* library.
biegen, *v. s.* bend [**bow**].
bieten, *v. s.* offer, **bid**.
Bild, das, *s.*[3] picture.
bilden, *v. w.* form, fashion; cultivate, refine.
Bilderbuch, das, *s.*[3] picture-**book**.
Billet', das, *s.*[2] (*pl.* **-s** *or* **-te**) ticket.
billig, *adj.* cheap, moderate.
billigen, *v. w.* approve.
binden, *v. s.* **bind**.
binnen, *prep.* (*dat.*) within.
bis, *prep.* (*acc.*) up to, until; — an, clear to, as far as; — zu, until; *sub. conj.* until.
bißchen, ein, a little [**bit**-].
biswei'len, *adv.* at times.
Bitte, die, *w.* request [**bid**-].
bitten, *v. s.* ask, request [**bid**]; (ich) bitte, please.
blasen, *v. s.* blow [cf. **blast**].
Blatt, das, *s.*[3] leaf [**blade**].
blau, *adj.* **blue** (§ 290, 1, *a*).
bleiben, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein) remain stay [-**leave**].

Bleiſtift, der, *s.*[2] lead-pencil.
blenden, *v. w.* blind, dazzle [**blend**].
Blick, der, *s.*[2] glance, look.
Blitz, der, *s.*[2] flash, lightning.
bloß, *adj.* mere; *adv.* merely, only.
Blume, die, *w.* flower [**bloom**].
Blut, das (*no pl.*) **blood.**
blutig, *adj.* **bloody**, fierce.
Boden, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö), ground, floor [**bottom**].
böſe, *adj.* bad, ill, evil.
Bote, der, *w.* messenger.
brauchen, *v. w.* need [**brook**].
braun, *adj.* **brown.**
brechen, *v. s.* break.
breit, *adj.* **broad**, wide.
Breite, die, *w.* breadth [**bread-th**].
Brief, der, *s.*[2] letter [*brief*]; —träger, der, *s.*[1] letter-carrier, postman.
bringen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) **bring.**
Brot, das, *s.*[2] **bread.**
Brücke, die, *w.* **bridge.**
Bruder, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) **brother.**
Brunnen, der *s.*[1] well, spring, [**bourn, burn**].
Buch, das, *s.*[3] **book**; —handel, der, *s.*[1] book-trade; —handlung, die, *w.* book-store.
Bücherſchrank, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) book-case.
Bühne, die, *w.* stage (of theater).
Burg, die, *w.* castle, stronghold [**borough, bury**].
Bürger, der, *s.*[1] citizen [**burgher**].
Buſch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) **bush.**
Butter, die (*no pl.*) *butter*; —brot, das, *s.*[2] bread and butter.

C

Cent, der, *s.* (*pl.* -s) *cent.*
central', *adj. central.*
Chara'kter, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -te're) *character.*
Chor, das, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö) *choir.*
Couſi'ne, die, *w. cousin* (*fem. only*).

D

da, *adv.* **there**; *sub. conj.* as, since.
dabei', *adv.* in connection with that [**there-by**].
Dach, das, *s.*[3] roof [**thatch**].
dafür', *adv.* for that [**there-for**].
dage'gen, *adv.* against it, on the other hand.
daher', *adv.* therefore.
Dame, die, *w.* lady, *dame.*
damit', *adv.* therewith, with that, with it; *sub. conj.* in order that.
Dampfer, der, *s.*[1] steamer, (steam-)boat.
dane'ben, *adv.* besides.
Dank, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) **thanks.**
dankbar, *adj.* **thank**-ful, grateful.
Dankbarkeit, die (*no pl.*) **thank**-fulness, gratitude.
danken, *v. w.* (*dat.*) **thank.**
dann, *adv.* **then.**
daran', *adv.* **thereon**, of that.
darauf', *adv.* **thereup**-on.
darbieten, *v. s.* offer.
darin', *adv.* **therein**, in it.
darſtellen, *v. w.* represent.
darü'ber, *adv.* about that, about it [**thereover**].
darum', *adv.* therefore.
darun'ter, *adv.* under that, under it, among them [**thereunder**].
das, *art.* the; *dem.* **that**; *rel.* which, **that**; das ſind, those are.
daß, *subj. conj.* **that.**
dauern, *v. w.* last, continue [*dure.*]
davon', *adv.* of that, of it, from that, from it.
dazu', *adv.* besides, withal, for that [**thereto**].
deklamieren, *v. w. declaim*, recite.
Demokrat', der, *w. democrat.*
denken, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) **think.**
Denkmal, das, *s.*[2, 3] monument.
denn, *conj.* for; *adv.* **then.**
der, die, das, *art.* the; *dem.* that; *rel.* who, which, that.
deſto, *adv.* so much the, the (*with compar.*)
deswegen, *adv.* on that account, therefore.
deuten (auf, *acc.*) *v. w.* point (to).
deutlich, *adj.* plain, distinct; *as adv.* plainly, distinctly.

Deutſch, das (*indcl.*) German, [**Dutch**, cf. §1, 1]; deutſch, *adj.* German.
Deutſchland, *n.* (§ 225, 3) Germany.
Deze'mber, der, *s.*[1] *December.*
dicht, *adj.* close, dense, thick [**tight**].
Dichter, der, *s.*[1] poet.
Dichtung, die, *w.* poetry.
dick, *adj.* **thick.**
Dieb, der, *s.*[2] **thief.**
Diebin, die, *w.* (female) **thief.**
Diener, der, *s.*[1] servant.
Dienſt, der, *s.*[2] service; —mädchen, das, *s.*[1] servant-girl.
Dienſtag, der, *s.*[2] Tuesday.
dies, *pron.* (*dem.*) **this.**
diesmal, *adv.* this time [**-mole**].
Ding, das, *s.*[2] **thing.**
Direk'tor, der, *mx.* (§ 98), *director.*
doch, *adv.* yet, still, **tho,** surely, really.
Doktor, der, *mx.* (§ 98) *doctor;* —titel, der, *s.*[1] doctor's *title.*
Dollar, der, *s.* (*pl.* -s) dollar.
Dom, der, *s.*[2] cathedral, *dome.*
Donnerstag, der, *s.*[2] **Thursday.**
Dorf, das, *s.*[3] village [**thorp**]; —bewohner, der, *s.*[1] villager; —brunnen, der, *s.*[1] village-well.
Dörfchen, das, *s.*[1] little village.
dort, *adv.* yonder, there.
Drama, das, *mx. drama.*
drama'tiſch, *adj. dramatic.*
draußen, *adv.* outside (**dr** *for* **dar,** **außen** *from* **aus**).
drei, *num.* **three.**
dreimal, *adv.* three times [**-mole**].
drinnen, *adv.* **therein,** inside.
droben, *adv.* up **there.**
drüben, *adv.* over yonder, over there.
du, *pron.* **thou,** you (§ 301).
dumm, *adj.* stupid [**dumb**].
dunkel, *adj.* dark.
durch, *prep.* (*acc.*) **thru,** by.
Durchſchnitt, der, *s.*[2] average [**thru-cut**].
dürfen, *v. w.* (§ 189) be permitted (§§ 191, 1, 333).
Dutzend, das, *s.*[2] *dozen.*

E

eben, *adv.* **even,** just; —ſo ... **als,** just as ... as.
Ebene, die, *w.* plain [**even**].
edel, *adj.* noble [**Ethel**].
Edelmann, der, *s.*[3] (§ 238, 2, *a*) nobleman.
ehe, *sub. conj.* before.
eher, *adv.* sooner, rather.
Ehre, *f. w.* honor.
ehren, *v. w.* honor.
ehrlich, *adj.* honorable.
Ei, das, *s.*[3] **egg.**
Eifer, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) zeal.
eigen, *adj.* **own.**
ei'gentlich, *adj.* real, actual; *as adv.* really, properly, anyway.
Eigentum, das, *s.*[3] property, [**owndom**].
Eigentümer, der, *s.*[1] **own-er.**
Eile, die (*no pl.*) haste.
eilen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein) hurry.
ein, *art.* a, **an**; *num.* **one**; *pron.* cf. § 116, 1, § 149.
einan'der, *pron.* (*indcl.*) each **other, one another.**
Eindruck, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) impression.
einfach, *adj.* simple.
einfallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) come into one's head, occur to (*dat. of pers.*).
Einfluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) influence.
einige, *pron. adj.* some.
Einkauf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu) purchase; Einkäufe machen, to shop.
einladen, *v. s.* invite.
Einladung, die, *w.* invitation.
einlaſſen, *v. s. with* ſich, enter upon, go into (auf, *acc.*).
ein'mal, *adv.* once; einmal', **one** time (*indef.*), even, just, pray.
einſchränken, *v. w.* limit.
Einſicht, die, *w.* **insight.**
einſt, *adv.* **once,** one day, some time.
Eintritt, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) admission, entrance [**-tread**]; —billet, das, *s.*[2] ticket of admission.
einzig, *adj.* single, only [**one-ly**]; *as adv.* solely.

Eiſen, das, *s.*[1] **iron**; —**bahn**, die, *w.* railway, railroad [**iron**-way].
elend, *adj.* wretched, miserable.
Eltern, *pl. only*, parents [**elders**].
empfehlen, *v. s.* recommend.
empfinden, *v. s.* feel, be sensible of.
Ende, das, *mx.* (*gen.* -s) **end.**
endlich, *adv.* finally, at last, [**end**-].
eng, *adj.* narrow.
Engländer, der, *s.*[1] Englishman.
engliſch, *adj.* **English.**
Entdeckung, die, *w.* discovery, [**-thatch**-].
entfernt, *adv.* distant, far away, (from fern, **far**).
entgegen, *prep.* (*dat., follows governed word*) toward, in the direction of.
entgegenkommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) come toward, come to meet.
entgehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) (*dat.*) escape.
enthalten, *v. s.* contain [**-hold**].
entſcheiden, *v. s.* decide.
entſchließen (ſich), *v. s.* resolve, determine.
Enttäuſchung, die, *w.* disappointment.
entwerfen, *v. s.* outline, plan.
er, *pron.* he.
Erde, die, *w.* **earth.**
erfahren, *v. s.* ascertain, learn, [**-fare**].
Erfahrung, die, *w.* experience [**-faring**].
erfinden, *v. s.* invent [**find**].
Erfindung, die, *w.* invention [**-finding**].
erfüllen, *v. w.* ful-**fill.**
ergötzen (ſich), *v. w.* delight in, take pleasure in (an, *dat.*)
erhalten, *v. s.* keep, preserve; receive [**-hold**].
erinnern, *v. w.* remind; — ſich (*with gen.*) remember.
erkälten (ſich) *v. w.* take **cold.**
Erkältung, die, *w.* **cold.**
erklären, *v. w.* explain, make *clear.*
Erklärung, die, *w.* explanation.
erkranken, *v. w.* sicken, be taken sick.
erlauben, *v. w.* allow, permit.
erlügen, *v. s.* invent for deception [**-lie**].
ermüden, *v. w.* tire, fatigue.
ernennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) appoint, **-name.**
erreichen, *v. w.* **-reach,** come to.
erſchöpft, *ppl. adj.* exhausted, worn-out.
erſt, *adj.* first [**erst**]; *as adv.* first, not until.
Erſtaunen, das (*no pl.*) astonishment.
erſtaunt, *ppl. adj.* astonished.
erwachen, *v. w.* (*intr.*) a-**wake.**
erwarten, *v. w.* expect [**-ward**].
erwecken, *v. w.* (*tr.*) a-**wake.**
erwidern, *v. w.* reply [wider = **with**].
erzählen, *v. w.* relate, **-tell.**
Erzählung, die, *w.* story, narrative, **-tale.**
erziehen, *v. s.* bring up, educate.
es, *pron.* it, there (§ 303).
eſſen, *v. s.* **eat.**
etlich, *pron. adj.* some.
etwa, *adv.* about, approximately.
etwas, *pron.* (*indef.*) something, anything; *as adv.* somewhat.
euer, *pron.* (*poss.*) **your.**
Euro'pa, *n.* (§ 225, 3) *Europe.*
ewig, *adj.* everlasting, eternal [**aye**-].
Exa'men, das (*pl.* -a'mina) *examination.*

F

fähig, *adj.* capable (of = *gen.*) fit, suited (for, zu).
fahren, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) travel, go [**fare**].
Fahrrad, das, *s.*[3] bicycle [**fare-**; Rad = wheel].
Fahrt, die, *w.* journey, trip.
Fall, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) case [**fall**].
fallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) **fall.**
falſch, *adj. false*, wrong; —er Name, assumed name.

Fami'lie, die, *w. family;* —nbild, das, *s.*[3] family portrait; –nleben, das, *s.*[1] family life.
faſſen, *v. w.* grasp, seize.
faſt, *adv.* almost, nearly.
faul, *adj.* lazy, idle [**foul**].
Faulheit, die (*no pl.*) laziness, idleness.
Februar, der, *s.*[2] *February.*
fechten, *v. s.* **fight.**
Feder, die, *w.* pen, **feather.**
fehlen, *v. w. fail,* be lacking, missing; was fehlt (*with dat. of pers.*) what is the matter (with)?
Fehler, der, *s.*[1] mistake [*fail-*].
feiern, *v. w.* celebrate.
Feiertag, der, *s.*[2] holiday.
Feind, der, *s.*[2] enemy [**fiend**].
feind, *adj.* hostile (to = *dat.*).
Feld, das, *s.*[3] **field;** —herr, der, *w.* (§ 94, 1) commander-in-chief.
Felſen, der, *s.*[1] (§ 279, 2, *a*) rock.
Fenſter, das, *s.*[1] window.
Ferien, die (*pl. only*) vacation.
Ferne, die, *w.* distance [**far-**].
fertig, *adj.* ready, finished; — mit, thru with.
Fertigkeit, die, *w.* skill, proficiency.
feſt, firm, strong; *as adv.* firmly, fast.
Feſt, das, *s.*[2] festival, **feast.**
Feuer, das, *s.*[1] **fire.**
Fieber, das, *s.*[1] *fever.*
finden, *v. s.* **find;** — ſich, find one's self, be.
Finger, der, *s.*[1] **finger.**
finſter, *adj.* dark.
Fleiſch, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) meat, flesh.
Fleiß, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) industry.
fleißig, *adj.* industrious.
fließen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein), flow [to fleet].
flüchtig, *adj.* hasty, cursory; *as adv.* hastily, hurriedly [**flight-y**].
Flügel, der, *s.*[1] wing.
Fluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe) river.
Folge, die, *w.* consequence, result.
folgen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein, *dat.*) follow.
fort, *adv.* away, **forth.**
fortan', *adv.* hence-**forth,** hereafter.
fortfahren, *v. s.* (*intr. aux.* haben) continue.
fortſetzen, *v. w.* (*tr.*) continue.
Foſſil', das, *mx.* (*pl.* -ien) *fossil.*
Frage, die, *w.* question.
fragen, *v. w.* ask, inquire.
franzöſiſch, *adj.* French.
Frau, die, *w.* wife, lady, woman, Mrs.
Fräulein, das, *s.*[1] young lady, Miss.
frei, *adj.* free.
freigebig, *adj.* generous, liberal, [**free-giv-ing**].
Freiheit, die, *w.* **free-dom,** liberty.
freilich, *adv.* to be sure [**freely**].
Freitag, der, *s.*[2] **Friday.**
fremd, *adj.* strange, foreign; *as noun,* stranger (§ 290, 2).
Fremde, die, *w.* (*no pl.*) foreign land; in der —, abroad.
Freude, die, *w.* joy, pleasure.
freuen, *v. w.* rejoice; es freut mich, I am glad.
Freund, der, *s.*[2] **friend;** —in, die, *w.* friend, lady friend.
freundlich, *adj.* **friendly,** kind.
Freundſchaft, die, *w.* **friendship.**
Friede, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns) peace.
friſch, *adj.* **fresh.**
froh, *adj.* happy.
Frucht, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) *fruit.*
fruchtbar, *adj.* fertile, *fruit*-ful.
früh, *adj.* early; —er, formerly.
Frühling, der, *s.*[2] spring.
Frühſtück, das, *s.*[2] breakfast [-stick].
fühlen, *v. w.* **feel.**
führen, *v. w.* lead, conduct, carry on (as conversation, war, etc.)
Fülle, *f. w.* (*no pl.*) abundance, plenty [**full-ness**].
fünf, *num.* **five.**
für, *prep.* (*acc.*) **for.**
Furcht, die (*no pl.*) fear [**fright**].
fürchten, *v. w.* fear.
furchtſam, *adj.* timid [**fright-some**].

Fuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üße) **foot;** —**ball,** der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) **football;** —**wanderung,** die, *w.* pedestrian tour, tramp.

G

Gabel, die, *w.* fork.
Gallerie', die, *w. gallery.*
ganz, *adj.* all, whole (§ 109, 3); *adv.* quite, entirely; im —en, on the whole; — und gar, altogether, utterly.
gar, *adv.* quite, altogether; — nicht, not at all.
Garten, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä) **garden** [**yard**]; —**tor,** das, *s.*[2] **garden**-gate [-**door**].
Gärtner, der, *s.*[1] **gardener.**
Gast, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) **guest;** —**haus,** das, *s.*[3] inn.
Gebäude, das, *s.*[1] building.
geben, *v. s.* **give;** es gibt (*with acc.* § 340), there is, there are.
Gebirge, das, *s.*[1] mountains.
geboren, *pple.* -**born** (*from* gebären).
gebrauchen, *v. w.* use.
Geburt, die, *w.* -**birth;** —**shaus,** das, *s.*[3] **birth**-place; —**stag,** der, *s.*[2] **birthday.**
Gebüsch, das, *s.*[2] **bush**-es, thicket.
Gedanke, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns) thought, idea.
gedenken, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) intend, purpose.
Gedicht, das, *s.*[2] poem.
Geduld, die (*no plu.*) patience.
Gefahr, die, *w.* danger, risk [-**fear**].
gefährlich, *adj.* dangerous, perilous.
gefallen, *v. s.* (*dat.*) please.
Gefallen, der, *mx.* (§279, 2) favor.
gefaßt, *ppl. adj.* composed, calm.
Gefühl, das, *s.*[2] **feel**-ing.
gegen, *prep.* (*acc.*) against, towards, to [**a-gain**].
Gegend, die, *w.* region, country.
Gegensatz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) contrast.
Gegenteil, das, *s.*[2] (§ 236, 3) contrary, reverse; im —, on the contrary.
gegenüber, *prep.* (*dat., usually follows governed word*) opposite.
Gegner, der, *s.*[1] opponent, adversary.
gehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein) go; das geht nicht, that won't do.
gehören, *v. w.* (*dat.*) belong to.
Geist, der, *s.*[3] intelligence, spirit, ghost.
geläufig, *adj.* fluent, ready; *as adv.* fluently; (*from* laufen).
gelb, *adj.* **yellow.**
Geld, das, *s.*[3] money [**yield.**]
Gelegenheit, die, *w.* opportunity.
gelehrt, *ppl. adj.* learned; *as noun,* scholar (§ 290, 2).
gelingen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein, *impers. with dat.*) succeed, be successful; es gelingt mir, I succeed.
gelten, *v. s.* be at stake, involve, be a question *or* matter of [**yield**].
gemein, *adj.* common, ordinary [-**mean**].
Gemüt, das, *s.*[3] feeling, soul (*from* Mut, **mood**).
genau, *adj.* exact, accurate, careful.
geneigt, *ppl. adj.* inclined.
genießen, *v. s.* enjoy.
genug, *adj.* (*indcl., usually follows noun*) **enough.**
genügen, *v. w.* be **enough,** suffice.
gerade, *adv.* exactly, just [-**rather**].
gern, *adv.* gladly, willingly; ich möchte gern, I should like; — haben, like, be fond of; — lesen, like to read (cf. § 375, 1).
Gerücht, das, *s.*[2] rumor.
Geschäft, das, *s.*[2] business (from schaffen, to do).
geschehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein, *3d pers. only*) happen: *used as passive of* machen, tun, be done.
Geschenk, das, *s.*[2] present (from schenken).
Geschichte, die, *w.* story, history (*from* geschehen).
geschichtlich, *adj.* historical.
geschickt, *adj.* skillful

Geſchmack, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä, *rare*) taste [-**smack**].
Geſellſchaft, die, *w.* society, company.
Geſicht, das, *s.*[3] (§ 276, *a*) face, countenance, -**sight**.
Geſpenſt, das, *s.*[3] ghost, spook.
Geſpräch, das, *s.*[2] conversation (from ſprechen).
geſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185) confess.
geſtern, *adv.* **yester**-day.
geſund, *adj.* well, healthy [-**sound**].
Geſundheit, die, *w.* health [**sound**-**hood**].
gewähren, *v. w.* afford, grant.
gewaltig, *adj.* powerful.
gewinnen, *v. s.* gain, -**win**.
gewiß, *adj.* certain; *adv.* certainly; to be sure [-**wit**].
Gewitter, das, *s.*[1] thunder-storm, [-**weather**].
gewöhnen (ſich), *v. w.* accustom one's self (to, an, *acc.*)
gewöhnlich, *adj.* usual, ordinary; *adv.* usually.
gewohnt, *ppl. adj.* accustomed.
gießen, *v. s.* pour.
Gipfel, der, *s.*[1] peak, summit.
glänzen, *v. w.* glitter, glisten [**glance**].
Glas, das, *s.*[3] **glass**.
Glaube, der, *mx.* (gen. -ns) belief, faith [be-**lief**].
glauben, *v. w.* be-**lieve** (§ 257, 1, *a*).
gleich, *adj.* -**like**, a-**like**; *adv.* directly.
gleich'falls, *adv.* **like**-wise.
gleichviel', *adv.* no matter, just the same.
Glocke, die, *w.* bell [**clock**].
Glück, das (*no pl.*) -**luck**, fortune; zum —, fortunately.
glücklich, *adj.* -**lucky**, fortunate, happy.
glücklicherweiſe, *adv.* fortunately [**lucky**-**wise**].
gnädig, *adj.* gracious.
golden, *adj.* **golden**, gold.
Goldſtück, das, *s.*[2] **gold**-piece [-**stick**].
graben, *v. s.* dig [**grave**].
Grad, der, *s.*[2] degree, *grade*.
Graf, der, *w.* count [-**grave** in margrave].
Grammat'ik, die, *w. grammar*.
Gras, das, *s.*[3] **grass**.
grau, *adj.* **gray**.
greifen, *v. s.* grasp, seize, **grip**(**e**).
griechiſch, *adj. Greek*.
groß, *adj.* **great**, large; (*of stature*) tall.
Großmutter, die, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ü) grandmother.
grün, *adj.* **green**.
Grund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) reason, **ground**, foundation.
gründlich, *adj.* thoro [**ground**-].
Gruß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üße) **greet**-ing.
gut, *adj.* **good**; *adv.* well.
Güte (*no pl.*) **good**-ness, kindness.
Gymnaſium, das, *mx. gymnasium*.

H

Haar, das, *s.*[2] **hair**.
haben, *v. w. irr.* (§ 171) **have**.
Hafen, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä) harbor [**haven**].
halb, *adj.* **half** (§ 109, 3).
Hals, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) neck, throat [**halse**].
halten, *v. s.* **hold**, consider (§ 265, 3, *c*); — von, think (much, little) of; Wort —, keep (one's) word.
Hand, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) **hand**.
Handel, der, *s.*[1] (*no pl.*) trade, commerce [**handle**].
handeln, *v. w.* act [**handle**]; es handelt ſich um, it is a question of.
Handelsfreiheit, die, *w.* free-trade.
Handlung, die, *w.* shop, store [**handling**].
Handſchuh, der, *s.*[2] glove [**hand**-**shoe**].
Hängematte, die, *w.* hammock.
hangen, *v. s.* **hang**.
häufig, *adj.* frequent; *adv.* often [**heap**-].
Haupt, das, *s.*[3] **head** (cf. § 276).
hauptſächlich, *adv.* chiefly.

Hauptſtadt, die, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) capital [**head-stead,** *i. e.* chief city].
Haus, das, *s.*³ **house**; —herr, der, *w.* —wirt, der, *s.*² man-of-the-house, landlord; —lehrerin, die, *w.* governess; nach —e, home (homeward); zu —e, at home.
Häuschen, little house, cottage.
heftig, *adj.* violent.
hegen, *v. w.* cherish [**hedge**].
heilig, *adj.* **holy,** sacred.
Heimat, die, *w.* home, native place *or* country [**home-**].
Heirat, die, *w.* marriage.
heiß, *adj.* **hot.**
heißen, *v. s.* be called [be **hight**].
heiter, *adj.* cheerful.
Held, der, *w.* hero.
Heldin, die, *w.* heroine.
helfen, *v. s.* (*dat.*) **help**; das hilft nichts, that avails nothing, does no good.
hell, *adj.* bright, clear, light.
her, *adv.* hither, along.
Herbſt, der, *s.*² autumn [**harvest**].
herein′, *adv.* in hither, in here (§210, 2).
hereinbrechen, *v. s.* (*intr.*, *aux.* ſein) set in.
Herr, der, *w.* (§ 94, 1) gentleman, sir, Mr.
herrlich, *adj.* glorious, splendid.
herumgehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein) walk about.
Herz, das, *mx.* (§ 97, 2, *a*), **heart**; —ensfreund, der, bosom-friend.
herzlich, *adj.* **heart-y,** sincere, cordial.
heulen, *v. w.* **howl.**
heute, *adv.* to-day; heutzutage, nowadays.
heutig, *adj.* of to-day, to-day's.
Hexe, die, *w.* witch [**hag**].
hier, *adv.* **here.**
Hilfe, die (*no pl.*) **help.**
Himmel, der, *s.*¹ heaven, sky.
hinaus′, *adv.* **out** thither, out there (§ 210, 2).
hinausgehen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) **go out** (there).
hindern, *v. w.* **hinder,** prevent.
Hindernis, das, *s.*² hindrance, difficulty [**hinder-ness**].
Hinſicht, die, *w.* respect [**-sight**].
hinter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **behind.**
Hintergrund, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) **background.**
Hinterwäldler, der, *s.*¹ backwoodsman.
hinüberfliehen *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) **flee over.**
hinübergehen, *v.s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein) **go over.**
hiſto′riſch, *adj. historical.*
hoch, *adj.* **high** (§ 109, 1).
höchſtens, *adv.* at the most.
Hof, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ö) court; —leben, das, *s.*¹ court-life.
hoffen, *v. w.* **hope.**
Hoffnung, die, *w.* hope [**hoping**].
höflich, *adj.* polite.
Höflichkeit, die, *w.* politeness.
Höhe, die, *w.* **height.**
holen, *v. w.* fetch, get [**hale**].
Holz, das, *s.*³ wood, forest [**holt**].
Honorar′, das, *s.*² fee.
hören, *v. w.* **hear.**
hübſch, *adj.* pretty.
Hügel, der, *s.*¹ **hill.**
Hund, der, *s.*² dog [**hound**].
hundert, *num.* **hundred.**
hungrig, *adj.* **hungry.**
Hut, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) hat [**hood**].
hüten (ſich), *v. w.* be on one's guard [**heed**].

I

ich, *pron.* **I.**
ihr, *poss. pron.* her, their; Ihr, your.
immer, *adv.* always.
in, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **in,** into.
indem′, *sub. conj.* while, since.
indeſſen, *adv.* meanwhile, however.
Inhalt, der, *s.*² (*no pl.*) contents [**in-hold**].
Inſel, die, *w.* island.
intereſſant′, *adj. interesting.*
Intereſſe, das, *mx.* (*gen.* -s) *interest.*

irgend, *pron.* (*indcl.*) any, some (§ 152).
Irrtum, der, *s.*[3] error [**err-dom**].
italie'nisch, *adj. Italian.*

J

ja, *adv.* yes; of course, you know (§ 380, 1, *d*).
Jäger, der, *s.*[1] hunter.
Jahr, das, *s.*[2] year; —**esfest,** das, *s.*[2] annual festival; —**estag,** der, *s.*[2] anniversary; —**eszeit,** die, *w.* season.
Jahrhun'dert, das, *s.*[2] century.
Januar, der, *s.*[2] *January.*
jed-, *pron.* every, each.
jedenfalls, *adv.* at any rate.
jedermann, *pron.* (*indcl.*) every one (§ 153).
jedoch, *adv.* nevertheless, yet.
jemand, *pron. indef.* some one, any one (§ 154).
jen-, *dem. pron.* that [**yon**].
jetzt, *adv.* now [**yet**].
jetzig, *adj.* present (from **jetzt**).
Jugend, die (*no pl.*) youth.
Ju'li, der, *s. July.*
jung, *adj.* **young.**
Junge, der, *w.* boy, lad.
Jungfrau, die, *w.* maid.
Jüngling, der, *s.*[2] youth, **young** man.
Ju'ni, der, *s. June.*

K

Kaffee, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) *coffee.*
Kahn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) boat, row-boat.
Kaiser, der, *s.*[1] emperor [*Cæsar*].
kalt, *adj.* **cold.**
Kälte, die, *w.* (*no pl.*) **cold.**
Kamerad', der, *w. comrade,* companion.
Kandidat', der, *w. candidate.*
Kanzel, die, *w.* pulpit, *chancel.*
Kapital', das, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* -ien) *capital,* principal.
Kapitän', der, *s.*[2] *captain.*
Karte, die, *w. card.*
Kasten, der, *s.*[1] box.
Kathedra'le, die, *w. cathedral;* **Kathedral'kirche,** die, *w.* cathedral-**church.**
Kauf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu) purchase, [**chap, cheap**].
kaufen, *v. w.* buy.
Kaufmann, der, *s.*[3] (§ 238, 2, *a*) merchant [**chap-man**].
kaum, *adv.* scarcely, hardly.
kein, *adj.* no, not a, none (§ 155).
keineswegs, *adv.* by no means, in no **way.**
kennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) know, be acquainted with [**ken**].
Kenntnis, die, *s.*[2] knowledge.
Kerl, der, *s.*[2] fellow [**churl**].
Kerlchen, das, *s.*[1] little fellow.
Kind, das, *s.*[3] child.
Kindheit, die (*no pl.*) child-**hood.**
Kirche, die, *w.* **church** [**kirk**].
Kissen, das, *s.*[1] *cushion.*
klar, *adj. clear.*
Klasse, die, *w. class.*
Klavier', das, *s.*[2] piano [*clavier*]; —**stunde,** die, *w.* piano-lesson.
Kleid, das, *s.*[3] garment, dress ; *pl.* clothes [**cloth**].
Kleidung, die, *w.* **clothing,** apparel; —**stück,** das, *s.*[2] article of clothing.
klein, *adj.* small.
Kleinigkeit, die, *w.* trifle, small matter.
Klima, das, *s.* (*pl.* -ta or -te) *climate.*
klimmen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein) **climb.**
klingen, *v. s.* sound [**clink**].
klopfen, *v. w.* knock.
Kloster, das, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö) convent, *cloister.*
klug, *adj.* clever, ingenious.
Klugheit, die (*no pl.*) prudence, cleverness, shrewdness.
Knabe, der, *w.* boy [**knave**]; —**nschule,** die, *w.* boys'-*school.*
Koffer, der, *s.*[1] trunk [*coffer*].
kommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein) **come.**
Komponist', der, *w. composer.*
König, der, *s.*[2] **king.**
Königin, die, *w.* queen.
königlich, *adj.* royal, **kingly.**
können, *v. w.* (§ 189) **can,** be able.

Konzert', das, *s.*[2] *concert.*
Kopf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö) head [**cup**].
Kopfſchmerz, der, *mx.* headache [-smart].
Kopfweh, das (*no pl.*) headache [-woe].
Koſt, die, *w.* fare, board [*cost*].
koſten, *v. w. cost.*
Koſten, die (*pl. only*) *cost(s)*, expense.
Kraft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) force, strength [**craft**].
kräftig, *adj.* strong, pithy [**crafty**].
kraftvoll, *adj.* powerful [**craft-full**].
krank, *adj.* sick, ill.
Krankheit, die, *w.* sickness, illness, disease; —ſfall, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) case of sickness.
Krieg, der, *s.*[2] war; —ſchiff, das, *s.*[2] war-**ship**, man-of-war.
Krone, die, *w. crown.*
Kronprinz, der, *w. crown-prince.*
Küche, die, *w. kitch*-en.
kühl, *adj.* **cool.**
kümmern, *v. w.* trouble, concern; — ſich, care (about = um).
künftig, *adj.* coming, next, future.
Kunſt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) art; —geſchmack, der, *s.*[2] artistic taste.
kurieren, *v. w. cure*, treat.
Kurſus, der (*pl.* Kurſus *or* Kurſe), *course.*
kurz, *adj.* short [*curt*]; *as adv.* (*of time*) shortly.
kürzlich, *adv.* lately, recently.
Kutſche, die, *w. coach.*

L

lachen, *v. w.* **laugh.**
Laden, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä) store, shop.
Lage, die, *w.* situation, location, position [**lay**].
Land, das, *s.*[2,3] (p. 49, n. 7) **land**, country; auf dem —e, in the country.
Landsmann, der, *s.*[3] (*pl.* -leute, *but see* § 238, 2, *a*) countryman, fellow-countryman.
lang, *adj.* **long**; ſeit —em, for a long time (past).
lange, *adv.* **long**, for a long time.
Länge, die, *w.* length [**leng-th**].
längs, *prep.* (*gen.*) along.
langſam, *adj.* slow; *as adv.* slowly [**long-some**].
längſt, *adv.* long since.
langweilig, *adj.* dull, tedious [**long-while-y**].
laſſen, *v. s.* **let**, cause; (etwas) tun —, have (something) done (§ 366, 1, *a*).
Latein', das, *s.* (§ 290, 1), *Latin.*
latei'niſch, *adj.* Latin.
laufen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) run [**leap**].
lauten, *v. w.* purport, run.
lauter, *adv.* exclusively, none but.
leben, *v. w.* **live.**
Leben, das, *s.*[1] life [**live**].
lebhaft, *adj.* **live-ly**; *as adv.* keenly.
legen, *v. w.* **lay.**
Lehnſtuhl, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) easy-chair [**lean-stool**].
Lehrbuch, das, *s.*[3] text-**book.**
Lehrer, der, *s.*[1] (man) teacher; —in, die, *w.* woman teacher.
lehrreich, *adj.* instructive [**-rich**].
leicht, *adj.* **light**, easy; *as adv.* easily, readily.
leid, *adj.* disagreable; es tut mir —, I am sorry [**loath**].
leiden, *v. s.* suffer [**loathe**].
Leiden, das, *s.*[1] suffering, trouble.
leider, *adv.* unfortunately, alas.
leiſe, *adv.* softly, in low tone.
Lektü're, die, *w.* text for reading [*lecture*].
lernen, *v. w.* **learn.**
Leſebuch, das, *s.*[3] reading-**book**, reader.
leſen, *v. s.* read.
Leſer, der, *s.*[1] reader.
letzt, *adj.* **last.**
Leute, die (*pl. only*) people.
Licht, das, *s.*[3] (§ 276, *a*) **light.**
lieb, *adj.* dear [**lief**]; — haben, to like, be fond of [**have lief**].
Liebe, die, *w.* **love**; —ſcene, die, love-scene; —ſbrief, der, *s.*[2] love-letter.
lieben, *v. w.* **love.**

liebenswürdig, *adj.* lovely [**love-worthy**].
lieber, *adv.* rather, preferably [**liefer**].
liebgewinnen, *v. s.* grow fond of.
lieblich, *adj.* **lovely,** sweet(-scented).
Lied, das, *s.*[3] song.
liegen, *v. s.* **lie,** be situated.
link, *adj.* left.
Liſte, die, *w. list.*
Literatur', die, *w. literature.*
loben, *v. w.* praise [**love**].
Loch, das, *s.*[3] hole [**lock**].
Löffel, der, *s.*[1] spoon [to **lap**].
lohnen (ſich), *v. w.* be worth while.
los, *adj.* rid of, free from, **loose, -less.**
los'brechen, *v. s.* (*intr., aux.* ſein) **break loose,** burst.
Luft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) air, breeze; —ſchloß, das, *s.*[3] castle-in-the-air.
lügen, *v. s.* **lie,** tell a falsehood.
Luſt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) desire [**lust**].
luſtig, *adj.* jolly [**lusty**].
Luſtſpiel, das, *s.*[2] comedy.

M

machen, *v. w.* **make;** ſich auf den Weg —, set out, start.
Macht, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) power, **might.**
Mädchen, das, *s.*[1] girl, maiden [**maid-kin**]; —ſchule, die, girls'-school.
Magd, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) **maid,** maid-servant.
Mai, der, *s.*[2] *May.*
Mal, das, *s.*[2,3] (§ 276, *a*), time, [**mole**]; ein'mal, once; ein paarmal, a few times.
Maler, der, *s.*[1] painter, artist.
Malerei', die, *w.* painting.
man, *pron. indef.* one, they, people (§ 156) [**man**].
manch, *pron. adj.* **many, many** a; —mal, many a time, often.
Mann, der, *s.*[3] **man.**
mannigfaltig, *adj.* **manifold.**
Mantel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä) *mantle,* cloak.
Mark, die, *w.* **mark.**
Mathematik', die, *w.* (*no pl.*) *mathematics.*
Mauer, die, *w.* wall [*mure*].
Medizin', die, *w.* (*no pl.*) *medicine.*
Meer, das, *s.*[2] sea [**mere**].
mehr, *adj.* more; *as adv.* **more;** nicht —, no longer.
mehrere, *pron. adj.* several (§ 158) [**more-**].
Mehrheit, die, *w.* majority [**more-hood,** *i.e.* more-ness].
mehrmals, *adv.* several times, frequently.
Meile, die, *w. mile.*
meilenweit, *adv.* for miles.
mein, *pron. poss. my,* **mine.**
meinen, *v. w.* **mean.**
meiſtens, *adv.* **most-ly.**
Meiſter, der, *s.*[1] *master.*
Menge, die, *w.* mass, multitude, great number [**many**].
Menſch, der, *w.* man, mankind (from Mann).
menſchlich, *adj.* human.
merken, *v. w.* notice, **mark.**
merkwürdig, *adj.* remarkable [**mark-worthy**].
Meſſe, die, *w.* fair, *mass.*
Meſſer, das, *s.*[1] knife [**meat**].
Metho'de, die, *w. method.*
Miete, die, *w.* hire, rent [**meed**].
mild, *adj.* **mild,** gentle.
mindeſtens, *adv.* at least.
Mineral', das, *mx.* (*pl.* -ien) *mineral.*
Minu'te, die, *w. minute.*
mit, *prep.* (*dat.*) with [**mid** in **mid-wife**]; *adv.* along.
Mittag, der, *s.*[2] **mid-day,** noon.
mitteilen, *v. w.* impart, tell, inform of [**-deal**].
mittel, *adj.* **middle.**
Mittelalter, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) **Middle** Ages.
Mittelpunkt, der, *s.*[2] central *point,* center.
Mittelweg, der, *s.*[2] **middle way** *or* course.

Mittwoch, der, *s.*[2] Wednesday [mid-week].
Mode, die, *w.* fashion, *mode.*
mögen, *v. w.* (§ 189) **may,** wish, like (§ 191, 3).
möglich, *adj.* possible (*from* mögen).
Monat, der, *s.*[2] **month**; —ſchrift, die, *w.* **month**-ly (journal *or* magazine).
Mönch, der, *s.*[2] *monk.*
Mond, der, *s.*[2] **moon.**
mondhell, *adj.* **moon**-light.
Montag, der, *s.*[2] **Monday.**
Morgen, der, *s.*[1] **morn**-ing; —blatt, das, *s.*[3] morning paper; —luft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) morning air *or* breeze.
morgen, *adv.* to-**morrow** (= Morgen, **morn**).
müde, *adj.* tired.
Mühe, die, *w.* pains, trouble; der — (*gen.*) wert, worth while.
Mund, der, *s.*[2, 3] (*pl. rare*) **mouth.**
Muſe'um, das, *mx.* (*pl.* -ſe'en) *museum.*
Muſik', die, *w. music.*
müſſen, *v. w.* (§ 189) **must,** be obliged, be compelled, have to.
Mut, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) courage, mood.
Mutter, die, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ü) **mother**; —ſprache, die, *w.* mother-tongue, native language.

N

nach, *prep.* (*dat.*) after, to, toward, according to [**nigh**].
Nachbar, der, *mx.* **neighbor.**
nachdem', *sub. conj.* after.
nachher', *adv.* afterward, subsequently.
Nachmittag, der, *s.*[2] afternoon [-**mid-day**].
Nachricht, die, *w.* report, news, tidings.
nächſt, *see under* nah.
Nacht, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) **night.**
nah, *adj.* near, **nigh** (§ 114, 2); nächſt, *superl.* nearest, **next.**
Nähe, die, *w.* vicinity [**nigh**-ness].
Name, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns) **name**; —nsvetter, der, *mx.* namesake; namens, by name.
nämlich, *adv.* **namely,** that is to say.
Narr, der, *w.* fool.
Naſe, die, *w.* **nose.**
naß, *adj.* wet [**nas**-ty].
Nation', die, *w. nation.*
Natur', die, *w. nature*; —ſchönheit, die, *w.* beauty of nature; —wiſſenſchaft, die, *w.* natural science.
Natura'lien, die (*pl. only*) *natural* curiosities.
natür'lich, *adv.* naturally, of course.
Nebel, der, *s.*[1] fog, mist.
neben, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) beside, close by, next to, alongside, along with.
Nebenfluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe) tributary.
Neffe, der, *w.* nephew.
nehmen, *v. s.* take.
nein, *adv.* no [**none**].
nennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) **name.**
Neſt, das *s.*[3] **nest.**
nett, *adj. neat,* nice.
neu, *adj.* **new.**
Neugierde, die, *w.* curiosity.
neugierig, *adj.* curious (gierig, eager for).
neulich, *adv.* lately, recently [**newly**].
nicht, *adv.* not [**naught**].
nichts (§ 320, 2), *indcl.* nothing.
nie, *adv.* never.
nieder, *adv.* down [**nether**].
niederbrennen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) burn down.
niederſetzen (ſich), *v. w.* sit down [-**set**].
niedrig, *adj.* low [**nether-y**].
niemals, *adv.* never.
niemand, *pron. indef.* no one, nobody (§ 160).
noch, *adv.* yet, still; — nicht, not yet; *conj.* nor.
nochmals, *adv.* again, once more.
Norden, der, *s.*[1] **north.**
Nordſeite, die, *w.* **north side.**

Nordlicht, das, *s.*[3] North-ern Light-s.
Not, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö) need, distress.
Notfall, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) case of need, emergency.
nötig, *adj.* need-ful, necessary.
Notiz', die, *w.* note, *notice.*
Numero (*indcl.*) at No.
nun, *adv.* now, well.
nur, *adv.* only, just.
Nuß, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) **nut.**

O

o, *interj.* **O**, oh.
ob, *sub. conj.* whether; als —, as if (§ 359, 3).
Obdach, das, *s.*[3] shelter [-**thatch**].
oben, *adv.* above [ab-**ove**].
ober, *adj.* upper.
obgleich', *sub. conj.* altho.
Obſt, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) fruit.
obwohl', *subj. conj.* altho.
oder, *conj.* or.
Ofen, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* Ö) stove [**oven**].
offenbar, *adj.* evident, plain; *as adv.* evidently, clearly [**open-**].
öffnen, *v. w.* **open.**
oft, *adv.* often, **oft.**
öfters, *adv.* (*comp. of* oft) often, frequently.
ohne, *prep.* (*acc.*) without.
Ohr, das, *mx.* **ear.**
Onkel, der, *s.*[1] *uncle.*
Oper, die, *w. opera.*
Ort, der, *s.*[2. 3] (§ 275, 2, *a*) place.
Oſtern (*pl. only*), **Easter.**

P

Paar, das, *s.*[2] *pair;* ein paar, a few.
Palaſt, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) *palace.*
Papier', das, *s.*[2] *paper.*
Park, der, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* Parks) *park.*
paſſen, *v. w.* (*dat.*) fit, suit.
Paſtor, der, *mx. pastor.*
Pauſe, die, *w. pause*, recess.
Penſion', die, *w.* board, boarding-house; — haben bei, to board with.
Perſon', die, *w. person.*
Pfad, der, *s.*[2] **path.**
Pfeife, die, *w. pipe.*
Pfennig, der, *s.*[2] **penny.**
Pferd, das, *s.*[2] horse [*palfrey*].
Pfingſten (*pl. only*), Whitsuntide, *Pentecost.*
Pflicht, die, *w.* duty [**plight**].
Philoſophie', die, *w. philosophy.*
Photographie', die, *w. photograph.*
Plan, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) *plan.*
Platz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) *place*, seat.
plaudern, *v. w.* chat.
plötzlich, *adj.* sudden; *adv.* suddenly.
Politik', die (*no pl.*) *politics.*
politiſch, *adj. political.*
Polizei', die, *w. police.*
Poliziſt', der, *w. policeman.*
Poſt, die, *w.* mail, *post.*
prächtig, *adj.* splendid.
Präſident', der, *w. president;* —enwahl, die, *w.* presidential election.
Preis, der, *s.*[2] *price.*
Preſſe, die, *w. press.*
Preßfreiheit, die, *w.* freedom of the press.
Prinz, der, *w. prince.*
Profeſſor, der, *mx. professor.*
Prolog', der, *s.*[2] *prologue.*
Proſa, die (*no pl.*) *prose.*
Prozent', das, *s.*[2] per *cent.*
Prüfung, die, *w.* trial, test, *proving.*
Pult, der (*and* das) *s.*[2] desk [*pulpit.*]
Punkt, der, *s.*[2] *point.*

Q

quälen (ſich), *v. w.* be tormented, be bored.
quer, *adv.* across [**queer**].

R

Rad, das, *s.*[3] wheel.
Rand, der *s.*[3] edge, border [**rand**].

rafch, *adj.* fast [**rash**].
Rat, der, *s.* (*no pl. in this sense*) advice, counsel.
raten, *v. s.* guess, advise [**read, rede**].
Räuber, der, *s.*[1] **robber**; Stra-ßen—, footpad.
rauchen, *v. w.* smoke [**reek**].
rauh, *adj.* **rough,** harsh.
rechnen, *v. w.* **reckon,** count (on, auf, *acc.*).
recht, *adj.* **right,** right-hand; *adv.* right, very.
Recht, das, *s.*[2] **right,** recht haben, to be right (*of persons only*).
Rede, die, *w.* speech, address; —freiheit, die, *w.* freedom of speech.
reden, *v. w.* talk.
redlich, *adj.* honest, candid.
Redlichkeit, die (*no pl.*) honesty.
Reform', die, *w. reform.*
Regel, die, *w. rule.*
regelmäßig, *adj. regul*-ar.
Regen, der, *s.*[1] **rain**; —ſchirm, der, *s.*[2] umbrella; —tag, der, *s.*[2] rainy day.
regnen, *v. w.* **rain.**
reich, *adj.* **rich.**
Reich, das, *s.*[2] empire [**rich**].
reichen, *v. w.* **reach,** hand.
reichlich, *adj.* plentiful, abundant; *as adv.* **richly.**
Reichtum, der, *s.*[3] **rich**-es.
reif, *adj.* **ripe,** mature.
Reihe, die, *w.* **row.**
Reiſe, die, *w.* journey, trip [**rise**]; —kamerad', der, *w.* traveling companion (*comrade*); —plan, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) route.
reiſen, *v. w.* (*aux.* § 323, 1, *c*) travel [**rise**]; der Reiſende, *pres. pple. as noun* (§ 290, 2) traveler.
reiten, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) **ride.**
Reiter, der, *s.*[1] **rider,** horseman.
Reitpferd, das, *s.*[2] saddle-horse.
Reiz, der, *s.*[2] charm.
reizend, *ppl. adj.* charming.
Republik', die, *w. republic.*
Republika'ner, der, *s.*[1] *republican.*
reſervieren, *v. w. reserve.*
retten, *v. w.* rescue, save [**rid**].
Reue, die (*no pl.*) regret, repentance [to **rue**].
Rhein, der, *s.* Rhine; —fahrt, die, trip, *or* sail, on the Rhine.
Rheumatismus, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) *rheumatism.*
richten, *v. w.* judge (from recht).
richtig, *adj.* **right,** correct.
Richtung, die, *w.* direction.
riechen, *v. s.* smell [**reek**].
Ring, der, *s.*[2] **ring.**
Ritter, der, *s.*[1] knight [**rider**].
Rock, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö) coat; (*of women's apparel*) skirt.
Rolle, die, *w. rôle,* part.
Roman', der, *s.*[2] novel, *romance.*
römiſch, *adj.* Roman.
Roſe, die, *w. rose.*
rot, *adj.* **red.**
Rückkehr, die, *w.* return.
Rückreiſe, die, *w.* return journey.
Rückweg, der, *s.*[2] return, **way** back.
rufen, *v. s.* call, summon.
Ruhe, die (*no pl.*) rest.
ruhen, *v. w.* rest.
ruhig, *adj.* quiet.

S

Saal, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Säle) hall, (large) room; Konzert — concert-hall.
Sache, die, *w.* affair, thing [**sake**].
Sage, die, *w.* tradition, legend, story [**say**].
ſagen, *v. w.* **say,** tell.
Salaman'der, der, *s.*[1] *salamander.*
Sammlung, die, *w.* collection.
Samstag, der, Saturday.
ſanft, *adj.* gentle, **soft.**
ſauer, *adj.* bitter, **sour.**
Scene, die, *w. scene.*
Schade, der, *mx.* (*pl.* Schäden) injury, loss; das iſt ſchade, that is a pity [**scathe**].
ſchämen (ſich), *v. w.* be ashamed (of = *gen.*) [**shame**].
ſchändlich, *adj.* shameful, disgraceful.
Schatten, der, *s.*[1] **shade, shadow.**
ſchätzen, *v. w.* value, esteem.

ſchaukeln, *v. w.* rock.
Schaukelpferd, das, *s.*[2] rocking-horse.
Schaukelſtuhl, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) rocking-chair [**stool**].
Schauplatz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) scene [**show** *place*].
Schauſpieler, der, *s.*[1] actor [**show-**].
Schauſpielerin, die, *w.* actress.
Schein, der, *s.*[2] appearance(s), [**shine**].
ſcheinbar, *adj.* seeming, apparent; *as adv.* seemingly.
ſcheinen, *v. s.* seem, **shine.**
Schelm, der, *s.*[2] rogue, scamp.
ſchenken, *v. w.* present, give.
ſchicken, *v. w.* send.
ſchießen, *v. s.* **shoot.**
Schießpulver, das, *s.*[1] gunpowder [**shoot-***powder*].
Schiff, das, *s.*[2] **ship**; Kriegs—, war-ship, man-of-war.
Schinken, der, *s.*[1] ham.
Schlacht, die, *w.* battle [**slaught-**er].
Schlaf, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) **sleep**; —zimmer, das, *s.*[2] bedroom.
ſchlafen, *v. s.* **sleep.**
ſchlagen, *v. s.* strike [**slay**].
ſchlecht, *adj.* bad, poor [**slight**].
ſchließen, *v. s.* close, conclude, infer.
ſchlimm, *adj.* bad [**slim**].
Schlittſchuh, der, *s.*[2] skate [**slide-shoe**].
Schloß, das, *s.*[3] (*pl.* -öſſer) castle [**slot**].
Schluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe) end, close.
Schlüſſel, der, *s.*[1] key.
ſchmal, *adj.* narrow [**small**].
ſchmeichelhaft, *adj.* flattering.
ſchmeicheln, *v. w.* (*dat.*) flatter.
Schmerz, der, *mx.* pain, grief [**smart**]; Kopf—, headache; Zahn—, toothache.
ſchmerzen, *v. w.* pain, grieve [**smart**].
Schnee, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) **snow.**
Schneider, der, *s.*[1] tailor.
ſchneien, *v. w.* **snow.**
ſchnell, *adj.* swift, quick; *adv.* quickly, fast [**snell**].
Schnellzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) express train.
ſchon, *adv.* already, quite.
ſchön, *adj.* beautiful, lovely [**sheen**].
Schönheit, die, *w.* beauty; Natur—, beauty of nature.
ſchrecklich, *adj.* terrible.
ſchreiben, *v. s.* write [**shrive,** *scribe, scrib-ble*].
ſchreien, *v. s.* call, cry, scream.
ſchreiten, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) step, stride.
Schrift, die, *w.* writing [**shrift,** *script*].
Schriftſteller, der, *s.*[1] writer, author.
Schritt, der, *s.*[2] step.
Schuh, der, *s.*[2] **shoe.**
Schuhmacher, der, *s.*[1] **shoemaker.**
Schuld, die, *w.* debt, guilt [**should**]; er iſt daran (*dat.*) ſchuld, it is his fault.
ſchuldig, *adj.* indebted, guilty; — ſein, to owe.
Schule, die, *w. school.*
Schüler, der, *s.*[1] *scholar*, pupil.
Schuljahr, das, *s.*[2] *school*-year.
Schuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe) **shot.**
Schuſter, der, *s.*[1] cobbler.
ſchweigen, *v. s.* be silent.
Schweigen, das, *s.*[1] (*no pl.*) silence (§ 365).
Schweiz, die (§ 225, 3) **Switzerland.**
ſchwer, *adj.* heavy, hard, grave, serious.
ſchwerlich, *adv.* hardly, scarcely.
Schweſter, die, *w.* **sister.**
Schwiegervater, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä) **father**-in-law.
Schwierigkeit, die, *w.* difficulty.
ſchwimmen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) swim.
ſchwinden, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) vanish, disappear.
Schwindſucht, die, *w.* (*no pl.*) consumption.
ſchwören, *v. s.* **swear.**

See, die, *w.* (*pl.* Seen *or* Seeen) **sea**, ocean; —reiſe, die, *w.* —fahrt, die, *w.* voyage.
ſeekrank, *adj.* **sea**-sick.
Seele, die, *w.* soul.
ſehen, *v. s.* **see.**
Se'henswür'digkeit, die, *w.* sight, object, *or* place, of interest [something **worth seeing**].
ſehnen (ſich), *v. w.* long (for, nach).
ſehr, *adv.* very, much [**sore**]
ſein, *v. irr.* (§ 171, 2) be.
ſein, *pron. poss.* his, its, one's.
ſeit, *prep.* (*dat.*) since, (*duration of time*) for.
Seite, die, *w.* **side**, page.
ſelbſt, *pron.* **self**, myself, etc.
ſelten, *adj.* rare; *adv.* **seldom.**
ſeltſam, *adj.* strange, quaint.
Semmel, die, *w.* roll (bread).
ſenden, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) **send.**
September, der, *s.*[1] *September.*
ſetzen, *v. w.* **set, seat**, put; ſich —, to sit down.
ſich, *pron. refl.* himself, herself, itself, themselves.
ſicher, *adj. secure, sure*, certain; *as adv.* surely.
Sie, *pron.* you; **ſie**, she, they, her, them.
Sieg, der, *s.*[2] victory.
Silber, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) **silver.**
ſilbern, *adj.* **silver.**
ſingen, *v. s.* **sing.**
ſinken, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) **sink.**
Sinn, der, *s.*[2] sense, mind.
Sitte, die, *w.* habit, custom.
ſittlich, *adj.* moral.
Sitz, der, *s.*[2] seat [**sit**].
ſitzen, *v. s.* **sit.**
ſo, *adv.* **so**, thus; *in exclamations and questions*, indeed!? ſo . . . als, as . . . as (§ 381, 1, *h*); ſo *introducing principal verb after subordinate clause usually not translated;* cf. p. 111, n. 2.
ſoeben, *adv.* just now, just [**so-even**].
Sofa, das, *s.* (*pl.* -s) *sofa*, lounge.
ſofort', *adv.* at once.
ſogar', *adv.* actually, even.
ſogenannt', *adj.* so-called.
Sohn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö) **son.**
ſolch, *pron. adj.* **such** (§ 135).
Soldat', der, *w. soldier.*
ſollen, *v. w.* (§ 189) **shall**, ought, be to, be said to (§ 191, 5).
Sommer, der, *s.*[1] **summer.**
ſonderbar, *adj.* strange, peculiar, [a-**sunder, sundr**-y].
ſondern, *conj.* but (§ 379, 1).
Sonnabend, der, *s.*[2] Saturday, [**eve** of **Sun**-day].
Sonne, die, *w.* **sun**; —naufgang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) sunrise; —nſtrahl, der, *mx.* sunbeam.
Sonntag, der, *s.*[2] **Sunday.**
ſonſt, *adv.* else, otherwise.
Sorge, die *w.* care, concern anxiety [**sorrow**].
ſorgfältig, *adj.* careful.
Spa'nier, der, *s.*[1] *Spaniard.*
ſpaniſch, *adj. Spanish.*
ſparen, *v. w.* save, **spare.**
ſparſam, *adj.* saving, economical [**spare-some**].
Sparſamkeit, die, *w.* economy.
Spaß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) jest, joke.
ſpät, *adj.* late.
ſpäteſtens, *adv.* at the latest.
ſpazie'ren, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein) walk, saunter; — gehen, take a walk, go walking.
Spazier'gang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) walk; einen — machen, take a walk.
Spiegel, der, *s.*[1] mirror.
ſpielen, *v. w.* play.
Spielkamerad', der, *w.* playmate [*-comrade*].
Spitze, *w.* point, top [**spit**].
Sprache, die, *w.* language.
Sprachlehrer, der, *s.*[1] language-teacher.
Sprachſtunde, die, *w.* language-lesson.
ſprechen, *v. s.* speak.
Sprichwort, das, *s.*[3] proverb.
ſpringen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) **spring**, jump.
Spruch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) saying.
Staat, *m. mx. state.*

Stadt, die, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) city [**stead,** *i. e.* place]; —haus, das, *s.*³ city-hall; —kirche, die, *w.* city church; —museum, das, *mx.* (*pl.* -se'en) city museum; —park, der, *s.*² (*pl. also* -s) city park; —schule, die, *w.* city school; —wahl, die, *w.* city election.

Städtchen, das, *s.*¹ little city.

stark, *adj.* strong, stout, (*of disease*) severe [**stark**].

stattfinden, *v. s.* take place [**find** stead, *i. e.* place].

stecken, *v. w.* put, **stick.**

stehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185) **stand.**

stehlen, *v. s.* **steal.**

steigen, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein) climb, mount [to **sty**].

Stelle, die, *w.* place.

Stenograph', der, *w. stenographer.*

sterben, *v. s.* (*aux.* sein) die, [**starve**].

stets, *adv.* always [**stead**-ily].

Stimme, die, *w.* voice, vote.

stimmen, *v. w.* vote, tally, coincide.

Stimmung, die, *w.* mood.

Stock, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ö) stick, cane [**stock**].

stolz, *adj.* proud [**stout**].

Strafe, die, *w.* punishment.

Strahl, der, *mx.* beam, ray.

Straße, die, *w. street;* —räuber, der, *s.*¹ footpad [*street*-**robber**].

Strecke, die, *w.* **stretch,** distance.

Streich, der, *s.*² prank, trick, stroke.

Streit, der, *s.*² strife, conflict, quarrel.

streng, *adj.* strict, severe [**strong**].

Stroh, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) **straw;** —hut, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) straw-hat [**head**].

Strom, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ö) **stream,** torrent.

Stück, das, *s.*² piece, play [**stick**].

Student', *w. student;* —in, die, *w.* woman student.

studie'ren, *v. w. study.*

Studium, das, *mx.* (*pl.* Studien) *study.*

Stuhl, der (*pl.* ü) chair [**stool**]; Lehn—, easy chair; Schaukel—, rocking-chair.

Stunde, die, *w.* hour, lesson.

Sturm, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) **storm.**

stürmisch, *adj.* **storm**-y, violent.

Stütze, die, *w.* prop, support.

suchen, *v. w.* **seek,** look for.

Süddeutschland, das, *s.* **South** Germany.

Süden, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) **south.**

Summe, die, *w. sum.*

Sumpf, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ü) **swamp.**

Sympathie', die, *w. sympathy.*

T

Tabak, der, *s.*² tobacco.

Tag, der, *s.*² **day.**

täglich, *adj. adv.* **daily.**

Tal, das, *s.*³ valley, **dale.**

Taler, der, *s.*¹ taler, dollar.

Tante, die, *w. aunt.*

Tanz, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) *dance;* —platz, der, *s.*² (*pl.* ä) dancing-place.

tapfer, *adj.* brave [**dapper**].

Tasche, die, *w.* pocket; —ngeld, das, *s.*³ pocket-money.

Tasse, die, *w.* cup.

Tat, die, *w.* **deed,** act; —sache, die, *w.* fact.

Taugenichts, der (*indcl.*) good-for-nothing.

Teil, der, *s.*² part [**deal**]; das, *s.*² share.

teilen, *v. w.* share [**deal**].

teils, *adv.* partly.

Teller, der, *s.*¹ plate.

Tendenz', die, *w. tendency.*

Termin', der, *s.*² *term.*

teuer, *adj.* **dear,** expensive.

Teufel, der, *s.*¹ *devil.*

Thea'ter, das, *s.*¹ *theater.*

tief, *adj.* **deep.**

Tier, das, *s.*² animal, beast [**deer**]; —garten, der, *s.*¹ (*pl.* ä) zoological **garden,** park.

Tinte, die, *w.* ink.

Tisch, der, *s.*² table [**dish**].

Titel, der, *s.*¹ *title.*

Tochter, die, *s.*¹ (*pl.* ö) **daughter.**

Tod, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) **death.**
toll, *adj.* mad [**dull**].
Tor, das, *s.*[2] gate [**door**].
tot, *adj.* **dead.**
töten, *v. w.* kill.
tragen, *v. s.* carry, wear [**drag, draw**].
Träne, die, *w.* tear.
traurig, *adj.* sad, sorrowful [**dreary**].
treffen, *v. s.* hit, hit upon, meet.
trefflich, *adj.* excellent, capital.
treiben, *v. s.* **drive.**
Treppe, die, *w.* stairway, flight (of stairs).
treten, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) step [**tread**].
treu, *adj.* **true,** faithful.
treulos, *adj.* faithless [**true-less**].
trinken, *v. s.* **drink.**
trocknen, *v. w.* dry.
tröſten, *v. w.* comfort [**trust**].
trotz, *prep.* (*gen. or dat.*) in spite of.
trotzdem, *adv.* in spite of that, nevertheless.
Tuch, das, *s.* [2, 3] (§ 276) cloth [**duck**].
tun, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185) **do.**
Tür, die, *w.* **door.**
Turm, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) tower.
Turnübung, die, *w.* gymnastics, athletics.

U

übel, *adj.* **evil,** amiss; — nehmen, take amiss, take offense at.
über, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **over,** about, concerning, by way of.
überall', *adv.* everywhere [**over-all**].
überhaupt', *adv.* in general, at large, at all [**over-head**].
überle'gen, *v. w.* ponder, consider.
überſetzen, *v. w.* translate [**over-set**].
übertrei'ben, *v. s.* exaggerate [**over-drive**].
übrig, *adj.* remaining [**over-**]; das —e, the rest; — bleiben, be left.
übrigens, *adv.* moreover, furthermore.
Übung, die, *w.* practice, exercise.
Ufer, das, *s.*[1] bank, shore.
Uhr, die, *w.* clock [*hour*].
um, *prep.* (*acc.*) around, about, (*of time*) at; um . . . zu, *with inf.* to, in order to.
um'bringen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) kill.
Um'fang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) circumference, range, extent.
umge'ben, *v. s.* surround.
Umge'bung, die, *w.* environs.
umge'hen, *v. s.* evade, avoid.
un'angenehm, *adj.* un-pleasant.
un'beantwortet, *ppl. adj.* **un-answered.**
un'bedeutend, *adj.* insignificant.
und, *conj.* **and.**
un'dankbar, *adj.* **unthank-ful,** ungrateful.
un'deutlich, *adj.* indistinct; *adv.* indistinctly.
un'edel, *adj.* ignoble, base.
un'erträglich, *adj.* intolerable, unbearable.
Un'fall, der *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) accident.
un'flektiert, *adj.* uninflected.
un'freundlich, *adj.* unfriendly, unamiable.
Un'geduld, die (*no pl.*) impatience.
un'geduldig, *adj.* impatient.
un'gefähr, *adv.* about.
un'genügend, *adj.* unsatisfactory.
Un'glück, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) misfortune, unhappiness [**-luck**].
unintereſſant', *adj. uninteresting.*
Univerſität', die, *w. university;* —ſtadt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) university-town.
unmög'lich, *adj.* impossible.
un'recht, *adj.* wrong.
Un'recht, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) wrong, injustice [**un-right**].
Un'ruhe, die, *w.* unrest, concern.
un'ruhig, *adj.* restless, uneasy.
unſer, *poss. pron.* our.
Un'ſinn, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) nonsense.
unter, *adj.* lower (**under**).
unter, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **under,** among, below.
unterbrech'en, *v. s.* interrupt.
unterhal'ten, *v. s.* entertain.
unterneh'men, *v. s.* undertake.

Un'terricht, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) instruction.
unterrich'ten, *v. w.* instruct, teach.
unterſchei'den, *v. s.* distinguish.
Un'terſchied, der, *s.*[2] difference.
unterſchrei'ben, *v. s.* sign.
unterſu'chen, *v. w.* investigate.
Un'tertan, der, *mx.* subject.
unterwer'fen, *v. s.* subject; ſich —, submit (to = *dat.*).
un'verſchämt, *adj.* shame-less, outrageous.
un'willkommen, *adj.* unwelcome.
un'wohl, *adj.* unwell, indisposed.
unzwei'felhaft, *adj.* undoubted, unquestionable; *as adv.* undoubtedly.
ur'alt, *adj.* very old, ancient.
Ur'ſache, die, *w.* cause, reason.
urteilen, *v. w.* judge.

V

Vater, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä) father.
Vaterland, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) father-land, native country.
Veilchen, das, *s.*[1] *violet.*
Verabredung, die, *w.* agreement, arrangement.
verachten, *v. w.* despise.
verbergen, *v. s.* hide, conceal [-bury].
verbeſſern, *v. w.* correct, improve. [-better].
verbleiben, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) remain [-leave].
Verbrechen, das, *s.*[1] crime.
verbündet, *ppl. adj.* allied.
verderben, *v. s.* spoil, ruin.
verdienen, *v. w.* deserve, earn.
vereinigt, *ppl. adj.* united [-one-].
verfallen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) fall a prey (to = *dat.*)
Verfaſſer, der, *s.*[1] author.
vergebens, *adv.* in vain.
vergehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185) pass [for(e)-go].
vergeſſen, *v. s.* forget.
vergeuden, *v. w.* waste.
vergleichen, *v. s.* -liken, compare.
Vergnügen, das, *s.*[1] pleasure, enjoyment [-enough].
Verhältnis, das, *s.*[2] relation.
verhindern, *v. w.* -hinder, prevent.
verirren (ſich), *v. w.* lose one's way.
verkaufen, *v. w.* sell.
verlangen, *v. w.* demand, want [-long].
verlaſſen, *v. s.* leave [-let]; ſich — auf (*acc.*) rely *or* depend upon.
Verlauf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu) course [-leap].
verliebt, *ppl. adj.* in love (with, in, *acc.*)
verlieren, *v. s.* lose; verloren, *ppl. adj.* lost [forlorn]; verloren gehen, be lost, get lost.
verlobt, *ppl. adj.* engaged, betrothed (to = mit) [-love]
verloren, *see* verlieren.
vermeiden, *v. s.* avoid.
Vermögen, das, *s.*[1] property, wealth.
verneinen, *v. w.* answer (a question) in the negative.
verraten, *v. s.* betray.
verreiſen, *v. w.* (*aux.* ſein) depart.
verſammeln, *v. w.* gather, assemble.
Verſammlung, die, *w.* assemblage, meeting.
verſchieden, *adj.* different, various.
verſchließen, *v. s.* lock.
verſchmitzt, *adv.* shrewdly.
verſchwinden, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) vanish, disappear.
verſetzen, *v. w.* answer, transpose.
verſichern, *v. w.* assure [-*sure*].
verſprechen, *v. s.* promise.
Verſtand, der, *s.* (*no pl.*) intelligence, under-stand-ing.
Verſtändnis, das, *s.*[2] understanding, comprehension.
verſtehen, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185) understand.
verſuchen, *v. w.* try, attempt [-seek].
verteidigen, *v. w.* defend.
verwandt, *ppl. adj.* related; *as noun,* relative (§ 290, 2).

verweilen, *v. w.* tarry, stay [-while].
verzeihen, *v. s.* (*dat. of pers.*) pardon.
Vetter, der, *mx.* cousin.
viel, *pron.* (§ 161) *adj. adv.* much.
vielleicht', *adv.* perhaps.
vielmehr', *adv.* rather.
Viertel, das, *s.*[1] quarter; —dollar, der, *s.* (*pl.* -ö) quarter(-dollar); —jahr, das, *s.*[2] quarter(-year); —ſtunde, die, *w.* quarter-hour.
Vogel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö) bird [fowl].
Vögelchen, das, *s.*[3] little bird.
Vogelneſt, das, *s.*[3] bird's **nest.**
Volk, das, *s.*[3] **folk,** people, nation; —ſglaube, der, *mx.* popular belief; —ſleben, das, *s.*[1] people's life; —ſlied, das, *s.*[3] folk-song, popular song; —ſage, die, *w.* popular legend; *pl.* folk-lore.
voll, *adj.* **full.**
vollen'den, *v. w.* complete, finish [-end].
vollends, *adv.* completely, utterly.
vollkom'men, *adj.* complete, perfect, thoro.
von, *prep.* (*dat.*) from, of, by.
vor, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) before [fore].
Vorbereitung, die, *w.* preparation [fore-ready-]; —ſchule, die, *w.* preparatory school.
vor'geſtern, *adv.* day be-**fore** yester-day.
vorher', *adv.* before, previously.
vorig, *adj.* last, former.
vorkommen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) occur.
vorläufig, *adv.* for the time being, for the present.
vor'mittags, *adv.* in the forenoon [fore-midday].
Vorrat, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) supply, stock.
vorſchlagen, *v. s.* propose.
Vorſtellung, die, *w.* performance.
Vorteil, der, *s.*[2] advantage.
vorüber, *adv.* past, **-over.**
vorwärts, *adv.* **forward(s).**
Vorzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) advantage.

W

wach, *adj.* a-wake.
wachſen, *v. s.* (*aux.* ſein) grow [wax].
Wagen, der *s.*[1] **wagon,** carriage [wain].
Wahl, die, *w.* choice, election.
wahr, *adj.* true, genuine, real; nicht wahr? isn't it, doesn't it, aren't they, etc.
während, *sub. conj.* while; *prep.* (*gen.*) during.
wahrhaft, *adj.* truthful, real, actual; *as adv.* truly, really.
Wahrheit, die, *w.* truth.
wahrſcheinlich, *adv.* probably.
Wald, der, *s.*[3] forest, woods [wold].
Wand, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) wall.
Wanderung, die, *w.* **wandering,** travel.
wann, *adv. inter. only,* **when.**
warm, *adj.* **warm.**
warnen, *v. w.* **warn** (of, vor, *dat.*)
Warnung, *f. w.* **warning.**
warten, *v. w.* wait [**ward**].
warum', *adv. inter.* why.
was, *pron. inter.* **what;** — für ein (§ 145), what kind of; *as rel. pron.* that, etc. (§ 141).
Waſſer, das, *s.*[1] **water;** —leitung, die, *w.* water-supply (**-leading**), plumbing.
weder, *conj.* neither; weder . . . noch, neither . . . nor.
Weg, der, *s.*[2] **way,** road.
wegen, *prep.* (*gen.*) on account of.
Weib, das, *s.*[3] woman, **wife.**
Weihnachten, *pl.* Christmas.
Weihnachtsgeſchenk, das, *s.*[2] Christmas present.
weil, *sub. conj.* because [**while**]
weinen, *v. w.* weep, cry.
Weiſe, die, *w.* way, manner, **wise.**
weiß, *adj.* **white.**
weit, *adj.* **wide,** broad, far; weiter, further.
welch, *pron. rel. indef. inter.* **which,** that, any.
Welt, *f. w.* **world;** —ſtadt, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) cosmopolitan city.

wenden, *v. w. irr.* (§ 330) turn [**wend**].
wenig, *adj.* little; ein —, a little.
wenigſtens, *adv.* at least, at any rate.
wenn, *sub. conj.* if, **when.**
wer, *pron. inter.* who; *rel.* he who, whoever (§ 140).
werden, *v. s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* ſein) become, get [**worth**].
werfen, *v. s.* throw, cast [**warp**].
Werk, das, *s.*[2] **work.**
weshalb, *adv. inter.* why, wherefore.
Weſten, der, *s.*[1] **west.**
weſtlich, *adj.* **west-**; *as adv.* westward.
weswegen, *adv. inter.* on what account, wherefore, why.
Wetter, das *s.*[1] **weather.**
wichtig, *adj.* important, **weighty.**
Wichtigkeit, die, *w.* importance, weighti-ness.
wider, *prep.* (*acc.*) against [**with**].
widerſprech'en, *v. s.* contradict.
widerſteh'en, *v. s. irr.* (§ 185) **withstand,** oppose.
wi'derwärtig, *adj.* obnoxious, distasteful.
wie, *adv. and subj. conj.* how, as, like [**why**].
wieder, *adv.* again [**with**].
wiederauf'nehmen, *v. s.* resume.
wiederho'len, *v. w.* repeat; wiederholt', *pple. as adv.* repeatedly.
wie'derſehen, *v. s.* see again; auf Wiederſehen, good-bye.
wiegen, *v. s.* **weigh.**
wild, *adj.* **wild,** savage.
Wille, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns) **will**; um . . . willen, *with gen.* for the sake of.
willkom'men, *adj.* **welcome.**
Wind, der, *s.*[2] **wind.**
Winter, der, *s.*[1] **winter**; —abend, der *s.*[2] winter-evening.
Wirken, das, *s.*[1] **work,** activity, effect.
wirklich, *adv.* really.
Wirt, der, *s.*[2] landlord, man-of-the-house.
Wirtin, die, *w.* landlady.
Wirtshaus, das, *s.*[3] inn.
wiſſen, *v. w. irr.* (§ 190) know, [to **wit**].
Wiſſen, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) knowledge.
Wiſſenſchaft, die, *w.* science.
wo, *adv.* **where.**
Woche, die, *w.* **week.**
wöchentlich, *adj.* **weekly.**
wofür', *adv.* for what.
woher', *adv.* whence, from where; . — haben Sie? where did you get?
wohl, *adv.* probably, I presume, well.
Wohl, das, *s.* (*no pl.*) **wel-fare.**
wohnen, *v. w.* dwell, live [cf. to **won,** with its *pple.* **wont**].
Wohnort, der, *s.*[2] abode, dwelling-place.
Wohnung, die, *w.* dwelling, residence, habitation.
Wohnzimmer, das, *s.*[1] living- *or* sitting-room.
Wolke, die, *w.* cloud [**welk-in**].
wollen, *v. w.* (§ 189) **will,** be willing; be about to, be on the point of, claim, pretend, etc. (§ 191, 6).
Wort, das, *s.*[2.3] (§ 276, *a*) **word.**
Wörterbuch, das, *s.*[3] dictionary [**word-book**].
worum', *adv.* about what, why.
wozu', *adv.* to what end, what for [**whereto**].
Wunder, das, *s.*[1] **wonder,** miracle.
wunderbar, *adj.* **wonder-ful,** marvelous.
wundern, *v. w.* cause to **wonder**; mich wundert's, I wonder.
wunderſchön, *adj.* wondrously beautiful.
Wunſch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) **wish.**
wünſchen, *v. w.* **wish.**
wußte, *see* wiſſen.

3

zählen, *v. w.* count [**tell**].
zahlreich, *adj.* numerous [**tale-rich**].

Zahn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) **tooth**; —arzt, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) dentist; —ſchmerz, der, *mx.* toothache.
zehn, *num.* **ten.**
Zeichnung, die, *w.* drawing.
zeigen, *v. w.* show [**teach**].
Zeile, die, *w.* line.
Zeit, die, *w.* time [**tide**].
Zeitlang, eine, *adv. phrase,* for a time (= eine Zeit lang).
Zeitung, die, *w.* newspaper [**tiding**].
zerfallen, *v. s.* be divided (into, in, *acc.*)
zerreißen, *v. s.* tear.
ziehen *v. s.* draw [**tow**].
Ziel, das, *s.*[2] aim, goal, destination.
ziemlich, *adv.* pretty, tolerably.
Zimmer, das, *s.*[1] room [**timber**].
zittern, *v. w.* tremble.
zu, *prep.* (*dat.*) **to,** at, for; *adv.* too.
zuerſt', *adv.* first, at first [**-erst**].
zufrie'den, *adj.* content.
Zug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü) train [**tug**].
Zukunft, die (*no pl.*) future.
zunächſt', *adv.* first [**-next**].
zurück', *adv.* back [**-ridge**].
zuſam'men, *adv.* together.
Zuſam'menhang, der, *s.*[2] (*no pl.*) connection [**-hang**].
Zuſchauer, der, *s.*[1] spectator.
Zuſchuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe) addition, increase.
Zuſtand, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) condition.
zutragen (ſich), *v. s.* happen.
zuträglich, *adj.* beneficial.
zuwei'len, *adv.* sometimes, now and then [**-while**].
zwar, *adv.* to be sure, forsooth (zu wahr).
Zweck, der, *s.*[2] purpose, object.
zwei, *num.* **two.**
Zweifel, der, *s.*[1] doubt [**two-**].
Zweig, der, *s.*[2] branch, bough, twig.
Zweikampf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä) duel.
zweimal, *adv.* twice.
zwingen, *v. s.* compel, force [**twinge**].
zwiſchen, *prep.* (*dat. and acc.*) **between,** among.

ENGLISH-GERMAN

A

a, an, ein.
able, to be — to, können (§§ 189, 2. 191, 2).
abode, Wohnort, der, *s.*[2]
about, *adv.* etwa, ungefähr; *prep.* über, um (*acc.*), von (*dat.*); — it, that, darüber; news — the elections, Nachrichten über die Wahlen; to care —, ſich kümmern um; to talk —, ſprechen von.
above, oben; — all, vor allem.
abroad, in der (*or* die) Fremde.
absence, Abweſenheit, die, *w.*
abundance, Fülle, die, *w.*
abundantly, reichlich.
accident, Unfall, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
accompany, begleiten, *w.*
accordance, in — with, gemäß (*dat.*)
according to, nach (*dat.*)
accordingly, alſo.
account, on — of, wegen (*gen.*) on that —, deshalb, deswegen; on what —, weshalb, weswegen; on my —, meinetwegen.
accuse, anklagen, *w.* (of = *gen.*).
accurate(ly), genau.
accustom, — oneself to, ſich gewöhnen an (*acc.*) *w.*
accustomed, gewohnt (to = an, *acc.*)
acknowledge, bekennen, *w.* (§ 330).
acquaintance, Bekanntſchaft, die, *w.*; (of persons) Bekannte(r), *adj. as noun* (§ 290, 2); to make the — of, kennen lernen (*acc.*)
acquainted, bekannt.
across, *adv.* quer über *or* durch.
act, (of a play) Akt, der, *s.*[2], Aufzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); (deed) Tat, die, *w.*
act, handeln, *w.*; (play) ſpielen, *w.*
action, Handlung, die, *w.*; take —, handeln, *w.*
actor, Schauſpieler, der, *s.*[1]
actress, Schauſpielerin, die, *w.*
actual(ly), eigentlich, wahrhaft; (even) ſogar.
addition, Zuſchuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe).
address, (discourse) Rede, die, *w.*; (place of residence) Adreſſe, die, *w.*
admire, bewundern, *w.*
admission, Eintritt, der, *s.*[2]
advance, in —, im voraus.
advantage, Vorteil, der, *s.*[2]; Vorzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
adventure, Abenteuer, das, *s.*[1]
advice, Rat, der, *s.* (*no pl. in this sense*).
advise, raten, *s.*
affair, Angelegenheit, die, *w.*; Sache, die, *w.*
afford, gewähren, *w.*
after, *prep.* nach (*dat.*); — all, am Ende; *sub. conj.* nachdem.
afternoon, Nachmittag, der, *s.*[2]; this —, heute nachmittag; — performance, Nachmittagsvorſtellung, die, *w.*
afterward, nachher.
again, wieder, nochmals.
against, gegen (*acc.*)
age, Alter, das, *s.*[1]; old —, (hohes) Alter.
age, *v.* altern, *w.* (*aux.* haben or ſein).
ago, vor (*dat.*); an hour —, vor einer Stunde.
agreement, Verabredung, die, *w.*
ah, ach.
aid, Hilfe, die (*no pl.*)
ail, leiden, *s.*
aim, Ziel, das, *s.*[2]
air, Luft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
akin, verwandt (to = *dat.*)
alas, ach; (= unfortunately, unhappily) leider.

alike, gleich.
all, all (= all of); (whole) ganz; all sorts of, allerlei (*indcl.*); (= exclusively, none but) lauter.
allied, verbündet, *ppl. adj.*
allow, erlauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*); to be —ed to, dürfen (§§ 189, 1, 191, 1).
almost, beinahe, faſt.
alone, allein.
along, *adv.* her, mit; come —, kommen Sie mit; — with, zugleich mit; *prep.* längs (*gen.*)
alongside, neben (*acc. and dat.*)
already, ſchon.
also, auch.
altar, Altar, der, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* ä).
altho, obgleich, obwohl, *sub. conjs.*
altogether (utterly), durchaus, gar, ganz und gar.
always, immer, ſtets.
am, bin; am visiting, beſuche; am going, gehe. (See § 348, 1.)
America, Amerika, das (§ 225, 225, 3).
American, Amerikaner, der, *s.*[1]
American, *adj.* amerikaniſch.
amiss, übel; to take —, übel nehmen.
among, unter, zwiſchen (*dat. and acc.*); — them, darunter.
amount, — to, betragen, *s.*
ample, reichlich.
ancient, alt; (primeval) uralt; the ancients, die Alten.
and, und.
angel, Engel, der, *s.*[1]
animal, Tier, das, *s.*[2]
annihilation, Vernichtung, die, *w.*
anniversary, Jahrestag, der, *s.*[2]
another, (additional) noch ein; (different) ein anderer; one —, einander (*indcl.*)
answer, Antwort, die, *w.*
answer, antworten (*dat. of pers.*); (*trans.*) beantworten; (reply) verſetzen; — in the negative, verneinen (*trans.*)
antiquity, Altertum, das, *s.*[3]
anxiety, (fear) Angſt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Ä); (care, solicitude) Beſorgnis, die, *s.*[2], Sorge, die, *w.*
anxious, be —, ſich ängſtigen, *w.*; to make —, to trouble, bang(e) [*adv.*] machen, *with dat.*
any, irgend (§ 152); have you — money, haſt du etwas Geld? — one, jemand, irgend jemand; — thing, etwas, irgend etwas; not —thing, nichts; —thing but, nichts weniger als; — such thing, ſo etwas; —way, eigentlich, *adv.*
apartment(s), Wohnung, die, *w.*
ape, Affe, der, *w.*
apparel, Kleidung, die, *w.*
apparent(ly), ſcheinbar.
appear, (look) ausſehen, *s.*; (seem) ſcheinen, *s.*; (make one's appearance) erſcheinen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
appearance(s), Schein, der, *s.*[2]
apple, Apfel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* Ä); —shot, Apfelſchuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe).
appoint, ernennen, *w.* (§ 330).
approve, billigen, *w.*
April, April, der, *s.*[2]
Aristotle, Ariſtoteles.
arm, Arm, der, *s.*[2]
army, Armee, die, *w.*; Heer, das, *s.*[2]
around, um (*acc.*)
arrangement, Verabredung, die, *w.*
arrive, ankommen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
art, Kunſt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
artistic, — taste, Kunſtgeſchmack, der, *s.*
as, (*temporal*) als, da, wie (§ 381, 1, *a*, *b*, *l*); (*modal*) wie; (*causal* = since) da; *all sub. conjs.*; not so good as, nicht ſo gut wie; as you say, wie du ſagſt; as . . . as, so . . . as, ſo . . . als (§ 381, 1, *h*); as if, als ob, als wenn (§ 359, 3); as for me, was mich betrifft.
ascend, *intr.* hinaufſteigen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); *tr.* beſteigen, *s.*
ascertain, erfahren, *s.*
ashamed, to be —, ſich ſchämen, *w.* (*gen.*)
ashes, Aſche, die, *w.*
aside, bei Seite; — from, außer (*dat.*)

ask, (question) fragen, *w.;* (request) bitten, *s.;* (demand) verlangen, *w.;* — for, bitten um (*acc.*)
asleep, fall —, einſchlafen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
assemblage, Verſammlung, die, *w.*
assemble, (*trans.*) verſammeln, *w.*
assert, behaupten, *w.*
assumed (name), falſch.
assure, verſichern, *w.*
astonished, erſtaunt.
astonishment, Erſtaunen, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
at, an (*dat. and acc.*), zu (*dat.*); (*of time*) um (*acc.*); (with, at the house of) bei (*dat.*); — the window, an dem Fenſter; — a table, an einem Tiſche; — home, zu Hauſe; — ten o'clock, um zehn Uhr; — at your house, bei Ihnen zu Hauſe; — any rate, jedenfalls; — No. 2, Numero zwei; — once, ſofort; — the most, höchſtens.
athletics, Turnübungen, die, *pl.*
attach, — oneself to, ſich hängen an (*acc.*) *w.*
attack, anfallen, *s.*
attend (visit), beſuchen; — to, beſorgen, *w.*
audience, Zuſchauer, die, *pl.*
August, Auguſt, der, *s.*[2]
aunt, Tante, die, *w.*
author, (in the sense of 'writer by profession') Schriftſteller, der, *s.*[1]; (otherwise) Autor, *mx.*, Verfaſſer, der, *s.*[1]
autumn, Herbſt, der, *s.*[2]; — time, Herbſtzeit, die, *w.*
avail, helfen (*with dat.*); it —s nothing, es hilft nichts.
average, Durchſchnitt, der, *s.*[2]; on an —, im Durchſchnitt.
avoid, vermeiden, *s.;* (evade) umgeh'en, *s.* (§ 185).
await, warten (§ 248, 1, *a*).
awake, *adj.* wach.
awake, *v. intrans.* erwachen, *w.*
awake(n), *v. trans.* erwecken, *w.*
away, fort; far —, weit entfernt.

B

back, *adv.* zurück.
background, Hintergrund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
backwoodsman, Hinterwäldler, der, *s.*[1]
bad, ſchlecht, ſchlimm; (evil, wicked) böſe.
ball, Ball, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
band, Band, das, *s.*[2]
bank, Ufer, das, *s.*[1]
barbarian, Barbar, der, *w.*
base, unedel.
bath, Bad, das, *s.*[3]
bathe, baden, *w.*
battle, Schlacht, die, *w.*
be, ſein, *s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* ſein); (= be present, involved) vorhanden ſein; — (= fare) with, ſtehen um.
beam, Strahl, der, *mx.*
bear, Bär, der, *w.*
beard, Bart, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
beast, Tier, das, *s.*[2]
beat, ſchlagen, *s.*
beautiful, ſchön.
beauty, Schönheit, die, *w.;* — of nature, Naturſchönheit, die.
because, weil, *sub. conj.*
become, werden, *s. irr.* (§ 171, *aux.* ſein).
bed, Bett, das, *mx.*
bedroom, Schlafzimmer, das, *s.*[1]
bee, Biene, die, *w.*
befit, ziemen, *w.* (*dat.*)
before, *prep.* vor (*dat. and acc.*); *sub. conj.* bevor, ehe; *adv.* (= hitherto) bisher; there are four days — Christmas, es ſind vier Tage bis Weihnachten.
beg, (request) bitten (for, um, *acc.*)
beggar, Bettler, der, *s.*[1]
begin, beginnen, *s.*, anfangen, *s.*
beginning, Anfang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); from the —, vom Anfang an; in the —, anfangs, *adv.*
behavior, Betragen, das, *s.*[1]
behind, hinter (*dat. and acc.*)
being, Weſen, das, *s.*[1]; human —, Menſch, der, *w.*

belief, Glaube, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
believe, glauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*); — in, glauben an (*acc.*)
bell, Glocke, die, *w.*
belong, gehören, *w.* (*dat.* = to); — to (be a part of), gehören zu; — to (be the duty of), ſein (*with dat.*)
below, *prep.* unter (*dat. and acc.*); the picture —, das Bild darunter.
bench, Bank, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
bend, biegen, *s.*
beneficial, zuträglich.
beside, neben (*dat. and acc.*)
besides, außerdem, dazu.
best, beſt, am beſten; *as adv.* am beſten, aufs beſte (§ 375, 2).
betray, verraten, *s.*
better, beſſer; make —, beſſern, *w.*
between, zwiſchen (*dat. and acc.*)
beyond, jenſeits (*gen.*)
bible, Bibel, die, *w.*
bicycle, Fahrrad, das, *s.*[3]
bind, binden, *s.*
bird, Vogel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö).
birth, Geburt, die, *w.*
birthday, Geburtstag, der, *s.*[2]
birthplace (i. e. the house), Geburtshaus, das, *s.*[3]
bite, beißen, *s.*
bitter, ſauer.
black, ſchwarz.
blame, to — for (i. e. to be to blame for), ſchuld ſein an (*dat.*)
blessing, Gut, das, *s.*[3]
blind, *adj.* blind.
blind, *v.* blenden, *w.*
blood, Blut, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
bloody, blutig.
bloom, blühen, *w.*
blow, *v.* blaſen, *s.*
blue, blau.
board (fare), Koſt, die, *w.*
board, *v.* Penſion haben.
boarding-house, Penſion, die, *w.*
boast of, ſich rühmen, *w.* (*gen.*)
boat, (row-boat) Kahn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); (= steamboat) Dampfer, der, *s.*[1]
body, Leib, der, *s.*[3]
boil, kochen, *w.*
bold, friſch.
bond, Band, das, *s.*[2]
book, Buch, das, *s.*[3]; — case, Bücherſchrank, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); — store, Buchhandlung, die, *w.*; — trade, Buchhandel, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
border, Rand, der, *s.*[3]
bore, quälen, *w.*
born, geboren.
bosom, — friend, Herzensfreund, der, *s.*[2]
both, beide; both . . . and, ſowohl . . . als (auch).
box, Kaſten, der, *s.*[1]
boy, Knabe, der, *w.*, Junge, der, *w.*, Bube, der, *w.*; —s' school, Knabenſchule, die, *w.*
branch, Zweig, der, *s.*[2]
brave, tapfer.
bread, Brot, das, *s.*[2]
breadth, Breite, die, *w.*
break, brechen *s.*; — loose, losbrechen (*intr. aux.* ſein).
breakfast, Frühſtück, das, *s.*[2]
breathe, atmen, *w.*
breeding, Zucht, die (*no pl.*)
breeze, Luft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
bridge, Brücke, die, *w.*
bright, hell, klar.
bring, bringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); — up (hither), heraufführen, *w.*; — up (educate), erziehen, *s.*
broad, breit.
brook, Bach, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
brother, Bruder, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ü).
brown, braun.
build, bauen, *w.*
building, (act of —) Bau, der, *s.*[2] (§ 275, 2, *a*); (structure) Gebäude, das, *s.*[1]
burn, brennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); — down, niederbrennen.
burst, losbrechen, *s.* (*intr. aux.* ſein).
bush, Buſch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
bushes, (thicket) Gebüſch, das, *s.*[2]
busied, beſchäftigt.
business, Geſchäft, das, *s.*[2] on — of state, in Staatsgeſchäften.
busy, beſchäftigt.
but, aber, ſondern (§ 379, 1), doch; (= only) nur.
butter, Butter, die (*no pl.*)

buy, kaufen, *w.*
by, an (*dat.*); bei (*dat.*); *with the passive,* von (*dat.*); = by means of, durch (*acc.*); — the window, am Fenſter; by the train, mit dem Zuge; by rail, mit der Eiſenbahn; by a messenger, durch einen Boten.

C

call, (summon) rufen, *s.;* — on, rufen; — away, abrufen; (cry) ſchreien, *s.;* (name) nennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); be called (named), heißen, *s.*
call, (= visit) Beſuch, der, *s.*[2]
calm, gefaßt, *ppl. adj.;* ruhig.
can, können (§§ 189–191).
candid, aufrichtig.
candidate, Kandidat, der, *w.*
cane, Stock, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
capable, fähig (of = zu).
capital (-city), Hauptſtadt, die, *s.*[2] *pl.* ä).
capital, (principal) Kapital, das, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* -ien).
capital, *adj.* trefflich.
captain (of a ship), Kapitän, der, *s.*[2]
card, Karte, die, *w.*
care, Beſorgnis, die, *s.*[2], Sorge, die, *w.;* take —, ſorgen, *w.*
care, to — about, ſich kümmern, *w.* um (*acc.*)
careful, ſorgfältig.
careful, to be —, ſich hüten, *w.*
carefully, ſorgfältig; (exactly) genau.
carriage, Wagen, der, *s.*[1]
carry, tragen, *s.;* — on (a conversation, a war,) führen; (= employ), treiben, *s.*
case, Fall, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); (= suit) der Prozeß, *s.*[2]
cast, werfen, *s.*
castle, Schloß, das, *s.*[3] (*pl.* -öſſer); Burg, die, *w.*
cathedral, Dom, der, *s.*[2]; Kathedrale, die, *w.;* — church, Kathedralkirche, die, *w.*
cause, (reason) Grund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); (agency) Urſache, die, *w.;* (affair) Sache, die, *w.*
cause, *v.* laſſen, *s.;* verurſachen, *w.*
cease, aufhören, *w.*
celebrate, feiern, *w.*
cent, Cent, der, *s.* (*pl.* -s).
central, central; — station, Centralbahnhof, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
century, Jahrhundert, das, *s.*[2]
certain, gewiß; to know for —, gewiß (*or* ſicher) wiſſen.
chain, Kette, die, *w.*
chair, Stuhl, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
change, *intr.* ſich verändern.
character, Charakter, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -tere).
charge, take — of, ſich annehmen, *s.* (*gen.*)
charge (of a weapon), Schuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
Charles, Karl.
charm, Reiz, der, *s.*[2] [*adj.*
charming, reizend, bezaubernd, *ppl.*
chat, plaudern.
cheap, billig.
cheerful, heiter.
cherish, hegen, *w.*
chief, *in compounds,* Haupt-; — reason, Hauptgrund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); — study, Hauptſtudium, das, *mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
chiefly, hauptſächlich.
child, Kind, das, *s.*[3]; little —, Kindchen, das, *s.*[1] (*pl. also* Kinderchen).
childhood, Kindheit, die, *w.*
choice, Wahl, die, *w.*
choir, Chor, das, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
choose, wählen, *w.*
Christian, Chriſt, der, *w.*
Christmas, Weihnachten, die, *pl.;* — gift, Weihnachtsgeſchenk, das, [*s.*[2]
church, Kirche, die, *w.*
citizen, Bürger, der, *s.*[1]
city, Stadt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); on — business, in Stadtsgeſchäften; — clock, Stadtuhr, die, *w.;* — election, Stadtwahl, die, *w.;* — hall, Stadthaus, das, *s.*[3]; — library, Stadtbibliothek, die, *w.;* — park, Stadtpark, der, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* —s); — school, Stadtſchule, die, *w.;* — theater, Stadttheater, das, *s.*[1]; little —, Städtchen, das, *s.*[1]

claim, they — to have seen. . . , man will . . . gesehen haben.
class, Klasse, die, *w.*
clear, klar; make —, erklären, *w.;* (evident) offenbar; (bright) hell.
clearly, offenbar.
clever, klug.
cleverness, Klugheit, die, *w.*
climate, Klima, das, *s.* (*pl.* -ta *or* -te).
climb (*intrans.*) klimmen, *s.* (*aux.* sein), steigen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (*trans.*) besteigen, *s.*
cloak, Mantel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä).
clock, Uhr, die, *w.;* city —, Stadtuhr.
close, Schluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üsse).
close, *adj.* dicht, nahe (near); — by, neben, *prep.* (*dat.*)
close, *v.* schließen, *s.;* — up, abschließen, *s.*
cloth, Tuch, das, *s.*[2, 3] (Tücher in compounds; cf. § 276, *a*).
clothes, Kleider, die, *pl.*
clothing, Kleidung, die, *w.;* article of —, Kleidungsstück, das, *s.*[2]
cloud, Wolke, die, *w.*
coach, Kutsche, die, *w.*
coat, Rock, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
cobbler, Schuster, der, *s.*[1]
coffee, Kaffee, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
coincide, stimmen, *w.*
cold, *adj.* kalt.
cold, (weather) Kälte, die (*no pl.*); (sickness) Erkältung, die, *w.;* to take —, sich erkälten, *w.*
collection, Sammlung, die, *w.*
color, Farbe, die, *w.*
come, kommen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — by, kommen zu; — before, treten vor (*acc.*); — between, treten zwischen (*acc.*); — toward, — to meet, entgegenkommen; come-to-be, werden.
comedy, Lustspiel, das, *s.*[2]
comfort, trösten, *w.*
comfortable, bequem.
coming, *adj.* künftig.
command, befehlen, *s.* (*dat.*) gebieten, *s.* (*dat.*)
commander-in-chief, Feldherr, der, *w.* (§ 94, 1).
commerce, Handel, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
commit, begehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
committee, Ausschuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üsse).
common, gemein.
companion, Kamerad, der, *w.*
company, Gesellschaft, die, *w.*
compare, vergleichen, *s.*
compel, zwingen, *s.;* be compelled, müssen (§§ 189–191).
complete, vollenden, *w.*
complete, *adj.* vollkommen.
completely, vollends.
composed, gefaßt, *ppl. adj.*
composer, Komponist, der, *w.*
composition, Aufsatz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
comprehend, begreifen, *s.*
comprehensible, begreiflich.
comprehension, Verständnis, das, *s.*[2]
cómrade, Kamerad, der, *w.*
conceal, verbergen, *s.*
conception, Begriff, der, *s.*[2]
concern, Sorge, die, *w.,* Unruhe, die *w.*
concern, *v.* betreffen, *s.;* so far as I am —ed, was mich betrifft; (= trouble) kümmern, *w.*
concerned, in Sorge; not —, ohne Sorge; be —, care about, sich kümmern um (*acc.*)
concerning, (about) über (*acc.*); (= in reference to) in betreff, *with gen.*
concert, Konzert, das, *s.*[2]; — hall, Konzertsaal, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -säle).
conclude, schließen, *s.*
condition, (terms) Bedingung, die, *w.*
condition, (state) Zustand, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
conduct, führen, *w.*
conduct, (behavior) Betragen, das, *s.*[1]
confess, bekennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); gestehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
confidently, getrost.
conflict, Streit, der, *s.*[2]
connection, Zusammenhang, der, *s.*[2]
conquer, erobern, *w.*

consecrate, einweihen, *w.*
consequence, Folge, die, *w.*
consider, (deem) halten . . . für (§265, 3, *c*), betrachten (als) *w.*; (reflect, think over) überlegen, *w.*
considerable, beträchtlich.
consist (of), beſtehen (aus), *s. irr.* (§ 185); — in, beſtehen in (*dat.*)
consumption, Schwindſucht, die, *w.*
contain, enthalten, *s.*; contains, enthält.
content(ed), zufrieden.
contents, Inhalt, der, *s.*[2]
continue, (last) dauern, *w.*; *trans.* fortſetzen, *w.*; *intrans.* (= keep on) fortfahren, *s.* (*aux.* haben).
contradict, widerſprechen, *s.*
contrary, Gegenteil, das, *s.*[2]; on the —, im Gegenteil.
contrast, Gegenſatz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
control, able to —, mächtig (*with gen.*)
convent, Kloſter, das, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö).
conversation, Geſpräch, das, *s.*[2]
convince, überzeugen, *w.*
cool, kühl.
copy, abſchreiben, *s.*
cordial, herzlich.
correct, *adj.* richtig.
correct, *v.* verbeſſern, *w.*
cost, koſten, *w.*
cost, (expense) Koſten, die, *pl.*
cottage, Häuschen, das, *s.*[1]
could, konnte, könnte (§ 191, 2); — have done, hätte tun können (§ 192 *and* 1).
counsel, Rat, der, *s.* (*no pl. in this sense*).
count, (reckon) rechnen, *w.* (on = auf, *acc.*); (enumerate) zählen, *w.*; *intr.* (= be reckoned or considered), gelten, *s.*
count, (title) Graf, der, *w.*
countenance, Geſicht, das, *s.*[3]
country, Land, das, *s.*[2, 3] (§276, *a*); (go) to the —, auf das Land; in the —, auf dem Lande; (= native country) Vaterland, das, *s.*; (region) Gegend, die, *w.*
countryman, (= fellow —) Landsmann, der, *s.*[3] (*pl.* -leute, § 238, 2, *a*).
couple, a —, ein paar; a — of times, ein paarmal.
courage, Mut, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
course, (of study) Kurſus, der (*pl.* Kurſus *or* Kurſe); Kreis, der, *s.*; in the — of, im Verlauf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu).
course, of —, natürlich.
court, Hof, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö); — life, Hofleben, das, *s.*[1]
courtesy, Höflichkeit, die, *w.*
cousin, *masc.* Vetter, der, *mx.*
cousin, *fem.* Couſine, die, *w.*
cover, decken, *w.*
crime, Verbrechen, das, *s.*[1]
crowd, Menge, die, *w.*
crown, Krone, die, *w.*
crown-prince, Kronprinz, der, *w.*
cry, (call) ſchreien, *s.*; (weep) weinen, *w.*
cultivate, bilden, *w.*
cup, Taſſe, die, *w.*
cure, kurieren, *w.*
curiosity, Neugierde, die, *w.*
curiosities, natural —, Naturalien, die, *pl.*
curious, neugierig.
current, Strom, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
cushion, Kiſſen, das, *s.*[1]
custom, Sitte, die, *w.*

D

daily, täglich.
dame, Frau, die, *w.*
dance, tanzen, *w.*
dance, Tanz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); — music, Tanzmuſik, die, *w.*
danger, Gefahr, die, *w.*
dangerous, gefährlich.
dark, dunkel, finſter.
dart, ſchießen, *s.*
daughter, Tochter, die, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ö).
day, Tag, der, *s.*[2]; in the daytime, am Tage; one — (= some day, some time), einſt.
dazzle, blenden, *w.*
dead, tot; to be a — man, des Todes ſein.
dear, teuer, lieb.
death, Tod, der, *s.*[2] (§ 238, 1, *b*).
debt, Schuld, die, *w.*

deceased, verſtorben, *ppl. adj.*
deceive, (mislead) verführen, *w.*
December, Dezember, der, *s.*[1]
decide, entſcheiden, *s.*
deed, Tat, die, *w.*
deep, tief; — black, tiefſchwarz.
defend, verteidigen, *w.*
definite, beſtimmt.
degree, Grad, der, *s.*[2]
delight, Freude, die, *w.*
delight, to — in, ſich ergötzen (*w.*) an (*dat.*)
demand, verlangen, *w.*; fordern, *w.*
democrat, Demokrat, der, *w.*
denote, bezeichnen, *w.*
dense, dicht.
dentist, Zahnarzt, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -ärzte).
depart, abreiſen, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
departure, Aufbruch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
depend, abhängen, *s.* (on = von, *dat.*); — upon (rely), ſich verlaſſen (*s.*) auf (*acc.*)
depth, Tiefe, die, *w.*
describe, beſchreiben, *s.*
description, Beſchreibung, die, *w.*
deserve, verdienen, *w.*
desire, Luſt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
desk, Pult, der (*and* das) *s.*[2]
despise, verachten, *w.*
destination, Ziel, das, *s.*[2]
determine, ſich entſchließen, *s.*
devil, Teufel, der, *s.*[1]
dictionary, Wörterbuch, das, *s.*[3]
die, ſterben, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
differ, abweichen, *s.*
difference, Unterſchied, der, *s.*[2]
different, verſchieden; (otherwise) anders.
differently, anders.
difficult, ſchwierig, ſchwer.
difficulty, Schwierigkeit, die; (obstacle) Hindernis, das, *s.*[2]; (trouble) Mühe, die, *w.*
dig, graben, *s.*
diligent, fleißig.
direction, Richtung, die, *w.*; in the — of, entgegen (*dat.*)
directly, gleich.
director, Direktor, der, *mx.*
disagreeable, unangenehm.
disappear, verſchwinden, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
disappointment, Enttäuſchung, die, *w.*
discovery, Entdeckung, die, *w.*
discussion, Beſprechung, die, *w.*
disease, Krankheit, die, *w.*
disgrace, Schmach, die (*no pl.*)
disgraceful, ſchändlich.
displease, mißfallen, *s.* (*dat.*)
distance, (remoteness) Ferne, die, *w.*; (stretch) Strecke, die, *w.*
distant, entfernt.
distasteful, widerwärtig.
distinct, deutlich.
distinguish, unterſcheiden, *s.*
distress, Not, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
divide, teilen, *w.*
divided, be — into, zerfallen in (*acc.*)
do (*as aux. untranslated, e. g.* do you know, kennen Sie); tun, *s. irr.* (§ 185); machen, *w.*; to — an exercise, eine Aufgabe machen; that won't do, das geht nicht; (of the health) ſich befinden, *s.*; how do you do? wie befinden Sie ſich?
doctor, Doktor, der, *mx.*; doctor's title, Doktortitel, der, *s.*[1]
dog, Hund, der, *s.*[2]
dollar, Dollar, der, *s.* (*pl.* -s); Taler, der, *s.*[1]
door, Tür(e), die, *w.*
doubt, Zweifel, der, *s.*[1]; no —, wohl.
dozen, Dutzend, das, *s.*[2]
dragon, Drache, der, *w.*
drama, Drama, das, *mx.*
dramatic, dramatiſch.
draw, ziehen, *s.*
drawing, Zeichnung, die, *w.*
dream, Traum, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu).
dream, *v.* träumen, *w.*
dress, Kleid, das, *s.*[3]
drink, trinken, *s.*; (immoderately) ſaufen, *s.*
drive, (*trans.*) treiben, *s.*; — out, vertreiben; (*intrans.*) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
drop, Tropfen, der, *s.*[1]
drunken, betrunken.
dry, *adj.* trocken.

dry, *v.* trocknen, *w.*
duel, Zweikampf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
dull, langweilig.
during, während (*gen.*)
dust, Staub, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
duty, Pflicht, die, *w.*

E

each, jed- (§ 153); — other, sich, uns, euch (§ 123, 3), einander (*indcl.*)
eager, begierig.
eagle, Adler, der, *s.*[1]
ear, Ohr, das, *mx.*
early, früh.
earn, verdienen, *w.*
earth, Erde, die, *w.*
Easter, Ostern, *pl. only.*
easy, leicht; — chair, Lehnstuhl, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
eat, essen, *s.*; (of animals, or contemptuously of persons) fressen, *s.*
economical, sparsam.
economy, Sparsamkeit, die, *w.*
edge, Rand, der, *s.*[3]
edition, Ausgabe, die, *w.*
educate, erziehen, *s.*
effective, wirkungsvoll.
egg, Ei, das, *s.*[3]
either, *with negatives*, auch; nor I —, ich auch nicht; either . . . or, entweder . . . oder.
elderly, älter.
election, Wahl, die, *w.*
else, (otherwise) sonst; nothing —, nichts and(e)res.
emergency, Notfall, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
emperor, Kaiser, der, *s.*[1]
empire, Reich, das, *s.*[2]
employ, sich bedienen, *w.* (*with gen.*)
enclose, beilegen, *w.*
end, Schluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Schlüsse); Ende, das, *mx.*
endure, ertragen, *s.*
enemy, Feind, der, *s.*[2]
engaged, — to, verlobt mit (*dat.*)
English, englisch.
Englishman, Engländer, der, *s.*[1]
enjoy, genießen, *s.*; to — one's self, sich amüsieren, *w.*
enjoyment, Vergnügen, das, *s.*[1]
enough, genug (*indcl.*); to be —, genügen, *w.*
enter, eintreten (in, *acc.*); to — into, sich einlassen *s.* auf (*acc.*)
entertain, unterhalten.
entertaining(ly), unterhaltend.
entire(ly), ganz.
environs, Umgebung, die, *w.*
error, Irrtum, der, *s.*[3]
escape, entgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185), (*aux.* sein, *with dat.*)
especially, besonders.
essay, Aufsatz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
esteem, schätzen, *w.*
estimate, angeben, *s.*
eternal, ewig.
Europe, Europa, das (§ 225, 3).
evade, umgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
even, eben, sogar; — if, wenn auch, *sub. conj.*
evening, Abend, der, *s.*[2]; this —, heute abend; — paper, Abendzeitung, die, *w.*
ever, jemals.
everlasting, ewig.
every, jed- (§ 153); — other day, alle zwei Tage.
everyone jedermann (§ 153).
everything, alles (§ 146, 2).
everywhere, überall.
evident(ly), offenbar.
evil, *noun*, Übel, das, *s.*[1]
evil, *adj.* übel, böse.
exact, genau; (= altogether, entirely) ganz.
exactly, genau, gerade.
exaggerate, übertreiben, *s.*
examination, Examen, das (*pl.* -amina).
examine (look at), besehen, *s.*
example, Beispiel, das, *s.*[2]; for —, zum Beispiel (*abbreviated* z. B.)
exceedingly, äußerst.
excellent, trefflich.
except, *v.* ausnehmen, *s.*
except, *prep.* außer (*dat.*); — on, außer an.
exception, Ausnahme, die, *w.*
exclusively, lauter.

excursion, Ausflug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
exercise, (task) Aufgabe, die, *w.;* (practice) Übung, die, *w.*
exhausted, erschöpft.
expect, erwarten, *w.*
expense, Kosten, *pl. only.*
expensive, teuer.
experience, Erfahrung, die, *w.*
explain, erklären, *w.;* auseinandersetzen, *w.*
explanation, Erklärung, die, *w.*
exposition, Ausstellung, die, *w.*
express, ausdrücken, *w.;* aussprechen, *s.*
express, (= express train) Schnellzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
expression, Ausdruck, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
extent, Umfang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
exterior, äußer- (§ 290, 2).
extremely, äußerst.
eye, Auge, das, *mx.;* trouble with the —s, Augenleiden, das, *s.*[1]; disease of the —s, Augenkrankheit, die, *w.*

F

face, Gesicht, das, *s.*[3]
fact, Tatsache, die, *w.;* in —, in der Tat, eigentlich.
fail, fehlen, *w.;* — of, verfehlen (*gen.*)
fair, *adj.* schön.
fair, Messe, die, *w.*
faith, Glaube, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
faithful, treu.
faithfully, treulich.
fall, fallen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — down, hinunterfallen.
fall, (autumn) Herbst, der, *s.*[2]
false, falsch.
familiar, bekannt (to, *dat.*)
family, Familie, die, *w.;* — festival, Familienfest, das, *s.*[2]; — portait, Familienbild, das, *s.*[3]
famous, berühmt.
far, weit, fern; so — as, soweit, *sub. conj.;* — away, entfernt.
fare, Kost, die, *w.* (*no pl.*)
fashion, Mode, die, *w.;* it is the —, es ist in der Mode.
fast, *adj. adv.* schnell, rasch; (fixed, firm) fest.
fate, Schicksal, das, *s.*[2]
father, Vater, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä).
father-in-law, Schwiegervater, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä).
fatherland, Vaterland, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
fatigue, ermüden, *w.*
fault, Schuld, die, *w.;* it is his —, er ist schuld daran (*dat.*)
favor, Gefallen, der, *mx.* (§ 279, 2).
favorable, günstig (to, *dat.*)
favorite, Liebling, der, *s.*[2]; — color, Lieblingsfarbe, die, *w.*
fear, Furcht, die (*no pl.*)
fear, fürchten, *w.*
feather, Feder, die, *w.*
February, Februar, der, *s.*[2]
fee, Honorar, das, *s.*[2]
feel, fühlen, *w.;* (be sensible of) empfinden, *s.;* to — concerned, in Sorge sein; the fresh air —s good, die frische Luft tut einem wohl.
feeling, Gefühl, das, *s.*[2]; Gemüt, das, *s.*[3]; have a strange —, seltsam zu Mute sein (*dat. of pers.*)
fellow, Kerl, der, *s.*[2]; little —, Kerlchen, das, *s.*[1]
fertile, fruchtbar.
festival, Fest, das, *s.*[2]
fetch, holen, *w.*
fever, Fieber, das, *s.*[1]
few, wenige; a —, ein paar, einige.
fidelity, Treue, die (*no pl.*)
field, Feld, das, *s.*[3]
fifteen, fünfzehn.
fight, *intr.* fechten, *s.;* *tr.* kämpfen, *w.*
fill, (occupy) besetzen, *w.*
finally, endlich.
find, finden, *s.;* to — one's self, sich befinden; be found, sich finden.
fine, schön; (delicate) fein.
finger, Finger, der, *s.*[1]
finish, vollenden, *w.*
finished, (done) fertig; (over) vorüber.
fire, Feuer, das, *s.*[1]
firm, fest.

first, *adj.* erſt; *adv.* (not until) erſt; at —, zuerſt; in the — place, erſtens; (next) zunächſt.
fit, paſſen, *w.* (*dat.*)
five, fünf.
fix, richten, *w.*
flash, Blitz, der, *s.*[2]
flatter, ſchmeicheln, *w.* (*dat.*)
flattering, ſchmeichelhaft.
flee, — over, hinüberfliehen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
flight (of stairs), Treppe, die, *w.*
flow, fließen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein, cf. § 323, 1, *c*).
flower, Blume, die, *w.*
fluent(ly), geläufig.
fly, fliegen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — away (= flee), hinfliehen, *s.*(*aux.* ſein).
fog, Nebel, der, *s.*[1]
folk, Volk, das, *s.*[3]; — song, Volkslied, das, *s.*[3]; —lore, Volksſagen, *pl.*
follow, *intr.* folgen, *w.* (*aux.* ſein, *dat.*); *tr.* befolgen, *w.*
following, folgend, *ppl. adj.*
folly, Narrheit, die, *w.*
fond, be — of, lieb haben; grow — of, liebgewinnen, *s.*
fool, Narr, der, *w.*; Tor, der, *w.*
foot, Fuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); on —, zu Fuß; set — upon, betreten, *s.*
football, Fußball, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
footpad, Straßenräuber, der, *s.*[1]
for, *prep.* für (*acc.*), zu (*dat.*); (*of time since*) ſeit (*dat.*); *time how long expressed by acc. without prep.*; — example, — instance, zum Beiſpiel; to know — certain, gewiß (*or* ſicher) wiſſen.
for, *conj.* denn.
forbid, verbieten, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*)
force, *noun*, Kraft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); Gewalt, *w.*
force, *v.* zwingen, *s.*
foreign, fremd, ausländiſch; — land *or* country, Fremde, die, *w.*
forenoon, in the —, vormittags.
forest, Wald, der, *s.*[3]; Holz, das, *s.*[3]
forget, vergeſſen, *s.*
forgive, vergeben, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*)
fork, Gabel, die, *w.*
form, Geſtalt, die, *w.*
former, früher, vorig; der erſtere, jener (§ 130, 1).
formerly, früher.
forsake, verlaſſen, *s.*
fortunate, glücklich.
fortunately, glücklicherweiſe, zum Glück.
fortune, Glück, das, *s.* (*no pl.*); (property) Vermögen, das *s.*[1]
forty, vierzig.
forward, vorwärts.
fossil, Foſſil, das, *mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
foundation, Grund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
four, vier.
fourteen, vierzehn.
franc, Frank, der, *mx.*
frank, aufrichtig.
Frederick, Friedrich.
free, frei; — from, los (*acc.*)
freedom, Freiheit, die, *w.*; — of speech, Redefreiheit.
free-trade, Handelsfreiheit, die, *w.*
French, *adj.* franzöſiſch.
French (language), Franzöſiſch.
frequent, häufig.
fresh, friſch.
Friday, Freitag, der, *s.*[2]
friend, Freund, der, *s.*[2]; Freundin, die, *w.*; — of the workingmen (people), Volksfreund.
friendly, freundlich.
friendship, Freundſchaft, die, *w.*
fro, to and —, hin und her.
frog, Froſch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
from, von (*dat.*); (= out of), aus (*dat.*); from it *or* that, davon.
fruit, Frucht, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); (*collective*) Obſt, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
fulfill, erfüllen, *w.*
full, voll.
fully, vollends.
further, weiter.
furthermore, übrigens.
future, Zukunft, die (*no pl.*)
future, *adj.* künftig.

G

gain, gewinnen, *s.*
gallery, Gallerie, die, *w.*; picture —, Bildergallerie.
garden, Garten, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä).

gardener, Gärtner, der, *s.*[1]
gate, Tor, das, *s.*[2]; garden —, Gartentor.
gather, sammeln, versammeln, *w.*
gayety, Heiterkeit, die (*no pl.*)
general, allgemein; in —, überhaupt.
generous, freigebig.
genius, Genie, das (*pl.* -s).
gentle, sanft.
gentleman, Herr, der, *w.* (§ 94, 1).
genuine, wahr.
German, *adj.* deutsch.
German (language), Deutsch, das Deutsche (§ 290, 1).
Germany, Deutschland, das.
get, (obtain) bekommen, *s.*; (fetch) holen, *w.*; (= become) werden, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — into (a state or condition), geraten in, *s.* (*aux.* sein); where did you — that? woher haben Sie das?
get, — up (rise), aufstehen, *s.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein).
ghost, Geist, der, *s.*[3]; Gespenst, das, *s.*[3]
girl, Mädchen, das, *s.*[1]; —s' school, Mädchenschule, Töchterschule, die, *w.*
give, geben, *s.*; (present) schenken, *w.*; — back, zurückgeben; to — one headache, einem Kopfweh machen.
glad, froh; to be —, sich freuen, *w.*; I am — to hear that, ich höre das
gladly, gern. [gern.
glance, Blick, der, *s.*[2]
glass, Glas, das, *s.*[3]
glisten, glänzen, *w.*
glitter, glänzen, *w.*
glorious, herrlich.
glove, Handschuh, der, *s.*[2]
go, gehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* sein); (in any conveyance) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — walking, spazieren gehen; — driving, spazieren fahren; — against, entgegengehen; — into (enter upon), sich einlassen (auf, *acc.*); — out (there), hinausgehen; — over, hinübergehen; I am going, ich gehe; it is going to rain, es wird regnen.
goal, Ziel, das, *s.*[2]
God, Gott, der, *s.*; gods = Götter.
gold, Gold, das, *s.* (*no pl.*); — piece, Goldstück, das, *s.*[2]
golden, golden.
good, gut; (well-behaved) artig; — evening, guten Abend.
good-bye, auf Wiedersehen!
good-for-nothing, Taugenichts, der, (*pl.* -nichtse).
goodness, Güte, die, *w.*
goods, Gut, das, *s.*[3]
governess, Hauslehrerin, die, *w.*
governor, Vogt, Landvogt, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
gradual, allmählich.
grammar, Grammatik, die, *w.*
grand, herrlich; (= large) groß.
grandmother, Großmutter, die, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ü).
grant, gewähren, *w.*
grasp, fassen, *w.*; greifen, *s.*
grass, Gras, das, *s.*[3]
grateful, dankbar.
gratitude, Dankbarkeit, die, *w.*
grave, schwer.
gray, grau; turn —, ergrauen, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
great, groß.
Greek, Grieche, der, *w.*
Greek (language), Griechisch, das.
Greek, *adj.* griechisch.
green, grün.
greet, grüßen, *w.*
greeting, Gruß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üße).
grief, Schmerz, der, *mx.*
grieve, schmerzen, *w.*
ground, Boden, der (*pl.* ö); (= reason) Grund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
grow, wachsen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (= become) werden, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — up, aufwachsen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
guard, Wache, die, *w.*
guard, be on one's —, sich hüten, *w.* (against = vor, *dat.*)
guess, raten, *s.*; (infer) schließen, *s.*
guest, Gast, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
guide, Führer, der, *s.*[1]
guilt, Schuld, die, *w.*
guilty, schuldig.
gunpowder, Schießpulver, das, *s.*[1]

gymnasium, (a preparatory school) Gymnaſium, das, *mx.* (*pl.* -ien); — suit (for gymnastic exercises), Turnanzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).

H

habit, Sitte, die, *w.*
habitation, Wohnung, die, *w.*
hail! heil!
hair, Haar, das, *s.*[2]
half, halb; Hälfte, die, *w.;* the first —, die erſte Hälfte; — past nine, halb zehn; two and a half, zwei und ein halb, *or* drittehalb; one and a half, anderthalb.
hall, Saal, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Säle); concert —, Konzertſaal.
ham, Schinken, der, *s.*[1]
hammock, Hängematte, die, *w.*
hand, Hand, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); right at —, gleich in der Nähe.
hand, *v.* reichen, *w.*
handsome, ſchön.
hang, *intr.* hangen, *s.*
happen, geſchehen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); ſich zutragen, *s.;* as it happened, *adv. phrase,* zufälligerweiſe.
happiness, Glück, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
happy, froh, glücklich.
harbor, Hafen, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä).
hard, ſchwer.
hardly, kaum, ſchwerlich.
harm, Schade, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns, *pl.* Schäden); do —, ſchaden, *w.*
harsh, rauh.
Harz Mts., Harzgebirge, das, *s.*[1]
haste, Eile, die (*no pl.*)
hasten, eilen, *w.;* ſich beeilen, *refl. w.*
hastily, flüchtig.
hat, Hut, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
have, haben, *w. irr.* (§ 171); to — to, müſſen (§§ 189–191); to — done, tun laſſen (§ 366, 1, *a*).
he, er.
head, Kopf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö); Haupt, das, *s.*[3]
headache, Kopfſchmerz, der, *mx.;* Kopfweh, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
health, Geſundheit, die, *w.*
healthy, geſund.
hear, hören, *w.;* vernehmen, *s.*
heart, Herz, das, *mx.* (§ 97, 2, *a*); by —, auswendig.
hearth, Herd, der, *s.*[2]
hearty, herzlich.
heaven, Himmel, der, *s.*[1]
heavy, ſchwer; — rain, ſtarker Regen.
heed, achten, beachten, *w.* (§ 396, 1).
height, Höhe, die, *w.*
hell, Hölle, die, *w.*
help, helfen, *s.* (*dat.*); — one's self (at table), ſich bedienen (*gen.*)
help, Hilfe, die, *w.*
helpful, behilflich (to = *dat.*)
henceforth, fortan.
her, *acc.* ſie; *dat.* ihr; *poss.* ihr.
here, hier; — below, hienieden; (= hither) hierher.
hereafter, fortan.
herewith, hiermit.
hero, Held, der, *w.*
heroine, Heldin, die, *w.*
hide, verbergen, *s.*
high, hoch (§ 109, 1); — wind, ſtarker Wind.
Highness, (title) Hoheit, die, *w.*
hill, Hügel, der, *s.*[1]
him, *acc.* ihn; *dat.* ihm.
himself, *emphatic,* ſelbſt; *refl.* ſich.
hinder, hindern, verhindern, *w.*
hindrance, Hindernis, das, *s.*[2]
hire, Miete, die, *w.*
his, ſein.
historical, geſchichtlich, hiſtoriſch.
history, Geſchichte, die, *w.*
hit, — upon, treffen, *s.*
hither, her, hierher.
hold, halten, *s.;* — back, zurückhalten.
hole, Loch, das, *s.*[3]
holiday, Feiertag, der, *s.*[2]; —s (*collective*) Ferien, *pl.*
holy, heilig.
home, Heimat, die, *w.;* *adv.* nach Hauſe; = at home, zu Hauſe.
home-land, Heimat, die, *w.*
honest, redlich.
honesty, Redlichkeit, die, *w.*
honor, Ehre, die, *w.;* man of —, Ehrenmann, der, *s.*[3]
honor, *v.* ehren, *w.*

honorable, ehrlich; (bringing honor) ehrenvoll.
hope, Hoffnung, die, *w.*
hope, *v.* hoffen, *w.*
horror, Entſetzen, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
horse, Pferd, das, *s.*[2]
host, Wirt, der, *s.*[2]
hostile, feind (to = *dat.*)
hot, heiß.
hour, Stunde, die, *w.*
house, Haus, das, *s.*[3]; little —, Häuschen, das, *s.*[1]; at the — of, bei (*dat.*)
how, wie; — about? wie verhält es ſich mit?
however, indeſſen, jedoch.
howl, heulen, *w.*
human, menſchlich; — life, Menſchenleben, das, *s.*[1]
human being, Menſch, der, *w.*
hundred, hundert; a — times, hundertmal.
hungry, hungrig.
hunter, Jäger, der, *s.*[1]
hurry, eilen, *w.*; ſich beeilen, *refl. w.*
husband, Mann, der, *s.*[3]

I

I, ich.
idea, Gedanke, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns); Begriff, der, *s.*[2]
idle, (lazy) faul; (inactive) müßig.
idleness, Faulheit, die, *w.*
if, wenn, *sub. conj.*; (= whether) ob, *sub. conj.*; as —, als ob, als wenn (§ 359, 3).
ignite, anzünden, *w.*
ill, krank; (= evil) böſe.
illness, Krankheit, die, *w.*
imagine, *tr.* denken, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
immense, koloſſal.
immortal, unſterblich.
impart, mitteilen, *w.*
impatience, Ungeduld, die.
impatient, ungeduldig.
imperial, kaiſerlich.
import, (meaning) Inhalt, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
importance, Wichtigkeit, die, *w.*
important, wichtig.
impossible, unmöglich.
impression, Eindruck, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
improve, beſſern, *w.*
in, in (*dat. and acc.*); — the country, auf dem Lande; — the evening, am Abend; — order to, um zu, *with inf.*; — it, darin; — there, drinnen; — view of, bei, nach (*dat.*); — other words, mit andern Worten.
incapable, unfähig (of = *gen. or* zu *with dat.*)
inclined, geneigt, *pple.*
increase, Zuſchuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
indebted, ſchuldig, (to = *dat.*)
indeed, in der Tat, allerdings, zwar; yes —, ja wohl, *or* jawohl.
indisposed, unwohl.
indistinct(ly), undeutlich.
industrious, fleißig.
industry, Fleiß, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
infer, ſchließen, *s.*
influence, Einfluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
inform, — of, mitteilen.
information, Bericht, der, *s.*[2]
inhabit, bewohnen, *w.*
inhabitant, Bewohner, der, *s.*[1]
injury, Schade, der, *mx.* (*pl.* Schäden).
injustice, Unrecht, das, *s.*[2]
ink, Tinte, die, *w.*
inn, Gaſthaus, Wirtshaus, das, *s.*[3]
innkeeper, Wirt, der, *s.*[2]
innocence, Unſchuld, die (*no pl.*)
inside, drinnen.
insight, Einſicht, die, *w.*
insignificant, unbedeutend.
inspect, durchmuſtern, *w.*
instance, Beiſpiel, das, *s.*[2]; for —, zum Beiſpiel.
instantly, augenblicks.
instead of, anſtatt (*gen.*)
instruct, unterrichten. [*pl.*)
instruction, Unterricht, der, *s.* (*no*
instructive, lehrreich.
intelligence, Geiſt, der, *s.*[3]; Verſtand, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
intend, (*trans.* = destine) beſtimmen, *w.*; (purpose) vorhaben, *w. irr.* (§ 171), planen, *w.*; (*intrans.* = purpose) gedenken, *w. irr.* (§ 330).

interest, Intereſſe, das, *mx.*; object of —, Sehenswürdigkeit, die, *w.*
interest, *v.* intereſſieren *w.*; — one's self in, ſich annehmen, *s.*
interesting, intereſſant. [(*gen.*)
interrupt, unterbrechen, *s.*
intimate, näher.
into, in (*acc.*)
intolerable, unerträglich.
invent, erfinden, *s.*; — falsely, erlügen, *s.*
invention, Erfindung, die, *w.*
investigate, unterſuchen, *w.*
invitation, Einladung, die, *w.*
invite, einladen, *s.*
involve, gelten, *s.*
iron, Eiſen, das, *s.*[1]
is, iſt; is going, geht (cf. p. 37, n. 3); he is going to make, er macht (cf. p. 64, n. 4).
island, Inſel, die, *w.*
it, es; translate by forms of er or ſie when referring to masc. or fem. noun (§ 122, 1).
Italian, *adj.* italieniſch.

J

January, Januar, der, *s.*[2]
jest, Spaß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
jesting, Scherz, der, *s.*[2]
joke, Spaß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
jolly, luſtig.
journey, Reiſe, Fahrt, die, *w.*
joy, Freude, die, *w.*
judge, *v.* urteilen, *w.*
July, Juli, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
jump, ſpringen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
June, Juni, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
just, *adv.* (= only) nur, einmal; (= exactly) gerade; — ask, fragen Sie nur; *of time*, eben; — now, eben jetzt, ſoeben; just as . . . as, ebenſo . . . als.

K

keep, (= retain) behalten, *s.*; to — awake, wach bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — one's word, Wort halten, *s.*; keep (doing), immerfort (tun).
key, Schlüſſel, der, *s.*[1]
kill, töten, *w.*; umbringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); erſchlagen, *s.*
kind, Art, die, *w.*; what — of, was für (§ 145).
kind, freundlich.
kindness, Güte, die, *w.*
king, König, der, *s.*[2]
kitchen, Küche, die, *w.*
knee, Knie, das, *s.*[2]
knife, Meſſer, das, *s.*[1]
knight, Ritter, der, *s.*[1]
knew, I —, he —, ich, er wußte.
knock, klopfen.
know, = to be acquainted with, kennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); *in other cases*, wiſſen, *irr.* (§ 190).
knowledge, Kenntnis, die, *s.*[2]; Wiſſen, das, *s.* (*no pl.*); to my —, meines Wiſſens.
known, bekannt; it is —, man weiß; as is well —, bekanntermaßen.

L

labor, Arbeit, die, *w.*
lack, be —ing, fehlen, *w.* (*impers. with dat.*); (= do without) entbehren, *w.* (*gen.*)
lack, Mangel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä).
lady, Dame, Frau, die, *w.*; young —, Fräulein, das, *s.*[1]
lake, See, der, *mx.*
land, Land, das, *s.* [2, 3] (p. 49, n. 7).
landlady, Wirtin, die, *w.*
landlord, Wirt, der, *s.*[2]
language, Sprache, die, *w.*; — lesson, Sprachſtunde, die, *w.*; — study, Sprachſtudium, das, *mx.*; — of flowers, Blumenſprache, die, *w.*
large, groß (§ 114, 3).
last, letzt, vorig; the — days, die letzten Tage; — year, voriges Jahr; — evening, geſtern abend; at —, endlich.
last, (continue) dauern, *w.*; (exist) beſtehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
late, ſpät; at the latest, ſpäteſtens; of —, in der letzten Zeit; latest news, neueſte Nachrichten.

lately, kürzlich, neulich.
Latin, Latein, das, *s.*
Latin, *adj.* lateinisch.
latter, der letztere, dieser (§ 130, 1).
laugh, lachen, *w.*
law, Gesetz, das, *s.*[2]
lawyer, Advokat, der, *w.*
lay, legen, *w.*
laziness, Faulheit, die, *w.*
lazy, faul.
lead, führen, *w.*
lead-pencil, Bleistift, der, *s.*[2]
leaf, Blatt, das, *s.*[3]
league, Bund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
learn, lernen, *w.;* (= ascertain) erfahren, *s.*
learned, gelehrt, *ppl. adj.*
least, am wenigsten; at —, wenigstens, mindestens.
leave, verlassen, *s.;* — for, abreisen nach, *w.* (*aux.* sein).
left, — hand, link; (= remaining) übrig.
legend, Sage, die, *w.*
lend, leihen, *s.;* — a hand, die Hände reichen, *w.*
length, Länge, die, *w.*
lesson, Lektion, die, *w.*
let, lassen, *s.; often translated by subj.;* — him have, er habe; — us go, gehen wir.
letter, Brief, der, *s.*[2]; —carrier, Briefträger, der, *s.*[1]
liberal, freigebig.
liberty, Freiheit, die, *w.*
library, Bibliothek, die, *w.*
lie (be situated), liegen, *s.*
lie (speak falsely), lügen, *s.*
life, Leben, das, *s.*[1]; city —, Stadtleben; live a —, ein Leben führen.
lift, heben, *s.*
light, Licht, das, *s.*[3]; northern —s, Nordlicht.
light, *adj.* (easy, not heavy) leicht; (not dark) hell; make — of, spotten (*gen.*)
light, *v.* anzünden, anstecken, *w.*
lightning, Blitz, der, *s.*[2]
like, *adj.* gleich; the —, dergleichen; *adv.* wie.
like, *v.* gern haben, lieb haben, *w irr.;* mögen (§§ 189, 191, 3); I should — company, ich hätte gern Gesellschaft; to — to do, gern tun; to — best, am liebsten haben.
likewise, gleichfalls.
limit, einschränken, *w.*
linden (tree), Linde, die, *w.*
line, Zeile, die, *w.*
literature, Literatur, die, *w.*
little, *often to be translated by a diminutive in* chen *or* lein; (of size) klein; (of quantity) wenig; a —, ein wenig, ein bißchen; the — ones, die Kleinen.
live, leben, *w.;* (= dwell, reside) wohnen, *w.*
lively, lebhaft.
location, Lage, die, *w.*
lock, verschließen, *s.*
lofty, hoch.
London, London; *adj.* Londoner (§ 109, 2); — weather, Londoner Wetter.
long, *adj.* lang; *as adv.* lang(e),
long, *v.* sich sehnen, *w.* (for = nach, *dat.*)
longer, no —, nicht mehr.
look, — for, suchen, *w.;* — at, besehen, *s.*, betrachten, *w.;* — forward to, entgegensehen, *s.* (*dat.*); — on, schauen, *w.;* — into, schauen in (*acc.*); = seem, appear, aussehen, *s.*
look (= glance), Blick, der, *s.*[2]
Lord, Herr, der, *w.*
lose, verlieren, *s.;* — one's way, sich verirren, *w.*
lost, verloren, *ppl. adj.;* to be —, get —, verloren gehen.
lot, fall to the — of, zu teil werden (*dat. of pers.*)
Louis, Ludwig.
lounge, Sofa, das, *s.* (*pl.* -s).
love, lieben, *w.*
love, Liebe, die, *w.;* in — with, verliebt in (*acc.*); — scene, Liebesscene, die, *w.*
lovely, (beautiful) schön; (amiable) lieblich, liebenswürdig.
low, niedrig; (of the voice) leise.

lower, *adj.* unter.
luck, Glück, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
luckily, zum Glück, glücklicherweise.
lucky, glücklich.

M

mad, toll.
madam, Madame (*Fr.*), gnädige Frau.
maid, —-servant, Magd, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
mail, Post, die, *w.*
main, (in compounds) Haupt-; Main Street, Hauptstraße, die, *w.*
majesty, Majestät, die, *w.*
majority, Mehrheit, die, *w.*
make, machen; to — the acquaintance of, kennen lernen, *w.*
man, Mann, der, *s.*[3]; (= human being) Mensch, der, *w.*; man-of-the-house, Wirt, der, *s.*[2]; Hausherr, der, *w.*; man teacher, Lehrer, der, *s.*[1]
mankind, Menschen, die, *w. pl.*
man-of-war, Kriegsschiff, das, *s.*[2]
manifold, mannigfaltig.
manner, Weise, die, *w.*
many, viele, manche; — a, manch (§ 157).
mark, Mark, die, *w.*
marriage, Heirat, die, *w.*
marvellous, wunderbar.
mass, Menge, die, *w.*
master, Meister, der, *s.*[1]; Herr, der, *w.* (§ 94, 1); —work, Meisterwerk, das, *s.*[2]
mathematics, Mathematik, die.
matter, Sache, die, *w.*; — of business, Geschäftssache; small —, Kleinigkeit, die, *w.*; in the — of, in betreff, *with gen.*; it is a — of, es gilt (*from* gelten); what is the — with her? was ist ihr? was fehlt ihr? no —, gleichviel.
may, mögen, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
May, Mai, der, *s.*[2]
me, *acc.* mich; *dat.* mir.
meal, Mahlzeit, die, *w.*
mean, meinen, *w.*; bedeuten, *w.*; I —, ich meine; the word —s, das Wort bedeutet.
means, by no —, keineswegs.
meanwhile, indessen.
meat, Fleisch, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
medicine, (drugs) Arznei, die, *w.*; (the science) Medizin, die, *w.*
meet, treffen, *s.*; begegnen, *w.* (*aux.* sein, cf. § 323, 1, *d*, *dat.*)
meeting, Versammlung, die, *w.*
mention, gedenken, *w.* (*gen.*)
merchant, Kaufmann, der, *s.*[3] (§ 238, 2, *a*).
mere(ly), bloß.
messenger, Bote, der, *w.*
method, Methode, die, *w.*
middle, mittel (§ 103, 2); of — age, mittleren Alters.
Middle Ages, Mittelalter, das (*no pl.*)
mighty, mächtig.
mild, mild.
mile, Meile, die, *w.*
milk, Milch, die (*no pl.*)
mind, Sinn, der, *s.*[2]
mindful, gedenk (of = *gen.*)
mineral, Mineral, das, *mx.* (*pl.* -ien).
minute, Minute, die, *w.*
mirror, Spiegel, der, *s.*[1]
miserable, elend.
misfortune, Unglück, das (*no pl.*)
missing, fehlend; be —, fehlen, *w.*
mist, Nebel, der, *s.*[1]
mistake, Fehler, der, *s.*[1]; Irrtum, der, *s.*[3]
mistaken, be —, sich irren, *w.*
modern, *comp. of* neu.
moment, Augenblick, der, *s.*[2]
Monday, Montag, der, *s.*[2]
money, Geld, das, *s.*[3]
monk, Mönch, der, *s.*[2]
monkey, Affe, der, *w.*
month, Monat, der, *s.*[2]
monthly (periodical), Monatsschrift, die, *w.*
monument, Denkmal, das, *s.*[2, 3]
mood, Stimmung, die, *w.*
moon, Mond, der, *s.*[2]
moonlight, Mond[en]schein, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
moonlight, *adj.* mondhell.
moral, sittlich, moralisch.

more, *comp.* (§§ 111–114); mehr (§ 158); the —, the, je mehr, deſto; *with numerals*, noch; one more book, noch ein Buch.
moreover, übrigens.
morning, Morgen, der, *s.*[1]; — light, Morgenlicht, das, *s.*[3]; good —, guten Morgen; this —, heute morgen; to-morrow —, morgen früh; — breeze, Morgenluft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
morrow, to-morrow, morgen, *adv.* day after —, übermorgen.
most, *superl.* (§§ 111–114); a — interesting city, eine höchſt (or äußerſt) intereſſante Stadt; at the —, höchſtens.
mostly, meiſtens.
mother, Mutter, die, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ü).
motion, Bewegung, die, *w.*
mount, ſteigen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
mountain, Berg, der, *s.*[2]; 'mountains' = mountain-range, or mountain-country, Gebirge, das,
mouth, Mund, der, *s.*[2, 3] [*s.*[1]
much, viel.
multitude, Menge, die, *w.*
museum, Muſeum, das, *mx.* (*pl.* Muſeen).
music, Muſik, die, *w.*; — lesson, Muſikſtunde, die, *w.*
must, müſſen (§§ 189–191); — not (in prohibitions), nicht dürfen.
my, mein; *see*, *however*, p. 31, n. 4.
myself, *emphatic*, ſelbſt; *refl. acc.* mich, *dat.* mir.
mystery, Geheimnis, das, *s.*[2]

N

name, Name, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns); by — of, namens.
name, *v.* nennen, *w. irr.* (§ 330); (= appoint) ernennen.
namely, nämlich.
narrative, Erzählung, die, *w.*
narrow, eng.
nation, Volk, das, *s.*[3]; Nation, die, *w.*
native, — country *or* land, Vaterland, das, *s.*; Heimat, die, *w.*
natural, natürlich; — curiosities, Naturalien, die, *pl.*; — science, Naturwiſſenſchaft, die, *w.*
naturally, natürlich.
nature, Natur, die, *w.*
near, nah (§114, 2); in der Nähe von.
nearly, faſt, beinahe.
neat, nett.
necessary, nötig, notwendig (to = *dat.*)
neck, Hals, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
need, (distress) Not, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); (necessity) Bedürfnis, das, *s.*[2]; case of —, Notfall, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
need, *v.* brauchen, *w.*; bedürfen, *w. irr.* (*gen.*)
negative, answer in the —, verneinen, *w.*
neglect, vernachläſſigen, *w.*
neighbor, Nachbar, der, *mx.*
neither, *pron.* keiner (-e, -es); *conj.* neither . . . nor, weder . . . noch.
nephew, Neffe, der, *w.*
nest, Neſt, das, *s.*[3]
never, nie, niemals.
nevertheless, jedoch, trotzdem, nichtsdeſtoweniger.
new, neu.
news, Nachricht, die, *w.* (*usually in pl.*); what's the —? was gibt's Neues?
newspaper, Zeitung, die, *w.*
next, nächſt (§ 114, 2), künftig; *adv.* weiter.
nice, hübſch, nett.
nickname, Spitzname, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
night, Nacht, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); in the —, des Nachts.
nightingale, Nachtigall, die, *w.*
nine, neun.
ninety, neunzig.
No., at —, Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*)
no, *adj.* kein; *neg. adv.* nein; — worse, nicht ſchlechter; once and — more, einmal und nicht wieder; — doubt one needs a long time, man braucht wohl eine lange Zeit.

no one, niemand.
noble, edel.
nobleman, Edelmann, der, *s.*[3] (§ 238, 2, *a*).
none, kein, — but, lauter.
nonsense, Unsinn, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
noon, Mittag, der, *s.*[2]
nor, noch; — I either, ich auch nicht.
north, Norden, der, *s.*[1]
northern lights, Nordlicht, das, *s.*[3]
nose, Nase, die, *w.*
not, nicht; — a, kein; — at all, gar nicht.
notably, bedeutend.
note, Notiz, die, *w.*
note, merken, *w.*
nothing, nichts.
notice, merken, bemerken.
novel, Roman, der, *s.*[2]
now, nun, jetzt (§ 380, 1, *f*); — and then, dann und wann; — here is something, hier ist nun etwas; — guess, raten Sie einmal, *or* nun einmal.
nowadays, heutzutage.
number, Anzahl, die (*no pl.*); (= great —) Menge, die, *w.*
Number, at —, Numero, *m.* (*indcl.*)
numerous, zahlreich.
nut, Nuß, die, *s.* (*pl.* Nüsse).

O

obedience, Gehorsam, *m. s.* (*no pl.*)
obey, gehorchen, *w.* (*dat.*)
object, Zweck, der, *s.*[2]; — of interest, Sehenswürdigkeit, die, *w.*
obliged, be — to, müssen (§§ 189, 191).
obtain, bekommen, *s.*
occupant, Bewohner, der, *s.*[1]
occupy, (take possession of, fill) besetzen, *w.*; (busy) beschäftigen, *w.*
occur, vorkommen, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — to, einfallen, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*)
ocean, See, die, *w.*; — voyage, Seereise, die, *w.*, Seefahrt, die, *w.*
of, *usually translated by genitive*; von (*dat.*) *especially before proper names or where the case would not otherwise be clear*; a majority of 200 votes, eine Mehrheit von 200 Stimmen; a quantity — minerals, eine Menge Mineralien (§ 246, 1, *a*); — course, natürlich; — it *or* that, davon.
offer, (tender to a person) bieten, anbieten, *s.*; (present) darbieten.
office, Amt, das, *s.*[3]
often, oft, häufig.
oh, o, ach; — that's it! ach so!
old, alt.
olden, älter.
Olympus, Olymp, der, *s.*
on, an (*dat. and acc.*); auf (*dat. and acc.*); — the river (of a boat), auf dem Flusse; (of a house, city, *etc.*), an dem Flusse; — the side, auf der Seite; — the study (= concerning), über das Studium; — your head, auf dem Kopfe; — the first of May, am ersten Mai; — business of state, in Staatsgeschäften; — account of, wegen (*gen.*); — my account, meinetwegen.
once, (= one time) ein'mal; (= just, pray, once upon a time) einmal'; (= sometime) einst; — more, wieder, nochmals; at — (= immediately) sofort, sogleich; all at — (= suddenly), auf einmal.
one, *adj.* ein; *indef. pron.* man, einer (§§ 149, 156).
only, *adj.* einzig; *adv.* nur, bloß, allein; (of time) erst.
open, *adj.* offen.
open, *v.* öffnen, *w.*
opera, Oper, die, *w.*
opinion, Ansicht, Meinung, die *w.*
opponent, Gegner, der, *s.*[1]
opportunity, Gelegenheit, die, *w.*
opposite, gegenüber (*dat. usually follows governed word*).
oppression, Drang, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
or, oder.

order, in — to, um zu, *with inf.*
ordinary, (= common) gemein; (= usual) gewöhnlich.
origin, Urſprung, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
other, ander; each —, einander (*indecl.*)
otherwise, (= differently) anders; (= else) ſonſt.
ought, I —, ich ſollte, ich hätte ſollen (§§ 189, 191).
our, unſer.
out, — of, aus, (*dat.*); — there, draußen.
outrageous, unverſchämt.
outside, draußen.
over, *prep.* über (*dat. and acc.*); *adv.* (= past) vorüber; — night, die Nacht über; — yonder, drüben, dort drüben.
over, *adj.* (= left, remaining) übrig.
owe, ſchuldig ſein (*dat. of pers.*)
own, eigen.
owner, Eigentümer, der, *s.*[1]
ownership, Eigentum, das, *s.*[3]; Eigentumsrecht, das, *s.*[2]

P

page, Seite, die, *w.*
pain, Schmerz, der, *mx.*; Pein, *f.* (*no pl.*)
pain, *v.* ſchmerzen *w.*
pains, Mühe, die, *w.*
painter, Maler, der, *s.*[1]
painting, (picture) Gemälde, das, *s.*[1]; (the art of —) Malerei, die.
pair, Paar, das, *s.*[2]
palace, Palaſt, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); Schloß, das, *s.*[3]
pale, bleich.
paper, Papier, das, *s.*[2]; (= newspaper) Zeitung, die, *w.*
pardon, verzeihen, *s.* (*dat. of pers.*)
parents, Eltern, die, *pl. only.*
park, Park, der, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* Parks).
part, Teil, der, *s.*[2]; (= share) das, *s.*[2]; (= role) Rolle, die, *w.*
particularly, beſonders.
partly, teils.
pass, *intr.* (away) vergehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein); — by, vorbeigehen; *tr.* (of time, = spend) verbringen, zubringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
passage (in a book), Stelle, die, *w.*
past, *adv.* vorüber; half — nine, halb zehn.
pastor, Paſtor, der, *mx.*
path, Pfad, der, *s.*[2]
patience, Geduld, die (*no pl.*)
pause, Pauſe, die *w.*
pay, Lohn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
pay, *v.* bezahlen, *w.*
peace, Friede, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
peak, Gipfel, der, *s.*[1]
peasant, Bauer, der, *mx.*
peculiar, ſonderbar.
pen, Feder, die, *w.*; — drawing, Federzeichnung, die, *w.*
penalty, Strafe, die, *w.*
pencil, Bleiſtift, der, *s.*[2]
penny, Pfennig, der, *s.*[2]
people, (= persons) Leute, *pl. only*; Menſchen, *w. pl.*; (= nation) Volk, das, *s.*[3]; — live, die Leute leben.
per cent, Prozent, das, *s.*[2]
perfect, vollkommen.
perform (a task), löſen, *w.*
performance, Vorſtellung, die, *w.*
perhaps, vielleicht; — I ought to, ich ſollte wohl.
perilous, gefährlich.
perish, untergehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein).
permit, erlauben, *w.* (*dat. of pers.*)
permitted, be —, dürfen (§§ 189–191).
person, Perſon, die, *w.*
pfennig, Pfennig, der, *s.*[2]
philosophy, Philoſophie, die, *w.*
photograph, Photographie, die, *w.*
physician, Arzt, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* Ä).
piano, Klavier, das, *s.*[2]; — lesson, Klavierſtunde, die, *w.*
picture, Bild, das, *s.*[3]; — gallery, Bildergallerie, die, *w.*; — book, Bilderbuch, das, *s.*[3]; (illustration) Abbildung, die, *w.*
pick, brechen, *s.*
piece, Stück, das, *s.*[2]

piece-of-luck, Glück, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
pious, fromm.
pipe, Pfeife, die, *w.*
pithy, kräftig.
pity, it is a —, es ist schade.
pity, *v.* bedauern; sich erbarmen (*with gen.*)
place, Platz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); Stelle, die, *w.*; Stätte, die, *w.*; (town) Ort, der, *s.*[2, 3]; — of interest, Sehenswürdigkeit, die, *w.*; in the first —, erstens.
place, take —, stattfinden, *s.*
plain, Ebene, die, *w.*
plain, *adj.* (= evident) offenbar; (= distinct) deutlich.
plan, Plan, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
plan, *v.* entwerfen, *s.*; Pläne machen.
plate, Teller, der, *s.*[1]
play, *v.* spielen, *w.*
play, (= game) Spiel, das, *s.*[2]; (= drama) Drama, das, *mx.*; Stück, das, *s.*[2]
playmate, Spielkamerad, der, *w.*
pleasant, angenehm.
please, gefallen, *s.* (*dat.*); = if you please, (ich) bitte.
pleasure, Freude, die, *w.*; Vergnügen, das, *s.*[1]; take — in, sich ergötzen an (*dat.*)
plentiful, reichlich.
plenty, Fülle, die, *w.*
plumbing, Wasserleitung, die, *w.*
pocket, Tasche, *w.*; — money, Taschengeld, das, *s.*[3]
poem, Gedicht, das, *s.*[2]
poet, Dichter, der, *s.*[1]
poetic, poetisch.
poetry, Dichtung, die, *w.*; Dichtkunst, die, *s.* (*no pl.*)
point, Punkt, der, *s.*[2]; (= sharp —) Spitze, die, *w.*; it is on the — of striking, es will eben schlagen; — of view, Gesichtspunkt.
point (to), deuten (auf, *acc.*) *w.*
police, Polizei, die, *w.*
policeman, Polizist, der, *w.*
polite, höflich.
politeness, Höflichkeit, die, *w.*
political, politisch.
politics, Politik, die, *w.*
poodle, Pudel, der, *s.*[1]
poor, arm; (= bad, inferior) schlecht.
position, (location) Lage, die, *w.*; (employment) Stellung, die, *w.*
possess, besitzen, *s.*
possession, take — of, sich bemächtigen (*gen.*)
possible, möglich.
post, (= mail) Post, die, *w.*
pound, Pfund, das, *s.*[2]
pour, gießen, *s.*
powder, Pulver, das, *s.*[1]
power, Kraft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
powerful, kräftig, gewaltig.
practice, Übung, die, *w.*
practice, *v.* üben, *w.*
praise, loben, *w.*
prank, Streich, der, *s.*[2]
pray, *interj.* nur (p. 45, n. 10); — come along, kommen Sie nur mit; how old are you, —? wie alt sind Sie denn?
prefer, lieber haben, *w. irr.*; lieber mögen (§§ 189–191); vorziehen, *s.*
preparation, Vorbereitung, die, *w.*
preparatory, — school, Vorbereitungsschule, die, *w.*
present, (= gift) Geschenk, das, *s.*[2]
present, *v.* schenken, *w.*
present, for the —, vorläufig.
preserve, erhalten, *s.*
president, Präsident, der, *w.*
presidential, — election, Präsidentenwahl, die, *w.*
press, Presse, die, *w.*; freedom of the —, Preßfreiheit, die, *w.*
press, *v.* — in, eindringen in, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
presume, I —, wohl.
pretty, *adj.* hübsch.
pretty, *adv.* ziemlich.
prevent, hindern, verhindern.
prey, fall a — to, verfallen (to = *dat.*) *s.* (*aux.* sein).
price, Preis, der, *s.*[2]
prince, Prinz, der, *w.*
principal, Kapital, das, *s.*[2] (*pl. also* -ien).
principal, *adj. in compounds* = Haupt-.

prisoner, Gefangene(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
private, — teacher, Privatlehrer, der, *s.*[1]
prize, Preis, der, *s.*[2]
probable (probably), wahrſcheinlich; that is probably an invention, das mag wohl eine Erfindung ſein.
professor, Profeſſor, der, *mx.*
proficiency, Fertigkeit, die, *w.*
prolog, Prolog, der, *s.*[2]
promise, *v.* verſprechen, *s.*
promise, Verſprechen, das, *s.*[1]
pronunciation, Ausſprache, die, *w.*
proof, Beweis, der, *s.*[2]
prop, Stütze, die, *w.*
proper(ly), eigentlich.
property, (= possession) Eigentum, das, *s.*[3]; (= wealth) Vermögen, das, *s.*[1]; (= characteristic) Eigenſchaft, die, *w.*
prophet, Prophet, der, *w.*
propose, vorſchlagen, *s.*
prose, Proſa, die (*no pl.*)
proud, ſtolz.
prove, beweiſen, *s.*
proverb, Sprichwort, das, *s.*[3]
Prussia, Preußen, das.
public, Publikum, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
pulpit, Kanzel, die, *w.*
punish, beſtrafen, *w.*
punishment, Strafe, die, *w.*
pupil, Schüler, der, *s.*[1]
purchase, Kauf, Einkauf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu).
purpose, Zweck, der, *s.*[2]
purse, Beutel, der, *s.*[1]
put, (= set) ſetzen, *w.*; (= stick) ſtecken; to — up with (something), ſich (etwas) gefallen laſſen, *s.*

Q

quaint, ſeltſam.
quality, Eigenſchaft, die, *w.*
quantity, Menge, die, *w.* (§ 246, 1, *a*)
quarrel, Streit, der, *s.*[2]
quarter, Viertel, das, *s.*[1]; (= 25 cents) Vierteldollar, der, *s.* (*pl.* -s); a — to 10, drei Viertel (auf) 10.
queen, Königin, die, *w.*
question, Frage, die, *w.*; it is a — of, es handelt ſich um (*acc.*); in —, *adj. phrase*, betreffend, *ppl. adj.*
quick, ſchnell.
quiet, ruhig, ſtill; (soft) ſanft.
quite, ganz.

R

rail, (= railway) Eiſenbahn, die, *w.*; by —, mit der Eiſenbahn.
rain, *v.* regnen, *w.*
rain, Regen, der *s.*[1]; —y day, Regentag, der, *s.*[2]
rainy, regneriſch.
range, Umfang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
rapid, ſchnell.
rare, ſelten.
rate, at any —, jedenfalls, wenigſtens.
rather, vielmehr; (= preferably) lieber.
raw, (of weather) rauh.
ray, Strahl, der, *mx.*
reach, reichen; (= arrive at) erreichen, *w.*
read, leſen, *s.*
reader, Leſer, der, *s.*[1]; (= reading-book) Leſebuch, das, *s.*[3]
readily, leicht.
reading, Lektüre, die, *w.*; — book, Leſebuch, das, *s.*[3]
ready, (prepared) bereit; (finished) fertig.
real, wirklich, eigentlich, wahr.
really, wirklich, wahrhaft, eigentlich.
reason, Grund, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); Urſache, die, *w.*
receive, bekommen, *s.*; erhalten, *s.*; (guests) empfangen, *s.*
recently, neulich.
recess, Pauſe, die, *w.*
recite, deklamieren, *w.*
reckon, rechnen, *w.* (on = auf, *acc.*)
recommend, empfehlen, *s.*
red, rot; — with, rot von.
redound, gereichen, *w.* (§ 259, *a*).
reference, Bezug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); in — to, in Bezug auf (*acc.*)
reform, Reform, die, *w.*

regard, Betreff, der, *s.* (*no pl.*); Bezug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); Rückſicht, die, *w.*; in — to, in betreff *or* betreffs (*with gen.*); in Bezug auf (*acc.*); mit Rückſicht auf (*acc*); über (*acc*).
regard, *v.* halten für (cf. § 265, 3, *c*).
region, Gegend, die, *w.*
regret, Reue, die, *w.*
regret, *v.* bereuen, *w.*
regular, regelmäßig; (= thoro) vollkommen.
rejoice, *trans.* freuen, *w.*; *intrans.* ſich freuen, *w.*
relate, erzählen, *w.*
related, be —, ſich verhalten, *s.*
relation, Verhältnis, das, *s.*[2]
relative, Verwandte(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
rely (upon), ſich verlaſſen (auf, *acc.*) *s.*
remain, bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); (be left) übrig bleiben; I — (at close of a letter) ich verbleibe.
remaining, übrig.
remark, bemerken, *w.*
remarkable, merkwürdig.
remember, ſich erinnern, *w.* (*with gen.*)
remind, erinnern, *w.* (of = an, *acc.*)
renounce, entſagen, *w.* (*dat.*)
rent, Miete, die, *w.*
repay, belohnen, *w.*
repeat, wiederholen, *w.*
repeatedly, wiederholt.
repentance, Reue, die, *w.*
reply, erwidern.
report, Bericht, der, *s.*[2]; (= news) Nachricht, die, *w.*
report, *v.* berichten, *w.*
represent, darſtellen, *w.*
republic, Republik, die, *w.*
republican, Republikaner, der, *s.*[1]
repulsive, abſtoßend, *ppl. adj.*
reputation, Ruhm, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
request, *v.* bitten, *s.*
request, Bitte, die, *w.*
require, verlangen, *w.*
rescue, retten, *w.*
resemble, gleichen, *s.* (*dat.*)
reserve, reſervieren, *w.*
residence, Wohnung, die, *w.*
resolve, ſich entſchließen, *s.*
respect, Betreff, der, *s.* (*no pl.*); Hinſicht, die, *w.*; in — to, in betreff (*with gen.*); in this —, in dieſer Hinſicht.
rest, Ruhe, die (*no pl.*)
rest, *v.* ruhen, *w.*; — one's self, ſich ausruhen, *refl. w.*
rest, the — (remainder), das übrige.
restless, unruhig.
result, Folge, die, *w.*
resume, wiederaufnehmen, *s.*
retain, behalten, *s.*
return, *v.* wiederkehren, zurückkehren, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
return, Rückkehr, die, *w.*; (= way back) Rückweg, der, *s.*[2]; — journey, Rückreiſe, die, *w.*
reward, Lohn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
reward, *v.* belohnen, *w.*
rheumatism, Rheumatismus, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
Rhine, Rhein, der, *s.*
ribbon, Band, das, *s.*[3]
rich, reich.
riches, Reichtum, der, *s.*[3]
rid of, los (*with acc.*)
riddle, Rätſel, das, *s.*[1]
ride, (in a conveyance) fahren, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); (on horseback) reiten, *s.* (*aux.* ſein, cf. § 323, 1, *c.*)
rider, Reiter, der, *s.*[1]
right, *adj.* (= proper) recht; (= correct) richtig; right hand, recht; to be —, recht haben; *adv.* — before, gerade vor; — at, ſchon an; (= very) — good, recht gut.
right, Recht, das, *s.*[2]
rightly, mit Recht.
ring, Ring, der, *s.*[2]
ripe, reif.
rise, (= mount) ſteigen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); (= get up) aufſtehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein); (of the sun) aufgehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein).
rise, (= rising) Aufgang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).

risk, Gefahr, die, *w.*
river, Fluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe).
rob, rauben, *w.*; — of (*tr.*) berauben.
robber, Räuber, der, *s.*[1]
rock, Felſen, der, *s.*[1] (§ 279, 2, *a*).
rock, *v.* ſchaukeln, *w.*
rocking, — chair, Schaukelſtuhl, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); — -horse, Schaukelpferd, das, *s.*[2]
rogue, Schelm, der, *s.*[2]
rôle, Rolle, die, *w.*
roll (bread), Semmel, die, *w.*
Roman, römiſch.
roof, Dach, das, *s.*[3]
room, (= space, place) Platz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); (apartment) Zimmer, das, *s.*[1]; adjoining —, Nebenzimmer.
rose, Roſe, die, *w.*
rough, rauh.
route, Reiſeplan, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
row, Reihe, die, *w.*
row-boat, Kahn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
royal, königlich.
ruin, verderben, *s.*
rule, Regel, die, *w.*; as a —, in der Regel.
rule, *v.* herrſchen, *w.*
rumor, Gerücht, das, *s.*[2]
run, (of motion) laufen, *s.*; — away, davonlaufen; — to meet, entgegenlaufen; (of water) rinnen, *s.* (all with *aux.* ſein); (= purport) lauten, *w.*

S

sad, traurig.
saddle, Sattel, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä); — horse, Reitpferd, das, *s.*[2]
safe, ſicher.
Saint (title), der Heilige.
sake, for the — of, um . . . (*gen.*) . . . willen; for your —, um deinetwillen, um Ihretwillen (§§ 127, 306, 1).
salamander, Salamander, der, *s.*[1]
same, the —, derſelbe (§ 134); just the —, gleichviel, *adv.*
sapling, Bäumchen, das, *s.*[1]
satisfied, zufrieden.
satisfy, befriedigen, *w.*
Saturday, Samstag, Sonnabend, der, *s.*[2]
save, (= rescue) retten; (of money) ſparen, erſparen, *w.*; — up, aufſparen, *w.*
saving, ſparſam.
savior, Retter, der, *s.*[1]
say, ſagen, *w.*; *often to be translated by a form of* ſollen (§ 191, 5); that is to —, nämlich, *adv.*
saying, Spruch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
scamp, Schelm, der, *s.*[2]
scarcely, kaum, ſchwerlich.
scene, (of a drama) Scene, die, *w.*; (place of occurrence) Schauplatz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
scholar, (pupil) Schüler, der, *s.*[1]; (learned man) Gelehrte(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
school, Schule, die, *w.*; — building, Schulgebäude, das, *s.*[1] — director, Schuldirektor, der, *mx.*; — year, Schuljahr, das, *s.*[2]
schoolmate, Schulkamerad, der, *w.*
science, Wiſſenſchaft, die, *w.*
scream, ſchreien, *s.*
sea, Meer, das, *s.*[2]; See, die, *w.*; — voyage, Seereiſe, Seefahrt, die, *w.*
seasick, ſeekrank.
season, Jahreszeit, die, *w.*
seat, Platz, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); Sitz, der, *s.*[2]; to take a —, Platz nehmen, *s.*
seat, *v.* — one's self, ſich ſetzen, *refl. w.*
second, (der) zweite; —ly, zweitens.
secret, *adj.* geheim.
secure, ſicher.
see, ſehen, *s.*; — again, wiederſehen, *s.*; (catch sight of) erblicken, *w.*; — to it, zuſehen.
seek, ſuchen, *w.*
seem, ſcheinen, *s.*
seeming(ly), ſcheinbar.
seize, greifen, ergreifen, *s.*; faſſen, *w.*
seldom, ſelten.
self, ſelbſt, ſelber (§ 124).
self-possessed, beſonnen, *ppl. adj.*
sell, verkaufen, *w.*

send, ſchicken, *w.*; ſenden, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
sense, Sinn, der, *s.*[2]
sensible, verſtändig, be — of, empfinden, *s.*
September, September, der, *s.*[1]
serious, ſchwer; (earnest) ernſt.
servant, Diener, der, *s.*[1]; — girl, Dienſtmädchen, das, *s.*[1]
serve, dienen (*dat.*)
service, Dienſt, der, *s.*[2]; (attendance) Bedienung, die, *w.*
set, ſetzen, *w.*; — in, hereinbrechen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein); — out, ſich auf den Weg machen, *w.*
several, mehrere (§ 158); — times, mehrmals.
severe, (= strict) ſtreng; (of sickness) ſtark.
severity, Strenge, die (*no pl.*)
shade, shadow, Schatten, der, *s.*[1]
shall, *future*, werden (§ 168, 2); *modal*, ſollen (§§ 189, 191).
shameful, ſchändlich.
share, Teil, das, *s.*[2]
share, *v.* teilen, *w.*
she, ſie.
shelter, Obdach, das, *s.*[3]
shine, ſcheinen, *s.*
ship, Schiff, das, *s.*[2]
shoe, Schuh, der, *s.*[2]
shoemaker, Schuhmacher, der, *s.*[1]
shop, Handlung, die, *w.*; Laden, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä).
shop, *v.* Einkäufe machen, *w.*
shoot, ſchießen, *s.*
shore, Ufer, das, *s.*[1]
short, kurz; —ly, kurz.
shot, Schuß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üſſe).
show, zeigen, *w.*
shrewdly, verſchmitzt.
shrewdness, Klugheit, die, *w.*
shut, ſchließen, *s.*
sick, krank; be taken —, erkranken, *w.*
sicken, erkranken, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
sickness, Krankheit, die, *w.*
side, Seite, die, *w.*
sight, (spectacle) Anblick, der, *s.*[2]; (thing worth seeing) Sehenswürdigkeit, die, *w.*
sign, unterſchreiben, *s.*
significant, bedeutend.
signify, bedeuten, *w.*
silence, Schweigen, das, *s.* (§ 365).
silent, be *or* become *or* keep —, ſchweigen, *s.*
silver, Silber, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
silver, *adj.* ſilbern.
similar, ähnlich (to = *dat.*)
simple, simply, einfach.
sin, Sünde, die, *w.*
since, *prep.* ſeit (*dat.*); *conj.* (= because) da, indem, *sub. conj.*
sincere, (candid) aufrichtig; (hearty) herzlich.
sincerely, herzlich.
sing, ſingen, *s.*
single, einzig.
sink, ſinken, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
sir, mein Herr.
sister, Schweſter, die, *w.*
sit, ſitzen, *s.*; to — down, ſich ſetzen, *refl. w.*; let us — down, ſetzen wir uns (p. 45, n. 4).
sitting, — -room, Wohnzimmer, das, *s.*[1]
situated, be —, liegen, *s.*
situation, Lage, die, *w.*
six, ſechs.
skate, Schlittſchuh, der, *s.*[2]
skate, *v.* Schlittſchuh laufen, *s.*
skill, Fertigkeit, die, *w.*
skillful, geſchickt.
sky, Himmel, der, *s.*[1]
slave, Sklave, der, *w.*; Knecht, der, *s.*[2]
sleep, Schlaf, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
sleep, *v.* ſchlafen, *s.*
slow(ly), langſam.
small, klein.
smell, riechen, *s.*
smoke, rauchen, *w.*
snow, Schnee, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
snow, *v.* ſchneien, *w.*
so, ſo; (= accordingly, then) alſo; — far as I am concerned, was mich betrifft; — have I (*in answers*), das habe ich auch; — very strange, ſo ſeltſam; *referring to a foregoing verb, often translated by* es: . . . but I cannot do so, . . . aber ich kann es nicht.
so-called, ſogenannt.

society, Gesellschaft, die, *w.*
sofa, Sofa, das, *s.* (*pl.* -s).
soft, (of the voice, of light) sanft.
softly, leise.
sojourn, Aufenthalt, der, *s.*[2]
soldier, Soldat, der, *w.*
sole(ly), einzig.
solve, lösen, *w.*
some, irgend ein (§ 152); *in the sing. and collectively (of things),* etwas (§ 151); *pl.* einig-, etlich- (§ 150); — bread, etwas Brot; — friend, irgend ein Freund; — friends, einige Freunde; *referring to something before mentioned,* welch (§ 162); — more, (*sing.*) noch etwas, (*pl.*) noch einige.
some one, jemand, irgend jemand (§§ 152, 154).
something, etwas.
sometimes, bisweilen, zuweilen.
somewhat, etwas.
son, Sohn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
song, Lied, das, *s.*[3]
songstress, Sängerin, die, *w.*
soon, bald; as — as, sobald, *sub. conj.*
sore, (= grave, serious) schwer.
sorrow, Leiden, das, *s.*[1]
sorrowful, traurig.
sorry, I am —, es tut mir leid.
sort, Art, die, *w.;* what — of, was für (§ 145); all sorts of, allerlei (*indcl.*)
soul, Seele, die, *w.;* (= feeling) Gemüt, das, *s.*[3]
sound, klingen, *s.*
south, Süden, der, *s.* (*no pl.*); South Germany, Süddeutschland.
southward, nach Süden.
souvenir card, Ansichtskarte, die, *w.*
Spain, Spanien, das.
Spaniard, Spanier, der, *s.*[1]
Spanish, spanisch.
speak, sprechen, *s.;* to — pieces, deklamieren, *w.*
special, besonder.
spectator, Zuschauer, der, *s.*[1]
speech, (address) Rede, die, *w.;* (= language) Sprache, die, *w.*
speed, Hast, die (*no pl.*)
spirit, Geist, der, *s.*[3]
spite, in — of, trotz, *prep.* (*gen. or dat.*)
splendid, prächtig; (= glorious) herrlich.
spoil, verderben, *s.*
spook, Gespenst, das, *s.*[3]
spoon, Löffel, der, *s.*[1]
spring, (season) Frühling, der, *s.*[2]
spring, *v.* springen, *s.* (*aux.* sein).
stage, Bühne, die, *w.*
stairs, stairway, Treppe, die, *w.*
stake, be at —, gelten, *s.*
stand, stehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185).
star, Stern, der, *s.*[2]
start, Aufbruch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
start, *v.* sich auf den Weg machen, *refl. w.*
state, Staat, der, *mx.*
state, *v.* angeben, *s.*
station, Bahnhof, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
stay, (= remain) bleiben, *s.* (*aux.* sein); (= tarry, sojourn) verweilen, *w.;* sich aufhalten, *s.*
stay, Aufenthalt, der, *s.*[2]
steal, stehlen, *s.*
steamer, Dampfer, der, *s.*[1]
stenographer, Stenograph, der, *w.*
step, treten, *s.* (*aux.* sein); schreiten, *s.* (*aux.* sein); — back, zurücktreten.
step, Schritt, der, *s.*[2]
stick, Stock, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
stick, (= put) stecken, *w.*
still, *adj.* ruhig.
still, *adv.* (*time, degree*) noch; *adversative*) doch.
stock, (supply) Vorrat, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); (race, family) Stamm, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
stop, *intrans.,* aufhören.
store, Laden, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* ä); Handlung, die, *w.*
storm, Sturm, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); (= thunder —) Gewitter, das, *s.*[1]
stormy, stürmisch.
story, Geschichte, die, *w.;* Erzählung, die, *w.*
stout, stark.
stove, Ofen, der, *s.*[1] (*pl.* Ö).
straight, (direct) direkt.

strange, (peculiar) ſonderbar, ſeltſam; (foreign, unwonted) fremd.
stranger, Fremde(r), *decl. like adj.* (cf. § 290, 2).
straw, Stroh, das, *s.* (*no pl.*); — hat, Strohhut, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
stream, Strom, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
street, Straße, die, *w.*
strength, Kraft, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
strict, ſtreng.
stride, ſchreiten, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
strife, Streit, der, *s.*[2]
strike, ſchlagen, *s.*
stroke, Streich, der, *s.*[2]
strong, ſtark, kräftig; (= effective) wirkungsvoll; (= firm) feſt.
stronghold, Burg, die, *w.*
student, Student, der, *w.;* woman —, Studentin, die, *w.;* — life, Studentenleben, das, *s.*[1]
study, Studium, das, *mx.*
study, *v.* ſtudieren, *w.*
stupid, dumm.
style, Stil, der, *s.*[2]
subject, Untertan, der, *mx.*
subject, *v.* unterwerfen, *s.*
submit, ſich unterwerfen, *s.;* — to (put up with), ſich bequemen, *w.* (*dat.*)
subsequently, nachher.
succeed, be successful, gelingen, *impers. s. with dat.* (*aux.* ſein); I did not succeed, es gelang mir nicht.
such, ſolch (§ 135); — a, ſo ein; any — thing, ſo etwas.
sudden(ly), plötzlich, auf einmal.
suffer, leiden, *s.*
suffering, Leiden, das, *s.*[1]
suffice, genügen, *w.*
suit (of clothes), Anzug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
sum, Summe, die, *w.*
summer, Sommer, der, *s.*[1]; — day, Sommertag, der, *s.*[2]; — term, Sommertermin, der, *s.*[2]
summit, Gipfel, der, *s.*[1]
summon, rufen, *s.*
sun, Sonne, die, *w.*
sunbeam, Sonnenſtrahl, der, *mx.*
Sunday, Sonntag, der, *s.*[2]
sunrise, Sonnenaufgang, der, *s.*
supper, Abendeſſen, das, *s.*[1]
supply, Vorrat, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
support, *v.* ſtützen.
support, Stütze, die, *w.*
sure, ſicher; to be —, freilich, allerdings; —ly, gewiß; they —ly know, man weiß doch wohl, man weiß ja.
surround, umgeben, *s.*
swamp, Sumpf, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
swarm, Schwarm, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
swear, ſchwören, *s.*
sweet, ſüß; a — girl, ein liebliches Mädchen; (= fragrant) lieblich.
swift, ſchnell.
swim, ſchwimmen, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
Switzerland, die Schweiz (§ 226, [3]).
sword, Schwert, das, *s.*[3]
sympathy, Sympathie, die, *w.*

T

table, Tiſch, der, *s.*[2]
tailor, Schneider, der, *s.*[1]
take, nehmen, *s.;* to — cold, ſich erkälten, *w.;* to — a seat, Platz nehmen; to — a walk, einen Spaziergang machen, *w.;* to — off (a garment), ausziehen, *s.*
tale, Erzählung, die, *w.*
taler, Taler, der, *s.*[1]
talk, reden, *w.;* there is much — about, man redet viel über (*or* von), es wird viel geredet über.
tall, hoch; (of persons) groß.
tally, ſtimmen, *w.*
tarry, verweilen, *w.*
task, Aufgabe, die, *w.*
taste, Geſchmack, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä, *rare*); artistic —, Kunſtgeſchmack.
teach, unterrichten, lehren, *w.;* — to (show), belehren.
teacher, Lehrer, der, *s.*[1]; woman —, Lehrerin, die, *w.*
tear, Träne, die, *w.*
tear, zerreißen, *s.*
tedious, langweilig.
tell, ſagen, *w.;* (= relate) erzählen, *w.;* (= inform of) mitteilen, *w.*

ten, zehn.
tendency, Tendenz, die, *w.*
term, Termin, der, *s.*[2]
terrible, ſchrecklich.
test, Prüfung, die, *w.*
text (for reading), Lektüre, die, *w.*
text-book, Lehrbuch, das, *s.*[3]
than, als. [you, danke.
thank, danken, *w.* (*dat.*); (I) —
thankful, dankbar.
thanks, Dank, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
that, *dem. pron.* das; jener (§ 129); *rel. pron.* der, die, das; welcher, welche, welches (§§ 136–139); *with neut. pron. or adj. or a sentence, as antecedent*, was (§ 141, *a*, 2).
that, *conj.* daß, *sub. conj.*
the, *def. art.* der, die, das (§ 72); *with comp.:* — more, deſto mehr; *in 'proportional' clauses:* — more . . . — better, je mehr . . . je (*or* deſto) beſſer (§ 381, 1, *f*).
theater, Theater, das, *s.*[1]
their, ihr.
them, *dat.* ihnen, *acc.* ſie; there are six of —, es ſind deren (*or* ihrer) ſechs.
then, (*inferential*) denn, alſo; (*temporal*) dann; just —, zur Zeit.
there, da, dort; — is, — there are, es gibt, *also* es iſt, es ſind (§ 340); in —, drinnen.
therefore, darum, daher.
therein, drinnen, darin.
thereupon, darauf.
they, ſie; *indef.* man.
thick, dick; (= dense) dicht; a — book, ein dickes Buch; a — wood, ein dichter Wald.
thicket, Gebüſch, das, *s.*[2]
thief, Dieb, der, *s.*[2]; (woman) —, Diebin, die, *w.*
thing, Ding, das, *s.*[2]; (= matter, affair) Sache, die, *w.*; any such — as, ſo etwas wie.
think, denken, *w. irr.* (§ 330); meinen, *w.*; (= believe) glauben, *w.*; to — of, an (*acc.*) . . . denken; — of (remember), gedenken (*gen.*); to — much of (*i. e.* esteem) one, viel von einem halten.
third, (der) dritte.
this, dies (§§ 129, 130); — time, diesmal; — evening, heute abend.
thoro(ly), gründlich; (= complete) vollkommen.
those, — are, das ſind (§ 131, 1).
tho, *sub. conj.* obgleich, obwohl; *adv.* doch; wasn't it warm —, war es doch warm.
thought, Gedanke, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
thousand, tauſend.
threaten, drohen, *w.* (*dat.*)
three, drei; — times, dreimal.
throat, Hals, der *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
thru, durch (*acc.*); — with, fertig
throw, werfen, *s.* [mit (*dat.*)
thunder, — storm, Gewitter, das, *s.*[1]
Thursday, Donnerstag, der, *s.*[2]
thus, ſo, alſo.
ticket, Billet, das, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -tte, *also* Billets).
time, (duration) Zeit, die, *w.*; (occaſion) Mal, das, *s.*[2]; this —, diesmal; at the —, damals; (at) what —, (um) wieviel Uhr; for a —, eine Zeitlang; for a long —, lange; once upon a —, einmal'; some —, einſt; for the — being, vorläufig.
times, at —, bisweilen.
timid, furchtſam.
tire, ermüden, *w.*
tired, müde.
title, Titel, der, *s.*[1]
to, *often translated by the dative, esp. with indirect object of a verb and with some adjectives* (§§ 258, 260); zu (*dat.*), nach (*dat.*), an (*acc.*), gegen (*acc.*) cf. § 377, *s. v.*; — and fro, hin und her; — the concert, ins Konzert; — the edge, bis an den Rand; to step — the window, ans Fenſter treten; — London, — the station, nach London, nach dem Bahnhofe; go — bed, zu Bett gehen; go — church, zur (*or* in die) Kirche gehen; write —, an (*acc.*) . . . ſchreiben; kind —, freundlich gegen; *with inf.* —, in order —, zu, um zu (§ 367, 1 and *a*); *omitted with certain verbs*, § 366, 1, 2.

tobacco, Tabak, der, *s.*[2]
to-day, heute.
to-day's, heutig, *adj.*
together, zusammen.
tolerably, ziemlich.
to-morrow, morgen; — evening, morgen abend; — morning, morgen früh; day after —, übermorgen.
to-night, heute abend.
too, (*of degree*) zu; (= also) auch.
tooth, Zahn, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
toothache, Zahnschmerz, der, *mx.*
top, Gipfel, der, *s.*[1], Spitze, die, *w.*
tormented, be —, sich quälen, *w.*
torrent, Strom, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
toward(s), gegen (*acc.*), nach (*dat.*), entgegen (*dat.*) § 377.
tower, Turm, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
town, Stadt, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); little —, Städtchen, das, *s.*[1]
trade, Handel, der, *s.* (*no pl.*); by — (calling), seines Zeichens.
train, Zug, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü); express —, Schnellzug.
tramp, (pedestrian tour) Fußwanderung, die, *w.*
translate, übersetz'en, *w.*
translation, (act of translating) Übersetzen, das, *s.* (§ 365).
travel, fahren, *s.* (*aux.* sein); reisen (*aux.* § 323, 1, *c*).
travel(s), Reise, die, *w.*; Wanderung, die, *w.*
traveler, Reisende(r), *decl. like adj.* (§ 290, 2).
tread, *intr.* treten, *s.* (*aux.* sein); *tr.* betreten.
treat, behandeln, *w.*
treatment, Behandlung, die, *w.*
tree, Baum, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* äu).
tremble, zittern, *w.*
trial, (test) Prüfung, die, *w.*
tributary, Nebenfluß, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* -üsse).
trick, Streich, der, *s.*[2]
trifle, Kleinigkeit, die, *w.*
trip, Reise, Fahrt, die, *w.*
triviality, Kleinigkeit, die, *w.*
trouble, (difficulty) Mühe, die, *w.*; (suffering) Leiden, das, *s.*[1]; (distress) Not, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ö).
trouble, *v.* (worry), bange machen *w.* (*with dat. of pers.*); (concern) kümmern; he doesn't — himself about it, er kümmert sich nicht darum.
true, wahr; (= faithful) treu.
truly, wahrhaft.
trunk, Koffer, der, *s.*[1]
trust, vertrauen, *w.* (*dat.*)
truth, Wahrheit, die, *w.*
truthful, wahrhaft.
try, versuchen, *w.*
Tuesday, Dienstag, der, *s.*[2]
turn, wenden, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
turn out, werden, *irr.* (*aux.* sein).
twelve, zwölf.
twenty, zwanzig; twentieth, (der) zwanzigste; the — -first, der einundzwanzigste.
twice, zweimal.
two, zwei; the —, die beiden (§ 148).
tyrant, Tyrann, der, *w.*

U

umbrella, Regenschirm, der, *s.*[2]
unamiable, unfreundlich.
unanswered, unbeantwortet.
unbearable, unerträglich.
uncle, Onkel, der, *s.*[1]; Oheim, der, *s.*[2]
under, unter (*dat. and acc.*); — it, — that, darunter.
understand, verstehen, *s.*
understanding, Verständnis, das, *s.*[2], Verstand, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
undertake, unternehmen, *s.*
undisturbed, ungetrübt.
undoubtedly, unzweifelhaft.
uneasy, unruhig.
unfortunately, leider (p. 101, n. 1); unglücklicherweise.
unfriendly, unfreundlich.
ungrateful, undankbar.
unhappiness, Unglück, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
unhappy, unglücklich, unglückselig.
united, vereinigt.
university, Universität, die, *w.*
unkind, unfreundlich.
unpleasant, unangenehm.

unrest, Unruhe, die, *w.*
unsatisfactory, ungenügend.
unthankful, undankbar.
until, bis; not — (this evening), erſt (heute abend).
unwelcome, unwillkommen.
unwell, unwohl.
up, auf; — there, droben; further —, weiter hinauf *or* aufwärts.
upon, auf (*dat. and acc.*); once — a time, einmal'; — the whole, im ganzen.
upper, ober-.
us, *dat. and acc.* uns.
use, *v.* gebrauchen, *w.;* benutzen, *w.;* (= spend, *as time*) zubringen, *w. irr.* (§ 330).
use, make — of, brauchen, *w.* (*gen.*)
usual(ly), gewöhnlich.
utterly, vollends, ganz und gar.

V

vacation, Ferien, die, *pl. only.*
vain, in —, vergebens.
valley, Tal, das, *s.*[3]
value, ſchätzen, *w.*
vanish, ſchwinden, verſchwinden, *s.* (*aux.* ſein).
vengeance, Rache, die (*no pl.*)
Venice, Venedig.
venture, wagen, *w.*
verb, Verbum, das, *s.* (*pl.* -ba).
veritable, wahrhaft.
very, ſehr; — much (*of degree*), ſehr; — well (= agreed, 'all right'), ſehr gern; he is doing — well, es geht ihm ſehr gut.
Vesuvius, Veſuv, der, *s.*
vexed, be —, ſich ärgern, *refl. w.*
vicinity, Nähe, die, *w.*
victory, Sieg, der, *s.*[2]
view, (sight of) Anblick, der, *s.*[2]; (opinion) Anſicht, die, *w.;* (prospect) Ausſicht, die, *w.;* take a — of, in Augenſchein nehmen, *s.;* in — of all that, nach alle (§ 317, 1) dem.
village, Dorf, das, *s.*[3]; little —, Dörfchen, das, *s.*[1]
villager, Dorfbewohner, der, *s.*[1]
violent, heftig.
violet, Veilchen, das, *s.*[1]
visit, *v.* beſuchen, *w.*
visit, Beſuch, der, *s.*[2]
voice, Stimme, die, *w.*
vote, Stimme, die, *w.*
vote, *v.* ſtimmen, *w.*
vow, geloben, *w.*
voyage, Seereiſe, Seefahrt, die, *w.*
vulgarity, Gemeinheit, die, *w.*

W

wagon, Wagen, der, *s.*[1]
wait, warten, *w.* (for = auf, *acc.*)
wake, wachen.
walk (for pleasure), Spaziergang, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); take a —, einen Spaziergang machen.
walk, *v.* gehen, *s. irr.* (§ 185, *aux.* ſein); — about, herumgehen; go walking (for pleasure), ſpazieren gehen.
wall, (of a room) Wand, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä); (brick or stone —), Mauer, die, *w.;* — of rock, Felswand, die, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ä).
wandering, Wanderung, die, *w.*
want, (= desire) mögen (§§ 189, 191), wünſchen, *w.;* (= need) brauchen, *w.;* (= require, demand) verlangen, *w.*
war, Krieg, der, *s.*[2]
war-ship, Kriegsſchiff, das, *s.*[2]
warm, warm; grow —, erwarmen, *w.* (*aux.* ſein).
warn, warnen, *w.* (of = vor, *dat.*)
warning, Warnung, die, *w.*
waste, vergeuden, *w.*
watch, Taſchenuhr, Uhr, die, *w.*
water, Waſſer, das, *s.*[1]
way, Weg, Pfad, der, *s.*[2]; (= manner) Art, Weiſe, die, *w.;* the — home, the — back, der Heimweg, Rückweg; by — of, über (*acc.*); in the — of, in (*dat.*); lose one's —, ſich verirren, *refl. w.*
we, wir.
weak, ſchwach.
wealth, Vermögen, das, *s.*[1]; Reichtum, der, *s.*[3]

wear, tragen, *s.*
weather, Wetter, das, *s.*[1]
Wednesday, Mittwoch der, *s.*[2]
week, Woche, die, *w.*
weekly, wöchentlich.
weep, weinen, *w.*
weigh, wiegen, *s.*
welcome, willkommen.
welfare, Wohl, das, *s.* (*no pl.*)
well, *adj.* (in good health) gesund.
well, *adv.* gut; very —(= agreed, 'all right'), sehr gern; he has done that —, das hat er gut gemacht; (of the health) wohl; I am —, I am doing —, ich befinde mich wohl; I do not feel —, mir ist nicht wohl.
well, *interj.* (as an introductory word), nun.
well-behaved, artig.
well-known, wohlbekannt.
west, Westen, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)
west, *adj.* westlich.
westward, westlich.
wet, naß.
what, *inter. pron.* was, welch; *inter. adj.* welch (§§ 143, 144); *rel. pron. and antecedent* (= whatever), was (§ 141); — sort, kind of, was für (§ 145);— for, wozu.
wheel, Rad, das, *s.*[3]
when, *inter.* wann; *rel.* wenn (*of pres. and fut. and repeated action in past*); als (*of simple past*), *sub. conj.* (§ 381, 1, *a*, *b*, *i*, *k*, *l*).
whence, woher.
where, wo.
whether, ob, *sub. conj.*
which, *rel. pron.* der, welch (§§ 136–138); *inter. pron.* welch (§ 144); *with neut. pron. or adj. or a sentence, as antecedent*, was (§ 141, *a*, 2).
while, Zeit, die, *w.*; (for) a —, eine Zeitlang; (= pains), Mühe, die, *w.*; worth —, der Mühe wert.
while, indem, während, *sub. conj.*
white, weiß.
Whitsuntide, Pfingsten, *pl. only.*
who, *rel. pron.* der, welch (§§ 136–138); whoever, he —, wer (§140); *inter. pron.* wer (§§ 143, 144).
whoever, wer, wer auch.
whole, ganz; on the —, im ganzen.
why, *inter.* warum, weshalb; *interj.* doch.
wide, weit; (= broad) breit; far and —, weit und breit.
wife, Frau, die, *w.*; Weib, das, *s.*[3]
wild, wild.
will, *future*, werden (§ 186, 2); *modal*, wollen (§§ 189, 191).
will, Wille, der, *mx.* (*gen.* -ns).
willingly, gern.
win, gewinnen, *s.*
wind, Wind, der, *s.*[2]
window, Fenster, das, *s.*[1]
wine, Wein, der, *s.*[2]
wing, Flügel, der, *s.*[1]
winter, Winter, der, *s.*[1]; — evening, Winterabend, der, *s.*[2]
wisdom, Weisheit, die, *w.*
wise, weise.
wish, wünschen, *w.*; wollen (§§ 189, 191).
wish, Wunsch, der, *s.*[2] (*pl.* ü).
witch, Hexe, die, *w.*
with, mit (*dat.*); — it, damit; (= in the family *or* at the house of), bei (*dat.*)
withal, dazu.
withdraw, zurückziehen, *s.*
within, (*of time only*) binnen (*dat.*)
without, ohne (*acc.*); do —, entbehren, *w.* (*gen.*)
woe! weh!
woman, Dame, die, *w.*; Frau, die, Weib, das, *s.*[3]
wonder, Wunder, das, *s.*[1]
wonder, *v.* sich wundern, *refl. w.*; I wonder (am surprised) that, mich wundert's, daß; I — whether, ich möchte wissen, ob; how late is it, I —? wie spät ist es wohl?
wonderful, wunderbar.
wood, Holz, das, *s.*[3]; 'woods', Wald, der, *s.*[3]

wörd, Wort, das, *s.* 2, 3 (§ 276, *a*).
work, (*abstract*, = labor) Arbeit, die, *w.*; (of an author) Werk, das, *s.*[3]; (*collectively in the abstract*, = activity) Wirken, das, *s.* (§ 365); *v.* arbeiten, *w.*
workman, workingman, Arbeiter, der, *s.*[1]
work-of-art, Kunstwerk, das, *s.*[2]
world, Welt, die, *w.*
world-famous, weltberühmt.
worn-out, erschöpft.
worth while, to be —, sich lohnen, *refl. w.*
worse, worst, schlechter, schlechtest-; schlimmer, schlimmst-.
worth, wert (*gen.*)
worthy, würdig (of = *gen.*)
wretched, elend.
write, schreiben, *s.*; — to, schreiben an (*acc.*)
writer, (author) Schriftsteller, der,
writing, Schrift, die, *w.* [*s.*[1]
wrong, *adj.* unrecht; (incorrect) falsch.
wrong, Unrecht, das, *s.*[2]

Y

year, Jahr, das, *s.*[2]; — in and — out, Jahr aus Jahr ein; for a — and a day, auf Jahr und Tag.
yellow, gelb.
yes, ja; — indeed, jawohl.
yesterday, gestern; — morning, gestern morgen; day before —, vorgestern.
yet, (*temporal*) noch; (*adversative*) doch; not —, noch nicht.
yonder, dort; over —, drüben.
you, du (§ 301, *a*, 1, 4); ihr (*pl.* of du); Sie (*polite address*, § 301, 3, 4); *acc.* dich, euch, Sie; *dat.* dir, euch, Ihnen; *the forms of* du *and* ihr *are capitalized in letters* (§ 301, 5); *indef.* man (§§ 156, 149, 1).
young, jung; — lady, Fräulein, das, *s.*[1]; — man, Jüngling, der, *s.*[2]
youngish, jünger.
your, dein, euer, Ihr (§§ 125, 301, 5.)
yours (der) deinige, eurige, Ihrige, etc. (§126, 1); a friend of —, ein Freund von dir, Ihnen.
yourself, *emphatic*, selbst; *refl.* §§ 123, 201, 202.
youth, (*abstract* or *collective*) Jugend, die (*no pl.*); (*concrete*) Junge, der, *w.*; Jüngling, der, *s.*[2]

Z

zeal, Eifer, der, *s.* (*no pl.*)

INDEX

The numbers refer to sections. For strong verbs consult the list in § 331.

a, pronunciation of, **15**; written instead of aa, App. I, **3**, 4.

ä, pronunciation of, **22**; as umlaut of aa, **85**, 1, *a*; Ä and Æ, App. I, **3**, 1.

ab, prep. **377**.

aber, **379**, 1; oder aber, **379**, 3.

ablaut, **328**, 2; classes, **329**; in derivation, **384**, 1, **386**.

abstract nouns, use of art. with, **226**; plu. of, **238**, 1, *a*.

accent, **61–4**; in compound verbs, **207**, **4**; in compound nouns, **399**; in compound particles, **408**.

accusative, use of, **263–9**; with verbs, **263–5**; cognate, **264**; two objects, **265**, **345**, 1; adverbial, **266**; absolute, **267**, **369**, 3; with prepositions, **268**, **376**, 2; with adjectives, **269**; in impersonal constructions, **205**, 1, 2, **263**, 3.

active voice, **71**, **164**; with passive force after laſſen, etc., **366**, 1, *a* and 2, *b*.

address, nom. in, **243**; pronouns of, **121**, **301**.

adjective clauses, **414**.

adjectives, inflection, **101–9**, **286–9**; comparison, **111–14**, **292–6**; derivation, **389–91**; composition, **404–6**; syntax, **286–96**; without inflection, **101**, **286**, **109**, 2–4; strong, **102–5**; weak, **106–7**; strong or weak, **288**; as substantive, **108**, **290**; in predicate, **110**, **289**; irregularities of inflection, **109**; of comparison, **114**, **296**; with gen. **252**; with dat. **260**; with acc. **269**; with prepositions, **291**; repetition necessary, **232**, 2; orthography of proper adjectives, **4**, 3, and App. I, **3**, 13, *b*.

adverbial clauses, **415**.

adverbs, **216**; classification, **371**; primitive, **372**; relation to adj. **373**; from nouns, **374**; comparison, **375**; ordinal, **299**, 1; relative, **316**; prepositional, **376**, 5, *a*; position of, **96**, **424**; combined with substantive inf. **365**, 2, *a*; with partitive gen. **253**, 3; for rel. pron. **139**, 2.

After-, **388**, 1.

-age, **234**, 2.

ai, pronunciation, **27**; limited use, App. I, **3**, 3.

-al, pl. of nouns in, **275**, 4, *a*; neuter nouns in, **280**, 2.

all, **146**, **317**; alle, **317**, 1; alles, **317**, 2; allwo, **316**, 3.

allein, **379**, 1.

allenfalls, **288**, 1, *a*.

aller-, **294**, 1; allerliebſt, **294**, 1, *a*.

Alphabet, German, 2; script, 7.

als, **381**, 1, *a*; with predicate nom. **242**, 2, **271**; with appositive, **265**, 3, **271**, 1–3; with following rel. **314**, 3; for als ob, **359**, 3, *a*; in comparisons, **381**, 1, *a*; omitted after ſo, **381**, 1, *h*.

als ob, als wenn, with unreal subj. **359**, 3.

als wie, in comparisons, **381**, 1, *a*.

am, with superl. **112**, **294**, 5; in superl. of adv. **375**, 2.

an, **377**.

ander, **147**; anders = *else*, **253**, 2, *c*; anderthalb, **118**, 3, *b*.

angſt, **260**, 2, *b*.

anſtatt, **377**; with inf. **367**, 6.

Ant-, **388**, 2; Antwort, **235**, 2.

antworten, construction with, **257**, 1, *a*.

apostrophe, in gen. **284**, 1, *b*; cf. also App. I, **3**, 14.

apposition, **270–2**, **285**; immediate, **270**; mediate, **271**; spurious, **272**.

appositional, gen. **246**, 4, *a*; predicate, **110**, 1, **289**, 1, **368**, 2, **369**, 2.

Armut, **235**, 1, *a*.

-artig, **390**, 1.

article, 72–3; use, 223–32; see under def. and indef. art.
Atlas, pl. of **281**, 1, *a*.
au, pronunciation, **28**.
äu, pronunciation, **31**; Ä, not Æ, App. I, 3, 1.
auch, **380**, 1, *a*, *b*; in indef. rel. clauses, **140**, 2, **381**, 1, *m*.
auf, **377**; auf daß, **381**, 1, *c*.
auferstehen, **343**, 1.
aufs, in superl. of adv. **112**, 2, **375**, 2.
aus, außer, außerhalb, **377**.
außerlesen, **343**, 1.
auxiliaries, of tense, **171–2**; use, **168**, 1–2, **323**; omission, **324**; periphrastic and causal, **325**; modal, **188–94**, **332–8**; of voice **195**, **344**,
ay, **29**, 1.

b, pronunciation, **35**; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 7, 2.
Band, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
bange, **260**, 2, *b*.
Bank, **275**, 1, *a*.
-bar, **390**, 2.
Bau, pl. of, **275**, 2, *a*.
be-, **208**, 1, *a*, **396**, 1.
begegnen, **263**, 1, *b*.
bei, **377**.
beide, **148**; beides, **148**, 1.
bevor, **341**, 1, **381**, 1.
bezahlen, **263**, 1, *c*.
binnen, **377**.
bis, prep. **377**; sub. conj. **381**, 1.
bitten, with double object, **265**, 1, *a*.
bleiben, with inf. **366**, 3.
Boot, pl. of, **275**, 3.
borrowed words, accent, **64**; gender, **236**; declension, **281–2**.
brauchen, inf. for perf. pple. **326**, 2, *b*.
Brett, pl. of **276**, *a*.
Buchstabe, gen. of, **279**, 2, *a*.

c, pronunciation, **36**; in new spelling, 36, 1, App. I, 3, 12.
capital letters, use of, **4**; in pronouns of address, **301**, 5; in verbal phrases, **342**, 2, *b* and 3, *a*; cf. also App. I, 3, 13.
case, **70**; see under nom. gen. etc.
causal clauses, dependent, **415**, 5.
ch, pronunciation, **37**.
ch, as intensive stem suffix, **395**, 1.
-chen, **79**, **387**, 1.
Chor, gender and decl. **275**, 3.
Christian names, pl. of, **284**, 3, *b*.
chs, pronunciation of, **37**, 5.
ck, 2, 2; pronunciation of, **36**, 2.
cognates, Eng. and Ger. **1**, 2, and App. II.
collective nouns, congruence of verb with, **346**, 1.
comma, use of, **6**.
comparative clauses, **415**, 7.
comparison of adjectives, **111–14**, **292–6**; of adverbs, **216**, 2, **375**.
composition of nouns, **399–403**; adjectives, **404–6**; verbs, **206–14**, **341–3**; particles, **63**, 1, **408**.
concessive clauses, **415**, 4.
conditional mode, **168**, 3, **362**.
conditional sentences, **359**, **415**, 3.
conjugation, **171–93**, **323–31**; weak, **174–8**; strong, **179–85**, **328**; mixed, **186**.
conjunctions, **218**, **378–81**; general connectives, **379**; adverbial, **380**; subordinating, **381**, **415**.
connecting vowel, use of, **169**, **176**, **327**; dropped in strong verbs, **183**.
consecutive clauses, **415**, 9.
consonants, classification, **33**; pronunciation, **34–60**; representation in Eng. cognates, App II.

d, pronunciation, **38**; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 8, 2.
da(r), in compounds, with prep. **122**, 2, **132**, **310**, **413**, 1, *c*, **367**, 6, *a*; with verb, **341**, 1.
da, added to rel. **316**, 2; with rel. force, **316**, 3; as sub. conj. **381**, 1, *b*.
damit, **381**, 1, *c*.
danken, **257**, 1, *a*.
das, as absolute subject, **131**, 1; referring to persons, **309**, 4; for was referring to sentence, **315**, 2.
daß, **381**, 1, *d*; omission of, **360**, *a*.
dative, formation, **77**, 2, **81**, 2, **84**, 2, **89**, **94**; meaning, **70**, **256**; use, **256–62**; with verbs, sole object, **257**; secondary object, **258**; of interest, **259**; ethical, **259**, 4; with adjectives, **260**; with nouns, **261**; with interjections, **261**, 1, *a*; with prepositions, **376**, 3, 4; = possessive, **227**, *a*, **259**, 1, *a*; with von = gen. **247**.
-de, **387**, 2.

declension, 66; of articles, **72-3**; nouns, **76-100**, **273-85**; foreign nouns, **281-2**; proper names, **99-100**, **284-5**; adjectives, **101-18**, **286-8**; of pronouns, **120-63**.
definite article, 72; use, **223-32**; contractions, **223**; omission, **224**; use with proper names, **225**; generic, **226**; = possessive, **227**; distributive, **228**; in phrases, **229**; repetition, **232**.
demonstratives, 129-35, 309-11; = personal pron. **122**, 2, *a*.
Denkmal, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
denn = *for*, **379**, 2; = *then*, **380**, 1; = *than*, **381**, 1, *a*; with concessive subj. **356**, 1, *a*.
denominative verbs, 394.
dependent clauses, 413-15.
dependent order; see word-order.
der, art. **72**; dem. **129**, **131**, **309**; rel. **136**, **138**, **314**.
derer, 309, 2.
derivation, 384-98; general principles of, **384**; nouns, **385-8**; adjectives, **389-91**; verbs, **392-6**; pronouns and particles, **397-8**; see further under composition.
derjenige, 133, 311.
Dero, 309, 5.
derſelbe, 134, 311, 1, **397**.
deß, 309, 1, *a*.
deßhalb, deßwegen, 132, 1.
deſto, 381, 1, *f*.
determinatives, 129, 133-5, 311.
dialects, 8, 221; loss of pret. in, **351**, 1, *c*.
dies, inflection, **129**; use, **130**; absolute subject, **130**, 2.
diesſeits, 377.
dieweil, derivation, **408**, 2.
digraphs, 2, 2.
dimidiatives, 118, 3, *b*.
diminutive suffixes, 79, 387, 4, 395, 2.
Ding, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
diphthongs, 2, 2, **26-31**.
doch, 380, 1, *a*, *c*.
Dorn, pl. of, **279**, 1, *a*.
Druck, pl. of, **275**, 2, *a*.
du, orthography, **4**, 2, **301**, 5; use in address, **301**, *a*, 1; declension, **120**.
dünken, 263, 1, *b*, **330**, *a*.
durch, as prep., **377**; as prefix, **212**, **341**, 3.
dürfen, 188, 189, 191, 1, **333**.
Dutch, relation to German, **1**, 1, App. II, 3.

e, pronunciation, **16**; dropped in inflection of adjectives in **el**, **en**, **er**, **287**; dropped in comparison, **113**, 3, **292**, 2; use as connecting vowel, **176**, **183**, **327**.
-e, as nominal suffix, **387**, 3; in adverbs, **373**, 3; omission of, in imv. **183**, 2, **327**, 2 and 2 *a*.
ehe, eher, 296, 3.
ei, pronunciation, **29**.
-ei, 93, 387, 4.
ein, indef. art. **73**; num. **116**, **297**; pron., **116**, 1, **149**, 1, **318**.
einander, 304, 2.
einig-, 150, 319.
eins, 297, 318, 1 and 1, *a*.
einundderſelbe, 311, 1, *c*.
einverleiben, 343, 1.
eitel, 286, 5.
ekeln, 263, 1, *b*.
-el, nouns in, **79**, **387**, 5; as verbal suffix, **395**, 2.
emp-, 396, 2, *c*.
-en, nouns in, **79**; as adjective suffix, **390**, 8; as verbal suffix **302**, 1; in sing. of weak feminines, **277**, 1.
-ens, in gen. **97**, 2, **279**, 2; in ordinal adverbs, **299**, 1; in absolute superlatives, **375**, 2, *a*.
ent-, 208, 1, *b*, **396**, 2.
entgegen, 377.
entlaſſen, 249, 2, *a*.
entweder, 379, 3.
er, inflection, **120**; use in address, **301**, 2.
er-, 208, 1, *c*, **396**, 3.
-er, nouns in, **79**, **387**, 6; adjectives in, **390**, 4; as verbal suffix, **395**, 3.
-erei, 387, 4.
erinnern, 249, 3, *a*.
-erlei, 299, 1, **390**, 5.
-ern, weak verbs in, **177**; as adjective suffix, **390**, 3.
erſt, 114, 5, **296**, 3.
erz-, 388, 3, **391**, 1.
es, special uses of, **122**, 3, **303**; omission with impersonal verbs, **204**, 2; as gen. **252**, 1, *a*, **265**, 1, *d*, **300**, 2.
etlich-, 150, 319, 1, *a*.
etwas, 151; with adj. **105**, 2, **253**, 2, *a*; as adv. **320**, 1.
eu, pronunciation, **30**; for **ie** in archaic verb forms, **328**, 3, *a*.

exclamation, nom. in, **243**; gen. in, **255**; dat. in, **261**, 1, *a*; inf. in, **367**, 7.
exclamatory sentences, **410**, 1, **420**, 2.
eh, **29**, 1.

f, pronunciation, **39**; in Eng. cognates, App. II, **7**, 3.
-fach, **299**, 1, **390**, 6.
factitive verbs, **393**, 1; factitive object, **363**, *a*, **264**, 1; predicate, **110**, 1, *b*.
fahren, with inf. **366**, 4.
-faltig, **-fältig**, **390**, 7.
faſt, **feſt**, **373**, 3.
Felſ, **Felſen**, **279**, 2, *a*.
feminine nouns, uninflected in sing. **77**, 1; exception, **277**, 1; with **-s** in compounds, **400**, 2, *a*.
final clauses, **415**, 8.
finden, with inf. **366**, 3.
Floß, pl. of, **275**, 3.
fragen, **265**, 1, *a*.
Fräulein, gender, **233**, 2, *a*; with name, **285**, 1, *b*.
frei, **252**, 1, *b*.
fühlen, with inf. **366**, 2 and 2 *b*.
für, **377**; with verbs of regarding, **265**, 3, *c*.
Fürſt, **278**, 1, *b*.
future, **168**, **353**; present used for, **349**, 1; not expressed by **wollen**, **338**, 3, *a*.
future perfect, **168**, **353**.

g, pronunciation, **40**; in Eng. cognates, App. II, **9**, 2.
ganz, uninflected, **109**, 3.
Ge-, as prefix of nouns, **388**, 4; of adjectives, **391**, 2; of verbs, **396**, 4; as augment of pple. **167**, 1, **326**.
geboren, **344**, 2.
gegen, **gen**, **341**, 1, **377**.
gegenüber, **377**.
Gehalt, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
Geheim(er)rat, inflection, **401**, *a*.
gehen, with inf. **366**, 4, **369**, 5.
gemäß, **377**.
gender, **69**; determination of, **75**; rules for, **233–7**; by meaning, **233**; by form, **234**; in compounds, **235**; in borrowed words, **236**; variable, **237**.
genitive, formation of, **80**, **84**, 1, **89**, **94**, **97**, 2, **99**, 1, **100**, 1; use, **245–55**; with nouns, **246**; with verbs, sole object, **248**; with verbs, secondary object, **249**; partitive gen. with verbs, **250**; with adjectives, pronouns and adverbs, **253**; adverbial (place, time, manner), **251**, **374**; with adjectives, **252**; in exclamations, **255**; with prepositions, **376**, 5; substitutes for, **100**, 1, **247**.
German language, relation to Eng. **1** and App. II; historical periods, **220**; literary language and dialects, **221**; good German, **8**, **222**.
Germanic languages, App. II, **3**; shifting of consonants in, App. II, **5**.
gern, comparison of, **375**, 1.
gerundive, **370**.
Geſicht, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
gibt (es gibt), **263**, 3, *a*, **303**, 1, *a*, **340**.
glauben, **257**, 1, *a*.
-gleichen, **127**, 2, **132**, 2, **306**, 2.
Grimm's Law, App. II, **6**, 1, *a*.
Gunſt, **zu Gunſten**, **275**, 1, *a*.

h, pronunciation, **41**; in Eng. cognates, App. II, **9**, 3.
haben, conjugation, **171-2**; use as aux. **168**, 1, **323**, **201**, 1; impersonal use of, **263**, 3, *a*; with inf. **366**, 3 and 7.
-haft, **390**, 8.
halb, uninflected, **109**, 3; **halber**, **289**, 2, *b*.
-halb, **-halben**, **-halber**, **127**, **306**, 1, **377**.
-halb, in dimidiatives, **118**, 3, *b*.
Hand, **240**, 1; **zu Handen**, **vorhanden**, etc. **275**, 1, *a*.
Haupt, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
heißen, perf. pple. of, **326**, 2, *b*; with dat. **265**, 1, *b*; with inf. **366**, 2 and 2, *a*; with predicate inf. **366**, 5; with predicate perf. pple. **369**, 6.
-heit, **93**, **387**, 7.
helfen, with acc. **263**, 1, *b*; perf. ppl. of, **326**, 1, *b*; with inf. **366**, 2 and 2, *a*.
her, **210**, 2.
Herr, pl. of, **94**, 1; as title, **278**, 1, *b*; once used in address, **301**, 2.
Herz, **97**, 2, *a*.
hier-, **132**, *a*.
High German, **220**; High German shifting of consonants, App. II, **6**.
hin, **210**, 2.

hinter, as prep. **377**; as prefix, **212**, 1.
hoch, **109**, 1, **114**, 2.
Hohepriester, **Hohelied**, inflection, **401**, *a*.
hören, use of inf. for perf. ppl. **188**, 3, *a*, **326**, 2, *b*; with inf. **366**, 2 and 2, *b*.
hundert, **115**, 1, **297**, 4.
hyphen, use of, **6**, **400**, 4.

i, pronunciation, **17**; never doubled, **14**, 1, *a*.
ich, inflection, **120**; omission, **302**, 3.
-icht, **387**, 8, **390**, 9.
ie, pronunciation, **17**, 2.
-ie, nouns in, **93**, 2. [**395**, 4.
-ieren, verbs in, **174**, 1, *a*, **326**, 2, *a*,
-ig, as suffix of adjectives, **390**, 10; of verbs, **395**, 5.
ihr, in address, **301**, 1; omission of, **302**, 2, **363**, 1.
Ihro, **308**, 1.
immer, in indef. rel. clauses, **140**, 2, **381**, 1, *m*.
imperative, **71**; tenses of, **168**, 4; omission of **e** in, **327**, 2; use of, **363**; substitutes for, **363**, 3; passive imv. with **sein**, **344**, 1.
impersonal verbs, **204–5**, **339–40**; with secondary object in gen. **249**, 4; with dat. **259**, 2, *a*, *b*; with acc. **263**, 3; use of **es** with, **303**, 1.
in, **377**, **341**, 1.
-in, **93**, **94**, 2, **387**, 9; names of women in, **285**, 1, *c*.
indefinite article, **73**; use, **230**; omission, **231**.
indem, **381**, 1, *e*.
indefinite pronouns, **146–63**, **317–22**.
indicative, **71**; use, **354**; for imv., **363**, 3, *c*.
indirect discourse, **360–1**; indirect question, **142**, 1, **360**, 4.
Indo-European languages, App. II, **2**.
infinitive, **74**, **166**; declension, **274**; use, **364–7**; nature of, **364**; substantive, **365**, without **zu**, **366**; with **zu**, **367**; for imv., **366**, 6; after prep. **217**, 3; omission with modal aux. **193**; position of, **425**.
innerhalb, **377**.
inseparable prefixes, **208**, **396**.
interjections, **219**, **382–3**; nature of, **382**; list, **383**.
interrogative pronouns, **143–5**, **312–13**.
intransitive verbs, **164**, 1; aux. with, **323**; passive of, **198**, **345**, 2.
inversion, see word-order.
irgend, **152**.
-isch, **390**, 11; superl. of adjectives in, **292**, 2.
iterative numerals, **299**, 1; pret. **350**, 1; verbs, **395**, 2, 3.

j, pronunciation, **42**; in cognates, App. II, **10**.
ja, **380**, 1, *d*.
je, **381**, 1, *f*.
jedenfalls, **288**, 1, *a*.
jed-, **jedermann**, **jeglich**, **153**.
jemand, **154**, **321**, 2.
jen-, **129–30**.
jenseits, **377**.
jüngst, **375**, 3.

k, pronunciation, **43**; in cognates App. II, **9**, 1.
kein, **155**; **keineswegs**, **288**, 1, *a*.
-keit, **93**, **387**, 7.
Klima, pl. of, **281**, 1, *a*.
kommen, with perf. pple. **369**, 5.
können, **188–9**, **191**, 1, **334**.
kosten, **263**, 1, *b*.
kraft, **377**.
-kunft, **275**, 1, *a*.

l, pronunciation, **44**; in cognates, App. II, **10**.
lachen, with gen. **248**, 1, *a*.
Laden, pl. of, **274**, 1, *a*.
Land, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
längs, **377**.
Langweile, inflection, **401**, *a*.
lassen, as aux. **325**, 1; perf. pple. of, **326**, 2, *b*; with reflexive = passive, **199**, **205**, 3, *a*; with inf. and object in dat. **265**, 1, *b*; with inf. **366**, 1, *a*, *b*; with act. inf. = pass. imv. **344**, 1, **363**, 3, *d*.
Latin, relation to German, App. II; inflections, **281**, 1, **284**, 2 and 2, *a*.
laut, **377**.
lauter, **286**, 5.
lehren, **265**, 1, *a*; in pass. **345**, 1, *a*; with inf. **366**, 2 and 2, *a*; inf. of, used for perf. ppl. **326**, 2, *b*.

leid, 260, 2, *b*.
-lein, 79, 387, 1.
-ler, 387, 6.
lernen, with inf. 366, 2 and 2, *a*; inf. for perf. pple. 326, 2, *b*; used for lehren, 265, 1, *c*.
letzt, 114, 5, 296, 3.
-leute, in compounds, 238, 2, *a*.
-lich, 373, 1, 390, 12.
Licht, pl. of, 276, *a*.
liegen, with inf. 366, 3.
-ling, 83, 387, 10; -lings, 374, *b*.
lohnen, 249, 4, *a*.
los, 252, 1, *a*, *b*; -los, 390, 13.
Low German, 220.
Lügen strafen, 265, 1, *d*.
Lump, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.

m, pronunciation, 45; in cognates, App. II, 10.
machen, as aux. 325, 1, *b*; with inf. 366, 2 and 2, *a*; inf. for perf. ppl.
Magen, pl. of, 274, 1, *a*. [326, 2, *b*.
mahnen, 249, 1, *a*.
Mal, 276, *a*.
man, 156, 321, 199.
manch, 157.
Mann, pl. of, 276, 1, *a*.
Mark, after num. 240, 1.
-mäßig, 390, 14.
measure, nouns of, 240; acc. of, 266, 3.
mehr, 158; in comparison, 113, 295.
mehrer, 158, 319, 3.
meiner, comparative of mein, 308, 2.
meist, **meistens**, 295, 3.
Middle German, 220, 2.
miß-, 212, 2, 388, 5.
mit, 377.
mittels, **mittelst**, 377.
mittler, 296, 2.
mixed declension, 76, 3, 97–8, 279–80; conjugation, 186.
modal auxiliaries, 188–94, 326, 2, *b*, 332–38.
modes, 71, 165; use of, 354–63.
mögen, 188–9, 191, 3, 193, 2, 335.
Mord, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
multiplicatives, 299, 1.
-mut, in compounds, 235, 1.
müssen, 188–9, 191, 4, 336.

n, pronunciation, 46; in cognates, App. II, 10.
nach, **nächst**, 377.
nachahmen, 263, 1, *c*.
Nacht, **nachts**, 275, 1, *a*.
neben, **nebst**, 377.
negation, double, 410, *b*; pleonastic, 410, 1, *c*.
nennen, construction with, 265, 2.
-ner, 387, 6.
ng, pronunciation, 47.
nicht, with gen. 320, 2; pleonastic use of, 410, 1, *c*.
nichts, 159, 320, 2; with adj. 105, 2,
niemand, 160, 321, 2. [253, 2, *a*.
-nis, 83, 85, 2, 237, 2, *a* (1), 387, 11.
noch, 380, 1, *e*.
nominative, 241–4; as subject, 241; as predicate, 242; in address, 243; absolute, 244.
normal order, see under word-order.
nouns, 74–100, 273–85.
number, of nouns, 69, 238–40; plu. sing. lacking, 238; duplicate forms in plu. 239; sing. for plu. 240; congruence of verb in, 346; see under plu. and sing.
numerals, 115–18, 297–99; cardinals, 115–7, 297; ordinals, 118; with part. gen. 253, 1; derivatives, 118, 299.
nun, 380, 1, *f*, *g*.
nur, in relative clauses, 140, 2, 381, 1, *m*.

o, pronunciation, 18.
ö, pronunciation, 23.
ob, prep. 377; sub. conj. 381, 1; als ob, 359, 3 and 3, *a*.
obgleich, **obschon**, **obwohl**, 381, 1, *g*.
oberhalb, 377.
object-clauses, 360, 361, 413.
oder, 379, 3.
ohne, 377; with inf. 367, 6.
Old German, 220, 1.
-or, nouns in, 97, 3, 279, 3.
Ort, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
Orthography, 3, and Appendix I.

p, pronunciation, 48; in Engl. cognates, App. II, 7, 1.
paar, **Paar**, 319, 1.
Park, pl. 275, 2. *a*.
participle, 71, 167; used as adj. 101, 3; when compared, 292, 1; syntax of, 368–70; pres. ppl. 368; perf. ppl. 369; gerundive, 370.

passive, 195–9, 344–5; conjugation, 196; impersonal use of, 198, 345, 2; substitutes for, 199; formed with ſein, 344, 1.
perfect, 168, 349, 3; use of, 351.
person, congruence of verb in, 347; in rel. clause, 137, 2.
persons, names of, 99, 284–5.
personal pronouns, 120, 300–4; omission of, 302; place taken by man, 321, 1; adjective after, 105, 4, 288, 4.
pf, pronunciation, 49; in cognates, App. II, 7, 1, *a*.
pflegen, construction with, 248, 1, *a*.
ph, pronunciation, 48, 1; use in new spelling, App. I, 3, 8.
plural, of nouns, formation, 81, 85, 90, 94, 97; lacking, 238; redundant, 239; sing. used for, 240; umlaut in, 274, 1, 275, 1, 2, 3, 4, *a*, 276; double plurals, 274–6; of abstracts, 238, 1, *a*; pl. verb with sing. subject, 346, *a*.
possessives, 125–8; 305–8; strong forms, 125; weak, 126; compounds, 127, 306; congruence, 128; ambiguous, 307, 1; postpositive, 308; repetition, 232, 2.
predicate, nom. 242; after laſſen with inf. 366, 1, *a*; appositive, 271, 368, 2, 369, 2; predicate adj. 110, 289; inf. 366, 5.
prefixes, inseparable, 208, 396; separable, 210, 341–3; doubtful, 212, 341, 3; of derivation, 384, 2, 388, 391.
preposition, 217, 376–7; with gen. dat. etc. 376; list, 377.
present, 168; use, 349.
preterit, 168; use, 350; pret.-pres. verbs, 188.
pronouns, 119–63, 300–22; see under *personal*, *relative*, etc.
pronunciation, 8–64; standard of, 8.
proper names, inflection, 99–100, 284–5.
punctuation, 6.

q, **qu**, pronunciation, 50.
quantity of vowels, 14.
quotation-marks, 6.

r, pronunciation, 51; in cognates, App. II, 10.
reciprocal pronoun, 123, 3, 304, 2.
reflexive pronoun, 123, 201, 304; verbs, 201–3; with gen. 249, 3.
reiten, with inf. 366, 4.
relative pronoun, 136–41, 314–16; substitutes for, 139; never omitted, 137, 1; compound, 314, 2; adverbs, 316; clauses, 137, 413–14; comparison, 294, 375, 2.
roots, 384, 2.
rufen, 263, 1, *c*.

ſ, pronunciation, 52; ſ, ß, ſſ, ß, App. II, 8, 1, *a*.
-ß, as plural-sign, 282, 284, 3; as adverbial suffix, 374, *a*.
ſagen, construction after, 258, 1, *a*.
-ſal, 83, 234, 3, *a*, 387, 12.
-ſam, 390, 15.
ſamt, 377.
ſch, pronunciation, 53; in Eng. cognates, App. II, 8, 4, *a*, 9, 1, *a*.
-ſchaft, 93, 387, 13.
Schild, pl. of, 276, *a*.
ſchmeicheln, 263, 1, *b*.
Schmuck, pl. of, 275, 2, *a*.
ſchon, 372, 1; relation to ſchön, 373, 3.
script, German, 7, App. III.
ſehen, with inf. 366, 2 and 2, *b*; perf. pple. of, 326, 2, *b*.
ſehr, comparison, 375, 1.
ſein, verb, 171–2; use of as aux. of tense, 323; of voice, 195, 1, 2, 344; with predicate inf. 366, 5.
ſein, poss. 128, 2, 307; ſeiner Zeit, 307, 2, *a*.
ſeit, 377; as sub. conj. 381, 1.
ſeitens, 376, 5, *a*.
-ſeits, 306, 3.
ſelb, **ſelbander**, 299, 2.
ſelber, **ſelbſt**, 124, 289, 2, *b*, 304, 3, 311, 3, 397, 1.
-ſelig, 390, 16.
sentence, 409–12; dependent clauses, 413–15.
separable prefixes, 206–7, 210–11, 341–3.
sequence of tenses, 361.
ſich, 304; orthography, 4, 2; in subordinate clause, 304, 1; as reciprocal, 123, 3, 304, 2.
Sie, 301, 3, 4, 5; with imv. 172, 3.
singular, for plural, 240; with more than one subject, 346, 3.

ſo, as resuming particle, **200**, 2, **380**, 1, *h*; as sub. conj. **381**, 1, *h*; as rel. **316**, 1; ſo ein, **135**, 1, *a*; ſo etwaš, **151**, 1.
ſolch, **135**, **311**, 2; inflection, **135**, 1.
ſollen, **188–9**, **191**, 5, **337**.
ſonder, **377**.
ſondern, **379**, 1.
Sporn, pl. of, **279**, 1, *a*.
ſpotten, **248**, 1, *a*.
ß, see under ſ.
ſtatt, **377**; with inf. **367**, 6.
ſtehen, with inf. **366**, 3.
ſterben, with gen. **248**, 1, *b*.
strong declension, of nouns, **273**, **78–91**, **274–6**; first class, **79–82**, **274**; second class, **83–6**, **275**; third class, **88–91**, **276**; of adjectives, **102–5**.
strong conjugation, **328**, **174**, **179–85**; list of strong verbs, **331**.
subject accusative with inf. **367**, 3, *a*.
subjunctive, **71**, **172**; use of, **355–61**; kinds of, **355**; imperative, **356**; concessive, **356**, 1; optative, **357**; potential, **358**; diplomatic, **358**, 1; dubitative, **358**, 2; unreal, **359**; dependent, **360**, for conditional, **362**, 1.
substantive adjective, **108**, **290**, 2; inf. **365**; clauses, **413**.
suffixes, in general, **384**; of nouns, **387**; of adjectives, **390**; of verbs, **395**; of adverbs. **374**.
superlative, **111–14**, **294–6**; predicate superl. with am, **112**, **294**, 5; uninflected superl. as adv. **111**, 4, *a*, **373**, 2, *b*, **375**, 3; of adverb, **112**, 2, **113**, 1, **375**.
syllabication, 5.
syllables, open and closed, **14**, 2, *a*.

t, pronunciation, **54**; in cognates App. II, **8**, 1.
Teil, gender, **235**, 3.
-teilš, **306**, 3.
-tel, **118**, 3.
temporal clauses, **415**, 2.
Tenor, pl. of, **275**, 4, *a*, **279**, 3, *a*.
tenses, **168**; use of, **348–53**; progressive tense forms lacking in Ger. **348**, 1; sequence of, **361**.
th, pronunciation, **55**; limited use of, **t** in new spelling, App. I, 3, 10.
time, expression of, **298**; gen. of, **251**, 2; acc. of, **266**, 2.
titles, **247**, 1; inflection of, **278**, 1, *b*; in connection with names, **285**; sing. title with plural verb, **346**, *a*.
Tod, pl. of, **275**, 2, *a*.
transitive verbs, **164**, 1; inflected with haben, **323**; compounds, **263**, 2.
trigraphs, 2, 2 and 2, *a*.
troß, **377**.
Tuch, pl. of, **276**, *a*.
-tum, **88**, **234**, 3, *a*, **387**, **14**.
tun, as aux. **325**.
tz, 2, 2 and App. II, **8**, 1; pronunciation, **56**.

u, pronunciation, **17**.
ü, 2, 2; pronunciation, **24**.
über, **377**.
um, as prep. **377**; as doubtful prefix, **212**, **341**, 3; with inf. **367**, 1, *a*, 5, *b*.
um . . . willen, **127**, **377**.
-um, Latin nouns in, **280**, 2.
umlaut, nature of, **21**; how written, **21**, 1; as sign of plu. **81**, 1, **274**, 1, **85**, 1, **275**, 1, 2, **90**, **276**; in comparison, **111**, **293**; caused by suffix, **373**, 3, **384**, 2, **387**, **389**, 2; in pres. of strong verbs, **182**, **328**, 3; in pret. subj. of strong verbs, **179**, **328**, 4, *a*; as a factor in derivation, **384**, 2.
un-, accent of words in, **63**, 3, **388**, 6, **391**, 3.
unangeſehen, **377**.
und, with inversion, **379**, 4.
unbeſchadet, **377**.
unfern, unweit, **376**, 5, *b*.
ungeachtet, **377**.
-ung, **93**, **387**, 15.
unter, as prep. **377**; as doubtful prefix, **212**, **341**, 3.
unterhalb, **377**.
ur-, **388**, 7, **391**, 4.
-uš, Lat. nouns in, with pl. in **-en**, **281**, 1, *a*; pl. of proper names in, **284**, 3, *d*.

v, pronunciation, **57**; in cognates, App. II, **7**, 4.
ver-, **208**, 1, *e*, **396**, 5.
verb, **71**, **164–215**, **323–70**; see *voice*, *mode*, etc.; irregular strong verbs, **185**; list of strong verbs, **331**; irregular weak verbs, **330**; verbs with gen. **248–50**; with dat. **257–8**; with acc. **263–5**.

verloren gehen, 369, 5.
vermöge, 377.
versichern, 249, 1, *a*, 263, 1, *a*.
viel, 161, 322; **vieles** = **vielerlei**, 322, 2.
voice, active and passive, 71, 164, 344–5.
voll-, 212, 2; **voller**, 289, 2, *b*.
von, 377; with dat. as substitute for gen. 247; with passive verbs, 197; gen. of names in, 285, 3, *a*.
vor, 377.
vowels, 11–25; quantity of, 14; modification (umlaut), 21.
vowel-change in strong verbs, in pres. 179, 182, 328, 3 and 3, *a*; in pret. (ablaut), 179–80, 328–9.

w, pronunciation, 58; in cognates, App. II, 10.
Wagen, pl. of, 274, 1, *a*.
während, 377, 381, 1.
wann, 381, 1, *i*, *m*.
warten, 248, 1, *a*.
-wärts, 373, 2, *a*.
was, inter. 143, 312; as rel. 141, 315; as indef. 162, 320; = **warum**, 312, 3.
was für, 145, 313.
weak declension, of nouns, 273, 76, 2, 92–5, 277–8; of adjectives, 106–7, 288.
weak verbs, 174, 175–8; use of connecting vowel in, 176, 327; in **-eln**, and **-ern**, 177; irregular weak verbs, 330.
wegen, 377; **-wegen**, 127, 306, 1.
Weihnachten, 275, 1, *a*.
weil, 381, 1, *j*.
-weise, 251, 3, *a*, 374, 2.
welch, rel. 136, 138; inter. 144, 313; indef. 162, 319, i, *a*; derivation, 397, 2.
wenig, 163, 322.
wenn, 381, 1, *k*, 359, 359, 3, *a*.
wer, inter. 143–4, 312; rel. 140, 315; indef. 162.
werden, conjugation, 171; use as aux. of tense. 168; of voice, 195, 1, 2, 344; of conditional, 168; **ward** and **wurde**, 328, 4; **worden**, 326, 2, *c*.
wes, 143, 1, *a*, 312, 1, 315, 3.
wes-, 139, 1.
wider, 212, 1, 377.
wie, 242, 2, 271, 2, 265, 3, *a*, 381, 1, *l*, *m*.
wieder, 214, 1, 341, 3.
wissen, 188, 190.
wo, 381, 1, *m*, 316; **wo(r)-**, 139.
wohl, 372, 1, 375, 1, 380, 1, *g*.
wollen, 188–9, 191, 6, 338, 344, 1.
word-formation, 384–98; see under *derivation* and *composition*.
word-order, 87, 96, 142, 173, 187, 194, 215, 416–426; the normal order, 416, 1, *a*, 417; the inverted order, 416, 1, *a*, 418; the interrogative order, 416, 2, 419; the dependent order, 416, 3, 420; position of adjuncts, 421, 6; of the noun, 421; of the verb, 422; of objects, 423; of adverbs, 424; of dependent infinitives, 425; of dependent clauses, 426.
Wort, pl. of, 276, *a*.
Wunder, **es nimmt mich**, 265, 1, *d*; **was Wunder**, 253, 2, *b*.

x, pronunciation, 59.

y, pronunciation, 20.

z, pronunciation, 60; in cognates App. II, 8, 1.
-zen, in verbs, 395, 6.
zer-, 208, *f*, 396, 5.
zu, 377; with inf. 364, 367: position in inf. of compounds, 207, 2; with dat. for predicate nom. 242, 1, *b*; forming gerundive, 367, 4, 370; with dat. after verbs of making, etc., 265, 2, *a*.
zween, 297, 1, *a*.
zwischen, 377.
zwo, **zwot-**, 297, 1, *a*.

MODERN GERMAN TEXTS

Arnold: Einst im Mai. Edited by GEORGE B. LOVELL of Yale University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

—— **Fritz auf Ferien.** Edited by F. W. J. HEUSER of Columbia University. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* (*In preparation.*)

Baker's German Stories. Edited by G. M. BAKER of the William Penn Charter School, Philadelphia. A collection of seven short stories by modern German writers. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

Baumbach: Das Habichtsfräulein. Edited by M. C. STEWART of Union College. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

—— **Der Schwiegersohn.** Edited by OTTO HELLER of Washington University, St. Louis. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 40 cents.

—— **Die Nonna.** Edited by A. N. LEONARD of Bates College. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* (*In preparation.*)

—— **Frau Holde.** Edited by LAURENCE FOSSLER, University of Nebraska. 30 cents.

—— **Sommermärchen.** Edited by E. S. MEYER of Western Reserve University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Chamisso: Peter Schlemihl. Edited by FRANK VOGEL of Massachusetts Institute of Technology. 25 cents.

Ebner-Eschenbach: Lotti die Uhrmacherin. Edited by G. H. NEEDLER of the University of Toronto. 35 cents.

Eichendorff: Aus dem Leben eines Taugenichts. Edited by G. M. HOWE, Colorado College. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

Fontane: Grete Minde. Edited by H. W. THAYER of Princeton University. 60 cents.

Fouqué: Undine. Edited by H. C. G. VON JAGEMANN of Harvard University. *Vocabulary.* 50 cents.

Frenssen: Peter Moors Fahrt nach Südwest. Edited by HERMAN BABSON of Purdue University. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

Freytag: Die Journalisten. Edited by CALVIN THOMAS of Columbia University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

—— **Karl der Grosse.** With **Aus dem Klosterleben im Zehnten Jahrhundert.** Edited by A. B. NICHOLS. *Vocabulary* by E. H. P. GROSSMANN of Simmons College. 75 cents.

Fulda: Der Dummkopf. Edited by W. K. STEWART of Dartmouth College. 35 cents.

—— **Der Talisman.** Edited by E. S. MEYER of Western Reserve University. 40 cents.

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY 34 WEST 33RD ST. NEW YORK

Fulda: Unter vier Augen, and Benedix: Der Prozess. Edited by WILLIAM A. HERVEY of Columbia. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

German Poems for Memorizing. *New Edition.* With vocabulary by OSCAR BURKHARD of the University of Minnesota. 35 cents.

Gerstäcker: Germelshausen. Edited by L. A. MCLOUTH of New York University. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 35 cents.

—— **Irrfahrten.** Edited by MARIAN P. WHITNEY of Vassar College. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 40 cents.

Grillparzer: Die Ahnfrau. Edited by F. W. J. HEUSER of Columbia University. and G. H. DANTON. *Vocabulary.* 80 cents.

—— **Des Meeres und der Liebe Wellen.** Edited by MARTIN SCHÜTZE, University of Chicago. 70 cents.

—— **König Ottokars Glück und Ende.** Edited by C. E. EGGERT, University of Michigan. 60 cents.

Gutzkow: Uriel Acosta. Edited by S. W. CUTTING and A. C. VON NOÉ, University of Chicago. 35 cents.

Hauff: Das Kalte Herz. Edited by N. C. BROOKS, University of Illinois. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 35 cents.

—— **Lichtenstein.** Edited by J. P. KING, University of Rochester. 80 cents.

Hauptmann: Die versunkene Glocke. Edited by T. S. BAKER of the Tome Institute. 80 cents.

Hebbel: Herodes und Mariamne. Edited by E. S. MEYER of Western Reserve University. 70 cents.

Heine: Die Harzreise. Edited by R. H. FIFE of Wesleyan University. *Vocabulary.* 50 cents.

—— **Die Harzreise and Das Buch Le Grand.** Edited by R. H. FIFE of Wesleyan University. 60 cents.

Heyse: Anfang und Ende. *New Edition.* Edited by L. A. MCLOUTH of New York University. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 40 cents.

—— **Das Mädchen von Treppi.** Edited by C. F. BRUSIE. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

—— **Die Blinden.** Edited by W. H. CARRUTH, Stanford University, and E. F. ENGEL of the University of Kansas. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 40 cents.

—— **L'Arrabbiata.** Edited by MARY A. FROST. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

—— **Vetter Gabriel.** Edited by ROBERT N. CORWIN, Yale University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Hillern: Höher als die Kirche. Edited by MILLS WHITLESEY. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Hoffmann: Das Fräulein von Scuderi. Edited by GUSTAV GRUENER of Yale University. 35 cents.

—— **Meister Martin der Küfner.** Edited by R. H. FIFE of Wesleyan University, Conn. 40 cents.

Keller: Legenden. Edited by MARGARETHE MÜLLER and CARLA WENCKEBACH of Wellesley College. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

—— **Romeo und Julia auf dem Dorfe.** Edited by R. N. CORWIN of Yale University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Leander: Träumereien. Edited by IDELLE B. WATSON. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 40 cents.

Lewisohn's German Style. Edited by LUDWIG LEWISOHN, Ohio State University. 75 cents.

Loening and Arndt: Deutsche Wirtschaft. Edited by JOHN A. BOLE, Eastern District High School, Brooklyn, N. Y. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Ludwig: Der Erbförster. Edited by M. C. STEWART of Union College. 50 cents.

Meissner: Aus deutschen Landen. VON M. MEISSNER. With notes by C. W. PRETTYMAN of Dickinson College, and *Vocabulary* by JOSEPH SCHRAKAMP. 45 cents.

—— **Aus meiner Welt.** VON M. MEISSNER. Edited by CARLA WENCKEBACH. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

Meyer: Der Heilige. Edited by C. E. EGGERT of the University of Michigan. 80 cents.

Mogk: Deutsche Sitten und Bräuche. Edited by LAURENCE FOSSLER, University of Nebraska. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Moltke: Die beiden Freunde. Edited by K. D. JESSEN of Bryn Mawr College. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Moser: Der Bibliothekar. Edited by H. A. FARR of Yale University. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

—— **Ultimo.** Edited by C. L. CROW of the University of Florida. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Nichols: Two German Tales (Goethe's Die neue Melusine and Zschokke's Der tote Gast). Edited by A. B. NICHOLS. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

—— **Modern German Prose.** Edited by A. B. NICHOLS. $1.00.

Riehl: Burg Neideck. Edited by ARTHUR H. PALMER of Yale University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Riehl: Der Fluch der Schönheit. Edited by FRANCIS L. KENDALL. *Vocabulary* by GEORGE A. D. BECK. 35 cents.

Rosegger: Die Schritten des Waldschulmeisters. Edited by L. FOSSLER, University of Nebraska. 40 cents.

Saar: Die Steinklopfer. Edited by CHARLES H. HANDSCHIN of Miami University, and E. C. ROEDDER of the University of Wisconsin. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Scheffel: Der Trompeter von Säkkingen. Edited by MARY A. FROST. *New Edition.* Prepared by CARL OSTHAUS of Indiana University. 80 cents.

—— **Ekkehard.** An Unabridged Edition. Edited by W. H. CARRUTH of Stanford University. $1.25.

Schwarzwaldleut'. Edited by E. C. ROEDDER of the University of Wisconsin. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Storm: Immensee. Edited by A. W. BURNETT, with exercises by H. J. LENSNER. *Vocabulary.* 30 cents.

—— **Auf der Universität.** Edited by R. N. CORWIN of Yale University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

—— **In St. Jürgen.** Edited by OTTO HELLER of Washington University. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* (*In press.*)

—— **Pole Poppenspäler.** Edited by EUGENE LESER of Indiana University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

—— **Karsten Kurator.** Edited by P. H. GRUMMANN of the University of Nebraska. *Vocabulary.* (*In press.*)

Sudermann: Frau Sorge. Edited by GUSTAV GRUENER of Yale University. *Vocabulary.* 90 cents.

—— **Teja.** Edited by HERBERT C. SANBORN, Vanderbilt University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Werner: Heimatklang. Edited by M. P. WHITNEY of Vassar College. *Vocabulary.* 40 cents.

Wichert: Die verlorene Tochter. Edited by EUGENE H. BABBITT of Tufts College. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Wilbrandt: Jugendliebe. Edited by THEODORE HENCKELS. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

Wildenbruch: Das edle Blut. Edited by A. K. HARDY of Dartmouth College. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 35 cents.

—— **Kindertränen.** Edited by A. E. VESTLING of Carleton College, Minn. *Vocabulary and Exercises.* 35 cents.

Wilhelmi: Einer muss heiraten, and Benedix: Eigensinn. Edited by WILLIAM A. HERVEY of Columbia University. *Vocabulary.* 35 cents.

GERMAN GRAMMARS

Bierwirth's Beginning German. By H. C. BIERWIRTH of Harvard University. 90 cents.

—— **Elements of German.** By H. C. BIERWIRTH. $1.25.

Gohdes and Buschek's Sprach- und Lesebuch. By W. H. GOHDES of the Horace Mann High School, New York City, and H. A. BUSCHEK of the Brooklyn Polytechnic Preparatory School. $1.00.

Howe's First German Book. By GEORGE M. HOWE of Colorado College. 90 cents.

Otis's Elementary German Grammar. Eighth edition, thoroughly revised and provided with new exercises, by W. H. CARRUTH of Stanford University. 90 cents.

Prokosch's Introduction to German. By EDUARD PROKOSCH of the University of Texas. $1.15.

—— **German for Beginners.** By EDUARD PROKOSCH. $1.00.

Spanhoofd's Das Wesentliche der deutschen Grammatik. By A. W. SPANHOOFD, Director of German in the Washington (D. C.) High Schools. 75 cents.

Thomas's Practical German Grammar. By CALVIN THOMAS of Columbia University. $1.25. *Supplementary or Alternative Exercises.* By WILLIAM A. HERVEY. 25 cents.

Vos's Essentials of German. By B. J. Vos of Indiana University. *Fourth edition, Revised.* $1.00.

—— **Concise German Grammar.** By B. J. Vos. (*In press.*)

Whitney's Compendious German Grammar. By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY. *Revised.* $1.30. *Supplementary or Alternative Exercises.* By ROBERT N. CORWIN of Yale University. 25 cents.

—— **Brief German Grammar.** By WILLIAM D. WHITNEY. *Revised and enlarged.* 75 cents.

GERMAN READERS

Allen's Herein! By P. S. ALLEN of the University of Chicago. 70 cents.

—— **Daheim.** By P. S. ALLEN. 70 cents.

—— **German Life.** By P. S. ALLEN. (*In press.*)

Harris's German Reader. By CHARLES HARRIS of Adelbert College. $1.00.

Nichols's Easy German Reader. By A. B. NICHOLS. 40 cents.

Prokosch's Lese- und Übungsbuch. By EDUARD PROKOSCH of the University of Texas. 50 cents.

Schrakamp's Das deutsche Buch für Anfänger. By JOSEPHA SCHRAKAMP. *Revised.* 75 cents.

Thomas and Hervey's German Reader and Theme-book. By CALVIN THOMAS and WILLIAM A. HERVEY of Columbia University. $1.00.

GERMAN READERS—(Continued)

Tuckerman's Am Anfang. By JULIUS TUCKERMAN of the Central High School, Springfield, Mass. 50 cents.

Whitney's Introductory German Reader. By W. D. WHITNEY and MARIAN P. WHITNEY. $1.00.

GERMAN COMPOSITION AND CONVERSATION

Allen's First German Composition. By P. S. ALLEN of the University of Chicago. 90 cents.

Allen and Phillipson's Easy German Conversation. By P. S. ALLEN and P. H. PHILLIPSON of the University of Chicago. 90 cents.

Boezinger's Mündliche und Schriftliche Übungen. By BRUNO BOEZINGER of Stanford University. 75 cents.

Bronson's Colloquial German. With a summary of grammar. By T. B. BRONSON of the Lawrenceville School. 75 cents.

Jagemann's Materials for German Prose Composition. By H. C. G. VON JAGEMANN of Harvard. 90 cents.

—— **Elements of German Syntax.** With special reference to translations from English into German. By H. C. G. VON JAGEMANN of Harvard. 90 cents.

Jagemann and Poll's Materials for German Prose Composition. By MAX POLL of the University of Cincinnati. With the vocabulary to JAGEMANN'S *Materials for German Prose Composition.* 90 cents.

Pope's German Composition. By PAUL R. POPE of Cornell University. 90 cents.

—— **Writing and Speaking German.** By P. R. POPE. 90 cents.

Prokosch and Purin's Konversations- und Lesebuch. By EDUARD PROKOSCH of the University of Texas, and C. M. PURIN of the University of Wisconsin. (*In press.*)

Schrakamp's Exercises in Conversational German. By JOSEPHA SCHRAKAMP. 55 cents.

Vos's Materials for German Conversation. By B. J. Vos of Indiana University. 75 cents.

Wenckebach's German Composition based on Humorous Stories. By CARLA WENCKEBACH, late of Wellesley College. $1.00.

Whitney and Stroebe's Advanced German Composition. By M. P. WHITNEY and L. L. STROEBE of Vassar College. 90 cents.

—— **Easy German Composition.** By M. P. WHITNEY and L. L. STROEBE. 90 cents.

MODERN LANGUAGE DICTIONARIES

Bellows's German Dictionary
806 pp. 12mo. Retail price, $1.75.
On the same general plan as Bellows's French Dictionary (Larger type edition). See below.

Whitney's Compendious German and English Dictionary
viii + 538 + ii + 362 pp. 8vo. Retail price, $1.50.
Arranges definitions in historical order, prints cognates in heavy type, gives brief etymologies.

Gasc's Student's French and English Dictionary
600 + 586 pp. 12mo. Retail price, $1.50.
Comprehensive, inexpensive. Popular with students.

Gasc's Pocket French and English Dictionary
x + 647 pp. 18mo. $1.00.

Gasc's Library French and English Dictionary
956 pp. 8vo. $4.00.
An expansion of the larger of the foregoing dictionaries, comparing favorably both for completeness and convenience with any French and English dictionary extant.

Gasc's Concise Dictionary of the French and English Languages
941 pp. 16mo. Retail price, $1.25.
Abridged from the foregoing. The most complete of the portable dictionaries.

Gasc's Little Gem French and English Dictionary
279 pp. Vest-pocket format. Cloth, 50c. Leather, $1.00.

Bellows's French and English Pocket Dictionary
605 pp. 32mo. Roan tuck, $2.55. Morocco tuck, $3.10.
French-English and English-French on same page; gender shown by distinguishing types; verb-forms at a glance; liaison marked; hints on pronunciation, customs, and usage; rich in idiomatic and colloquial renderings in both languages; tables and maps. Carefully printed from type specially cast.

Bellows's French Dictionary. Larger Type
689 pp. 12mo. Retail price, $1.50.
Revised and enlarged. Larger type. For the use of students. Retains all the features and devices of the Pocket Dictionary except the maps.

Edgren and Burnet's French and English Dictionary
1252 pp. 8vo. Retail price, $1.50.
Gives pronunciation and etymologies, with date of first occurrence of each word. Scholarly and practical.

Edgren's Italian and English Dictionary
viii + 1028 pp. 8vo. Retail price, $3.00.

HENRY HOLT AND COMPANY
34 WEST 33D STREET NEW YORK

Rules of Order.

I.

T

II. Cy 129 Sec 142.

Some auxiliary must come before the dependent infinitive and the governing verb

Required Forms of "sehen", to see.

sehen, sah, gesehen.

Imp. Subj. sähe.

Part. sehend.

Pres. Ind

1st P. Sing.	2nd P. Sing.	3rd P. Sing.
ich sehe.	du siehst	er sieht.

Conditional Forms & Equivalents.

Pres. Cond. Ich würde sehen — ich sähe.

Perf. " Ich würde gesehen haben - ich hätte gesehen

Passive.

gesehen werden — wurde gesehen

ist gesehen (ge) worden.

Imperative.

Sing.	Plural.
1. —	1. sehen wir
2. sieh (du)	2. seht (ihr)
3. sehe er	3. sehen sie

P. F. Sehen Sie.